



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

### Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

### About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>

Educ T 919.22.765



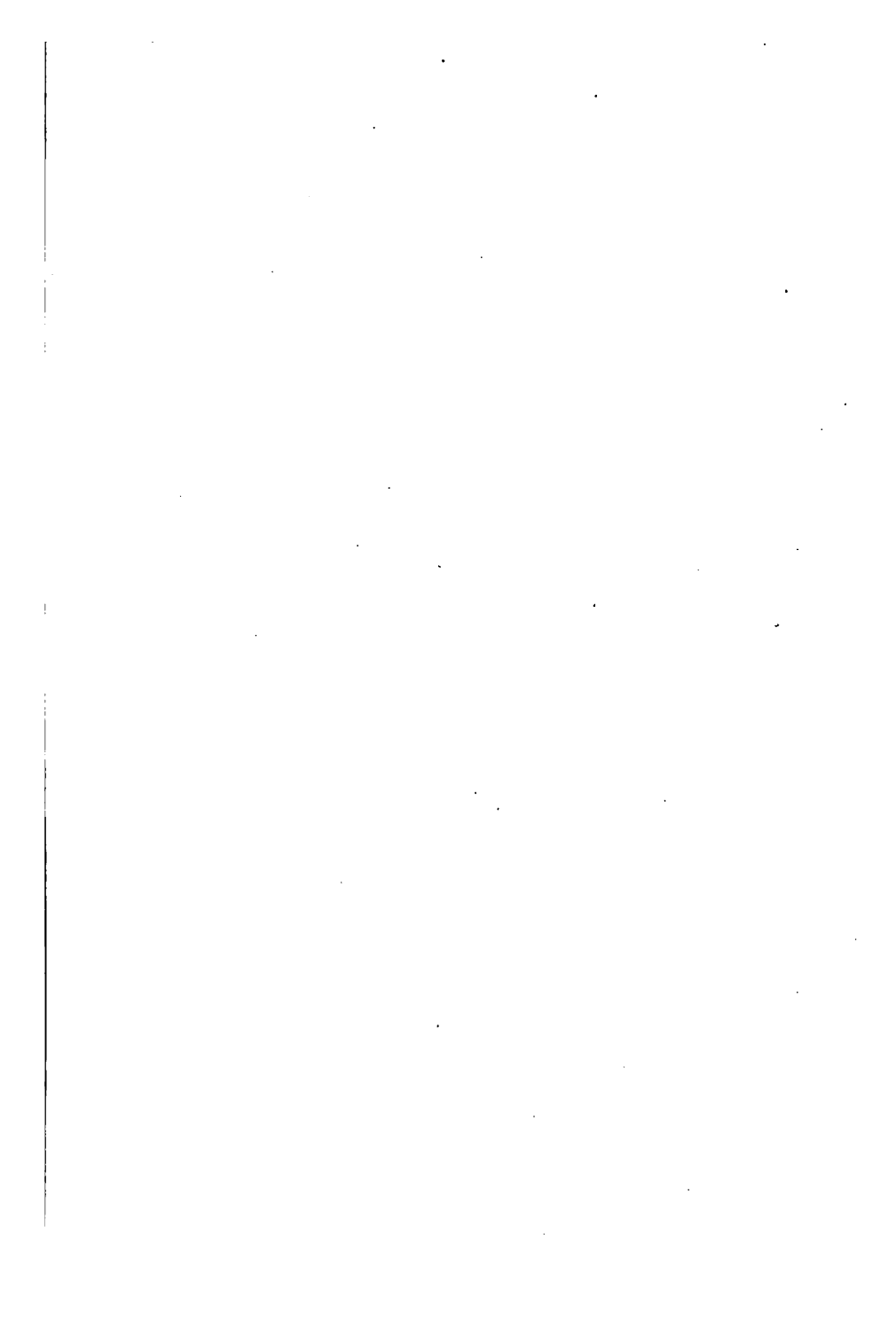
Harvard College Library  
THE GIFT OF  
GINN AND COMPANY

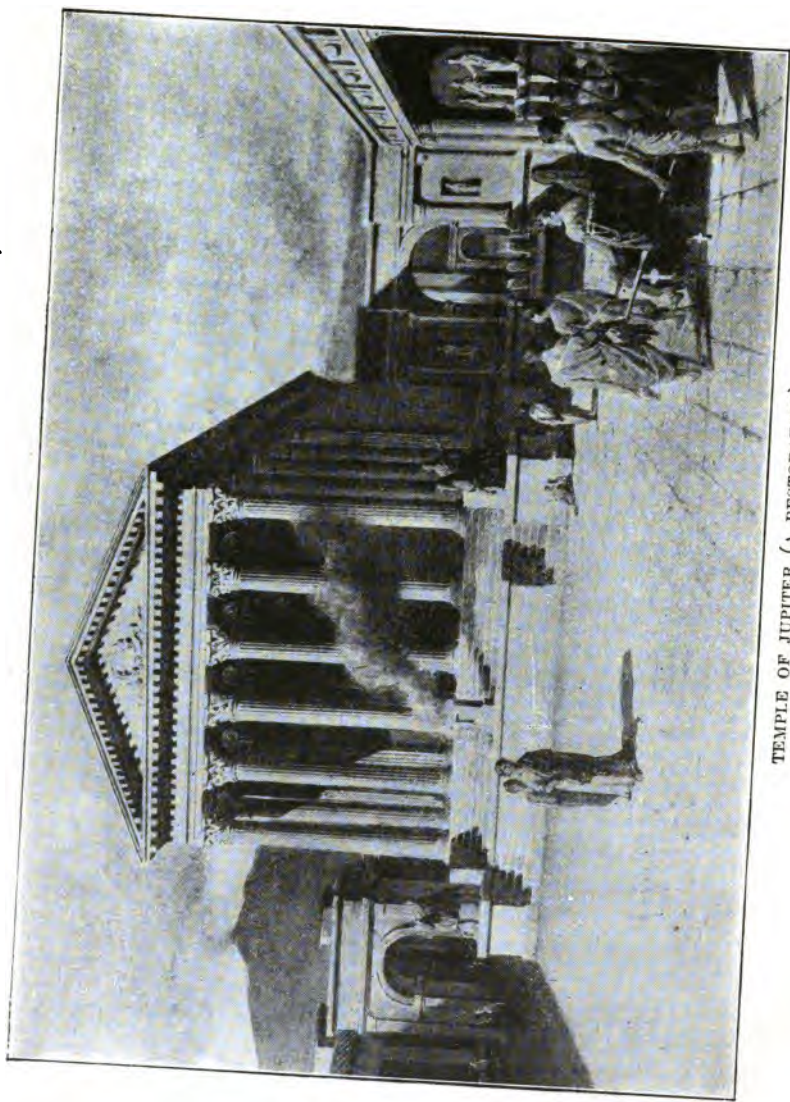


3 2044 097 074 298









TEMPLE OF JUPITER (A RESTORATION)

**Like Classical Series**

---

# **A JUNIOR LATIN READER**

**BY**

**FREDERICK WARREN SANFORD**

**ASSOCIATE PROFESSOR OF LATIN IN THE  
UNIVERSITY OF NEBRASKA**

**AND**

**HARRY FLETCHER SCOTT**

**ASSOCIATE PROFESSOR OF LATIN IN  
OHIO UNIVERSITY, ATHENS, OHIO**



**SCOTT, FORESMAN AND COMPANY**  
**CHICAGO** **NEW YORK**

Educ T 919.22.765

HARVARD  
GINN  
GINN & COMPANY  
MARCH 17, 1927

COPYRIGHT 1918, 1922  
BY  
SCOTT, FORESMAN AND COMPANY

*This book is dedicated to the  
memory of  
HAROLD W. JOHNSTON  
by the authors  
who count it an honor to have been  
numbered among his pupils*



## PREFACE

The purpose of this book is to furnish sufficiently easy reading material for pupils in the second year of their Latin study, and also to provide the opportunity for drill on forms which have not been a part of the work of the first year.

Children demand an early introduction to connected discourse, which is the purpose of language. It is important that their earlier Latin readings shall be well within their powers. Not all difficulties can be eliminated. Difficulties are inherent in a highly inflected language. Not all should be eliminated. But the difficulties should be surmountable, with a view to the pupil's legitimate satisfaction from day to day. It happens that no Latin author saw fit to write simple Latin stories for children. The best substitute for such material seems to be a simplified form of narrative based more or less directly on ancient authors. This volume aims to serve the purpose indicated. Its plan is as follows:

I. Ten review lessons are given, dealing with forms and constructions from the work of the first year. These lessons (pages 301 ff.) follow the text of Caesar, and they may be omitted by teachers who prefer to do so. But many teachers will find it worth while to spend the time necessary to cover them. Summer vacations have a well-known power to dim the knowledge acquired the preceding year.

II. All forms and uses of the subjunctive are omitted from the first-year book of this series. In order that pupils may have the opportunity to apply in the most effective way knowledge already gained before attacking new modal forms and uses, a number of pages of simple reading matter have been provided. These consist of the stories of Perseus and Hercules from Ritchie's *Fabulae Faciles*, a book published

in England, but well known and much used in this country. The Latin is simple, the stories are interestingly told, the vocabulary is well selected. As here presented, neither story contains subjunctives, a fact which has made alterations necessary in certain parts of the Hercules.

III. The inflections and principles of syntax which were postponed from the first book are next given in a series of thirty-five lessons. The number of subjunctive constructions has been kept within reasonable limits. If pupils carry Latin but two years, elaborate study of the subjunctive is inappropriate. If they go further, other uses are best taken up in connection with the reading of more advanced Latin. These lessons include a number of case uses, together with some pronouns, adjectives, and irregular verbs which are commonly given in the first year's work of the four-year high school, but which many teachers prefer to postpone to a later part of the course.

IV. A third story from *Fabulae Faciles* follows, that of the Argonauts. Only minor changes from the original form are made in this story. The pupil here finds subjunctive constructions amply illustrated.

V. The stories from Roman history contain, first of all, legends of early Rome recounted in the first book of Livy. They are given in a greatly simplified form in respect to vocabulary, constructions, sentence length, and order of words. The same ground was covered by the French teacher Lhomond in the eighteenth century. In this book, however, all the stories of the kings and several of the earlier biographical sketches of notables of the republic have been written anew from the sources without reference to Lhomond's work and in much simpler form than his sketches. The later biographies have been adapted from his *Urbis Romae Viri Illustres*, considerably simplified and shortened.

VI. The reading matter concludes with the first book of Caesar's Gallic War in simplified form. In altering the text



the authors have intended to smooth away the more serious difficulties and yet to leave the essential Caesarean qualities intact. Involved sentences have been simplified by being broken up into shorter sentences. All but very brief passages in indirect discourse have been converted to the direct form. The second part of the book, beginning with the thirtieth chapter, and weighted in the original text with indirect discourse, is thus reduced to a fairly easy narrative. It is one of the most attractive portions of the Gallic War. Its graphic account of Caesar's dealings with the German king Ariovistus, who had come into Alsace to stay, but did not stay, commands the unflagging attention of any pupil, if the difficulties of the language are not beyond his powers of mastery. The authors hope that the reading of a portion of Caesar's narrative in simplified form may serve to give some knowledge of the character of this work which has so long held its place among the masterpieces of prose narrative.

VII. To the end of the Roman stories the text is furnished with page vocabularies, a feature of long standing in the Lake Classical Series. At the place of first occurrence the definition of each word, except proper nouns and adjectives, is presented on the same page with the text. This plan causes a saving of the pupil's time and makes possible effective vocabulary drill. In making up this page vocabulary, however, many of the words appearing in the first-year book of this series have been omitted, and words in the vocabularies of the thirty-five lessons have not been repeated in the page vocabularies attached to the stories following the Lessons. The final vocabulary contains all words in the selections for reading and the exercises, including proper nouns and adjectives.

VIII. Exercises in composition are given, one for each week of the time likely to be available after the Lessons are completed. An English-Latin vocabulary accompanies the composition section.

IX. In keeping with the present practice in high-school textbooks, a Grammatical Appendix displays the declensions and conjugations and the leading principles of syntax for convenient reference. The authors believe that it contains all the grammatical material essential at this stage of the pupil's studies.

X. A capable teacher finds in each day's reading lesson ample material for the study of English derivatives. As a supplement to such work, this book contains connected lists of English derivatives from Latin to be found in the terminologies of elementary science, grammar, geography, and elementary mathematics. No device serves better to demonstrate the debt that our own language owes to Latin.

XI. In the preparation of notes the authors have intended not to smother the student with unnecessary erudition. The reading matter of the book is not difficult. The notes, accordingly, are brief. The aim has been to give apt and typical translations, stimulating suggestions, and, where necessary, adequate explanations.

As in the first-year book, consonant *i* has been represented by *j*. The uncontracted genitive of nouns in *-ius* and *-ium* has also been used. In *expectō*, *existō*, and other compounds of *ex* with words beginning with *s*, the later spelling, without *s*, has been employed. The advantage of the use of these forms for pupils who take but two years of Latin is obvious, and for others the change to slightly different forms, if necessary, need cause no difficulty.

While the reading of Cicero or Vergil may be taken up directly after this book, some teachers may prefer to give a half year to the reading of Caesar as the next element of the course. With a five-year course a full year can be given to Caesar or to Caesar and Nepos after the reading of a reasonably large amount of text from this book.

FREDERICK WARREN SANFORD  
HARRY FLETCHER SCOTT

# CONTENTS

	PAGE
PREFACE . . . . .	vii
LIST OF ILLUSTRATIONS . . . . .	xiv
LIST OF ABBREVIATIONS . . . . .	xv

## PART I

THE STORY OF PERSEUS. . . . .	1
THE STORY OF HERCULES . . . . .	15

## PART II

LESSON I. THE LOCATIVE: DECLENSION OF <i>domus</i> . . . . .	57
II. SUMMARY OF PLACE CONSTRUCTIONS . . . . .	59
III. CONJUGATION OF <i>nōlō</i> . . . . .	62
IV. DECLENSION OF <i>vetus</i> AND <i>quisquam</i> . . . . .	64
V. THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD: PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE OF REGULAR VERBS: CLAUSES OF RESULT . . . . .	66
VI. PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE OF REGULAR VERBS (Continued)	67
VII. PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE OF <i>sum</i> AND <i>possum</i> : NOUN CLAUSES OF FACT . . . . .	69
VIII. IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE OF REGULAR VERBS: SE- QUENCE OF TENSES . . . . .	72
IX. IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE OF <i>sum</i> AND <i>possum</i> : IMPER- SONAL VERBS . . . . .	74
X. DATIVE OF PURPOSE: DATIVE OF REFERENCE . . . . .	76
XI. THE PERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE: <i>Cum</i> CAUSAL CLAUSES . . . . .	78
XII. THE PAST PERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE: <i>Cum</i> ADVERSATIVE CLAUSES . . . . .	81
XIII. SUBJUNCTIVE OF <i>ferō</i> : <i>Cum</i> DESCRIPTIVE CLAUSES OF SITUATION . . . . .	83
XIV. SUBJUNCTIVE OF <i>volō</i> AND <i>eō</i> : INDIRECT QUESTIONS	85
XV. FUTURE PASSIVE PARTICIPLE: DATIVE OF AGENT . . . . .	87
XVI. PRESENT AND IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE OF <i>fiō</i> AND <i>nōlō</i> : INDIRECT DISCOURSE, COMPLETED . . . . .	89

	PAGE
XVII. PRESENT PASSIVE IMPERATIVE: IMPERSONAL USE OF CERTAIN VERBS IN THE PASSIVE . . . . .	91
XVIII. THE GERUNDIVE . . . . .	93
XIX. CLAUSES OF PURPOSE WITH <i>ut</i> AND <i>nē</i> . . . . .	95
XX. RELATIVE CLAUSES OF PURPOSE: ABLATIVE OF COM- PARISON . . . . .	97
XXI. THE SUPINE: DECLENSION OF <i>iste</i> . . . . .	99
XXII. NOUN CLAUSES OF DESIRE . . . . .	101
XXIII. RELATIVE CLAUSES OF DESCRIPTION . . . . .	102
XXIV. CLAUSES OF FEAR . . . . .	104
XXV. REVIEW OF PARTICIPLES . . . . .	105
XXVI. THE VOLITIVE SUBJUNCTIVE IN PRINCIPAL CLAUSES . . . . .	107
XXVII. THE SUBJUNCTIVE IN WISHES . . . . .	108
XXVIII. THE ANTICIPATORY SUBJUNCTIVE: DATIVE OF POSSES- SION. . . . .	110
XXIX. CONDITIONAL SENTENCES: FUTURE CONDITIONAL SEN- TENCES, MORE VIVID AND LESS VIVID . . . . .	112
XXX. CONDITIONAL SENTENCES CONTRARY TO FACT . . . . .	114
XXXI. NON-COMMITTAL CONDITIONAL SENTENCES: ABLATIVE OF ROUTE . . . . .	115
XXXII. THE FUTURE IMPERATIVE: VOCATIVE IN <i>-i</i> . . . . .	117
XXXIII. CONJUGATION OF <i>mālō</i> : ADJECTIVES DENOTING A PART . . . . .	119
XXXIV. CLASSES OF PERFECT STEMS: NEGATIVE COMMANDS . . . . .	121
XXXV. GENITIVE WITH CERTAIN VERBS: SUBJUNCTIVE BY ATTRACTION . . . . .	123

## PART III

THE ARGONAUTS . . . . .	127
-------------------------	-----

## STORIES FROM ROMAN HISTORY

1. AENEAS SETTLES IN ITALY . . . . .	153
2. FOUNDING OF ALBA LONGA . . . . .	154
3. ROMULUS AND REMUS . . . . .	155
4. FOUNDING OF ROME . . . . .	157
5. THE SABINE WOMEN . . . . .	159
6. NUMA POMPILIUS . . . . .	162
7. TULLUS HOSTILIUS . . . . .	164

# CONTENTS

xiii

	PAGE
8. ANCUS MARCIUS . . . . .	167
9. TARQUINIUS PRISCUS . . . . .	170
10. SERVIUS TULLIUS . . . . .	173
11. TARQUINIUS SUPERBUS . . . . .	176
12. BANISHMENT OF TARQUINIUS SUPERBUS . . . . .	180
13. HORATIUS COCLES . . . . .	182
14. SECESSION OF THE PLEBS . . . . .	183
15. MENENIUS AGRIPPA . . . . .	185
16. LUCIUS QUINCTIUS CINCINNATUS . . . . .	186
17. THE GALLIC INVASION . . . . .	188
18. GAIUS FABRICIUS . . . . .	192
19. MARCUS ATILIUS REGULUS . . . . .	194
20. HANNIBAL . . . . .	198
21. QUINTUS FABIUS MAXIMUS . . . . .	200
22. PUBLIUS CORNELIUS SCIPIO AFRICANUS . . . . .	202
23. GAIUS MARIUS . . . . .	207
24. LUCIUS CORNELIUS SULLA . . . . .	212
25. GNAEUS POMPEIUS MAGNUS . . . . .	216
26. GAIUS JULIUS CAESAR . . . . .	220
27. MARCUS TULLIUS CICERO . . . . .	233

## PART IV

CAESAR'S ARMY . . . . .	243
CAESAR'S GALLIC WAR, BOOK I (Simplified) . . . . .	249
REVIEW OUTLINE OF FIRST YEAR WORK . . . . .	301
LISTS OF ENGLISH DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN . . . . .	317
GRAMMATICAL APPENDIX . . . . .	327
EXERCISES IN LATIN COMPOSITION . . . . .	397
ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY (following 416) . . . . .	1
LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY . . . . .	10
INDEX . . . . .	76

## LIST OF ILLUSTRATIONS

	PAGE
FRONTISPIECE, TEMPLE OF JUPITER AT POMPEII (Restored)	
JUPITER . . . . .	2
MINERVA . . . . .	7
JUNO . . . . .	16
AN AMAZON . . . . .	37
VIEW OF MODERN ROME . . . . .	56
VESSELS FOUND IN POMPEII . . . . .	63
TOMB OF THE EMPEROR HADRIAN, IN ROME . . . . .	71
TEMPLE IN ROME . . . . .	80
KEY FROM AN ANCIENT HOUSE . . . . .	88
MARBLE RELIEF IN ROMAN FORUM . . . . .	98
ROMAN SWORD AND SCABBARD . . . . .	100
JARS FOR STORING OIL AND GRAIN, ANCIENT OSTIA . . . . .	111
ARCH OF CONSTANTINE . . . . .	122
WALL PAINTING FROM POMPEII . . . . .	125
RUINS OF OSTIA . . . . .	168
FRAGMENT OF THE WALL OF SERVIUS TULLIUS . . . . .	173
ROMAN AQUEDUCT . . . . .	208
GAIUS JULIUS CAESAR . . . . .	222
MARCUS TULLIUS CICERO . . . . .	334

## LIST OF ABBREVIATIONS

abbr.,	abbreviation	interj.,	interjection
abl.,	ablative	interrog.,	interrogative
acc.,	accusative	intr.,	intransitive
adj.,	adjective	l.,	line
adv.,	adverb	lit.,	literally
Arg.,	Argonauts	m.,	masculine
compar.,	comparative	n.,	neuter
conj.,	conjunction	nom.,	nominative
contr.,	contracted	num.,	numeral
correl.,	correlative	p.,	past
dat.,	dative	part.,	participle
defect.,	defective	pass.,	passive
dem.,	demonstrative	Per.,	Perseus
dep.,	deponent	pf., perf.,	perfect
dim.,	diminutive	pers.,	personal
distrib.,	distributive	pl.,	plural
e.g.,	<i>exempli grātiā</i> , for example	possess.,	possessive
f.,	feminine	pr.,	present
ff.,	following	prep.,	preposition
freq.,	frequentative	pron.,	pronoun
gen.,	genitive	pronom.,	pronominal
Her.,	Hercules	R.,	Roman Stories
i.e.,	<i>id est</i> , that is	rel.,	relative
imper.,	imperative	sg., sing.,	singular
impers.,	impersonal	subjv.,	subjunctive
indecl.,	indeclinable	subst.,	substantive
indef.,	indefinite	superl.,	superlative
indic.,	indicative	tr.,	transitive
intens.,	intensive	voc.,	vocative

## PERSEUS

Perseus and his mother were set adrift on the sea by Acrisius, king of Argos, the grandfather of Perseus, because an oracle had declared that Acrisius would some day perish at the hands of his grandson.

Jupiter, however, saved the mother and child, bringing them to the Island of Seriphus, where they were kindly received by Polydectes, the king.

When Perseus reached manhood he was ordered by Polydectes to bring him the head of Medusa, an undertaking which was likely to prove fatal. But Apollo and Minerva directed him on his journey and gave him a special equipment for his task. With the aid thus afforded, he accomplished the perilous exploit in safety and escaped from the companions of Medusa, who sought to kill him. On his way back he rescued Andromeda, daughter of Cepheus, the king of the Ethiopians, who was about to be devoured by a sea serpent. He married Andromeda, and soon after returned with her to the island from which he had been sent by the crafty Polydectes. Finding that his mother had taken refuge from the king, he turned the latter into stone through the magic power of the head of Medusa. Afterward, while taking part in athletic games he accidentally killed his grandfather, Acrisius, thus fulfilling the oracle which Acrisius had vainly sought to escape.



# A JUNIOR LATIN READER

## PART I

### THE STORY OF PERSEUS

#### 1. SET ADRIFT

Haec narrantur ā poētīs dē Perseō. Perseus filius erat Jovis, maximī deōrum. Avus ejus Ācrisius appellābatur. Ācrisius volēbat Perseum, nepōtem suum, necāre; nam propter ōrāculum puerum timēbat. Comprehendit igitur Perseum, adhūc infāntem, et cum mātē in arcā lignēā inclūsit. Tum 5 arcam ipsam in mare conjēcit. Danaē, Perseī mātē, magnopere territa est; tempestās enim magna mare turbābat. Perseus autem in sinū mātē dormiēbat.

1. *Haec, these things, i.e., the following stories.* This substantive use of the neuter plural of *hic* is very common.

2. *Ācrisius*: predicate nominative after the passive of a verb of calling.

6. *Danaē*: a Greek name, with genitive ending in *-ēs*, acc. in *-ēn*.

7. *enim*: postpositive, *i.e.*, it stands after one or more words of its sentence; *nam* (see l. 3) regularly stands first in a sentence. Another postpositive word is *autem*, l. 8.

In section 1 point out two appositives; an ablative of agent.

2. *avus, -ī, m.*, grandfather.

3. *nepōs, -ōtis, m.*, grandson, nephew.

4. *ōrāculum, -ī, n.* [ōrō], oracle.  
*com-prehendō, -hendere, -hendī, -hēnsū, tr.*, seize, arrest.

5. *ad-hūc, adv.*, until now, as yet.  
*in-fāns, gen. -fantis, adj.*, infant;  
*subst., m. and f.*, infant, babe.

*arca, -ae, f.*, chest, box.

*ligneus, -a, -um, adj.*, [lignum], of wood, wooden.

*inclūdō, -clūdere, -clūsī, -clūsus, tr.* [in+claudō], shut up, enclose.

6. *conjiciō, -jicere, -jēcī, -jectum, tr.* [com+jacīō], throw together; hurl, cast.

7. *enim, conj. (postpositive)*, for.  
*turbō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr.* [turba], disturb, throw into confusion.

8. *autem, conj.*, but, on the other hand, however, furthermore.

*sinus, -ūs, m.*, a fold; bosom.

*dormiō, -ire, -ivī, -itum, intr.*, sleep.

**JUPITER**

## 2. CAST ON AN ISLAND

Juppiter tamen haec omnia vidit, et filium suum servāre cōstituit. Fēcit igitur mare tranquillum, et arcam ad Insulam Serīphum perdūxit. Hujus insulae Polydectēs tum rēx erat. Postquam arca ad lītus appulsa est, Danaē in harēnā quīetē capiēbat. Post breve tempus ā piscātōre quōdam reperta est, et ad domum rēgis Polydectis adducta est. Ille mātrem et puerum benignē excēpit, et sēdem tūtā in finibus suis dedit. Danaē hoc dōnum libenter accēpit, et prō tantō beneficiō rēgi grātiās ēgit.

9. *tamen*: usually postpositive, but sometimes stands first in its clause; the same is true of *igitur*, l. 4.

10. *mare tranquillum*: two accusatives after a verb of making. One accusative may be an adjective, as here.

11. *Serīphum*: in apposition with *īnsulam*. We usually say in English "the island of," "the city of."

12. *Postquam*: with *postquam* and *ubi* the perfect is the tense most frequently employed. In translation, with the English equivalents "after" or "when," we sometimes employ the past perfect tense, sometimes the past.

13. *piscātōre quōdam*: the forms of *quīdam* sometimes precede and sometimes follow the word they modify.

16. *dedit: eīs*, dative of indirect object, is to be understood.

In section 2 point out a complementary infinitive; a dative of indirect object.

10. *tranquillus, -a, -um, adj.*, calm, still.

11. *per-dūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum, tr.*, lead through, lead, bring, conduct.

12. *appellō, -ere, -puli, -pulsum, tr.* [*ad+pellō*], drive to, bring to; *with or without nāvem*, land, put in.

*harēna (sometimes spelled arēna), -ae, f.*, sand; shore, beach.

13. *quīēs, -ētis, f.*, rest; peace, quiet. *piscātor, -ōris, m.* [*piscor*, to fish], fisherman.

14. *domus, -ūs, (-ī), f.*, home, house.

*ad-dūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum, tr.*, lead to, conduct, bring; incite, induce.

15. *benignē, adv.* [*benignus*], kindly. *excipiō, -cipere, -cēpi, -ceptum, tr.* [*ex+capiō*], take out, take up, catch; receive, entertain.

*sēdēs, -is, f.* [*sedeō*], seat, chair; residence, abode.

17. *grātia, -ae, f.* [*grātus*], favor, influence; gratitude, thanks, requital; *grātiās agere*, to express thanks; *grātiām referre*, to make requital, to requite; *grātiā (with gen.)*, for the sake of.

## 3. PERSEUS SENT ON HIS TRAVELS

Perseus igitur multōs annōs ibi habitāvit, et cum mātrem suā vītam ēgit beātā. At Polydectēs Danaēn magnopere  
 20 amābat atque eam in mātrimonium dūcere volēbat. Hoc tamen cōnsilium Perseō minimē grātum erat. Polydectēs igitur Perseum dīmittere cōstituit. Tum juvenem ad sē vocāvit et haec dixit: "Turpe est vītam hanc ignāvam agere; jam dūdum tū adulēscēns es; quousque hīc manēbis? Tem-  
 25 pus est arma capere et virtūtem praestāre. Hinc abi, et caput Medūsae mihi refer."

18. annōs: accusative of duration of time.

21. Perseō: dependent on *grātum*; for the case see App. 50.

23. haec: used as in l. 1; with *dixit*, spoke as follows.

agere: subject of *est*; an infinitive used as a noun is in the neuter gender; hence the predicate adjective, *turpe*, is neuter.

24. jam dūdum es, *you have long been*; with *jam dūdum* a present tense is translated by an English present perfect, an imperfect by an English past perfect; *jam dūdum erās* would mean *you had long been*.

25. abi: imperative of *abēō*. What is the imperative of *eō*?

26. refer: the present imperative of *ferō* and its compounds is irregular. See App. 34.

19. beātus, -a, -um, *adj.*, happy, prosperous.

20. atque, *conj.*, and also, and.

mātrimonium, -i, *n.* [māter], marriage; in mātrimonium dare, give in marriage, arrange a marriage for; in mātrimonium dūcere, marry.

21. minimē, *superl. adv.* [minimus], least, very little; by no means, not at all.

23. vocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* [vōx], call, summon.

turpis, -e, *adj.*, unseemly, shameful, disgraceful.

ignāvus, -a, -um, *adj.* [in-+gnāvus, busy], inactive, cowardly.

24. dūdum, *adv.*, before, formerly; jam dūdum, this long time, a long time ago.

adulēscēns, adulēscētis, -ium, *adj.* [*pr. part.* of *adolēscō*], youthful; *subst., m.*, a young man, a youth.

quo-usque, *adv.*, till when? how long?

25. prae-stō, -stāre, -stitī, -stitum, *intr. and tr.*, stand before; excel, be better; exhibit, show.

hinc, *adv.* [hic], from this place, hence.

ab-eō, -īre, -īi, -itum, *intr.*, go away, depart.

26. re-ferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum, *tr.*, bear back, bring back; pedem referre, withdraw, retire, retreat; grātiā referre, requite.

## 4. PERSEUS GETS HIS OUTFIT

Perseus, ubi haec audivit, ex insulā discessit et, postquam ad continentem vēnit, Medūsam quaesivit. Diū frūstrā quaerēbat; nam nātūram loci ignōrābat. Tandem Apollō et Minerva viam dēmōnstrāvērunt. Primum ad Graeās, sorōrēs 30 Medūsae, pervēnit. Ab his tālāria et galeam magicam accēpit. Apollō autem et Minerva falcem et speculum dederunt. Tum postquam tālāria pedibus induit, in āera ascendit. Diū per āera volābat; tandem tamen ad eum locum vēnit ubi Medūsa cum cēteris Gorgonibus habitābat. Gor- 35 gonēs autem mōnstra erant speciē horribili; capita enim eārum serpentibus omninō contēcta erant; manūs etiam ex aere factae erant.

**27. Perseus:** in Latin, when the verbs of a principal and a subordinate clause express action by the same person or thing, the noun or pronoun used to denote the subject frequently stands before the subordinate clause.

*haec, this;* see note on *haec*, l. 23.

**31. galeam magicam:** this rendered the wearer invisible.

**33. pedibus, on his feet;** dative, used with the compound *induit*.

*āera:* a word of Greek origin, which retains its Greek accusative form.

**36. speciē horribili, of horrible aspect,** ablative of description.

**37. aere:** from *aes*.

**28. continēns, -entis, f. [contineō],** continent, mainland.

*frūstrā, adv.,* in vain, to no purpose.

**29. ignōrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr.,** not know, be unaware of.

*tandem, adv.,* at length, finally.

**30. primum, adv. [primus],** in the first place, first of all; *cum primum, as soon as; quam primum, as soon as possible.*

**31. tālāria, -ium, n. pl.,** winged sandals.

*galea, -ae, f.,* helmet.

*magicus, -a, -um, adj.,* magical, magic.

**32. falx, falcis, f.,** sickle.

*speculum, -i, n. [speciō, look],* mirror.

**33. induō, -duere, -dui, -dūtum, tr.,** put on.

*āēr, āeris, m.,* the air.

**35. cēterī, -ae, -a, adj., pl.,** the other, the rest of.

**36. mōnstrum, -i, n., [moneō],** a divine omen, portent; monster. *speciēs, -ēi, f.,* appearance, aspect. *horribilis, -e, adj. [horreō],* terrible, fearful, dreadful.

**37. serpēns, gen. -entis, f. [pr. part. of serpo, crawl],** serpent.

*omninō, adv. [omnis],* altogether, entirely, at all; only.

*con-tegō, -tegere, -tēxi, -tēctum, tr.,* cover.

*aes, aeris, n.,* copper, bronze.

## 5. THE GORGON'S HEAD

Rēs erat difficillima abscidere caput Gorgonis; ejus enim  
 40 cōspectū hominēs in saxum vertēbantur. Propter hanc cau-  
 sam Minerva illud speculum dederat. Perseus igitur tergum  
 vertit, et in speculum inspiciebāt; hōc modō ad locum vēnit  
 ubi Medūsa dormiebat. Tum falce suā caput ejus unō ictū  
 abscidit. Cēterae Gorgonēs statim ē somnō excitātae sunt  
 45 et, ubi rem vidērunt, irā commōtae sunt. Arma rapuerunt,  
 et Perseum occidere volēbant; ille autem, dum fugit, galeam  
 magicam induit et, ubi hoc fēcit, statim ē cōspectū eārum  
 ēvāsit.

40. *vertēbantur*: the Latin imperfect, like the English past, often expresses repeated or customary action.

42. *speculum*: ancient mirrors consisted of polished metal plates.

*hōc modō*: ablative of manner.

46. *dum fugit*, while he fled, while fleeing; when a *dum* clause denotes situation, it takes the present indicative, regardless of the tense of the principal verb.

In section 5 what is the subject of the first sentence? Account for the case of *ictū*, 43; for the tense of *fēcit*, 47. What different forces have the perfects *vertit*, *vēnit*, and the imperfects *inspiciebāt*, *dormiebat*, 42-43?

39. *abscidō*, -cidere, -cidi, -cisum, *tr.* [abs+caedō], cut off.

40. *cōspectus*, -ūs, *m.* sight, view.  
*vertō*, -ere, *verti*, *versum*, *tr.*, turn.

42. *inspicō*, -spicere, -spexi, -spec-  
 tum, look into, look.

43. *ictus*, -ūs, *m.*, blow, stroke.

44. *somnus*, -i, *m.*, sleep.

*excitō*, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.*, call  
 out, rouse.

45. *ira*, -ae, *f.*, anger, wrath, ire.

*com-moveō*, -movēre, -mōvi, -mō-  
 tum, *tr.*, move deeply, excite,  
 arouse, alarm.

*rapiō*, -ere, *rapui*, *raptum*, *tr.*, seize,  
 carry off.

46. *occidō*, -cidere, -cidi, -cisum, *tr.*  
 [ob+caedō], cut down, kill.

*dum*, *conj.*, while; until.

48. *ē-vādō*, -vādere, -vāsi, -vāsum,  
*intr.*, come out, escape.

## 6. THE SEA SERPENT

Post haec Perseus in finēs Aethiopum vēnit. Ibi Cēpheus  
 50 quidam illō tempore rēgnābat. Hic Neptūnum, maris deum,

49. *Cēpheus quidam*, a certain Cepheus, or a man named Cepheus.

50. *tempore*: ablative of time.

*Hic*: a pronoun referring to Cepheus.



MINERVA

olim offenderat. Neptūnus autem mōnstrum saevissimum miserat. Hoc cotidiē ē marī veniēbat et hominēs dēvorābat. Ob hanc causam pavor animōs omnium occupāverat. Cēpheus igitur ōrāculum deī Hammōnis cōnsuluit, atque ā deō jussus  
 55 est filiam mōnstrō trādere. Ejus autem filia, nōmine Andromeda, virgō fōrmōsissima erat. Cēpheus, ubi haec audiuit, magnum dolōrem percēpit. Volēbat tamen cīvēs suōs ē tantō periculō extrahere, atque ob eam causam cōstituit imperāta Hammōnis facere.

**52. mari:** it should be remembered that neuter nouns with the genitive plural in *-ium* have the ending *-ī* in the ablative singular.

**53. omnium,** of all (i.e., men); a substantive use of an adjective; compare the neuter *haec*, l. 23.

**54. ōrāculum:** the word may mean the seat of an oracle, as here, or the reply given by an oracle. The consultation of oracles sprang from the belief that information and advice could be obtained from certain divinities. Oracles were usually given by oral utterances of a priest or priestess in a state of real or pretended frenzy, or by signs. The temple (with its oracle) of the Egyptian god Hammon stood in an oasis of the Libyan desert. His oracles were signs interpreted by a priest. The most famous oracle of antiquity was that of Apollo at Delphi, in Greece, where the oracular response was delivered by a priestess in a state of excitement resembling madness.

**55. mōnstrō:** *trādere* takes an indirect object.

**nōmine:** ablative of respect.

**56. Cēpheus, ubi:** the order for translation is explained in the note on *Perseus, ubi*, l. 27.

In section 6 explain the case of *deō*, 54; of *Andromeda*, 55; of *virgō*, 56. What are the principal parts of *volō*?

**51. offendō, -fendere, -fendī, -fēsum, tr.,** [ob+fendō, strike], offend.

**saevus, -a, -um, adj.,** fierce, savage.

**52. dē-vorō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr.,** swallow, devour.

**53. ob, prep. with acc.,** on account of.  
**pavor, -ōris, m.** [paveō, be afraid], terror, alarm.

**54. cōnsulō, -sulere, -sului, -sultum, tr. and intr.,** consult; consult the interests of (*with dative*).

**56. virgō, virginis, f.,** young woman, maiden, virgin.

**fōrmōsus, -a, -um, adj. [fōrma],** beautiful, handsome.

**57. percipiō, -cipere, -cēpi, -ceptum, tr. [per+capio],** perceive, feel.

**58. ex-trahō, -trahere, -trāxi, -tractum, tr.,** draw out; extricate, release.

**59. imperātum, -ī, n. [pf. part. of imperō],** command, order.



## 7. A HUMAN SACRIFICE

Tum rēx diem certam dixit et omnia parāvit. Ubi ea 60  
diēs vēnit, Andromeda ad litus dēducta est et in cōspectū  
omnium ad rūpem alligāta est. Omnēs fātum ejus dēplō-  
rābant, nec lacrimās tenēbant. At subitō, dum mōnstrum  
expectant; Perseus accurrit; et, ubi lacrimās vīdit, causam  
dolōris quaerit. Illi rem tōtam expōnunt et puellam dēmōn- 65  
strant. Dum haec geruntur, fremitus terribilis auditur; simul  
mōnstrum, horribilī speciē, procul cōspicitur. Ejus cōn-  
spectus timōrem maximum omnibus injēcit. At mōnstrum

60. diem: in the plural, *diēs* is always masculine, in the singular sometimes masculine, sometimes feminine.

omnia, *all things, everything*; or with *parāvit*, *made all preparations*. The masculine plural forms of *omnis* used substantively mean *all men*, as in l. 53, the neuter plural forms, *all things*.

63. nec tenēbant, *and did not restrain*; *neque* is regularly used in Latin for *and not*.

dum . . . expectant, *while they were awaiting*; the present tense with *dum*, as in l. 46.

64. accurrit: for vivid effect a past event or situation may be represented as present. The present in this use is called the historical present, which may often be translated by the English past. Several other examples occur in this section.

67. speciēs: the case use is the same as in l. 36.

68. timōrem . . . omnibus injēcit, *inspired all with the greatest fear*; literally, *threw the greatest fear into all*; *omnibus* is a dative with a compound verb, as in l. 33.

60. certus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*p. part.* of *cernō*], fixed, certain.

61. dē-dūcō, -dūcere, -dūxi, -ductum, *tr.*, lead away; draw down; *nāvem dēdūcere*, to launch a ship.

62. rūpēs, -is, *f.*, rock, cliff.

alligō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* [*ad+ligō*, bind], bind to, tie to.

fātum, -ī, *n.* [*p. part.* of *for*, speak], fate, destiny.

dē-plōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.*, deplore, lament.

64. accurrō, -currere, -curri, -cursum, *intr.* [*ad+currō*], run to, come up hurriedly.

65. ex-pōnō, -pōnere, -posui, -positum, *tr.*, set forth, explain; expose, abandon; set ashore.

66. fremitus, -ūs, *m.* [*fremō*, roar], a roar, a loud noise.

terribilis, -e, *adj.* [*terreō*], dreadful, terrible.

67. procul, *adv.*, in the distance, at a distance, far off.

cōspiciō, -spicere, -spexi, -spectum, *tr.*, [*con+spiciō*], look, perceive, observe.

68. injiciō, -jicere, -jēci, -jectum, *tr.* [*in+jaciō*], throw into, hurl upon; inspire in, cause.

magnā celeritāte ad lītus contendit, jamque ad locum appro-  
70 pinquābat ubi puella stābat.

69. magnā celeritāte: ablative of manner.

In section 7 account for the tense of *geruntur*, 66; of *stābat*, 70.

## 8. THE RESCUE

At Perseus, ubi haec vīdit, gladium suum rapuit, et, post-  
quam tālāria induit, in āera sublātus est. Tum dēsūper in  
mōnstrum impetum subitō fēcit et gladiō suō collum ejus  
graviter vulnerāvit. Mōnstrum, ubi sēnsit vulnus, fremitum  
75 horribilem ēdidit et sine morā tōtum corpus sub aquam  
mersit. Perseus, dum circum lītus volat, reditum ejus ex-  
pectābat; mare autem intereā undique sanguine inficitur.  
Post breve tempus, bēlua rūsus caput sustulit; mox tamen  
ā Perseō ictū graviōre vulnerāta est. Tum iterum sē sub  
80 undās mersit, neque posteā vīsa est.

72. in (*mōnstrum*), *on*.

80. neque: translate as in l. 63.

In section 8 account for the case of *gladiō*, 73; of *Perseō*, 79; of *ictū*, 79.  
What case is governed by *sub* with a verb of motion? By *in* meaning  
into? By *circum*? By *sine*?

72. tollō, -ere, sustulī, sublātum, *tr.*,  
lift, elevate, raise; elate; remove.

dē-super, *adv.*, from above.

73. collum, -ī, *n.*, neck.

74. graviter, *adv.* [*gravis*], heavily;  
severely; with dignity, impres-  
sively.

sentiō, -ire, sēnsī, sēnsū, *tr.*, feel,  
see, perceive.

75. ē-dō, -dere, -didī, -ditum, *tr.*,  
give out, put forth; give birth to;  
exhibit; inflict.

sub, *prep.* with *acc.* and *abl.*, under.

76. mergō, -ere, mersī, mersum, *tr.*,  
plunge, sink.

reditus, -ūs, *m.* [*redeō*], return.

77. inter-eā, *adv.*, meanwhile, in the  
meantime.

undique, *adv.*, from all parts, on all  
sides, all around, everywhere.

sanguis, sanguinis, *m.*, blood.

inficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum, *tr.* [*in*  
+*faciō*], stain, dye, color.

78. bēlua, -ae, *f.*, wild beast, mon-  
ster.

80. unda, -ae, *f.*, wave.

## 9. THE REWARD OF VALOR

Perseus, postquam in litus dēscendit, primum tālāria exuit; tum ad rūpem vēnit ubi Andromeda vincta erat. Ea autem omnem spem salutis dēposuerat et, ubi Perseus adiit, terrōre paene exanimāta erat. Ille vincula statim solvit et puellam patrī reddidit. Cēpheus ob hanc rem maximō gaudiō affectus est. Meritam grātiā prō tantō beneficiō Perseō rettulit; praetereā Andromedam ipsam eī in mātīmōnium dedit. Ille libenter hoc dōnum accēpit, et puellam dūxit. Paucōs annōs cum uxōre suā in eā regiōne habitāvit, et in magnō honōre erat apud omnēs Aethiopēs. Magnopere tamen cupiēbat mātrem suam rūrsus vidēre. Tandem igitur cum uxōre ē rēgnō Cēpheī discessit.

83. terrōre: ablative of cause, App. 78.

86. meritam grātiā rettulit, made a deserved requital, or repaid the favor as it deserved.

prō, in return for.

88. puellam dūxit, married. Dūcō has reference to that part of the ceremony in which the bridegroom led the bride to his own house. With regard to the woman, the verb for marry is nūbere, literally, to veil oneself, with the dative of the bridegroom's name.

In section 9 account for the case of patrī 85; of Perseō, 86; of annōs, 88. Point out a complementary infinitive. What cases are governed by the prepositions ad, ob, apud?

81. exuō, -uere, -uī, -ūtum, tr., take off, remove.

82. vinciō, -īre, vīnxi, vīnctum, tr., bind, fasten.

83. dē-pōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positum, tr., set down, deposit; lay aside.

ad-eō, -īre, -īī or -īvī, -itum, intr., go or come up to, come up, approach.

terror, -ōris, m. [terreō], terror, fright.

84. paene, adv., nearly, almost.

ex-animō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr., put out of breath, stun, exhaust.

vinculum, -ī, n. [vinciō], bond, fetter.

solvō, -ere, solvī, solūtum, tr., loosen, unbind, release; relax; of ships, with or without nāvem or nāvēs, set sail, weigh anchor.

85. afficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum, tr. [ad+faciō], do to; treat; affect.

86. meritus, -a, -um, adj. [p. part. of mereō], due, deserved, just.

87. praeter-eā, adv., in addition, besides, further.

89. regiō, -ōnis, f. [regō], region, district.

honor, -ōris, m., honor, repute, esteem; Honor, -ōris, m., Honor personified as a god.

90. apud, prep. with acc., among, with; near; at the house of; on the bank of.

## 10. TURNED TO STONE

Postquam Perseus ad Insulam nāvem appulit, sē ad locum contulit ubi māter ōlim habitāverat. At domum invēnit  
 95 vacuam et omninō dēsertam. Trēs diēs per tōtam Insulam  
 mātrem quaerēbat; tandem quārtō diē ad templum Diānae  
 pervēnit. Hūc Danaē refūgerat, quod Polydectem timēbat.  
 Perseus, ubi haec cognōvit, Irā magnā commōtus est; ad  
 rēgiam Polydectis sine morā contendit et, ubi eō vēnit, statim  
 100 in ātrium irrūpit. Polydectēs magnō timōre affectus est, et  
 fugere volēbat. Dum tamen ille fugit, Perseus caput Me-  
 dūsae mōnstravit; ille autem, simul atque hoc vīdit, in saxum  
 versus est.

93. sē . . . contulit, *belook himself, proceeded.*

97. quod: a conjunction.

99. eō: an adverb.

100. magnō timōre affectus est, *was very badly frightened.* What is it literally?

102. simul atque, *as soon as*; the same rule as to the tense of the verb applies to this phrase as to *postquam* and *ubi*, explained in the note on l. 12.

In section 10 account for the case of *vacuam*, *dēsertam*, 95; of *diē*, 96; of *ātrium*, 100; of *Medūsae*, 101. What case does *per* govern? What are the meanings of the adverbs *hūc*, *hinc*, *hūc*?

95. dē-serō, -serere, -serui, -ser-  
tum, *tr.*, [serō, join], abandon,  
desert.

96. quārtus, -a, -um, *adj.* [quattuor],  
fourth.

97. hūc, *adv.* [hic], this way, to this  
place.

re-fugiō, -fugere, -fūgi, -fugitūrus,  
*intr.*, flee back; flee away, escape.

99. rēgia, -ae, *f.* [rēgius], palace.

eō, *adv.* [is], to that place, thither;  
on that account.

100. ātrium, -ī, *n.*, atrium, *the prin-  
cipal room or hall of a house.*

irrumpō, -rumpere, -rūpi, -ruptum,  
*tr. and intr.* [in+rumpō], burst,  
break in, rush into, burst into.

102. mōnstrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.*  
[mōnstrum], show, exhibit; point  
out.

## 11. THE ORACLE FULFILLED

Post haec Perseus cum uxōre suā ad urbem Ācrisī rediit.  
 105 Ille autem, ubi Perseum vīdit, magnō terrōre affectus est.

Nam propter ōrāculum istud nepōtem suum adhūc timēbat. In Thessaliam igitur ad urbem Lārissam statim refūgit; frūstrā tamen, neque enim fātum suum vitāvit. Post paucōs annōs rēx Lārissae lūdōs magnōs fēcit; nūntiōs in omnēs partēs dīmiserat et diem ēdixerat. Multi ex omnibus urbibus Graeciae ad lūdōs convēnērunt. Ipse Perseus inter aliōs certāmen discōrum iniit. At, dum discum conjicit, avum suum cāsū occidit; Ācrisius enim inter spectātōrēs ejus certāminis forte stābat.

106. *istud*: this word is declined like *ille*, and usually means *that* or *that of yours*. Here the force is, *that oracle of which you know*.

107. *Lārissam*, of *Larissa*; an appositive translated like *Seriphum*, 1. 11.

109. *lūdōs fēcit*, gave games.

*in omnēs partēs*, in all directions.

112. *discōrum*: the discus was a flat piece of stone or metal.

113. *cāsū*, by chance, accidentally; *cāsus* is one of a class of very common nouns used without prepositions to express manner.

What cases are governed by the prepositions *propter*, *ex*, *inter*? What is the regular position of *enim*?

106. *iste, ista, istud*, demonstr. pron., that of yours, that.

109. *lūdus*, -i, m., game, sport.

110. *ē-dicō, -dicere, -dixi, -dictum*, tr., declare, proclaim, appoint.

112. *certāmen, -inis, n.* [certō], struggle, contest, rivalry.

*discus*, -i, m., discus, quoit.

*in-eō, -ire, -ī or -ivī, -itum*, tr., enter; enter upon, form.

113. *spectātor, -ōris, m.* [spectō], onlooker, spectator.

114. *forte*, adv. [abl. of *fors*, chance], perhaps, by chance.

## HERCULES

Hercules was a Greek hero, celebrated for his feats of strength. While only an infant he strangled two serpents which had been sent by Juno to destroy him. In his boyhood he devoted himself to athletic pursuits, and in a fit of anger he slew the centaur who was his teacher of music. Having been seized by the King of Egypt as a victim for sacrifice, he killed the king, as well as the priest who was about to sacrifice him. His next exploit was to cut off the ears of the envoys of the Minyae who had come to Thebes to demand tribute, thus causing a war in which the Thebans under the leadership of Hercules were victorious. While in a state of temporary madness he slew his children, and thereupon was ordered by the oracle at Delphi to give himself up to the service of Eurystheus, King of Tiryns. At his command he performed the celebrated Twelve Labors, as follows: 1. Slaying the Nemean lion. 2. Slaying the Hydra of Lerna. 3. Capturing the Cerynian stag. 4. Capturing the boar of Erymanthus. 5. Cleaning the Augean stables. 6. Killing the birds of Stympalus. 7. Capturing the Cretan bull. 8. Capturing the horses of Diomedes. 9. Obtaining the girdle of Hippolyte. 10. Bringing the oxen of Geryon from the island of Erythia. 11. Procuring the golden apples of the Hesperides. 12. Bringing Cerberus from the underworld. In connection with these labors he also performed numerous other exploits.

His death came from the putting on of a poisoned robe which had been dipped in the blood of the centaur, Nessus. After his death he was taken by Jupiter to Olympus.

## THE STORY OF HERCULES

### 1. THE INFANT PRODIGY

Herculēs, Alcmēnae filius, olim in Graeciā habitābat. Hic dīcitur omnium hominum validissimus fuisse. At Jūnō, rēgina deōrum, Alcmēnam oderat, et Herculem adhūc infantem necāre voluit. Misit igitur duās serpentēs saevissimās; hae mediā nocte in cubiculum Alcmēnae vēnērunt, ubi Herculēs cum frātre suō dormiēbat. Nec tamen in cūnis, sed in scūtō magnō cubābant. Serpentēs jam appropinquāverant et scūtum movēbant; itaque puerī ē somnō excitāti sunt.

---

1. Hic dīcitur fuisse, *he is said to have been*; dīcō and verbs of similar meaning are frequently employed in the passive with a personal subject and a dependent infinitive.

3. oderat, *hated*; this verb has only the tenses formed on the perfect stem; the perfect, however, is translated as a present, the past perfect as an imperfect, and the future perfect as a future.

5. mediā nocte, *in the middle of the night*.

8. itaque, *and so*; more frequently the word means *therefore*.

---

3. odi, odiſſe, odiſſus, *defect., tr.*, cubiculum, -ī, *n.* [cubō], bedchamber.  
hate.

5. medius, -a, -um, *adj.*, middle, 6. cūnae, -ārum, *f. pl.*, a cradle.  
intervening, middle of. 7. cubō, -āre, cubui, cubitum, *intr.*,  
lie down, recline.

---

### 2. HERCULES AND THE SERPENTS

Iphiclēs, frāter Herculis, magnā vōce exclāmāvit; at Herculēs ipse, puer fortissimus, haudquāquam territus est. Parvis manibus serpentēs statimprehendit et colla eārum magnā vī compressit. Tālī modō serpentēs ā puerō interfectae sunt.

---

9. ex-clāmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.*, 12. comprimō, -primere, -pressī, cry out, exclaim.  
-pressum, *tr.* [com-+premō], press together, squeeze; suppress.  
10. haud-quāquam, *adv.*, not at all, tālis, -e, *adj.*, such, of such a kind.  
by no means.



JUNO



Alcmēna autem, māter puerōrum, clāmōrem audiverat et maritum suum ē somnō excitāverat. Ille lūmen accendit et gladium suum rapuit; tum ad puerōs properābat, sed, ubi 15 ad locum vēnit, rem miram vidit; Herculēs enim rīdēbat et serpentēs mortuās mōnstrābat.

13. clāmōr, -ōris, *m.* [clāmō], shout, shouting, noise.

14. maritus, -ī, *m.*, husband.

lūmen, -inis, *n.* [*compare* lūx], light, a light.

accendō, -cendere, -cendī, -cēsum, *tr.* [ad+cendō, burn], kindle, light.

16. mirus, -a, -um, *adj.*, wonderful, strange.

17. mortuus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*p. part.* of morior], dead.

### 3. THE MUSIC LESSON

Herculēs ā puerō corpus suum diligenter exercēbat. Mag-  
nam partem diēi in palaestrā cōnsūmēbat; didicit etiam  
arcum intendere et tēla conjicere. His exercitātiōnibus virēs 20  
ejus cōfirmātae sunt. In mūsicā etiam ā Linō Centaurō  
ērudiebātur. (Centaurī autem equī erant, sed caput hominis  
habēbant.) Huic tamen artī minus diligenter studēbat. Hic

18. ā puerō, *from boyhood*; literally, *from a boy*.

exercēbat: the imperfect of repeated or habitual action.

19. palaestrā: the name given by the Greeks to the place in which instruction and training were given the young in wrestling and boxing.

20. virēs: review the declension of *vīr*s, App. 3, (5).

23. huic artī . . . studēbat, *he devoted himself to this art*; dative with a special verb, App. 51.

18. diligenter, *adv.* [diligēns, industrious], industriously, diligently.

exerceō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, *tr.* [ex+arceō, enclose], train, drill.

19. palaestra, -ae, *f.*, wrestling-place, place of exercise.

cōn-sūmō, -sūmere, -sūmpsī, -sūmp-tum, *tr.*, consume, spend.

discō, -ere, didici, —, *tr.*, learn.

20. in-tendō, -tendere, -tendī, -ten-tum, *tr.*, stretch; bend, aim.

exercitātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [exercitō, train], exercise, training.

21. cōn-firmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.*, strengthen, establish.

mūsica, -ae, *f.*, music.

22. ērudīō, -īre, -īvī, -itum, *tr.* [ē+rudis, rough], educate, instruct.

23. ars, artis, -ium, *f.*, art.

minus, *adv.* [*neut. of minor*], less.

studeō, -ēre, studuī, —, *intr.* [*takes dative*], be devoted, apply oneself, study; favor.

- Linus Herculem olim culpābat, quod parum studiōsus erat.  
 25 Tum puer irātus citharam subitō rapuit et summīs viribus caput magistri infēlicis percussit. Ille ictū prōstrātus est, et paulō post ē vitā excessit, neque quisquam postea id officium suscipere voluit.

26. *Ille*: *he* (i.e., Linus); *ille* is used to refer to some person other than the subject of the sentence immediately preceding.

27. *paulō*: an adverb, but in origin an ablative of degree of difference; with *post*, a little later; literally, later by a little.

*id officium*: i.e., the task of instructing Hercules in music.

24. *culpō*, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.* [culpa], blame, rebuke.

*parum*, *adv.*, too little, insufficiently.  
*studiōsus*, -a, -um, *adj.* [studium], eager, fond, studious.

25. *cithara*, -ae, *f.*, cithara, guitar.  
*summus*, -a, -um, *adj.* [superl. of superus], highest; utmost, greatest; top of, highest part of.

26. *magister*, -trī, *m.*, master, teacher.

*in-fēlix*, *gen.* -fēlicis, *adj.*, unfortunate, unhappy.

*percutiō*, -cutere, -cussi, -cussum, *tr.* [per+quatiō, shake], pierce, strike.

*prō-sternō*, -sternere, -strāvī, -strātum, *tr.*, spread out; overthrow, lay prostrate.

27. *paulō*, *adv.* [abl. of paulum, a little], (by) a little, a little.

*quisquam*, *quicquam*, *indef. pron.*, any one, any thing.

*officiū*, -ī, *n.* [opus+faciō], duty, service.

28. *suscipiō*, -cipere, -cēpi, -ceptum, *tr.*, [sub+capiō], undertake.

#### 4. HERCULES ESCAPES FROM BEING SACRIFICED

- Dē Hercule haec etiam inter alia narrantur. Olim, dum  
 30 iter facit, in finēs Aegyptiōrum vēnit; ibi rēx quīdam, nōmine Būsiris, illō tempore rēgnābat; hic autem, vir crūdēlissimus, hominēs immolāre cōsuēverat. Herculem igitur corripuit et

29. *haec inter alia*, these things among others.

31. *vir*: in apposition with *hic*.

32. *cōsuēverat*, was accustomed; *cōsuēscō* means become accustomed; its perfect tense therefore denotes a present state, has become accustomed, i.e., is accustomed; likewise the past perfect *cōsuēverat* denotes a past state, he had become accustomed, i.e., was accustomed.

31. *crūdēlis*, -e, *adj.*, cruel.

32. *immolō*, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.* [in+mola, meal], sacrifice.

*cōn-suēscō*, -suēscere, -suēvi, -suētum, *intr.*, become accustomed;

*pf.*, be accustomed, be in the habit of.

*corripō*, -ripere, -ripui, -reptum, *tr.* [com+rapīō], seize, take hold of, snatch up.

in vincula conjecit. Tum nūntiōs dīmīsīt et diem sacrificiō ēdixit. Mox ea diēs appetīvit, et omnia ritē parāta sunt. Manūs Herculis catēnīs ferreīs vīnctae sunt, et mola salsa in 35 caput ejus inspersa est. Mōs enim erat apud antīquōs salem et fār capitibus victimārum impōnere. Jam victima ad āram stābat; jam sacerdōs cultrum sūmpserat. Subitō tamen Herculēs magnō cōnātū vincula perrūpit. Tum ictū sacerdotem prōstrāvit, alterō rēgem ipsum occidit. 40

33. sacrificiō, *for the sacrifice*, dative.

37. capitibus: dative with a compound verb, App. 55.

40. alterō: *ictū* is to be supplied.

33. sacrificium, -i, *n.* [*compare sacrificiō*], sacrifice.

34. ritē, *adv.* [*compare ritus*], in a proper manner, fitly, duly.

35. catēna, -ae, *f.*, chain.

ferreus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*ferrum*], of iron.

mola, -ae, *f.*, meal, coarse flour.

salsus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*sāl*], salted.

36. inspergō, -spargere, -persi, -spersum, *tr.* [*in+spargō*, sprinkle], sprinkle over.

antiquus, -a, -um, *adj.*, ancient, of long ago.

sāl, salis, *m.*, salt.

37. fār, farris, *n.*, grain, meal.

victima, -ae, *f.*, victim (*for sacrifici*).  
impōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positum, *tr.* [*in+pōnō*], place upon, impose; put on board.

āra, -ae, *f.*, altar.

38. sacerdōs, -ōtis, *m. and f.* [*sacer*], priest, priestess.

culter, -tri, *m.*, knife.

sūmō, -ere, sūmpsī, sūmptum, *tr.* [*sub+emō*], take, take up.

39. cōnātus, -ūs, *m.* [*cōnor*], attempt.

per-rumpō, -rumpere, -rūpī, -ruptum, *tr.*, burst through, burst asunder.

## 5. EAR-CROPPING

Herculēs, jam adulēscēns, urbem Thēbās incolēbat. Rēx Thēbārum, vir ignāvus, Creōn appellābatur. Minyae, gēns bellicōsissima, Thēbānīs finitimī erant. Lēgātī autem ā Minyīs ad Thēbānōs quotannis veniēbant et centum bovēs postu-

43. Thēbānīs: dative, depending on the adjective *finitimī*.

44. veniēbant: imperfect of repeated action.

43. bellicōsus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*bellum*], warlike, martial.

44. centum, *indecl. num. adj.*, hundred.

- 45 lābant. Thēbānī enim ōlim ā Minyīs superātī erant; tribūta igitur rēgī Minyārum quotannis pendēbant. At Herculēs civēs suōs hōc stipendiō liberāre cōstituit. Lēgātōs igitur comprehendit, atque aurēs eōrum abscidit. Lēgātī autem apud omnēs gentēs sacri habentur.

47. civēs suōs, *his fellow citizens*. stipendiō: ablative of separation, App. 64.

49. habentur, *are considered*. Ill treatment of envoys was assigned as the reason for several wars in antiquity.

In section 5 account for the gender, number, and case of *sacri*, 49.

45. tribūtum, -i, *n.* [*p. part. of* tribuō, assign], tribute, payment.

47. liberō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.* [liber], set free, free, liberate, release.

46. pendō, -ere, pependi, pēsum, *tr.*, weigh, pay out, pay.

## 6. DEFEAT OF THE MINYAE

- 50 Ergīnus, rēx Minyārum, ob haec vehementer irātus erat, et cum omnibus cōpiīs in finēs Thēbānōrum contendit. Creōn adventum ejus per explōrātōrēs cognōvit; ipse tamen pugnāre nōluit; nam magnō timōre affectus est; Thēbānī igitur Herculem imperātōrem creāvērunt. Ille nūtiōs in omnēs partēs  
55 dimisit et cōpiās coēgit. Tum proximō diē cum magnō exercitū profectus est. Locum idōneum dēlēgit et aciem instrūxit. Tum Thēbānī ē superiōre locō impetum in hostēs

53. magnō timōre: see note on Per., 100.

50. vehementer, *adv.* [vehemēns, vehement, violent], violently; very much, greatly.

52. explōrātōr, -ōris, *m.* [explōrō], scout.

53. nōlō, nōlle, nōlui, *tr. and intr.* [nē+volō], be unwilling, not to wish.

55. cōgō, cōgere, cōgēi, cōactum, *tr.* [com-+agō], drive together, bring together, collect; compel, force.

56. proficiscor, proficisci, profectus sum, *intr.*, set out, start, depart.

57. superior, -ius, *adj.* [comp. of superus], higher; previous, preceding; superior.

fēcērunt. Illi autem impetum sustinēre nōn potuērunt, itaque aciēs hostium pulsa est atque in fugam conversa.

**59. conversa:** supply *est*, which, like the other forms of *sum*, is sometimes omitted in the perfect passive.

In section 6 account for the case of *timōre*, *Herculem*, 53; of *imperātōrem*, 54; of *diē*, 55.

**58. sustineō, -tinēre, -tinui, -tentum, tr.** [sub + teneō], hold up, sustain, withstand.

**59. pellō, -ere, pepuli, pulsum, tr.,** beat; drive out, drive away, rout.  
**con-vertō, -vertere, -verti, -versum, tr.,** turn around, turn.

## 7. MADNESS AND MURDER

Post hoc proelium Herculēs cōpiās suās ad urbem redūxit. 60  
Omnēs Thēbānī propter victōriam maximē gaudēbant. Creōn  
autem magnīs honōribus Herculem decorāvit, atque filiam  
suam ei in mātirimōnium dedit. Herculēs cum uxōre suā  
vitam beātam agēbat; sed post paucōs annōs subitō in furō-  
rem incidit, atque liberōs suōs ipse suā manū occidit. Post 65  
breve tempus ad sānitātem reductus est, et propter hoc  
facinus magnō dolōre affectus est; mox ex urbe effūgit et in  
silvās sē recēpit. Nōlēbant enim cīvēs sermōnem cum eō  
habēre.

**61. gaudēbant:** what are the principal parts of this verb? What kind of verb is it?

**64. in furōrem incidit, became insane;** how literally?

**65. ipse suā, his own;** but the two Latin words are more emphatic than the English translation.

**68. sē recēpit, betook himself, withdrew;** compare *sē contulit*, Per. 93.

**60. re-dūcō, -dūcere, -dūxi, -ducum, tr.,** lead back.

**61. maximē, superl. adv. [maximus],** in the highest degree, most, especially, exceedingly.

**62. decorō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr.** [decus, decoration], adorn, honor.

**64. furor, -ōris, m. [furō, to rage],** madness, fury.

**65. incidō, -cidere, -cidī, —, intr.** [in + cadō], fall in, fall into.

**66. sānitās, -ātis, f. [sānus],** health, sanity.

**67. facinus, facinoris, n.,** deed; crime.

**effugiō, -fugere, -fūgi, —, intr.** [ex + fugiō], escape.

**68. sermō, -ōnis, m. [serō, entwine],** talk, conversation.

## 8. HERCULES CONSULTS THE ORACLE

70 *Herculēs magnopere cupiēbat tantum scelus expiāre. Cōn-*  
*stituit igitur ad ōrāculum Delphicum ire; hoc enim ōrāculum*  
*erat omnium celeberrimum. Ibi templum erat Apollinis,*  
*plūrimis dōnis ōrnātum. Hōc in templō sedēbat fēmina quae-*  
*dam, nōmine Pŷthia, et cōnsilium dabat iis quī ad ōrāculum*  
 75 *veniēbant. Haec autem fēmina ab ipsō Apolline docēbātur,*  
*et voluntātem deī hominibus ēnūtiābat. Herculēs igitur,*  
*quī Apollinem praecipuē colēbat, hūc vēnit. Tum rem tōtam*  
*exposuit, neque scelus cēlāvit.*

72. *omnium*: supply *ōrāculōrum*.

73. *dōnis*: presented by states and individuals.

*Hōc in templō*: a monosyllabic preposition may stand between a noun and a modifier.

In section 8, account for the case of *omnium*, 72; of *nōmine*, 74.

70. *scelus, sceleris, n.*, wickedness, crime.

*ex-piō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr.* [piō, appease], atone for, appease.

72. *celeber, -bris, -bre, adj.*, thronged; renowned, famous.

73. *plūrimus, -a, -um, adj.* [*superl. of multus*], most, very much, very many.

*ōrnō, -āre; -āvi, -ātum, tr.*, fit out,

furnish, equip; adorn.

*sedeō, -ēre, sēdī, sessum, intr., sit.* 75. *doceō, -ēre, -uī, doctum, tr.*, teach; show, explain.

76. *ē-nūtiō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr.*, assert; proclaim, reveal.

77. *praecipuē, adv.* [*praecipuus, especial*], especially.

*colō, -ere, coluī, cultum, tr.*, cultivate, till.

## 9. THE ORACLE'S REPLY

Ubi *Herculēs finem fēcit, Pŷthia diū tacēbat. Tandem*  
 30 *tamen jussit eum ad urbem Tīrynta ire, et Eurystheī rēgis*  
*omnia imperāta facere. Herculēs, ubi haec audivit, ad urbem*  
*illam contendit, et Eurystheō rēgi sē in servitūtem trādīdit.*

80. *Tīrynta*: a word of Greek origin, retaining its Greek accusative form. Proper names must always be translated by the nominative.

82. *in servitūtem, in slavery.*

79. *taceō, -ēre, tacuī, tacitum, intr. and tr.*, be silent, be silent about.

82. *servitūs, -ūtis, f.* [*servus*], servitude, slavery.

Duodecim annōs in servitūte Eurysthei tenēbātur, et duodecim labōrēs, quōs ille imperāverat, cōnfēcit. Hōc enim unō modō tantum scelus expiārī potuit. Dē his labōribus plūrima 85 ā poētis scripta sunt. Multa tamen quae poētae narrant vix crēdibilia sunt.

---

**85. plūrima**, a great many things, an adjective used substantively.

In section 9 account for the case of *eum*, 80; of *rēgī*, 82.

---

**83. duodecim**, indecl. num. adj. [duo+decem], twelve.

*intr.* [in+parō], command; control.

**84. labor**, -ōris, *m.*, labor, toil. imperō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* and

**87. crēdibilis**, -e, *adj.* [crēdō], credible.

## 10. FIRST LABOR — SLAYING THE NEMEAN LION

Primum ab Eurystheō jussus est Herculēs leōnem occidere, quī illō tempore vallem Nemaeam reddēbat infestam. In silvās igitur quās leō incolēbat statim sē contulit. Mox 90 feram vidit, et arcum quem sēcum attulerat intendit; ejus tamen pellem, quae dēnsissima erat, trājicere nōn potuit. Tum clāvā magnā, quam semper gerēbat, leōnem percussit. Frūstrā tamen, neque enim hōc modō eum occidere potuit. Tum dēmum collum mōnstrī brachiīs suis complexus est, et faucēs 95 ejus summīs vīribus compressit. Hōc modō leō brevī tem-

---

**91. sēcum**: the preposition *cum* regularly follows, and is attached to, a personal, a reflexive, or a relative pronoun.

---

**88. leō**, -ōnis, *m.*, lion.

**89. infestus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, unsafe, hostile.

**91. fera**, -ae, *f.*, wild beast, wild animal.

**afferō**, afferre, attulī, allātum, *tr.* [ad+ferō], bring to, bring.

**92. pellis**, pellis, -ium, *f.*, skin, hide, pelt.

**dēnsus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, close, thick.

**trājiciō**, -jicere, -jēcī, -jectum, *tr.* and *intr.* [trāns+jaciō], hurl across; pierce.

**93. clāva**, -ae, *f.*, staff, club.

**95. dēmum**, *adv.*, at last, at length.

**bracchium**, -ī, *n.*, the fore-arm, arm.

**com-plector**, -plectī, -plexus sum, *tr.* [plector, embrace], clasp, embrace.

**faucēs**, -ium, *f. pl.*, throat.

pore exanimātus est; nūlla enim respīrandi facultās ei dabātur. Tum Herculēs cadāver ad oppidum in umeris rettulit et pellem quam detrāxerat postea prō veste gerēbat. Omnēs  
 100 autem quī eam regiōnem incolēbant, ubi fāmam dē morte leōnis accēpērunt, vehementer gaudēbant, et Herculem magnō in honōre habēbant.

---

97. respīrandi facultās, *chance of breathing, chance to breathe; respīrandi* is a gerund.

99. prō veste, *as a garment.*

97. re-spirō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *intr.*, breathe out; breathe.

facultās, -ātis, *f.* [facilis], means, opportunity, chance.

98. cadāver, -eris, *n.*, a dead body; corpse.

umerus, -ī, *m.*, upper arm, shoulder.

99. dē-trahō, -trahere, -trāxī, -trac-tum, *tr.*, draw off, strip off.

vestis, -is, *f.*, garment, clothing.

100. fāma, -ae, *f.*, report, rumor, talk.

---

## 11. SECOND LABOR — SLAYING THE LERNAEAN HYDRA

Post haec jussus est ab Eurystheō Hydram necāre. Hoc autem mōnstrum erat quod novem capita habēbat. [Her-  
 105 culēs igitur cum amīcō Iolāo profectus est ad palūdem Lernaean, quam Hydra incolēbat. Mox mōnstrum invēnit et, quamquam rēs erat magnī periculī, collum ejus laevā prehendit. Tum dextrā capita novem abscidere coepit. Quotiēns tamen hoc fēcerat, nova capita exoriēbantur. Diū frūstrā  
 110 labōrāvit; tandem hōc cōnātū dēstitit; cōstituit deinde ar-

---

103. Hoc: although the reference is to *Hydram*, a feminine noun, the demonstrative, in accordance with Latin usage, takes its gender from the predicate noun *mōnstrum*.

109. exoriēbantur, *grew out*; imperfect of repeated action.

110. cōnātū: ablative of separation.

---

105. palūs, -ūdis, *f.*, swamp, marsh.

107. laeva, -ae, *f.* [laevus, on the left side], the left hand.

108. quotiēns, *adv.* [quot, how many], *interrog.*, how often? *relative*, as

often as.

109. ex-orior, -orīrī, -ortus sum, *intr.*, come forth, arise, appear.

110. dē-sistō, -sistere, -stitī, -stitum, *intr.*, leave off, desist from.



borēs succidere et ignem accendere. Hoc celeriter fēcit, et, postquam ligna ignem comprehendērunt, face ardente colla adussit, unde capita exoriēbantur. Nec tamen sine magnō labōre haec fēcit. Auxilium enim Hydrae tulit cancer ingēns, quī, dum Herculēs capita abscidit, crūra ejus mordēbat. 115 Postquam mōnstrum tālī modō interfēcit, sagittās suās sanguine ejus imbuīt, itaque mortiferās reddidit.

112. comprehendērunt, *caught*.

113. unde, *from which*, = *ex quibus*.

In section 11 account for the gender of *hoc*, 103; for the case of *mortiferās*, 117.

111. succidō, -cidere, -cidi, -cisum, *tr.* [sub + caedō], cut down, fell.

112. lignum, -ī, *n.*, wood, firewood.

fax, facis, *f.*, torch, firebrand.

ārdēns, *gen. ardentis, adj.* [*pr. part. of ardeō*], glowing, fiery.

113. ad-ūrō, -ūrere, -ussī, -ustum, *tr.*, burn, sear.

unde, *adv.*, from which place, whence.

114. cancer, -crī, *m.*, a crab.

115. crūs, crūris, *n.*, leg.

mordeō, -ēre, momordī, morsum, *tr.*, bite.

117. imbuō, -ere, -uī, -ūtum, *tr.*, soak, steep.

mortifer, -era, -erum, *adj.* [*mors + ferō*], death-dealing, deadly.

## 12. THIRD LABOR — CAPTURE OF THE CERYNIAN STAG

Postquam Eurystheō caedēs Hydrae nūntiāta est, magnus timor animum ejus occupāvit. Jussit igitur Herculem cervum quendam ad sē referre; nōluit enim virum tantae audāciae in 120 urbe retinēre. Hic autem cervus, cujus cornua aurea fuisse trāduntur, incredibīlī fuit celeritāte. Herculēs igitur primum

120. tantae audāciae: genitive of description, App. 44.

121. fuisse trāduntur, *are said to have been*.

122. celeritāte: ablative of description; either the ablative or the genitive in this use may stand in the predicate.

119. cervus, -ī, *m.*, stag.

120. audācia, -ae, *f.* [audāx], boldness.

121. cornū, -ūs, *n.*, horn; wing (of

*an army*).

aureus, -a, -um, *adj.* [aurum], of gold, golden.

122. in-crēdibilis, -e, *adj.*, incredible.

vestigia ejus in silvis animadvertit. Deinde, ubi cervum ipsum vidit, summis viribus currere coepit. Usque ad vesperum cucurrit, neque nocturnum tempus sibi ad quietem reliquit. Frūstrā tamen, nullō enim modō praedam cōsequi poterat. Tandem, postquam tōtum annum cucurrerat (ita trāditur), cervum cursū exanimātum cēpit et vīvum ad Eurystheum rettulit.

125. sibi: dative after *reliquit*, but may be omitted in translation. *ad, for.*

127. *cucurrerat*: with *postquam* and *ubi* the perfect is the tense most frequently used, as has been stated before. The past perfect is here employed because its clause denotes a situation.

*ita trāditur, so the story goes.*

In section 13 account for the case of *Eurystheō*, 118; of *Herculem*, 119; of *annum*, 127; of *cursū*, 128.

123. *vestigium*, -ī, *n.*, footstep, track.

*animadvertō*, -vertere, -verti, -ver-sum, *tr.* [animus + advertō], direct the mind to, observe, notice; punish.

124. *usque*, *adv.*, all the way, even, all the time, until.

*vesper*, -eri, *m.*, evening.

125. *nocturnus*, -a, -um, *adj.* [nox], nightly, at night, night (*as adjective*).

126. *cōn-sequor*, -sequi, -secūtus sum, *tr.*, follow up; overtake; gain.

128. *cursus*, -ūs, *m.*, chariot.

*vivus*, -a, -um, *adj.* [vivō], living, alive.

### 13. FOURTH LABOR — THE ERYMANTHIAN BOAR

130 Post haec jussus est Herculēs aprum quendam capere, qui illō tempore agrōs Erymanthiōs vāstābat et incolās hujus regiōnis magnopere terrēbat. Herculēs rem suscēpit et in Arcadiam profectus est. Postquam in silvam paulum prō-

132. *rem, task*; *rēs* is to be rendered freely according to the context.

130. *aper*, *apri*, *m.*, a wild boar.

131. *incola*, -ae, *m. and f.* [incolō], inhabitant, resident.

133. *paulum*, *adv.* [acc. of *paulum*,

a little], somewhat.

*prōgredior*, -gredi, -gressus sum, *intr.* [prō+gradior, step], go on, advance, proceed.

gressus est, aprō occurrit. Ille autem, simul atque Herculem vidit, statim refūgit et, timōre perterritus, in altam fossam 135 sē prōjēcit. Herculēs igitur laqueum quem attulerat injēcit, et summā cum difficultāte aprum ē fossā extrāxit. Ille, etsi multum relūctābatur, nūllō modō sē liberāre potuit, et ab Hercule ad Eurystheum vīvus relātus est.

---

134. aprō: dative with *occurrit*, which is a compound of *ob* and *currō*.

In section 13, is the preposition *cum*, 137, necessary to the expression of manner? Account for the case of *vīvus*, 139.

---

134. occurro, -currere, -curri, -cursum, *intr.* [ob+currō], run to meet, meet.

135. per-terreo, -terrere, -terrui, -territum, *tr.*, frighten thoroughly, terrify.

136. prōjiciō, -jicere, -jēci, -jectum, *tr.* [prō+jaciō], hurl forward, hurl down.

laqueus, -i, *m.*, noose.

137. difficultās, -ātis, *f.* [difficilis], difficulty.

etsi, *conj.*, though, although, even if.

138. multum, *adv.* [*acc. of multum*], much, greatly.

relūctor, -ārī, -ātus sum, *intr.*, struggle against, resist.

---

#### 14. HERCULES AT THE CENTAUR'S CAVE

Dē quārtō labōre, quem suprà nārrāvimus, haec etiam 140 trāduntur. Herculēs, dum iter in Arcadiam facit, ad eam regiōnem vēnit quam Centaurī incolēbant. Mox, quod nox jam appetēbat, ad antrum dēvertit, in quō Centaurus quīdam, nōmine Pholus, habitābat.

Ille Herculem benignē excēpit et cēnam parāvit. At Her- 145 culēs, postquam cēnāvit, vīnum ā Pholō postulāvit. Erat

---

140. nārrāvimus: the plural as used by the author to refer to himself was formerly common in English also, especially in newspaper editorials.

143. jam, now, or by this time; nunc means now (absolutely), at the present time.

---

140. suprà, *adv.* [superus], above, before.

143. antrum, -i, *n.*, cave.

dē-vertō, -vertere, -verti, —, *intr.*,

turn away, turn aside.

145. cēna, -ae, *f.*, dinner.

146. cēnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *intr. and tr.* [cēna], dine, dine upon.

autem in antrō magna amphora, vīnō optimō replēta, quam Centaurī ibi dēposuerant. Pholus hoc vīnum dare nōlēbat, quod reliquōs Centaurōs timēbat; nūllum tamen vīnum prae-  
 150 ter hoc in antrō habēbat. "Hoc vīnum," inquit, "mihi commissum est. Sī igitur hoc dabō, Centaurī mē interficient." Herculēs tamen eum irrīsīt, et ipse cyathum vīnī ex amphorā hausit.

---

150. *inquit*: this verb is regularly used in the present tense with direct quotations and stands after one or more words of a quotation; it corresponds to the English "said I." It is defective, that is, it lacks some forms of person, tense, and mood.

---

147. *amphora*, -ae, *f.*, jar, flagon.  
*optimus*, -a, -um, *adj.* [*superl. of bonus*], best.

*re-pleō*, -plēre, -plēvi, -plētum, *tr.*, fill again, refill.

149. *praeter*, *prep. with acc.* [*compare prae*, before], except; past, beyond; in addition to; contrary to.

150. *inquam*, *inquis*, *inquit*, *intr. defect.*, say, employed in direct quotations.

152. *irrideō*, -ridēre, -risī, -risum, *intr.* [*in+rideō*], laugh at, jeer, mock.

*cyathus*, -i, *m.*, cup.

153. *hauriō*, -ire, *hausī*, *haustum*, *tr.*, draw, drain; swallow.

---

## 15. THE FIGHT WITH THE CENTAURS

Simul atque amphora aperta est, odor jūcundissimus un-  
 155 dique diffūsus est; vīnum enim suāviissimum erat. Centaurī nōtum odōrem sēnsērunt, et omnēs ad locum convēnērunt.

Ubi ad antrum pervēnērunt, magnopere irātī erant, quod Herculem bibentem vidērunt. Tum arma rapuērunt, et Pholum interficere volēbant. Herculēs tamen in aditū antri

---

154. *odor*, -ōris, *m.*, smell, odor.  
*jūcundus*, -a, -um, *adj.*, pleasant, agreeable.

155. *diffundō*, -fundere, -fūdi, -fūsum, *tr.* [*dis+fundō*], pour out, spread, diffuse.

*suāvis*, -e, *adj.*, sweet, agreeable, pleasant.

156. *nōtus*, -a, -um, *adj.* [*p. part. of nōscō*, learn, know], known, familiar.

158. *bibō*, *bibere*, *bibī*, —, *tr. and intr.*, drink.

159. *aditus*, -ūs, *m.* [*adeō*, -īre], entrance, means of approach, access.

cōstitit, et impetum eōrum fortissimē sustinēbat. Facēs 160  
 ārdentēs in eōs conjecit; multōs etiam sagittis suis vulnerāvit.  
 Hae autem sagittae eadem erant quae sanguine Hydrae ōlim  
 imbūtae erant. Omnēs igitur quōs ille sagittis vulnerāverat  
 venēnō statim absūpti sunt; reliquī autem, ubi hoc  
 vidērunt, terga vertērunt et fugā salūtem petiērunt. 165

161. *in, at*, the usual meaning of *in* with words meaning *to throw*.

165. *fugā, in flight*; the ablative denotes means, however.

160. *cōn-sistō, -sistere, -stiti, —, ab-sūmō, -sūmere, -sūmpsi, -sūmp-*  
*intr.*, take one's stand, halt, make *tum, tr.*, consume, destroy.  
 a stand.

164. *venēnum, -i, n.*, drug, poison. 165. *tergum, -i, n.*, back.

## 16. THE FATE OF PHOLUS

Postquam reliquī fūgērunt, Pholus ex antrō ēgressus est, et  
 corpora spectābat eōrum quī sagittis interfecti erant. Mag-  
 nopere autem mirātus est, quod tam levī vulnere exanimāti  
 erant, et causam ejus rei quaerēbat. Adiit igitur locum ubi  
 cadāver cujusdam Centauri jacēbat et sagittam ē vulnere 170  
 trāxit. Haec tamen, sive cāsū sive cōnsiliō deōrum, ē mani-  
 bus ejus lāpsa est et pedem leviter vulnerāvit. Ille extemplō  
 dolōrem gravem per omnia membra sēnsit, et post breve  
 tempus vī venēni exanimātus est. Mox Herculēs, quī re-  
 liquōs Centaurōs secūtus erat, ad antrum rediit, et magnō 175  
 cum dolōre Pholum mortuum vīdit. Multis cum lacrimis

171, *sive . . . deōrum, either by chance or by design of the gods.*

In section 16 point out two ablatives of manner; a deponent verb.

167. *spectō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr.*  
*[freq. of speciō, look]*, observe,  
 watch, look at, look to.

168. *mīror, -ārī, -ātus sum, tr. and*  
*intr.* [*mīrus*], be astonished;  
 wonder at.

*levis, -e, adj.*, light, slight, trifling.

170. *jaceō, -ēre, jacui, —, intr.*, lie,  
 be prostrate.

171. *trahō, -ere, trāxi, tractum, tr.*,  
 draw, drag.

172. *lābor, lābi, lāpsus sum, intr.*,  
 glide, slip, fall.

*leviter, adv.* [*levis*], lightly, slightly.  
*extemplō, adv.*, immediately, forth-  
 with, without delay.

173. *membrum, -i, n.*, limb, mem-  
 ber.

corpus amīcī ad sepultūram dedit; tum, postquam alterum cyathum vīnī hausit, somnō sē dedit.

177. sepultūra, -ae, *f.* [sepeliō], burial.

### 17. FIFTH LABOR — CLEANSING THE AUGEAN STABLES

Deinde Eurystheus Herculi hunc labōrem graviōrem im-  
 180 posuit. Augēas quidam, quī illō tempore rēgnum in Ēlide  
 obtinēbat, tria mīlia boum habēbat. Hī in stabulō ingentis  
 magnitudinis inclūdēbantur. Stabulum autem illuviē ac  
 squālōre obsitum erat; neque enim ad hoc tempus umquam  
 pūrgātum erat. Hoc iussus est Herculēs intrā spatium ūnius  
 185 diēi pūrgāre. Ille, etsī rēs erat multae operae, negōtium sus-  
 cēpit. Primum, magnō labōre fossam duodēvigintī pedum  
 fecit, per quam flūminis aquam dē montibus ad mūrū  
 stabuli perdūxit. Tum, postquam mūrū perrūpit, aquam

179. Herculi, *upon Hercules.*

181. tria mīlia boum, *three thousand cattle*; it must be kept in mind that the singular *mīlle* is an adjective, the plural *mīlia* a noun, used with a genitive of the whole. *Boum* is the genitive plural of *bōs*, App. 3, (5).

183. neque umquam, *never.*

185. erat multae operae, *was one of great labor*; a genitive of description standing in the predicate, like the ablative of description in l. 122.

186. duodēvigintī pedum: the genitive of description with numerals is regularly employed to express measure. The reference is to width.

In section 17 account for the case of *magnitudinis*, 182. What case is governed by *intrā*? By *contrā*?

181. obtineō, -tinēre, -tinui, -ten-  
 tum, *tr.* [ob+teneō], hold, possess.  
 stabulum, -i, *n.*, stable, stall.

182. magnitūdō, -inis, *f.* [magnus],  
 size, magnitude.

illuviēs, —, *abl.* -ē, *f.*, overflow;  
 dirt, filth.

183. squālor, -ōris, *m.*, squalor, filth.  
 ob-serō, -serere, -sēvi, -situm, *tr.*,  
 plant; cover, fill.  
 umquam, *adv.*, ever.

184. pūrgō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.*  
 [pūrus+agō], clean, cleanse; ex-  
 cuse; pūrgātus, -a, -um, *p. part.*  
*as adj.*, free from blame.

spatium, -i, *n.*, space, distance, in-  
 terval.

185. opera, -ae, *f.* [opus], effort,  
 labor, toil.

negōtium, -i, *n.* [nec+ōtium], busi-  
 ness, matter; affair, task; diffi-  
 culty, trouble.

186. duodēvigintī, *indecl. num. adj.*,  
 twenty.

in stabulum immisit et tāli modō, contrā opiniōnem omnium, opus cōnfēcīt.

190

189. *immittō, -mittere, -misi, -mis-sum, tr. [in+mittō], send in, let in.*      *opiniō, -ōnis, f. [opinor, suppose], opinion; expectation.*

### 18. SIXTH LABOR — THE BIRDS OF STYMPHALUS

Post paucōs diēs Herculēs ad oppidum Stymphālum iter fēcīt; iusserat enim eum Eurystheus avēs Stymphālīdēs necāre. Hae avēs rōstra aēnea habēbant, et carne hominum vēscēbantur. Ille, postquam ad locum pervēnit, lacum vīdit; in hōc autem lacū, quī nōn procul erat ab oppidō, avēs habi- 195  
tābant. Nulla tamen dabātur appropinquandī facultās. Lacus enim nōn ex aquā sed ē limō cōnstitit; Herculēs igitur neque pedibus neque lintre prōgredi potuit.

Tandem postquam magnam partem diēi frūstrā cōnsūmpsīt, hōc cōnātū dēstitit et ad Vulcānum sē contulit auxilium- 200  
que ab eō petiit. Vulcānus, quī ā fabris maximē colēbātur, crepundia, quae ipse ex aere fabricātus erat, Herculi dedit. Hīs Herculēs dirum crepitum fēcīt, et avēs perterritae

193. *carne*: ablative governed by *vēscēbantur*. Name the deponent verbs that govern the ablative.

197. *cōnstitit*: from *cōnstō*.

198. *pedibus, on foot*; ablative of means, here suggesting in addition the idea of manner.

In section 18 account for the case of *Stymphālum*, 191; of *lintre*, 198; of *cōnātū*, 200; of *fabris*, 201.

193. *rōstrum, -ī, n. [rōdō, gnaw], beak; pl., rōstra, -ōrum, the Rostra, a platform for speakers in the Forum, adorned with beaks of captured ships.*

*aēneus, -a, -um, adj. [aes], of copper, of bronze.*

*carō, carnis, f., flesh.*

194. *vēscor, -ī, —, —, intr., (takes ablative) feed upon.*

197. *limus, -ī, m., mud, mire.*

*cōn-stō, -stāre, -stiti, -stāturus, intr.,*

*stand together; consist; impers., cōn-stat, it is known, it is certain.*

198. *linter, -tris, f., boat, skiff.*

201. *faber, -bri, m., workman, smith.*

202. *crepundia, -ōrum, n., pl. [crepō, to rattle], a child's rattle, a rattle.*

*fabricor, -āri, -ātus sum, tr. [faber], make, construct, build.*

203. *dirus, -a, -um, adj., dreadful, dire.*

*crepitus, -ūs, m. [crepō, to rattle], clattering, noise.*

205 āvolāvērunt; ille autem, dum āvolant, magnum numerum eōrum sagittīs trānsfixit.

204. ā-volō, -āre, -āvi, -ātūrus, *intr.*, fly away.

205. trāns-figō, -figere, -fixi, -fixum, *tr.*, pierce, transfix.

### 19. SEVENTH LABOR — THE CRETAN BULL

Tum jussit Herculem Eurystheus taurum quendam ferōcissimum ex Insulā Crētā vīvum referre. Ille igitur nāvem cōnscendit et, cum primum ventus idōneus fuit, solvit. Ubi tamen Insulae jam appropinquābat, magna tempestās subitō  
210 cōrta est nāvisque cursum tenēre nōn poterat. Nautae paene omnem spem salūtis dēposuērunt; tantus timor animōs eōrum occupāverat. Herculēs, tamen, etsi nāvigandī imperitus erat, haudquāquam territus est.

Post breve tempus summa tranquillitās cōsecūta est, et  
215 nautae, quī sē ex timōre jam recēperant, nāvem incolumem ad terram perdūxērunt. Herculēs ē nāvi ēgressus est, et, ubi

206. ferōcissimum, *very savage*. The translation of the superlative by *very* is frequently necessary.

208. cum primum, *as soon as*. With this phrase, as with *ubi*, *postquam*, *simul atque*, the perfect indicative is most frequently employed, as explained in the note on Perseus, 12.

solvit, *set sail*. *Solvō* is used in this sense either with or without *nāvem*.

Ubi . . . jam appropinquābat: the imperfect, like the past perfect, is employed with *postquam* and *ubi* in clauses denoting situation; compare l. 127.

209. insulae: dative with *appropinquābat*.

212. nāvigandī imperitus, *ignorant of, unskilled in, navigation*. The genitive of the gerund here depends upon an adjective; in l. 196 it was used with a noun, *facultās*.

215. sē recēperant, *had recovered*.

206. taurus, -i, *m.*, bull.

208. cōnscendō, -scendere, -scendi, -scēsum, *tr.* [*com-* + *scandō*, climb], climb; go aboard, embark on.

210. co-ōrior, -ōriri, -ōrtus sum, *intr.*, come forth, arise.

212. nāvigō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *intr.*

[*nāvis* + *agō*], sail, navigate.

213. imperitus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*in-* + *peritus*], inexperienced, unskilled.

214. tranquillitās, -ātis, *f.* [*tranquillus*], stillness; a calm (*at sea*).

215. incolumis, -e, *adj.*, unharmed, safe.



ad rēgem Crētae vēnit, causam veniendī docuit. Deinde, postquam omnia parāta sunt, ad eam regiōnem contendit quam taurus vāstābat. Mox taurum vidit, et, quamquam rēs erat magnī periculī, cornua ejus prehendit. Tum ingentī 220 labōre mōnstrum ad nāvem trāxit et cum praedā in Graeciam rediit.

## 20. EIGHTH LABOR — CAPTURE OF THE HORSES OF DIOMEDE

Postquam ex Insulā Crētā rediit, Herculēs ab Eurystheō in Thrāciam missus est et equōs Diomēdis reducere jussus. Hī equī carne hominum vāscēbantur; Diomēdēs autem, vir crū- 225 dēlissimus, iīs prōjiciēbat peregrīnōs omnēs quī in eam regiōnem vēnerant. Herculēs igitur magnā celeritāte in Thrāciam contendit et hōs equōs ab Diomēde postulāvit. Quod tamen ille hōs trādere nōlēbat, Herculēs, irā commōtus, rēgem interfēcit et cadāver ejus equīs prōjici jussit. 230

Ita mīra rērum commūtātiō facta est; is enim quī antea multōs cum cruciātū necāverat ipse eōdem suppliciō necātus est. Ubi haec nūntiāta sunt, omnēs quī eam regiōnem incolēbant maximā laetitīā affectī sunt, et Herculi meritam grātiā referēbant. Nōn modo maximīs honōribus et prae- 235 miis eum decorāvērunt, sed rēgnum etiam ei obtulērunt. Ille tamen rēgnum accipere nōlēbat et, postquam ad mare rediit, nāvem occupāvit. Ubi omnia ad nāvigandum parāta

225. *carne*: why ablative?

234. *meritam grātiā referēbant*: for the translation consult the note on Per. 86.

238. *ad nāvigandum*, for *sailing*; one of the commonest uses of the gerund is the accusative with *ad* in expressions of purpose.

226. *peregrinus*, -a, -um, *adj.* [per + ager], strange, foreign; *subst.*, *peregrinus*, -i, *m.*, a foreigner.

231. *commūtātiō*, -ōnis, *f.* [com + mūtō], change.

232. *cruciātus*, -ūs, *m.* [cruciō, to torture], torture.

234. *laetitia*, -ae, *f.*, [laetus], joy, happiness.

235. *modo*, *adv.* [abl. of *modus*], only, merely, a little while ago; recently.

236. *offerō*, -ferre, *obtulī*, *oblātum*, *tr.* [ob + ferō], bring before, offer.

sunt, equōs in nāvem collocāvit; deinde idōneam tempestā-  
 240 tem nactus sine morā ē portū solvit et paulō post equōs in  
 litus Argolicum exposuit.

**239. tempestātem, weather;** with what meaning has the word been used previously?

**240. nactus:** the past participle of a deponent verb is usually active in meaning. It therefore agrees with the subject when denoting an act of the subject; an act attributed to the subject, if expressed by the past participle of a non-deponent verb, requires the ablative absolute construction.

**paulō post:** see note on l. 27.

In section 20, would it be proper to use *cum* with *magnā celeritāte*, 227? Would it be proper to omit *cum* in the phrase *cum cruciātū*, 232?

**240. nancīscor, -ī, nactus sum, tr.,** get, obtain; meet with, find.

## 21. NINTH LABOR — THE GIRDLE OF HIPPOLYTE

Gēns Amāzonum dicitur omnīnō ex mulieribus cōstitisse.  
 Hae summam scientiam rei militāris habēbant, et maximam  
 virtutem praebēbant; nam etiam cum viris proelium com-  
 245 mittere audēbant. Hippolytē, Amāzonum rēgīna, balteum  
 habuit celeberrimum, quem Mars ei dederat. Admēta autem,  
 Eurysthei filia, fāmam dē hōc balteō accēperat, et eum pos-  
 sidēre vehementer cupiēbat. Eurystheus igitur Herculem  
 jussit cōpiās cōgere et bellum Amāzonibus inferre. Ille  
 250 nūntiōs in omnēs partēs dimisit et, postquam magna multi-  
 tūdō convēnit, eōs dēlēgit quī maximum ūsum in rē militārī  
 habēbant.

**242. cōstitisse:** from *cōnstō*.

**243. rei militāris, military science, art of war.**

**244. proelium committere, to engage in battle.**

**249. bellum Amāzonibus inferre, to make war on the Amazons.**

**242. mulier, -eris, f.,** woman.

**243. scientia, -ae, f.** [sciēns, know-  
 ing], knowledge, expertness, skill.  
**militāris, -e, adj.** [mīles], military.

**244. praebēō, -ēre, praebui, prae-  
 bitum, tr.** [prae, before + habēō],  
 hold forth, offer; furnish, supply;

exhibit, show.

**245. balteus, -ī, m.,** girdle, belt.

**247. possideō, -sidēre, -sēdi, -ses-  
 sum, tr.** [por for prō + sedeō], pos-  
 sess, have.

**251. ūsus, -ūs, m.** [ūtor], use; prac-  
 tice, experience.

## 22. THE GIRDLE REFUSED

His viris Herculēs causam itineris exposuit; illi auctōritāte ejus adductī iter cum eō facere cōstituērunt. Tum cum iis quibus persuāserat nāvem cōnscendit et, ventum idōneum 255 nactus, post paucōs diēs ad ōstium flūminis Thermōdontis appulit. Postquam in finēs Amāzonum vēnit, nūntium ad Hippolytam misit, quī causam veniendī docuit et balteum poposcit. Ipsa Hippolytē balteum trādere volēbat, quod dē Herculis virtūte fāmam accēperat; quod tamen reliquae 260 Amāzonēs nōlēbant, negāvit. At Herculēs, ubi haec nūntiāta sunt, bellī fortūnam temptāre cōstituit.

Proximō igitur diē cōpiās ēdūxit. Tum locum idōneum dēlēgit et hostēs ad pugnam ēvocāvit. Amāzonēs quoque cōpiās suās ex castris ēdūxērunt et nōn magnō intervāllō 265 aciem instrūxērunt.

253. His viris: dative of indirect object.

auctōritāte: ablative of cause.

255. quibus: dative with *persuāserat*, App. 51.

256. post paucōs diēs: in this phrase *post* is employed as a preposition. It has also been employed as an adverb in phrases of the same or similar meaning, with ablative of degree of difference; e.g., *paucis post diebus*.

ad ōstium Thermōdontis: the Thermodon was a river in Pontus, a country on the southern coast of the Black Sea. The Amazons were also represented as dwelling to the north on the river Don.

259. volēbat, *was willing*.

261. nōlēbant: the words *balteum trādere* are to be understood.

negāvit: this is the common word for *say that not* accompanied by indirect discourse. It is often used also, as here, *with* the meaning *refuse*.

haec: neuter plural used substantively.

265. nōn magnō intervāllō, *at no great distance (interval)*; ablative of degree of difference.

What part of the verb is *veniendī*, 258?

256. ōstium, -i, n. [*compare* ōs], door; mouth, entrance.

259. poscō, -ere, poposci, —, tr., ask, request, demand.

261. negō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr. and intr., say no, say that not; refuse, deny.

262. temptō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr. [*intens. of* tendō], try, make trial of.

264. ē-vocō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr., call out.

265. intervāllum, -i, n., interval, distance.

## 23. THE BATTLE

Palūs erat nōn magna inter duōs exercitūs; neutri tamen initium trāseundi facere volēbant. Tandem Herculēs signum dedit et, ubi palūdem trāsiit, proelium commisit.

- 270 Amāzonēs impetum virōrum fortissimē sustinuērunt et contrā opiniōnem omnium magnam virtūtem praestitērunt; multōs quidem eōrum occidērunt, multōs etiam in fugam conjēcērunt. Viri enim novō genere pugnae perturbābantur, nec solitam virtūtem praestābant. Herculēs autem, ubi haec
- 275 vidit, dē suis fortūnis dēspērāre coepit. Militēs igitur vehementer cohortātus ad pristinam virtūtem tantum dēdecus dēprecātus est; quibus verbis animi omnium ērēcti sunt; nam multī, etiam quī vulneribus cōfecti erant, proelium sine morā redintegrāvērunt.

267. nōn magna, of no great extent.

neutri: the plural of *neuter* is employed with reference to two groups.

270. Amāzonēs magnam virtūtem praestitērunt: the Amazons were said to have ventured to attack the territories of other nations, and to have made their way even into Attica, the district about Athens.

271. praestitērunt: *praestō* may be transitive, as here, in the sense of *exhibit, display*, or it may be intransitive with the meaning *excel*, in which case it usually governs a dative.

274. nec: translate *and not*.

277. quibus: translate by a demonstrative, *these*.

278. etiam quī, *even those who*.

In section 23 point out a gerund; a genitive of the whole; an ablative of cause.

273. genus, generis, *n.*, race, family, birth, descent; kind, class.

per-turbō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.*, throw into confusion, throw into disorder, disturb.

275. dē-spērō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr. and intr.*, despair of, despair.

276. co-hortor, -ārī, -ātus sum, *tr.*, encourage, rally, admonish.

pristinus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*compare*

prior], former, original.

dē-decus, -decoris, *n.* [decus, decoration, honor], disgrace, dishonor.

277. dē-precor, -ārī, -ātus sum, *tr.*, avert by prayer, deprecate.

ērigō, -rigere, -rēxi, -rēctum, *tr.* [ē + regō], lift up; arouse, encourage.

279. red-integrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.* [integrō, make whole], renew, restore.



AN AMAZON

## 24. DEFEAT OF THE AMAZONS

280 Diū et āriter pugnātum est; tandem tamen ad sōlis oc-  
cāsum magna commūtatiō rērum facta est, et mulierēs terga  
vertērunt atque fugā salūtem petiērunt. Multae autem vul-  
neribus dēfessae, dum fugiunt, captae sunt; in quō numerō  
ipsa erat Hippolytē. Herculēs summam clēmēntiam praestitit  
285 et, postquam balteum accēpit, libertātem omnibus captivīs  
dedit. Post haec sociōs ad mare redūxit et, quod nōn mul-  
tum aestātis supererat, in Graeciam proficisci mātūrāvīt.  
Nāvem igitur cōnscendit et, tempestātem idōneam nactus,  
statim solvit. Antequam tamen in Graeciam pervēnit, ad  
290 urbem Trojam nāvem appellere cōstituit; frūmentum enim  
quod sēcum habēbat jam dēficere coeperat.

280. Diū . . . pugnātum est, *the battle was long and fierce*; literally, *it was fought long and fiercely*. ad sōlis occāsum, *about sunset*.

286. nōn multum aestātis, *not much of the summer*; *multum* is neuter of the adjective used as a noun; *aestātis* is genitive of the whole.

In section 24 point out two complementary infinitives.

280. occāsus, -ūs, *m.* [ob + cāsus], falling down, setting; sōlis occāsus, sunset.

284. clēmēntia, -ae, *f.* [clēmēns], forbearance, mercy.

287. super-sum, -esse, -fui, —, *intr.*, be left over, survive, remain.

mātūrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *intr.* [mātūrus], set about early, hasten.

289. ante-quam, *conj.*, before.

291. dēficiō, -ficere, -fēci, -fectum, *tr. and intr.* [dē + faciō], fail, run out; withdraw, desert.

## 25. LAOMEDON AND THE SEA MONSTER

Lāomedōn quīdam illō tempore rēgnum Trojae obtinēbat; ad hunc Neptūnus et Apollō annō superiōre vēnerant et, quod Troja nōndum moenia habēbat, ad hoc opus auxilium  
295 obtulerant. Postquam tamen hōrum auxiliō moenia cōnfecta sunt, nōlēbat Lāomedōn praemium quod prōposuerat per-  
solvere.

294. moenia, -ium, *n. pl.*, walls (*of a city*).

296. prō-pōnō, -pōnere, -posui, -po-

situm, *tr.*, set forth, relate; offer, propose.

per-solvō, -solvere, -solvi, -solūtum, *tr.*, pay, pay over.

Neptūnus igitur et Apollō, ob hanc causam irātī, mōnstrum quoddam mīserunt speciē horribili, quod cotidie ē mari veniebat et hominēs pecudēque vorābat. Trojānī igitur, 300 timōre perterritī, in urbe continēbantur, et pecora omnia ex agrīs intrā mūrōs compulerant. Lāomedōn, his rēbus commōtus, ōrāculum cōsultuit; ā deō autem jussus est filiam Hēsionem mōnstrō objicere.

301. *continēbantur*, were confining themselves; the passive voice is sometimes used in a reflexive sense, i.e., it denotes an act done by the actor to or for himself; *sē continēbant* might have been used.

In section 25 point out an ablative of cause; an ablative of time; an ablative of description.

300. *pecus*, -udis, *f.*, a head of cattle, beast; *pl.*, flock, herd.

*vorō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.*, devour.

301. *contineō*, -tinēre, -tinui, -tentum, *tr.* [com-+teneō], hold together; shut in, confine.

*pecus*, -oris, *n.*, cattle, herd, flock.

302. *com-pellō*, -pellere, -puli, -pulsum, *tr.*, drive together, collect.

304. *objiciō*, -jicere, -jēcī, -jectum, *tr.* [ob+jaciō], throw before, throw to, offer, expose; set against, oppose.

## 26. THE RESCUE OF HESIONE

Lāomedōn, ubi hoc respōsum renūtiātum est, magnum 305 dolōrem percēpit. Sed tamen, quod civēs suōs tantō periculō liberāre volēbat, ōrāculō pārere cōstituit et diem sacrificiō dixit. Sed, sive cāsū sive cōsiliō deōrum, Herculēs tempore opportūnissimō Trojam attigit; ipsō enim temporis pūctō quō puella catēnis vincta ad litus dēdūcēbātur ille nāvem 310 appulit. Herculēs, ē nāvi ēgressus, dē rēbus quae gerēbantur certior factus est; tum, irā commōtus, ad rēgem sē contulit

307. *ōrāculō*: dative with the special verb *pārere*.

*sacrificiō*, for the sacrifice, dative.

309. *ipsō . . . temporis pūctō quō*, at the very moment when.

312. *certior factus est*, was informed; literally, was made more certain.

305. *re-nūtiō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *intr.*, bring back word, report, announce.

309. *opportūnus*, -a, -um, *adj.* [ob+portus], fit, opportune.

*attingō*, -tingere, -tigī, -tāctum, *tr.* [ad+tangō], touch; arrive at.

*pūctum*, -ī, *n.* [p. part. of *pungō*], point; moment.

et auxilium suum obtulit. Rēx libenter ejus auxilium accēpit; deinde Herculēs mōnstrum interfēcit et puellam, quae jam  
 315 omnem spem salutis dēposuerat, incolumem ad patrem redūxit. Lāomedōn magnō cum gaudiō filiam suam accēpit, et Herculi prō tantō beneficiō meritam grātiā rettulit.

In section 26 account for the case of *periculō* 306; of *incolumem*, 315. Give the principal parts of *vinciā* and *vincō*.

## 27. TENTH LABOR — THE OXEN OF GERYON

Post haec jussus est Herculēs ad insulam Erythiam ire bovēque Gēryonis arcessere. Rēs erat summae difficultātis,  
 320 quod bovēs ā gigante Eurytiōne et ā cane bicipite custōdiēbantur. Ipse autem Gēryōn speciem horribilem praebēbat; habēbat enim tria corpora inter sē conjūcta. Herculēs tamen, etsi intellegēbat periculum magnum esse, negōtium suscepit et, postquam per multās terrās iter fēcit, ad eam  
 325 partem Libyae pervēnit quae Eurōpae proxima est. Ibi in utrāque parte freti quod Eurōpam ā Libyā dividit columnās cōstituit, quae postea Herculis Columnae appellatae sunt.

322. inter sē, *together, to one another*; how literally?

323. *periculum magnum esse*: what class of verbs take the infinitive with subject accusative?

325. in utrāque parte, *on both sides*.

327. *Herculis Columnae*: the Rock of Gibraltar and a hill on the opposite side of the Straits doubtless gave rise to this legend.

In section 27 account for the case of *difficultātis* 319; of *Eurōpae* 325; of *Columnae* 327.

319. arcessō, -cessere, -cessivī, -cessitum, *tr.*, send for, summon.

320. gigās, -antis, *m.*, giant.

biceps, -cipitis, *adj.*, two-headed.

custōdiō, -īre, -ivī, -itum, *tr.* [custōs], watch, guard.

323. intellegō, -legere, -lēxī, -lēctum, *tr.* [inter + legō], perceive, understand, know.

326. uterque, utraque, utrumque, *pron.*, each (*of two*).

fretum, -ī, *n.*, a strait, channel.

columna, -ae, *f.*, column, pillar.



## 28. THE GOLDEN SHIP

Dum hīc morātur, Herculēs magnum incommodum ex calōre sōlis accipiēbat. Tandem igitur, irā commōtus, arcum suum intendit et sōlem sagittīs petiit. Sōl tamen, audāciam 330 virī admīrātus, lintrem auream ei dedit. Herculēs hoc dōnum libentissimē accēpit; nūllam enim nāvem in hīs regiōnibus invenire potuerat. Tum lintrem dēdūxit et, ventum nactus idōneum, post breve tempus ad insulam pervēnit. Postquam ex incolīs cognōvit dē locō ubi bovēs erant, eō statim profec- 335 tus est et ā rēge Gēryone bovēs postulāvit. Quod tamen ille hōs trādere nōlēbat, Herculēs et rēgem ipsum et gigantem Eurytiōnem interfēcit.

**328.** Dum morātur: a *dum* clause of situation, as in Per. 63, which regularly takes a present indicative even if the principal verb is past.

**331.** admīrātus: to be translated as a present participle, a force which the past participles of certain deponent verbs often have.

**328.** moror, -ārī, -ātus sum, *tr. and intr.* [mora], delay, linger; hinder.  
**in-commodum**, -i, *n.*, inconvenience, misfortune, loss.

**329.** calor, -ōris, *m.*, heat.

**331.** ad-mīror, -ārī, -ātus sum, *tr.*, be astonished at, admire.

## 29. A MIRACULOUS HAIL-STORM

Tum Herculēs bovēs per Hispāniam et Liguriā compellere cōstituit. Postquam igitur omnia parāta sunt, bovēs 340 ex insulā ad continentem trānsportāvit. Ligurēs tamen, gēns bellicōsissima, dum ille per finēs eōrum iter facit, magnīs cōpiīs convēnērunt, atque eum longius prōgredi prohibēbant. Herculēs magnam difficultātem habēbat; barbarī enim in locīs

**342.** finēs: not *boundaries*.

magnīs cōpiīs, *with large forces*; ablative of accompaniment, App. 70, b.

**343.** eum . . . prōgredi prohibēbant, *tried to prevent him from proceeding*. The infinitive with subject accusative often depends on *prohibeo*. The imperfect tense here denotes an attempted action.

**341.** trāns-portō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.*, carry over, transport.

**343.** prohibeo, -hibere, -hibui, -hibitum, *tr.* [prō + habeo], check, stop, restrain; keep out, prohibit.

- 345 *superiōribus cōstitērant, et saxa tēlaque in eum conjiciēbant.*  
 Ille quidem paene omnem spem salūtis dēposuerat; sed tem-  
 pore opportūnissimō Juppiter imbrem lapidum ingentium ē  
 caelō dēmīsit. Hī magnā vī cecidērunt et magnum numerum  
 Ligurum occidērunt; ipse tamen Herculēs, ut in tālibus rēbus  
 350 accidere cōsuēvit, nihil incommodī cēpit.

**346. quidem:** this word often has a concessive force, *it is true, to be sure*; it is then followed in the next sentence by some adversative word, here *sed, but, nevertheless*.

**349. in tālibus rēbus:** *i.e.*, when favored with divine help.

**350. cōsuēvit:** the force of the tenses of this verb is explained in the note on l. 32.

*nihil incommodī, no harm; incommodī* is a genitive of the whole.

In section 29 account for the tense of *facit* 342; for the case of *vī* 348.

**347. imber, -bris, m.,** rain, storm.  
**lapis, lapidis, m.,** stone.

**350. accidō, -cidere, -cidi, —, intr.**  
*[ad + cadō],* fall upon; happen,  
 come about.

### 30. PASSAGE OF THE ALPS

- Postquam Ligurēs hōc modō superātī sunt, Herculēs quam  
 celerrimē prōgressus est, et post paucōs diēs ad Alpēs per-  
 vēnit. Necesse erat hōs trānsīre, quod in Italiam bovēs  
 dūcere volēbat; rēs tamen summae erat difficultātis. Hī  
 355 enim montēs, quī Galliam ulteriōrem ab Italiā dīvidunt, nive  
 perennī teguntur; quam ob causam neque frūmentum neque  
 pābulum in hīs regiōnibus invenīrī potest. Herculēs igitur,

**351. quam celerrimē, as rapidly as possible;** *quam* is employed with a superlative to indicate the highest degree possible.

**355. Galliam ulteriōrem:** *i.e.*, Gaul north of the Alps; the valley of the Po in Italy was also inhabited at one time by a Gallic population and was known to the Romans as *Gallia citerior*, nearer Gaul.

**356. quam ob causam, for this reason;** for the position of the preposition see the note on *hōc in templō*, l. 73.

In section 30, what is the subject of *erat* 353?

**353. necesse, indecl. adj.,** necessary.

**355. ulterior, -ius, compar. adj.,** farther.

**nix, nivis, f.,** snow.

**356. perennis, -e, adj. [per+annus],**  
 lasting through the year, perennial.

**357. pābulum, -i, n. [compare pāscō],**  
 food, pasturage, fodder.

antequam ascendere coepit, magnam cōpiam frūmentī et pābulī comparāvit, et bovēs onerāvit. Postquam in hīs rēbus trēs diēs cōsūmpserat, quārtō diē profectus est et, contrā 360 omnium opīniōnem, bovēs incolumēs in Italiam trādūxit.

359. com-parō, -parāre, -parāvī, -parātum, *tr.*, prepare.  
 onerō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* [onus,

a burden], load, fill.  
 361. trādūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum, *tr.* [trāns+dūcō], lead across.

### 31. CACUS STEALS THE OXEN

Post breve tempus ad flūmen Tiberim vēnit; illō tamen tempore nūlla erat urbs in eō locō. Rōma enim nōndum condita erat. Herculēs, itinere fessus, cōstituit ibi paucōs diēs morārī atque sē ex labōribus recreāre. Haud procul 365 ā valle ubi bovēs pāscēbantur antrum erat, in quō gigās quidam, nōmine Cācus, tum habitābat. Hic speciem terribilem praebēbat, nōn modo quod ingentī magnitūdine corporis erat, sed quod ignem ex ōre expīrābat. Cācus autem dē adventū Herculis fāmam accēperat; noctū igitur vēnit et, 370 dum Herculēs dormit, quattuor pulcherrimōrum boum abripuit. Hōs caudīs in antrum trāxit; hōc enim modō putāvit Herculem vestigiīs dēceptum bovēs nōn inventūrum esse.

362. Tiberim: a few third declension nouns have *-im* as the ending of the accusative singular.

368. ingentī magnitūdine: ablative of description; what other case might be employed?

364. fessus, -a, -um, *adj.*, wearied, tired, exhausted.

365. re-creō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.*, renew, restore, refresh.

366. pāscō, pāscere, pāvī, pāstum, *tr.*, supply with food, feed; *pass.*, graze, feed.

369. ōs, ōris, *n.*, mouth.

expirō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* [ex+spirō, breathe], breathe out.

370. noctū, *adv.* [nox], at night, by night.

371. abripō, -ripere, -ripuī, -reptum, *tr.* [ab+ripō], snatch away, steal.

372. cauda, -ae, *f.*, tail.

putō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* (clean, prune); think, suppose.

373. dēcipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -cepum, *tr.* [dē+capiō], beguile, deceive.

## 32. HERCULES DISCOVERS THE THEFT

Posterō diē, simul atque ē somnō excitātus est, Herculēs  
 375 fūrtum animadvertit, et bovēs āmissōs undique quaerēbat.  
 Hōs tamen nusquam reperīre poterat, nōn modo quod loci  
 nātūrā ignōrābat, sed quod vestigiis falsis dēceptus est.  
 Tandem, ubi magnam partem diēi frūstrā cōsūmpsit, cum  
 reliquīs bōbus prōgredi cōstituit. At, dum proficisci parat,  
 380 ūnus ē bōbus quōs sēcūm habuit mūgīre coepit. Extemplō  
 īī quī in antrō inclūsī erant mūgītum reddidērunt; hōc modō  
 Herculēs locum invēnit. Tum vehementer irātus, ad spēlun-  
 cam quam celerrimē sē contulit. At Cācus saxum ingēns  
 dējēcerat et aditum spēluncae omnīnō obstruxerat.

374. simul atque: the tense of the verb with this phrase was explained in the note on Per. 102.

380. ūnus ē bōbus: with cardinal numbers and with *quīdam* an ablative with *ex* or *dē* is more common than a genitive of the whole; the latter, however, sometimes occurs, as in l. 371.

383. quam celerrimē: to be translated as in l. 351.

375. fūrtum, -ī, *n.* [fūr, thief], theft.

376. nusquam, *adv.* [ne+usquam], nowhere.

377. falsus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*p. part.* of fallō], false, deceptive, misleading.

380. mūgiō, -ire, -ivī, —, *intr.*, low, bellow.

381. mūgītus, -ūs, *m.* [mūgiō], lowing, bellowing.

382. spēlunca, -ae, *f.*, cave, cavern.

384. dējiciō, -jicere, -jēcī, -jectum, *tr.* [dē+jaciō], throw down.

ob-struō, -struere, -strūxī, -strūctum, *tr.*, stop up, bar.

## 33. RECOVERY OF THE OXEN

385 Herculēs, quoniam nūllum aliū introitū reperīre poterat,  
 hoc saxum āmovēre cōnātus est; sed propter ejus magnitū-  
 dinem rēs erat difficillima. Diū labōrābat, neque quidquam  
 efficere poterat. Tandem tamen magnō cōnātū saxum

387. neque, *but not*; occasionally *neque* is used as the equivalent of *sed* *nōn* instead of *et nōn*.

385. quoniam, *conj.* [quom, for cum, +jam], since, inasmuch as.

introitus, -ūs, *m.* [introeō, go in],

entrance.

386. ā-moveō, -movēre, -mōvī, -mōtum, *tr.*, move away.

āmōvit et spēluncam patefēcit. Ibi āmissōs bovēs magnō cum gaudiō cōspexit. Sed Cācum ipsum vix cernere potuit, 390 quod spēlunca replēta erat fūmō quem ille mōre suō ēvomēbat. Herculēs, inūsītātā speciē turbātus, breve tempus haesitābat; mox tamen in spēluncam irrūpit et collum mōnstri bracciis complexus est. Ille, etsi multum relūctātus est, nūllō modō sē liberāre potuit; et, quod nūlla facultās respī- 395 randi dabātur, mox, quod necesse fuit, exanimātus est.

391. mōre suō, according to his custom; the ablative is employed to express the idea of "in accordance with."

392. breve tempus: accusative of duration of time.

396. quod (a thing), which; neuter, because referring to the fact in exanimātus est.

389. patefaciō, -facere, -fēcī, -factum, tr. [pateō + faciō], lay open, open, throw open.

ēvomō, -vomere, -vomui, -vomitum, tr., vomit forth.

390. cernō, cernere, crēvi, crētum, tr., distinguish; discern, perceive.

392. in-ūsītātus, -a, -um, adj., unusual, extraordinary.

391. fūmus, -i, m., smoke.

393. haesitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, intr. [freq. of haereō], stick fast, remain fixed, hesitate.

### 34. ELEVENTH LABOR — THE GOLDEN APPLES OF THE HESPERIDES

Eurystheus, postquam bovēs Gēryonis accēpit, labōrem ūndecimū Herculi imposuit, graviōrem quam quōs suprà nārrāvimus. Jussit enim eum aurea pōma ex hortō Hesperidum auferre. Hesperidēs autem nymphae erant quaedam 400 fōrmā praestantissimā, quae in terrā longinquā habitābant, et quibus aurea quaedam pōma ā Jūnōne commissa erant.

398. quam: supply *ei erant*.

400. quaedam: with *nymphae*.

398. ūndecimus, -a, -um, adj. [ūndecim, eleven], eleventh.

401. fōrma, -ae, f., form, appearance; beauty.

399. pōmum, -i, n., fruit, apple.

prae-stāns, gen. -stantis, adj. [pr. part. of praestō], preëminent, distinguished, surpassing.

400. auferō, auferre, abstulī, ablātum, tr. [ab + ferō], carry away, carry off.

longinquus, -a, -um, adj. [longus], remote, distant; lengthy, long.

nympha, -ae, f., nymph.

Multi hominēs, aurī cupiditāte inductī, haec pōma auferre jam antea cōnāti erant; rēs tamen difficillima erat. Nam  
 405 hortus in quō pōma erant mūrō ingentī undique circumdatus est; praeterea dracō quīdam, quī centum capita habēbat, portam horti diligenter custodiēbat. Opus igitur quod Eurystheus Herculi imperāverat erat summae difficultātis, nōn modo ob causas quās memorāvimus, sed quod Herculēs  
 410 situm horti omnīnō ignōrābat.

408. Herculi: dative with *imperāverat*, had imposed upon Hercules.

In section 34 point out a dative governed by a compound verb; an ablative of description; a genitive of description; an infinitive with subject accusative.

403. cupiditās, -ātis, *f.* [cupidus], eagerness, longing, desire.

in-dūcō, -dūcere, -dūxi, -ductum, *tr.*, lead in; move, induce.

405. circum-dō, -dare, -dedi, -datum, *tr.*, place around, surround.

406. dracō, -ōnis, *m.*, serpent, dragon.

409. memorō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* [memor, mindful], mention, recount, relate.

410. situs, -ūs, *m.*, site, location.

### 35. ATLAS, WHO UPHELD THE HEAVENS

Herculēs, quamquam quiētem vehementer cupiēbat, cōstituit tamen Eurystheō pārere; et simul ac jussa ejus accēpit, proficisci mātūrāvit. Multōs mercātōrēs interrogāverat dē sēde Hesperidum; nihil tamen certum reperire potuerat.  
 415 Frūstrā per multās terrās iter fēcit, et multa perīcula subiit; tandem, postquam in hīs itineribus tōtum annum cōnsūmpsit, ad extrēmam partem orbis, quae proxima erat Ōceanō, per-

412. Eurystheō: dative with *pārere*.

417. orbis: supply *terrārum*; the two words together mean *the world*; the ancients regarded the earth as a circular plane or disk.

412. jussum, -ī, *n.* [*p. part.* of jubeō], order, command.

413. mercātor, -ōris, *m.* [mercōr, to trade], trader, merchant.

inter-rogō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.*, ask, question.

415. sub-eō, -īre, -īi, -itum, *intr.*

and *tr.*, go under; undergo, submit to; enter.

417. extrēmus, -a, -um, *adj.* [exterus, on the outside], outermost, farthest, most distant.

orbis, orbis, -ium, *m.*, ring, circle; orbis terrārum, the earth, the world.

vēnit. Hic stābat vir quīdam, nōmine Atlās, ingentī magnitūdine corporis, quī caelum (ita trādunt) umeris suis sustinēbat, et in terram dēcidere prohibēbat. Herculēs tantum labōrem magnopere mirātus, post paulō in colloquium cum Atlante vēnit et, postquam causam itineris exposuit, auxilium ejus petiit.

419. ita trādunt, so legend has it, as the legend goes; literally so they hand down.

umeris: ablative of means, but to be translated on his shoulders.

caelum dēcidere: infinitive with subject accusative, object of prohibēbat, as in l. 343.

421. mirātus: a past participle to be translated as a present, as explained in the note on l. 331.

In section 35 point out a dative governed by an adjective.

420. dēcidō, -cidere, -cidi, —, intr. [dē+cadō], fall down, fall off.

### 36. A SUBSTITUTE

Atlās autem potuit Herculi maximē prōdesse; ille enim, quoniam ipse erat pater Hesperidum, situm hortī bene scīvit. Postquam igitur audīvit causam itineris Herculis, "Ipse," inquit, "ad hortum ibō; ego sī hortābor, filiae certē pōma suā sponte trādent." Herculēs, ubi haec audīvit, magnopere gāvisus est; cupiēbat enim rem sine vī fieri. Cōstituit igitur oblātum auxilium accipere. Sed quod Atlās abiturus erat, necesse erat aliquem caelum umeris sustinēre. Hoc igitur negōtium Herculēs libenter suscepit et, quamquam rēs erat

424. Herculi: dative with prōdesse. Why?

427. suā sponte, of their own accord, without compulsion; sponte is found almost exclusively in the ablative, expressing manner, with mea, suā, tuā.

424. prō-sum, prōdesse, prōfui, intr., be useful, benefit, profit, serve.

425. bene, adv. [bonus], well.

427. hortor, -āri, -ātus sum, tr., urge, encourage, exhort.

certē, adv. [certus], assuredly, cer-

tainly.

428. (spōns) spontis, f. [compare spondeō, promise], only abl. sing. in common use (generally with the possessives mea, tuā, suā), of one's own accord, voluntarily.

summī labōris, tōtum pondus caelī continuōs complūrēs diēs  
sōlus sustinuit.

In section 36 point out an accusative of duration of time.

- 433.** *pondus, ponderis, n.* [*compare* successive, continuos.  
*pendō*], weight, a weight. *com-plūrēs, -plūra, adj.*, several, a  
*continuus, -a, -um, adj.* [*contineō*], number of, many.

### 37. RETURN OF ATLAS

- 435 Atlās intereā abierat et ad hortum Hesperidum, quī pauca  
milia passuum aberat, sē .quam celerrimē contulerat. Eō  
ubi vēnit, causam veniendī exposuit, et ā filiābus suis pōma  
vehementer petivit. Illae diū haerēbant; nōlēbant enim hoc  
facere, quod ab ipsā Jūnōne, dē quā ante dictum est, hoc  
440 mūnus accēperant. Atlās tamen post multa verba iīs per-  
suāsit, et pōma ad Herculem rettulit. Herculēs intereā, quī  
plūrēs diēs expectāverat, neque ūllam fāmam dē reditū  
Atlantis accēperat, hāc morā graviter commōtus est. Tan-  
dem quīntō diē Atlantem vidit redeuntem, et mox magnō  
445 cum gaudiō pōma accēpit; tum, postquam grātiās prō tantō  
beneficiō ēgit, ad Graeciam proficisci mātūrāvit.

**435.** *pauca milia passuum, a few miles.* The use of *mille* in the plural was explained in the note on l. 181.

**437.** *filiābus*: if the dative and ablative plural of *filiā* were written *filiīs*, with what other word would it be confused in those cases?

In section 37 account for the case of *milia* 436; of *iīs* 440; of *diēs* 444. What is the force of a superlative with *quam*?

- 438.** *haereō, -ēre, haesi, haesūrus, multus*], *subst., n. sg.*, more; *pl.,*  
*intr.*, stick, cling; hesitate. *plūrēs, plūra, adj.*, more, a greater  
**440.** *mūnus, mūneris, n.*, service, number of.  
*duty; present, gift.* **444.** *quīntus, -a, -um, adj.* [*quīnque*],  
**442.** *plūs, gen. plūris* [*compar. of* fifth. .

### 38. TWELFTH LABOR — CERBERUS, THE THREE-HEADED DOG

Postquam aurea pōma ad Eurystheum relāta sunt, ūnus  
modo relinquebātur ē duodecim labōribus quōs Pŷthia Her-

**448.** *quōs Pŷthia Herculi praecēperat, which Pythia had enjoined upon Hercules*; the accusative and the dative are explained in App. 55, a.



culi praecēperat. Eurystheus autem, quod Herculem magnopere timēbat, sē ab eō in perpetuum liberāre volēbat. Jus- 450  
sit igitur eum canem Cerberum ex Orcō in lūcem trahere. Hoc opus omnium difficillimum erat; nēmō enim umquam ex Orcō redierat. Praetereā Cerberus iste mōnstrum erat horribili speciē, quī tria capita serpentibus saevīs cincta habēbat. Antequam tamen hunc labōrem nārrāmus, nōn aliēnum vidē- 455  
tur, quoniam dē Orcō mentiōnem fēcimus, pauca dē istā regiōne prōpōnere.

---

450. in perpetuum, *forever*; the neuter adjective is used as a noun.

455. aliēnum, *out of place*.

In section 38 account for the case of *labōribus* 448; could the genitive be used instead?

---

449. praeciō, -cipere, -cēpi, -cep-  
tum, *tr.* [prae, before, + capiō],  
enjoin upon, impose upon; teach.

450. perpetuus, -a, -um, *adj.*, con-  
tinuous, constant, perpetual;  
*subst.*, *n. sg.*, in perpetuum, for

all time, forever.

455. aliēnus, -a, -um, *adj.* [alius],  
another's; out of place; unfavor-  
able.

456. mentiō, -ōnis, *f.*, mention.

---

### 39. ORCUS OR HADES, THE ABODE OF THE DEAD

Dē Orcō, quī idem Hādēs appellābātur, haec trāduntur. Ut quisque ē vitā discesserat, mănēs ejus ad Orcum, sēdem mortuōrum, ā deō Mercuriō dēdūcēbantur. Hujus regiōnis, 460  
quae sub terrā fuisse dicitur, rēx erat Plūtō, cujus uxor erat Prōserpina, Jovis et Cereris filia. Mănēs igitur, ā Mercuriō dēductī, primum ad ripam veniēbant Stygis flūminis, quō

---

458. idem, *also*, a frequent meaning of the word.

459. Ut, *when*. In this sense *ut* takes an indicative.

discesserat: past perfect of repeated or habitual action; in like man-  
ner dēdūcēbantur is an imperfect of habitual action.

mănēs: a plural noun, but translated by a singular.

460. Mercuriō: one of the functions ascribed to the god Mercury was that of guide of souls into the lower world.

---

459. mănēs, -ium, *m. pl.*, a departed spirit, shade, ghost.

continētur rēgnum Plūtōnis. Hoc omnēs trānsire necesse erat  
 465 quī in Orcum veniēbant. Quoniam tamen in hōc flūmine  
 nullus pōns erat, mānēs trānsvehēbantur ā Charonte quōdam,  
 quī cum parvā scaphā ad rīpam expectābat. Charōn prō hōc  
 officiō mercēdem postulābat, neque volēbat quemquam sine  
 hōc praemiō trānsvehere. Ob hanc causam mōs erat apud  
 470 antiquōs nummum in ōre mortuī pōnere; eō modō, ut putā-  
 bant, mortuus ad Stygem veniēns pretium trājectūs solvere  
 poterat. Ii autem quī post mortem in terrā nōn sepulti  
 erant Stygem trānsire nōn potuerunt, sed in litore per cen-  
 tum annōs errāre coācti sunt; tum dēmum licuit Orcum  
 475 intrāre.

464. omnēs trānsire necesse erat, *all must cross*. The subject of *erat* is *omnēs trānsire*.

465. in (*flūmine*), *over*.

466. Charonte: Charon was represented in literature and art as an old man of squalid appearance, but hale and vigorous.

469. mōs erat . . . pōnere, *it was the custom to place*; *pōnere* is the subject of *erat*.

470. mortuī, *of the dead person*.

474. errāre: dependent upon *coācti sunt*.

475. intrāre: subject of *licuit*.

466. trāns-vehō, -vehere, -vexī, -vectum, *tr.*, convey across, carry over.

467. scapha, -ae, *f.*, skiff, boat.

468. mercēs, -ēdis, *f.*, hire, pay, fee.

470. nummus, -ī, *m.*, a coin.

471. trājectus, -ūs, *m.* [trājiciō], crossing over, passage.

472. sepeliō, -ire, -ivī, -pultum, *tr.*, bury.

475. intrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.*, enter.

#### 40. THE REALM OF PLUTO

Postquam mānēs Stygem hōc modō trānsierant, ad alterum veniēbant flūmen, quod Lēthē appellātum est. Ex hōc flūmine aquam bibere cōgēbantur. Quod ubi fēcerant, rēs

478. Quod ubi fēcerant, *and when they had done this*. The Latin relative pronoun often stands at the beginning of a sentence and refers to an antecedent in the preceding sentence. When thus used it is often followed by *ubi*, as in this instance, or by *cum*. In this use it is translated by a personal or a demonstrative pronoun.

omnēs in vitā gestās ē memoriā dēpōnēbant. Dēnique ad sēdem ipsam Plūtōnis veniēbant, cujus introitus ā cane Cerberō custodiēbātur. Ibi Plūtō, nigrō vestitū indūtus, cum uxōre Prōserpinā in soliō sedēbat. Stābant etiam nōn procul ab eō locō tria alia solia, in quibus sedēbant Mīnōs, Rhadamanthus, et Aeacus, iudicēs inferōrum. Hī mortuīs jū dīcēbant et praemia poenāsque cōstituēbant. Bonī enim in Campōs Ēlysiōs, sēdem beātōrum, veniēbant; improbi autem in Tartarum mittēbantur, et multīs variisque suppliciis ibi exerciābantur.

482. *Stābant, there stood*; the English expletive "there" has no equivalent in Latin; its effect is often obtained by placing the Latin verb first in the sentence.

484. *mortuīs jū dīcēbant, dispensed justice to the dead.*

486. *Campōs Ēlysiōs*: in early Greek literature the Elysian Fields were conceived of as lying in the far West, at the earth's extremity, or in the Islands of the Blest. At a later time they were represented as a part of the lower world.

479. *memoria, -ae, f.* [memor, mindful], memory, remembrance.

481. *niger, -gra, -grum, adj.*, black.  
*vestitus, -ūs, m.* [vestiō, to clothe], clothing.

482. *solium, -i, n.*, throne.

484. *jūdex, -icis, m.*, judge.

*inferi, -ōrum, m. pl.* [inferus, below, lower], those of the lower world, the dead, the shades.

*jūs, jūris, n.*, right, law, justice.

486. *improbis, -a, -um, adj.* [in- + probus, honest], bad, wicked.

488. *ex-cruciō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr.*, rack, torture.

#### 41. CHARON'S FERRY

Herculēs postquam imperia Eurystheī accēpit, in Lacōniam ad Taenarum statim sē contulit; ibi enim spēlunca erat ingentī magnitudine, per quam (ut trādēbātur) hominēs ad Orcum dēscendēbant. Eō ubi vēnit et ex incolīs situm spē-

491. *ut trādēbātur*: the clause has the same sense as *ila trādunt*, l. 419.

492. *Eō, to that place.*

489. *imperium, -i, n.* [imperō], power, authority, command.

luncae cognōvit, sine morā dēscendere cōstituit. Nec tamen  
 sōlus hoc iter faciēbat. Mercurius enim et Minerva sē  
 495 sociōs ei adjūxerant. Ubi ad ripam Stygis vēnit, Herculēs  
 scapham Charontis cōnscendit. Quod tamen Herculēs vir  
 erat ingentī magnitudīne corporis, Charōn solvere nōlēbat;  
 arbitrābātur enim tantum pondus scapham suam in mediō  
 flūmine mersūrum esse. Tandem tamen, minīs Herculis ter-  
 500 ritus, Charōn scapham solvit et eum incolumem ad ulteriōrem  
 ripam perdūxit.

---

495. sociōs, as *companions*.

---

495. ad-jungō, -jungere, -jūnxī, 499. minae, -ārum, *f. pl.*, threats.  
 -jūnctum, *tr.*, join to, attach.

---

#### 42. THE TWELVE LABORS ACCOMPLISHED

Postquam flūmen Stygem tālī modō trānsiit, Herculēs in  
 sēdem ipsīus Plūtōnis vēnit, et, postquam causam veniendī  
 docuit, ab eō facultātem Cerberum auferendī petīvit. Plūtō,  
 505 quī dē Hercule fāmam accēperat, eum benignē excēpit, et  
 facultātem quam ille petēbat libenter dedit. Jussit tamen  
 Herculem imperāta Eurystheī facere et postea Cerberum in  
 Orcum rūsus redūcere. Herculēs haec pollicitus est, et Cer-  
 berum, quem nōn sine magnō periculō manibus prehenderat,  
 510 summō cum labōre ex Orcō in lūcem et ad urbem Eurystheī  
 trāxit. Eō ubi vēnit, Eurystheus ex ātriō statim refūgit;  
 tantus pavor animum ejus occupāverat. Postquam autem  
 paulum sē ex timōre recēpit, multis cum lacrimis clāmitāvit  
 sē velle mōnstrum sine morā in Orcum redūci. Sic, contrā  
 515 omnium opiniōnem, duodecim illī labōrēs quōs Pŷthia prae-  
 cēperat intrā duodecim annōs cōfecti sunt. Itaque Her-

---

504. auferendī: a gerund<sup>f</sup> with a direct object, *Cerberum*; App. 129,  
 Note 1.

513. sē recēpit, *recovered*.

culēs, servitūte tandē liberātus, magnō cum gaudiō Thēbās rediit.

517. Thēbās, to *Thebes*; the name of a city without a preposition to express the place to which will be explained in later lessons.

### 43. NESSUS, THE CENTAUR

Post haec Herculēs multa alia praeclāra perfēcit, quae nunc perscribere longum est. Tandem, jam aetāte prōvectus, 520 Dēianīram, Oeneī filiam, in mātrimonium dūxit; post tamen trēs annōs puerum quendam, nōmine Eunomum, cāsū occidit. Mōre antiquō necesse erat Herculem ob eam rem in exilium ire; itaque cum uxōre suā ē finibus ejus cīvitātis exire mātūrāvit. Dum tamen iter faciunt, ad flūmen quoddam pervēnē- 525 runt in quō nūllus pōns erat, et dum quaerunt modum trānseundi, accurrit Centaurus quīdam, nōmine Nessus, quī auxilium viātōribus obtulit. Herculēs igitur uxōrem suam in tergum Nessi imposuit; tum ipse flūmen nandō trānsiit. At Nessus, paulum in aquam prōgressus, ad ripam subitō revertit 530 et Dēianīram auferre cōnābātur. Quod ubi animadvertit Herculēs, Irā graviter commōtus, arcum intendit et pectus Nessi sagittā trānsfixit.

519. quae: object of *perscribere*.

520. longum est, *it would take too long*.

523. Mōre: ablative expressing accordance, as in l. 391.

529. nandō, *by swimming*, ablative of the gerund expressing means and manner.

531. Quod ubi: the note on l. 478 should be consulted.

519. prae-clārus, -a, -um, *adj.*, very bright, brilliant; splendid, distinguished.

perficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum, *tr.* [per+faciō], accomplish, perform, complete.

520. per-scribō, -scribere, -scripsī, -scriptum, *tr.*, write in full, write out, describe fully.

prō-vehō, -vehere, -vexī, -vectum, *tr.*, carry forward; *pass.*, ride forward; sail out; aetāte prōvectus, advanced in years.

523. exilium, -ī, *n.* [exul], exile.

528. viātor, -ōris, *m.* [via], traveler.

529. nō, nāre, nāvi, —, swim.

532. pectus, pectoris, *n.*, breast.

## 44. THE POISONED ROBE

Nessus igitur, sagittā Herculis trānsfixus, moriēns humi  
 535 jacēbat; at nōlēns occāsiōnem Herculem ulciscendī dīmittere,  
 ita locūtus est. "Tū, Dēianīra, verba morientis audi: sī vīs  
 amōrem marītī tui cōservāre, aliquid sanguinis hujus qui ē  
 pectore meō effunditur sūme ac repōne; tum, sī umquam sus-  
 piciō in mentem tuam vēnerit, vestem marītī hōc sanguine  
 540 inficiēs." Haec locūtus Nessus animam efflāvit; Dēianīra  
 autem, nihil malī suspicāta, imperāta fēcit. Post breve tem-  
 pus Herculēs bellum contrā Eurytum rēgem Oechaliae sus-  
 cēpit et, ubi rēgem ipsum cum filiis interfēcit, Iolēn, filiam  
 Eurytī, captivam redūxit. Antequam tamen domum vēnit,

534. *humi*, on the ground; the use of this case, the locative, will be explained later.

535. *Herculem ulciscendī*: the genitive of the gerund with a direct object, as in l. 504.

536. *morientis*, of one who is dying; a present participle (from *morior*) used as a noun.

537. *aliquid sanguinis hujus*, some of this blood; what kind of genitive?

540. *inficiēs*, you will dye; the future indicative is sometimes employed both in Latin and in English as a substitute for the imperative.

541. *nihil malī*, no harm.

*suspiciāta*, suspecting; past participle of a deponent verb with present force, like *mīrātus*, l. 421.

544. *domum*, home; the accusative of this noun is used without a preposition to express the place to which.

534. *humi*, *adv.* [*locative of humus*, ground], on the ground.

535. *occāsiō*, -ōnis, *f.* [*ob+cadō*], opportunity, occasion, chance.

*ulciscor*, -i, *ultus sum*, *tr.*, take vengeance on, avenge.

537. *amor*, -ōris, *m.*, love.

*cōn-servō*, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.*, retain, preserve.

538. *effundō*, -fundere, -fūdī, -fūsum, *tr.* [*ex+fundō*], pour out; use up, waste.

*sūmō*, -ere, *sūmpsī*, *sūmptum*, *tr.*

[*sub+emō*], take, take up.

*re-pōnō*, -pōnere, -posuī, -positum, *tr.*, replace, restore; put away, keep, preserve.

*umquam*, *adv.*, ever.

*suspiciō*, -ōnis, *f.* [*compare suspiciō*, suspect], suspicion, distrust.

539. *mēns*, *mentis*, *f.*, the mind.

540. *anima*, -ae, *f.*, air, breath; life.

*efflō*, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.* [*ex+flō*, blow], breathe out.

541. *suspisor*, -ārī, -ātus sum, *tr.* [*compare suspiciō*], suspect.

nāvem ad Cēnaeum prōmuntorium appulit. Ibi in terram 545  
ēgressus quod Jovī sacrificāre volēbat, āram cōstituit. Dum  
tamen sacrificium parat, Licham comitem suum domum ire  
et vestem albam referre jussit; mōs enim erat apud antiquōs  
in sacrificandō vestem albam gerere. At Dēianīra, arbitrāta  
Herculem amōrem ergā Iolēn habēre, vestem, priusquam 550  
Lichae dedit, sanguinē Nessī infēcit.

---

549. sacrificandō: ablative of the gerund governed by a preposition.  
arbitrāta, *thinking*.

---

545. prōmuntorium, -ī, *n.*, head-  
land, promontory.

546. sacrificō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.*  
and *intr.* [sacer+faciō], offer  
sacrifice, sacrifice.

547. comes, -itis, *m. and f.*, com-

panion.

548. albus, -a, -um, *adj.*, white.

550. ergā, *prep. with acc.*, towards,  
for.

prius-quam, *conj.*, before.

---

#### 45. THE DEATH OF HERCULES

Herculēs, nihil malī suspicātus, vestem quam Lichās attulit  
statim induit; post tamen breve tempus dolōrem per omnia  
membra sēnsit, sed quod causam ejus rei ignōrābat magnopere 555  
mīrābātur. Dolōre paene exanimātus, vestem dētrahere  
cōnātus est. Illa tamen in corpore haesit, neque ullō modō  
divellī potuit. Tum dēmum Herculēs, quasi furōre impulsus,  
in montem Oetam sē contulit et in rogum, quem summā  
celeritāte extrūxit, sē imposuit. Hoc ubi fēcit, voluit eōs  
quī circumstābant rogum quam celerrimē accendere. Omnēs 560  
diū recūsābant; tandem tamen pāstor quīdam, ad misericor-

---

557. di-vellō, -vellere, -vellī, -vul-  
sum, *tr.*, tear apart, tear away.

qua-si, *adv.*, as if.

impellō, -pellere, -pulī, -pulsum, *tr.*  
[in+pellō], drive forward; impel,  
urge on.

558. rogas, -ī, *m.*, funeral pile,  
funeral pyre.

559. extruō, -uere, -ūxi, -ūctum, *tr.*

[struō], pile, heap up; erect.

560. circum-stō, -stāre, -stetī, —,  
*intr.*, stand around, surround.

561. recūsō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.*  
and *intr.* [re+causa], refuse,  
decline.

pāstor, -ōris, *m.* [pāscō], shepherd.  
misericordia, -ae, *f.* [misericors,  
compassionate], pity, compassion.

diam inductus, ignem subdidit. Tum, dum omnia fūmō obscūrantur, Herculēs, dēnsā nūbe vėlātus, ā Jove in Olympum abreptus est.

**563.** *Herculēs . . . abreptus est:* since Hercules was the son of Zeus it was not unnatural, in view of his marvelous exploits, for legend to represent him as deified and free from the death usual to mortals.

**562.** *sub-dō, -dere, -didī, -ditum, tr.,* put under, apply.

[*obscūrus*], darken, cover, hide.

**563.** *obscurō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr.*

*vėlō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr. [vėlum, veīl],* cover, envelop, veil.



VIEW OF MODERN ROME



# A JUNIOR LATIN READER

## PART II—LESSONS

### NOTE

The following Lessons include forms and principles of syntax not appearing in the first-year book of the series to which this book belongs. It is not necessary that all these Lessons be assigned for study before beginning the reading of Part III. If the subjunctive has been taught in the first year, the reading of the Argonauts may be taken up directly after the Hercules, and occasional assignments may be made from the Lessons as the teacher finds necessary. If the subjunctive has been postponed to the second year, Lessons V-XIV and XIX-XX may be studied before the reading of the text of Part III is begun, and occasional assignments made thereafter from the remaining Lessons in connection with the later readings. Some teachers whose classes are unable to complete the reading of all the text in the book may prefer to omit the Argonauts in order to have more time for the stories of Roman history and the simplified Caesar.

### LESSON I

#### THE LOCATIVE: DECLENSION OF *DOMUS*

##### USE OF THE LOCATIVE

1. In addition to the cases which have been given, a few nouns have another case, called the Locative. This case denotes place where, just as the ablative with *in* does in other nouns and pronouns. Names of cities and towns and the common noun *domus*, which is given in this lesson, are the most important words which have a locative case.

## FORM OF THE LOCATIVE

2. The locative of nouns of the first and second declensions in the singular number has the same form as the genitive singular. In the plural of nouns of these two declensions and in the singular and plural of other nouns it regularly has the same form as the ablative. The locative of **Rōma** is **Rōmae**, at *Rome*, or *in Rome*, the locative of **Athēnae** is **Athēnis**, at *Athens*, or *in Athens*.

DECLENSION OF **DOMUS**

3. The noun **domus** is declined partly in the fourth declension and partly in the second:

	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
NOMINATIVE	domus	domūs
GENITIVE	domūs	domuum
DATIVE	domuī or domō	domibus
ACCUSATIVE	domum	domōs
ABLATIVE	domō or domū	domibus
LOCATIVE	domī	

a. Occasionally **domī** is used as a genitive. In the genitive plural **domōrum** is sometimes found, and the accusative plural is sometimes **domūs**.

## 4.

## VOCABULARY

<b>Athēnae</b> , -ārum, F. <i>pl.</i> , Athens	<b>Laurentum</b> , -ī, N., Laurentum,
<b>comprehendō</b> , -hendere, - <b>hendī</b> , -hēnsus, seize, arrest	<i>an ancient town of Italy</i>
<b>domus</b> , -ūs (see section 3), F., home, house	<b>servitūs</b> , -tūtis, F., slavery
<b>Graeci</b> , -ōrum, M. <i>pl.</i> , the Greeks	<b>Troja</b> , -ae, F., Troy, <i>an ancient city of Asia Minor</i>
	<b>Trojāni</b> , -ōrum, M. <i>pl.</i> , the Trojans

a. A few names of cities have only plural forms. **Athēnae** belongs to this class. Its locative is **Athēnis**.

## EXERCISES

5. 1. Cōsul cum exercitū suō tum Laurentī erat. 2. Filius orātōris Athēnis est, sed filia domī manet. 3. Patrēs nostrī ā Graecīs Trojae victi sunt, sed nōs Graecōs vincēmus. 4. Trojānī, quod servitūtem timēbant, domōs fortiter dēfendērunt. 5. Hī hominēs in urbe comprehēnsī sunt, quod eōs hostēs esse arbitrābāmur. 6. Nōmen Trojae saepe audīvimus, quod ibi bellum clārum gestum est. 7. Fēlicior domī eram quam in hāc terrā.

6. 1. My father, who is now in Rome, will return soon. 2. Many wished to remain at home, because they feared wounds and death. 3. The consul's father had a residence at Laurentum. 4. There is a very famous temple at Athens. 5. The king was among those who were killed at Troy.

## LESSON II

## SUMMARY OF PLACE CONSTRUCTIONS

## PREPOSITIONAL PHRASES IN PLACE CONSTRUCTIONS

7. We have already seen prepositional phrases used to denote place to which, place from which, and place in which. A review of these constructions is here given.

(1) Place to which is regularly expressed by the accusative with **ad** or **in**.

*Lēgātus in Italiam rediit, the lieutenant has returned to Italy. Caesar ad urbem profectus est, Caesar set out for the city.*

(2) Place from which is regularly expressed by the ablative with **ab**, **dē**, or **ex**.

*Dictātor ex urbe ēgressus est, the dictator departed from the city.*

(3) Place where is regularly expressed by the ablative with **in**.

*Cōsul in urbe habitat, the consul lives in the city.*

## PLACE CONSTRUCTIONS WITHOUT PREPOSITIONS

8. In expressions of place to which and place from which with names of cities and towns and the noun **domus** the accusative and ablative are used as in other nouns, but without prepositions. A summary of place constructions with these words<sup>1</sup> is as follows:

(1) Place to which is expressed by the accusative without a preposition.

**Lēgātus Rōmam rediit**, *the lieutenant returned to Rome.*

(2) Place from which is expressed by the ablative without a preposition.

**Dictātor Rōmā ēgressus est**, *the dictator departed from Rome.*

(3) Place where is expressed by the locative, which in nouns of the first and second declensions in the singular is identical with the genitive, and in most other words is identical with the ablative.

**Cōsul Rōmae habitat**, *the consul lives in Rome.*

a. A few words, among which are **locus** and **pars**, sometimes omit the preposition in expressions of place where, especially if modified by an adjective.

**Hōc locō nōn diū manēbimus**, *we shall not remain long in this place.*

## 9.

## VOCABULARY

**atque**, *conj.*, and, and also

**crūdēlis**, -e, cruel

**enim**, *conj.*, for

**Latīnus**, -ī, m., Latinus, a legendary king in Italy

**Lāvīnia**, -ae, f., Lavinia, a daughter of Latinus

**mātrīmōnium**, -ī, n., marriage

**proficiscor**, **proficisci**, **profectus sum**, set out

**sive**, *conj.*, whether, or if;

**sive . . . sive**, either . . . or, whether . . . or

<sup>1</sup> Case forms of a few other nouns are occasionally used in place constructions without prepositions.

a. The conjunction **atque** is sometimes used to give prominence to the second of two words or expressions connected, but frequently it does not differ materially in meaning from **et** or **-que**.

b. The position of **enim** is always after one or more words of its sentence, but it is translated as if it stood at the beginning.

### EXERCISES

10. 1. Dux Trojānōrum atque duo ex amīcīs ejus ad urbem profectī sunt. 2. Postea Latinus, quī tum erat rēx in eā urbe, filiam suam ducī Trojānōrum in mātirimōnium (*in marriage*) dedit. 3. Lāvīnia, filia rēgis, Laurentī nōn habitābat. 4. Obses Rōmā discessit et domum properat. 5. Domī semper mānsī, sed terrās externās vidēre volō. 6. Hanc fābulam quam nārrās Rōmae audivī. 7. Multī enim ibi eam nārrābant. 8. Sive vincam sive vincar, numquam Trojam redibō. 9. Puer nocte domō excessit, et nōndum rediit. 10. Illī barbarī crūdēlēs bellum gerere cum nostrīs sociīs cupiunt.

11. 1. My brother, who is now at home, will go to Athens this winter. 2. The Trojans and their allies did not set out for Laurentum. 3. After the battle the soldier returned home. 4. Many came into the town from the fields, because they feared the barbarians. 5. Lavinia was then at home with her mother. 6. I set out from home with the messenger whom the general had sent.

## LESSON III

CONJUGATION OF *NŌLŌ*

12. The verb *nōlō*, *be unwilling, not wish*, is a compound of *volō*.<sup>1</sup> Its principal parts are *nōlō*, *nōlle*, *nōluī*. Like *volō*, it is irregular in the present indicative, the other tenses of the indicative being formed like those of a regular verb of the third conjugation.

## PRESENT INDICATIVE

<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
<i>nōlō</i>	<i>nolumus</i>
<i>nōn vīs</i>	<i>nōn vultis</i>
<i>nōn vult</i>	<i>nōlunt</i>

## IMPERATIVE

<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
<i>Present nōlī</i>	<i>nōlite</i>

## INFINITIVES

*Present nōlle*  
*Perfect nōluisse*

## PARTICIPLE

*Present nōlēns*

## 13.

## VOCABULARY

<i>antiquus</i> , -a, -um, ancient, of long ago	<i>nōlō</i> , <i>nōlle</i> , <i>nōluī</i> , be unwilling, not wish
<i>crēscō</i> , -ere, <i>crēvī</i> , <i>crētum</i> , increase, grow greater	<i>ops</i> , <i>opis</i> , f., power; pl., resources, influence.
<i>Etrūscī</i> , -ōrum, m. pl., the Etrurians or Etruscans	<i>quoniam</i> , conj., since
<i>hiemō</i> , -āre, -āvī, -ātum, winter, spend the winter	<i>Rutulī</i> , -ōrum, m. pl., the Rutuli or Rutulians, a nation of central Italy.

<sup>1</sup> The element with which *volō* is combined is a negative prefix *ne*, replaced in some forms by *nōn*.



VESSELS FOUND IN POMPEII

## EXERCISES

14. 1. Trojānī, quī in Italiam vēnerant, cum Rutulīs bellum gerere nōlēbant. 2. Lēgātus dixit gentem suam pācem facere nōlle (App. 121). 3. In urbe aestāte (App. 69) manēre nolumus. 4. Quoniam Gallī magnās cōpiās nōn habent, adventum nostrum expectāre nōlunt. 5. In illō monte quem vidēs erat urbs antīqua Etruscōrum. 6. Quoniam opēs Trojānōrum crēscēbant, gentēs Italiae potentiam eōrum timēbant. 7. Exercitus Rōmānōrum in Britannīā hiemāre nōlēbat. 8. Bellō cōfectō (App. 75), hī militēs domum proficiscuntur, et magnum gaudium erit. 9. Pater hujus rēgis domicilium Rōmae habēbat, atque ibi saepe vīsus est. 10. Haec gēns ab hostibus domō expulsa erat, et in Galliā errābat.

15. 1. The Romans did not wish to destroy this beautiful city. 2. The resources of the enemy are increasing, and our allies are in danger. 3. We do not wish to spend the winter in this part of Gaul. 4. These men do not have money, because they are unwilling to work. 5. Since the king of the Rutulians wishes to wage war, we shall send an army into his country (*finēs*).

## LESSON IV

DECLENSION OF *VETUS* AND *QUISQUAM*THE ADJECTIVE *VETUS*

16. As we have seen, third declension adjectives of one ending, such as *fēlix* and *potēns* (App. 7, 3), are *i-* stems. But there is one third declension adjective of one ending which is a consonant stem. It is declined as follows:

**vetus, old**  
Base **veter-**

<i>Singular</i>		<i>Plural</i>	
<i>M. F.</i>	<i>N.</i>	<i>M. F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
vetus	vetus	veterēs	vetera
veteris	veteris	veterum	veterum
veterī	veterī	veteribus	veteribus
veterem	vetus	veterēs	vetera
vetere	vetere	veteribus	veteribus

THE INDEFINITE PRONOUN *QUISQUAM*

17. The indefinite pronoun **quisquam**, *any one, any one at all*, is declined as follows:

	<i>M. F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
NOM.	quisquam	quicquam
GEN.	cujusquam	cujusquam
DAT.	cuiquam	cuiquam
ACC.	quemquam	quicquam
ABL.	quōquam	quōquam

a. **Quisquam** is used chiefly in clauses which contain a negative or a comparative, or which are introduced by a word meaning *if*. When a plural is needed, it is supplied from the plural forms of *ūllus*.



## 18.

## VOCABULARY

<b>conciliō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum,</b> win over, conciliate	<b>moenia, -ium, N. pl.,</b> walls (of a city)
<b>impleō, -plēre, -plēvī, -plētum,</b> fill	<b>mortālis, -e,</b> mortal
<b>Latīnī, -ōrum, M. pl.,</b> the Latins, the inhabitants of Latium, in central Italy	<b>quisquam, quicquam,</b> anyone, anything, anyone (or thing)
	at all
	<b>ultimus, -a, -um,</b> last
	<b>vetus, gen. veteris,</b> old

a. The noun **moenia** is declined like the plural of **animal** (App. 3, 4).

b. The neuter form of **quisquam** is sometimes **quidquam** in the nominative and accusative, instead of **quicquam**.

## EXERCISES

19. 1. In vetere templō erat statua pulchra, quam vidēre volēbam. 2. Ilkum veterem librum quem pater meus mihi dedit numquam lēgi. 3. Nūllum sonum audīvimus, neque quemquam vidimus. 4. Rēx hostium sociōs nostrōs conciliāre cōnātus est. 5. Tum multitudō fugientium (*fugitives*, App. 84) omnēs viās implēvit. 6. Post hoc bellum Trojānī et Latīnī socii erant, et dēnique ūnus populus ex duōbus factus est. 7. Sed dē patriā nostrā dictum est *Ē plūribus Ūnum*. 8. Tempus omnia opera mortālia dēlēbit. 9. Hoc ultimum opus ejus viri clārī magnam laudem habet. 10. Ex illō colle moenia urbis nostrae vidēre poteris.

20. 1. The old wall which is behind the temple is low. 2. The soldier has a new sword, but his shield is old. 3. We are unwilling to give money to the boy who has brought the letter. 4. I returned to Rome from Laurentum with the same man with whom I had gone out (*exeō*) from Rome. 5. I have not been at home for four days, nor have I seen anyone from that place.

## LESSON V

## THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD: CLAUSES OF RESULT

## THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD

21. In addition to the indicative and the imperative moods, the verb has another mood, which is called the Subjunctive. The Latin subjunctive is sometimes used to express ideas which we express in English by the indicative, and hence is often translated exactly like the indicative. The first uses of the mood to be taken up are of this class.

There are only four tenses in the subjunctive. They are the present, imperfect, perfect, and past perfect.

## THE PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE OF THE FIRST AND SECOND CONJUGATIONS

22. The verbs **portō** and **moneō** are conjugated as follows in the present subjunctive:

## ACTIVE

<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
portem	portēmus	moneam	moneāmus
portēs	portētis	moneās	moneātis
portet	portent	moneat	moneant

## PASSIVE

<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
porter	portēmur	monear	moneāmur
portēris	portēmini	moneāris	moneāmini
portētur	portentur	moneātur	moneantur

## THE SUBJUNCTIVE IN CLAUSES OF RESULT

23. A subordinate clause which expresses result has its verb in the subjunctive. **Miles tam fortis est ut nullum periculum timeat**, the soldier is so brave that he fears no danger.

## 24.

## VOCABULARY

abundō, -āre, -āvi, overflow	impigrē, <i>adv.</i> , industriously,
adolēscō, -ere, adolēvi, adul-	energetically
tum, grow up, grow to ma-	mātūrus, -a, -um, full grown,
turity	mature
aetās, -tātis, <i>F.</i> , age	tam, <i>adv.</i> , so
imperium, -ī, <i>N.</i> , power, au-	ut, <i>conj.</i> , that
thority	

## EXERCISES

25. 1. Ille homō tam benignus est ut omnēs eum ament.  
 2. Exercitus noster nunc tantus est ut hostēs nōs timeant.  
 3. Stultitia ejus hominis est tanta ut nullōs amīcōs habeat.  
 4. Hic mōns tam altus est ut ab urbe nostrā facile videā-  
 tur. 5. Tum flūmen abundābat et magnum dētrimentum  
 ferēbat. 6. Illi juvenēs in montibus adolēscēbant, et cor-  
 pora eōrum valida fiēbant. 7. Propter aetātem hic agricola  
 nōn jam labōrāre potest, itaque in oppidum migrāre vult.  
 8. Quoniam filius rēgis nōndum mātūrus est, imperium ei  
 nōn dabitur. 9. Puer tam impigrē labōrat ut ab omnibus  
 laudētur.

26. 1. This picture is so beautiful that it is praised by  
 all. 2. The river is so wide that we fear to cross. 3. The  
 danger is so great that we do not dare go out from the city.  
 4. The man is so old that he does not work in the fields.  
 5. Your friend is not here, nor has any one seen him.

## LESSON VI

## THE PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE — CONTINUED

## THE PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE OF THE THIRD AND FOURTH CONJUGATIONS

27. In the third and fourth conjugations the sign of the  
 present subjunctive is *ā*. This tense sign replaces the char-  
 acteristic vowel in *-ō* verbs of the third conjugation. In *-iō*

verbs of the third conjugation and in all verbs of the fourth conjugation, the tense sign follows the -i of the stem.

28. The verbs **dūcō**, **capiō**, and **audiō** are conjugated as follows in the present subjunctive:

ACTIVE		
<i>Singular</i>		
dūcam	capiam	audiam
dūcās	capiās	audiās
dūcat	capiat	audiat
<i>Plural</i>		
dūcāmus	capiāmus	audiāmus
dūcātis	capiātis	audiātis
dūcant	capiant	audiant
PASSIVE		
<i>Singular</i>		
dūcar	capiar	audiar
dūcāris	capiāris	audiāris
dūcātur	capiātur	audiātur
<i>Plural</i>		
dūcāmur	capiāmur	audiāmur
dūcāminī	capiāminī	audiāminī
dūcantur	capiantur	audiantur

## 29.

## VOCABULARY

<b>auferō</b> , -ferre, <b>abstulī</b> , <b>ablātum</b> , carry away, carry off	<b>nāscor</b> , <b>nāscī</b> , <b>nātus sum</b> , be born
<b>crūdēlītās</b> , -tātis, F., cruelty	<b>Rōmulus</b> , -ī, M., Romulus, <i>the founder of Rome</i>
<b>fluō</b> , -ere, <b>flūxī</b> , <b>flūxum</b> , flow	<b>turba</b> , -ae, F., crowd, mob
<b>honor</b> , -ōris, M., honor	
<b>laus</b> , <b>laudis</b> , F., praise, glory	

## EXERCISES

30. 1. Periculum tantum est ut omnēs in hīs locīs **tēla** semper gerant. 2. Flūmen tam celeriter fluit ut sonus **aquae**

ex hōc locō audiātur. 3. Haec animalia tam fera sunt ut nōn facile capiantur. 4. Ille puer tam irātus est ut saxa in (at) aliōs puerōs jaciat. 5. Nōmen Rōmuli in magnō honōre Rōmae erat. 6. Paucōs amicōs in eā turbā vidi. 7. Multi crūdelitātem ejus hominis timēbant ā quō hae statuae ablatae sunt. 8. Multi laudem nōn habent in eō locō in quō nātī sunt. 9. Ille imperātor tam avārus est ut multi eum condemnent.

31. 1. So many have been killed in this war that all now desire peace. 2. The fear of the mob is so great that men are assembling from all parts of the city. 3. The Romans are so brave that they easily repulse the enemy. 4. The boy is so faithful that he never complains. 5. This famous poet was born in a small town, but he lived for many years in Rome.

---

## LESSON VII

### PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE OF SUM AND POSSUM: NOUN CLAUSES OF FACT

#### THE PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE OF SUM AND POSSUM

32. The present subjunctive of the irregular verbs **sum** and **possum** is as follows:

<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
sim	sīmus	possim	possīmus
sis	sītis	possis	possītis
sit	sint	possit	possint

#### NOUN CLAUSES OF FACT

33. The third person singular of **fiō** (App. 36) is often translated *it results* (freely, *the result is*) or *it comes about* (imperfect, *it resulted*, *the result was*, or *it came about*, etc.). When so used these forms are regularly followed by a clause introduced by **ut**, with its verb in the subjunctive. The verb

**accidit**, *it happens* (imperfect *it happened*, etc.) is followed by a clause of the same kind. These clauses introduced by **ut** are not quite the same as those which we have seen in section 23. They are really the subjects of the verbs of the principal clauses, and are called Noun<sup>1</sup> clauses of Fact.

a. Sometimes such clauses are used as objects instead of subjects. In this lesson, however, they are found only as subjects.

**Fit ut paucōs amīcōs habeāmus**, *the result is (it results) that we have few friends.*

**Saepe accidit ut frātre tuum in eā urbe videam**, *it often happens that I see your brother in that city.*

## 34.

## VOCABULARY

<b>accidō, -ere, accidī</b> , happen	<b>mēnsa, -ae, f.</b> , table
<b>Albānus, -a, -um</b> , Alban ;	<b>pellō, -ere, pepulī, pulsum</b> ,
<b>Mōns Albānus</b> , the Alban	drive out, rout
Mount, <i>a small mountain</i>	<b>sub, prep. with acc. and abl.</b> ,
<i>about fifteen miles from Rome</i>	under
<b>ignāvus, -a, -um</b> , cowardly	<b>viātor, -ōris, m.</b> , traveler
<b>ita, adv.</b> , so, to such a degree	

a. To denote the place toward which or up to which motion is directed **sub** takes the accusative; to denote the place where something exists or occurs it regularly takes the ablative.

## EXERCISES

35. 1. **Accidit ut viātor nunc in vicō sit.** 2. **Fit ut patriam dēfendere possīmus, et (eam) dēfendēmus.** 3. **Nostri socii ita fortiter pugnant ut hostēs nullam spem victōriæ habeant.** 4. **Equitēs tam ignāvi sunt ut impetum barbarōrum expectāre nōn audeant.** 5. **Accidit ut sine tēlis sīmus.**

<sup>1</sup> Or substantive clauses of fact.



TOMB OF THE EMPEROR HADRIAN, IN ROME

6. Fit ut viātōrēs flūmen trānsire nōn possint. 7. Sub (*at the foot of*) monte Albānō nova urbs condita est. 8. Māter puerī cibum in mēnsā posuit, et nunc eum expectat. 9. Ille rēx frātre suum pepulit et in locō ejus rēgnāvit.

36. 1. It happens that no one can see us (is able to see us). 2. The result is that the city is in great danger. 3. The traveler is so cowardly that he remains in the village. 4. This farmer works so energetically that he is often tired out. 5. You are so cowardly that you cannot be (are not able to be) a good soldier.

## LESSON VIII

## THE IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE OF REGULAR VERBS: THE SEQUENCE OF TENSES

## THE IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE

37. The imperfect subjunctive of all regular verbs has the tense sign *-rē*<sup>1</sup> before the personal endings. It is formed on the present stem.

ACTIVE				
<i>Singular</i>				
I.	II.	III.		IV.
portārem	monērem	dūcerem	caperem	audīrem
portārēs	monērēs	dūcerēs	caperēs	audīrēs
portāret	monēret	dūceret	caperet	audīret
<i>Plural</i>				
portārēmus	monērēmus	dūcerēmus	caperēmus	audīrēmus
portārētis	monērētis	dūcerētis	caperētis	audīrētis
portārent	monērent	dūcerent	caperent	audīrent
PASSIVE				
<i>Singular</i>				
portārer	monērer	dūcerer	caperer	audīrer
portārēris	monērēris	dūcerēris	caperēris	audīrēris
portārētur	monērētur	dūcerētur	caperētur	audīrētur
<i>Plural</i>				
portārēmur	monērēmur	dūcerēmur	caperēmur	audīrēmur
portārēmini	monērēmini	dūcerēmini	caperēmini	audīrēmini
portārentur	monērentur	dūcerentur	caperentur	audīrentur

a. The imperfect subjunctive may be formed by adding the personal endings to the present active infinitive, with the necessary changes in quantity. This statement applies to all irregular verbs as well as to regular verbs.

<sup>1</sup> As has been previously stated, a long vowel in a tense sign or stem ending becomes short before the personal endings *-m*, *-t*, *-nt*, *-r*, and *-ntur*.



## THE SEQUENCE OF TENSES

38. (1) When the verb in the principal clause of a complex sentence is present, future, or futurē perfect, the verb of the subordinate clause, if subjunctive, is regularly present (or perfect).<sup>1</sup>

(2) When the verb in the principal clause is imperfect, perfect, or past perfect, the subjunctive in the subordinate clause is regularly imperfect (or past perfect).<sup>1</sup>

a. If the main verb is a perfect which is equivalent to an English present perfect, the dependent subjunctive is sometimes present and sometimes imperfect.

b. A result clause sometimes has its verb in the perfect after a principal verb denoting past time.

## 39.

## VOCABULARY

Ascanius, -ī, m., Ascanius, the legendary founder of Alba Longa	falsō, <i>adv.</i> , falsely laetitia, -ae, f., joy, gladness tenuis, -e, slight, thin; shallow
cōspectus, -ūs, m., sight	vēnor, -ārī, -ātus sum, hunt
dēdō, -dere, -didī, -ditum, surrender, give up	vocō, -āre, āvī, -ātum, call

## EXERCISES

40. 1. Ille cōsul ita fortiter patriam dēfenderat ut omnēs cīvēs eum laudārent. 2. Ita fēlicēs in eā urbe erāmus ut diū manērēmus. 3. Cōpiaē hostium tantae erant ut castra nōn facile dēfenderentur. 4. Audīvimus hanc parvam urbem ab Ascaniō conditam esse. 5. Centuriō quī in cōspectū imperātōris stābat falsō ab inimicō accūsābātur. 6. Aqua ita tenuis erat ut piscēs ā ripā vidērentur. 7. Puerī quī in silvā vērābantur nunc domum redeunt, quod ā patre suō vocātī sunt. 8. Hostēs sē dēdidērunt, et magna laetitia in

<sup>1</sup> The forms and uses of the perfect and past perfect subjunctive will be given later.

patriā nostrā est. 9. Barbari ita terrentur ut ex omnibus partibus fugiant.

41. 1. Our soldiers made an attack so fiercely that they quickly captured the enemy's camp. 2. The general was so brave that he was loved by all the soldiers. 3. The forest was so large that we did not easily find our way in it. 4. The Trojans were so few that they did not resist longer. 5. The joy of the traveler was so great that he at once called his friend. 6. The forest in which I often hunt is in sight of (from) the village.

---

## LESSON IX

### THE IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE OF *SUM* AND *POSSUM*: IMPERSONAL VERBS

#### THE IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE OF *SUM* AND *POSSUM*

42. The verbs **sum** and **possum** are conjugated as follows in the imperfect subjunctive:

<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
essem	essēmus	possem	possēmus
essēs	essētis	possēs	possētis
esset	essent	posset	possent

a. As has been seen in the case of regular verbs, these imperfect subjunctives are formed by adding the personal endings to the present infinitive.

#### IMPERSONAL VERBS

43. There are a few Latin verbs which do not have a noun or pronoun as a subject. They have as subject an infinitive, or an expression consisting of an infinitive with its subject in the accusative. Such verbs are called Impersonal. Two of the most important impersonal verbs are **oportet**, *it is necessary* or *it is proper*, and **licet**, *it is permitted*.

## USE OF OPORTET

44. With **oportet** the subject is regularly an infinitive with subject accusative.

**Hominem manēre oportet**, *it is necessary that the man remain, or it is necessary for the man to remain.* This expression may also be translated *the man must remain*, or *the man ought to remain.* The latter translations seem to us in English to indicate a personal subject, but we must remember that in Latin the construction differs from the construction of the English equivalent.

## USE OF LICET

45. The verb **licet** takes an infinitive as subject. The dative is commonly used to denote the person who is permitted to do the act denoted by the infinitive.

**Centuriōnī redire licet**, *it is permitted (to) the centurion to return, or the centurion is permitted to return.* As in the use of **oportet**, the English translation commonly employs a personal verb; but it must be remembered that the word for *centurion* as used in this sentence is not to be expressed in Latin by the nominative.

46.

## VOCABULARY

<b>comes, comitis</b> , m., companion.	<b>licet, licēre, licuit</b> , it is permitted, it is allowed
comrade	
<b>contemnō, -temnere, -tempsī, -temptum</b> , scorn, despise	<b>oportet, oportēre, oportuit</b> , it is necessary, it is proper, one must, one ought
<b>eques, equitis</b> , m., horseman:	
pl. horsemen or cavalry	<b>rēmus, -ī</b> , m., oar
<b>jūs, jūris</b> , n., right, law	<b>turris, turris, -ium</b> , f., tower

a. The accusative singular of **turris** is regularly **turrim** and the ablative is **turri**. A few other i-stem nouns have the accusative in **-im** and the ablative in **-ī**.

## EXERCISES

47. 1. Accidit<sup>1</sup> ut nāvis sine rēmīs esset. 2. Ripae flūminis tam altae erant ut equitēs eās ascendere nōn possent. 3. Frēbat ut illi hominēs jūs contemnerent. 4. Turre tanta erat ut eam ex mūrō vidēre possēmus. 5. Exercitum in hōc locō manēre nōn oportet. 6. Cūr in viā ambulāre nōn licet? 7. Imperātōrem castra et arma dēdere nōn oportet. 8. Tibi hunc librum auferre nōn licet. 9. Comitēs mei tam ignāvī erant ut nihil efficere possem. 10. Ea victōria erat tanta ut per tōtam urbem laetitia esset.

48. 1. Our companions were so brave that the enemy could not (were not able to) frighten them. 2. It happened that the horsemen were in the village. 3. I worked so energetically that I was soon tired out. 4. It is necessary that help be sent (help to be sent) at once. 5. The traveler ought to set out today.

## LESSON X

## DATIVE OF PURPOSE: DATIVE OF REFERENCE

## THE DATIVE OF PURPOSE

49. A noun in the dative is sometimes used to denote the purpose or end which something serves or is intended to serve.

**Hunc librum dōnō mīsi, I sent this book as a gift (lit. for a gift).**

a. The dative of purpose is sometimes employed where the English usage would require a predicate nominative.

**Haec fāma auxiliō erit, this reputation will be a help.**

<sup>1</sup> The form accidit may be either present, *it happens*, or perfect, *it happened*. See the principal parts. The use of *esset* in the subordinate clause shows by the sequence of tenses that *accidit* is here perfect.

## THE DATIVE OF REFERENCE

50. The dative is sometimes used to denote the person with reference to whom an act is said to be done or a situation to exist. This use is especially important in expressions which contain a dative of purpose.

**Legiō equitātui auxiliō missa est, the legion was sent as aid (lit. for aid) to the cavalry.**

a. Sometimes the dative of reference refers to a thing instead of a person.

**Cohors castris praesidiō relicta est, the cohort was left as a guard to the camp.**

51.

## VOCABULARY

**amnis, amnis, -ium, m., river**

**cēna, -ae, f., dinner**

**cōscribō, -scribere, -scripsi,**

**-scriptum, enroll**

**dextra, -ae, f., right hand**

**imprōvisō, adv., unexpectedly**

**lapis, lapidis, m., stone**

**pedes, peditis, m., foot soldier:**

**pl., infantry**

**subsidiū, -i, n., reinforcements**

a. The noun **dextra** is merely the feminine form of the adjective **dexter, -tra, -trum**, used as a noun.

## EXERCISES

52. 1. Hī flōrēs mihi dōnō missī sunt. 2. Caesar statim legiōnem subsidiō oppidānis mīsit. 3. Cōsiliū (*advice*) tuum nōbīs semper auxiliō fuit. 4. Lēgātus ūnam legiōnem castris praesidiō reliquit. 5. Tum amnis tam lātus erat ut peditēs trānsire nōn possent. 6. Ille Gallus dextram suam in proeliō āmisit. 7. Cēna parāta est, sed accidit ut frāter meus invenīrī non possit. 8. Hōs puerōs lapidēs jacere nōn oportet. 9. Caesarī duās novās legiōnēs cōscribere licuit. 10. Barbarī ita imprōvisō impetum fēcērunt ut periculum nostrī exercitūs magnum esset.

53. 1. Labienus at once sent the infantry as aid (for aid) to the town. 2. Two legions were sent as aid to our allies whose towns were being burned. 3. We have come as reënforcements to you, because your nation ought not to be defeated. 4. The friendship of the Romans was (for) a great help to this leader. 5. The consul is permitted (it is permitted to the consul) to enroll another legion.

## LESSON XI

### PERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE: CUM CAUSAL CLAUSES

#### THE PERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE, ACTIVE VOICE

54. The perfect active subjunctive is formed on the perfect stem with the tense sign *-erī*.

#### *Singular*

laudāverim	monuerim	dūxerim	audiverim
laudāveris	monueris	dūxeris	audiveris
laudaverit	monuerit	dūxerit	audiverit

#### *Plural*

laudāverimus	monuerimus	dūxerimus	audiverimus
laudāveritis	monueritis	dūxeritis	audiveritis
laudāverint	monuerint	dūxerint	audiverint

a. The perfect subjunctive of *sum* is formed in like manner on the stem *fu-*: *fuerim, fueris, etc.*

#### THE PERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE, PASSIVE VOICE

55. The perfect passive subjunctive is made up of the past participle and the present subjunctive of *sum*.

portātus sim	monitus sim	ductus sim	audītus sim
portātus sis	monitus sis	ductus sis	audītus sis
<i>etc.</i>	<i>etc.</i>	<i>etc.</i>	<i>etc.</i>

## CUM CAUSAL CLAUSES

56. A subordinate clause introduced by **cum** meaning *since* has its verb in the subjunctive.

**Cum nūlla nāvis in cōspectū sit, domum revertar, since there is no ship in sight, I shall return home.**

57.

## VOCABULARY

apud, <i>prep. with acc.</i> , among,	minae, -ārum, <i>f. pl.</i> , threats
with	revertor, reverti, reverti, re-
cum, <i>conj.</i> , since, although,	versum, return
when	sinistra, -ae, <i>f.</i> , left hand
cursus, -ūs, <i>m.</i> , course	videor, -ēri, vīsus sum, seem,
flectō, -ere, flexi, flexum, turn,	appear
bend	

a. The verb **revertor** is commonly used as a deponent in the present, imperfect, and future tenses. In the perfect, past perfect, and future perfect it has active forms. Sometimes active forms are found in the present system.

b. The verb **videor**, meaning *seem*, is merely the passive form of **videō**, *see*. It will be possible to decide from the context whether a doubtful form should be translated *seem* or as a passive of **videō**.

## EXERCISES

58. 1. Cum hunc puerum laudāveris, amīcus fidēlis tuus semper erit. 2. Cum Helvētīi cursum suum flexerint, eōs diūtius sequī nōn possumus. 3. Cum nihil hīc efficere possīmus, domum revertēmur. 4. Cum auctōritās tua magna apud Gallōs sit, tē cum hāc epistolā in Galliam mittam. 5. Ille dux nōn mihi fortis vidētur. 6. Cum exercitus meus numquam victus sit, minās tuās nōn vereor. 7. Puer sinistrā epistolam tenet quam ei ā sorōre data est. 8. In hīs dolōribus amīcitia tua mihi magnō auxiliō est. 9. Gladius



TEMPLE IN ROME

quem frāter meus tibi dōnō dedit est gravis. 10. Factum est ut tē juvāre nōn possēmus.

59. 1. Since you have often praised this picture, I will give it to you. 2. Since no enemy has been seen today, we shall return to (into) the village. 3. Since the cavalry has not yet arrived, we cannot make an attack. 4. Since the traveler has turned his course toward (ad) the river, we shall soon see him. 5. Caesar left one legion as a guard (Section 49) for the bridge. 6. The soldiers are so brave that they do not fear the threats of the enemy.



## LESSON XII

THE PAST PERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE: *CUM* ADVERSATIVE CLAUSES

## THE PAST PERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE, ACTIVE VOICE

60. The past perfect subjunctive in the active voice is formed on the perfect stem with the tense sign **-issē**.

*Singular*

portāvissem	monuissē	dūxissem	audīvissem
portāvissēs	monuissēs	dūxissēs	audīvissēs
portāvisset	monuisset	dūxisset	audīvisset

*Plural*

portāvissēmus	monuissēmus	dūxissēmus	audīvissēmus
portāvissētis	monuissētis	dūxissētis	audīvissētis
portāvisset	monuissent	dūxissent	audīvisset

a. The past perfect subjunctive of *sum* is formed in like manner with the stem **fu-**: **fuissem**, **fuisēs**, etc.

## THE PAST PERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE, PASSIVE VOICE

61. The past perfect subjunctive in the passive voice is made up of the past participle and the imperfect subjunctive of *sum*.

portātus essem	monitus essem	ductus essem	audītus essem
portātus essēs	monitus essēs	ductus essēs	audītus essēs
<i>etc.</i>	<i>etc.</i>	<i>etc.</i>	<i>etc.</i>

*CUM* ADVERSATIVE CLAUSES

62. A subordinate clause introduced by *cum* meaning *although* has its verb in the subjunctive.

*Cum ea urbs parva esset, tamen magnam glōriam habēbat, although that city was small, nevertheless it had great fame.*

a. The adverb **tamen** frequently stands in the principal clause with which an adversative clause is connected.

## 63.

## VOCABULARY

<b>certus, -a, -um</b> , certain	<b>puerilis, -e</b> , childish, of a child,
<b>cēterī, -ae, -a</b> , the other	of children
<b>ob</b> , <i>prep. with acc.</i> , on account of	<b>retardō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum</b> , keep back, check
<b>ōrdō, ōrdinis, m.</b> , order, rank	<b>vāgītus, -ūs, m.</b> , wailing, crying
<b>potestās, -tātis, f.</b> , power	

a. The singular forms of **cēterī** are rare, and may be disregarded for the present.

b. The most important use of **ob** is in phrases containing a form of **causa** or **rēs**.

## EXERCISES

64. 1. Cum puer saepe monitus esset, tamen impigrē nōn labōrābat. 2. Cum nūllus certus ōrdō esset, tamen quisque in suō locō hostibus (App. 51) restitit. 3. Ob eam rem impetus hostium retardātus est, sed dēnique castra capta sunt. 4. Cum Gallī potestātem ejus rēgis semper timuissent, tamen eī fortiter restitērunt. 5. Cum cēterī pervēnissent, decem equitēs viam per silvam reperīre nōn poterant. 6. Cum (Section 56) libertātem semper laudāveritis, vōs patriam nunc dēfendere oportet. 7. In eō locō vāgītus puerilis audītus est. 8. Verba tua mihi tum magnō auxiliō erant. 9. Cēterī domī manēre nōlunt.

65. 1. Although the Romans had not sent aid, the townspeople were trying to defend the town. 2. Although the attack had been checked, we were not safe. 3. Since you have received my letter, you know the cause of this delay. 4. Although I had never injured him (App. 51), he was always my enemy. 5. Since you are a young man, you ought to defend your country.

## LESSON XIII

CONJUGATION OF *FERŌ*: *CUM* DESCRIPTIVE CLAUSES  
OF SITUATIONCONJUGATION OF *FERŌ*

66. The irregular verb *ferŏ* is conjugated as follows in the present indicative:

ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
<i>ferŏ</i>	<i>ferimus</i>	<i>feror</i>	<i>ferimur</i>
<i>fers</i>	<i>fertis</i>	<i>ferris</i>	<i>ferimini</i>
<i>fert</i>	<i>ferunt</i>	<i>fertur</i>	<i>feruntur</i>

A synopsis of *ferŏ* in the first person singular is as follows:

	INDICATIVE		SUBJUNCTIVE	
	ACTIVE	PASSIVE	ACTIVE	PASSIVE
<i>Pres.</i>	<i>ferŏ</i>	<i>feror</i>	<i>feram</i>	<i>ferar</i>
<i>Impf.</i>	<i>ferēbam</i>	<i>ferēbar</i>	<i>ferrem</i>	<i>ferrer</i>
<i>Fut.</i>	<i>feram</i>	<i>ferar</i>		
<i>Perf.</i>	<i>tuli</i>	<i>lātus sum</i>	<i>tulerim</i>	<i>lātus sim</i>
<i>P. Pf.</i>	<i>tuleram</i>	<i>lātus eram</i>	<i>tulisse</i>	<i>lātus essem</i>
<i>F. Pf.</i>	<i>tulerŏ</i>	<i>lātus erŏ</i>		

	INFINITIVES		PARTICIPLES	
	ACTIVE	PASSIVE	ACTIVE	PASSIVE
<i>Pres.</i>	<i>ferre</i>	<i>ferri</i>	<i>ferēns</i>	—
<i>Past</i>	<i>tulisse</i>	<i>lātus esse</i>	—	<i>lātus</i>
<i>Fut.</i>	<i>lātūrus esse</i>	<i>lātum iri</i>	<i>lātūrus</i>	<i>ferendus</i>

a. Other forms of *ferŏ* will be found in section 34 of the Appendix.

*CUM* DESCRIPTIVE CLAUSE OF SITUATION

67. The imperfect or past perfect subjunctive is often used in a clause introduced by *cum* meaning *when*. Such a clause describes the situation or makes known the time of the main act.

a. The meaning of the principal clause will usually make it easy to decide whether *cum* should be translated *since*, *although*, or *when*. If the tense of the subjunctive is present or perfect, *cum* will mean *since* or *although* (not *when*).

## 68.

## VOCABULARY

avus, -ī, m., grandfather

ēducō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, rear,  
bring up

latrō, latrōnis, m., robber, brig-  
and

lūdus, -ī, m., game

nepōs, nepōtis, m., grandson

pāstor, pāstōris, m., shepherd

pecus, pecudis, f., beast; *pl.*,  
flock, herd

spectāculum, -ī, n., spectacle

## EXERCISES

69. 1. Cum pāstor pecudēs suās in montēs ageret, latrōnēs eum aggressī sunt. 2. Cum latrō praedam auferret, ā militibus captus est. 3. Cum Rōmulus urbem suam condidisset, gentēs finitimās ad spectāculum lūdōrum invitāvit. 4. Cum Rōmulus et frāter ejus apud<sup>1</sup> pāstōrem ēducārentur, nēmō scīvit eōs esse nepōtēs rēgis. 5. Cum (Section 62) fortis semper fueris,<sup>2</sup> nunc pugnāre nōn vis. 6. Haec tēla tam gravia sunt ut ea ferre nōn possīmus. 7. Cum (Section 56) multī latrōnēs in eīs locīs essent, pāstōrēs semper tēla ferēbant. 8. Propter hās injuriās dēnique barbaris bellum intulimus.

70. 1. When the robber saw the shepherds, he fled. 2. When the city had been founded, Romulus gave a name to it. 3. When we were in Rome, we saw the king and queen. 4. Although Romulus and his brother were grandsons of the king, they were reared at the house of (apud) a shepherd. 5. It happened that the brother of Romulus had been captured by the robbers.

<sup>1</sup> at the house of.

<sup>2</sup> Perfect subjunctive of sum.

## LESSON XIV

SUBJUNCTIVE OF *VOLŌ* AND *EŌ*: INDIRECT QUESTIONSTHE SUBJUNCTIVE OF *VOLŌ*

71. The irregular verb *volō* is conjugated as follows in the subjunctive mood:

PRESENT		IMPERFECT	
<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
velim	velimus	vellem	vellēmus
velis	velitis	vellēs	vellētis
velit	velint	vellet	vellent
PERFECT		PAST PERFECT	
voluerim		voluissē	
volueris		voluissēs	
etc.		etc.	

72. THE SUBJUNCTIVE OF *EŌ*

PRESENT		IMPERFECT	
<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
eam	eāmus	īrem	īrēmus
eās	eātis	īrēs	īrētis
eat	eant	īret	īrent
PERFECT		PAST PERFECT	
ierim (īverim)		issem (īvissem)	
ieris (īveris)		issēs (īvissēs)	
etc.		etc.	

## INDIRECT QUESTIONS

73. An indirect question is a question which is quoted with changed form.

*He asked who the man was.* (Direct, *Who is the man?*)

Indirect questions depend on words of *asking, knowing, perceiving*, and the like.

## MOOD IN INDIRECT QUESTIONS

74. In Latin, an indirect question has its verb in the subjunctive.

*Quaesivī quis hoc fēcisset, I asked who had done this.*

## 75.

## VOCABULARY

**forte**, *adv.*, by chance

**geminī**, -ōrum, *m. pl.*, twins

**ignōrō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, not know, be unaware

**Remus**, -i, *m.*, Remus, the brother of Romulus

**suspīcor**, -ārī, -ātus sum, suspect

**trānsiliō**, -ire, -uī, jump over

**uterque**, **utroque**, **utrumque**, each (of two)

**vultur**, **vulturis**, *m.*, vulture

a. When only two persons are referred to, *each* is translated by **uterque**; when more than two are thought of, by **quisque**.

## EXERCISES

76. 1. Uxor pāstōris quaesivī quī eī puerī essent. 2. Vir repperit cūr filius suus domō proficīscī vellet. 3. Latrōnēs ignōrābant quis hās cōpiās dūceret. 4. Cum (Section 56) domī manēre velīs, ego tēcum (App. 142 a) manēbō. 5. Cum viātor per silvam iret, forte duōs vulturēs vidit. 6. Lēgātus quaerit cūr explōrātōrēs flūmen trānseant. 7. Pāstor quī Rōmulum et Remum repperit suspicābātur eōs esse geminōs. 8. Uterque hōrum geminōrum nōmen suum novae urbi dare voluit. 9. Cum Rōmulus novam urbem aedificāret, Remus mūrū trānsiluit. 10. Cum libertātem habēre velītis, vōs fortēs esse oportet.

77. 1. The lieutenant asked why the cohort had not been sent. 2. The shepherd did not know (**ignōrō**) who was the grandfather of these boys. 3. Remus asked why the robbers wished to lead him to (**ad**) the king. 4. Since you are going alone, take your sword. 5. When I was crossing the valley, I saw a fire on the hill.

## LESSON XV

## FUTURE PASSIVE PARTICIPLE: DATIVE OF AGENT

## THE FUTURE PASSIVE PARTICIPLE

78. In addition to the present active participle, the past passive participle, and the future active participle, which have been given, Latin has also a future passive participle. It is formed on the present stem, and ends in **-ndus**, **-nda**, **-ndum**.

I  
portandus, -a, -um

II  
monendus, -a, -um

III  
ducendus, -a, -um  
capiendus, -a, -um

IV  
audiendus, -a, -um

a. This participle is often used with forms of the verb **sum** to denote an act which must be done or ought to be done.

**Auxilium mittendum est**, *help must be sent (or ought to be sent)*.

## THE DATIVE OF AGENT

79. With the future passive participle, the person by whom the act must be done or ought to be done is regularly denoted by the dative.

**Epistula mihi mittenda est**, *a letter ought to be sent by me*.

a. Expressions which contain a future passive participle are often best translated by changing the verb to the active voice. The dative of agent is then represented by the subject of the active verb.

**Epistula mihi mittenda est**, *a letter ought to be sent by me—I ought to send a letter*.

## 80.

## VOCABULARY

conditor, -ōris, M., founder	ostendō, -tendere, -tendī, -tentum, show, point out
divitiae, -ārum, F. pl., riches, wealth	perterreō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, terrify
labor, -ōris, M., labor, toil	tantopere, adv., so greatly
nōtus, -a, -um, known	
origō, -inis, F., origin	

## EXERCISES

81. 1. Conditor urbis nostrae nōbīs laudandus est. 2. Cum divitiās habēre velīs, labor tibi nōn vītandus est. 3. Remus frātrī suō nōn interficiendus est. 4. Militēs tantopere perterriti sunt ut multī domum redīre vellent. 5. Sed auxilium ā sociīs missum est, et hostēs victi sunt. 6. Origō illius urbis clārae nōbīs nōn nōta est. 7. Lēgātus militibus collem ostendit quī eis capiendus erat. 8. Cum rēx ex urbe exīret, multōs comitēs sēcum (App. 142, a) dūxit. 9. Nōn vidēō cūr hanc gentem semper tantopere laudāverīs. 10. Crūdēlēs enim (Section 9, b) cīvēs ejus sunt, et rēx eōrum est tyrannus.

82. 1. The city ought to be defended by the citizens. 2. The robbers ought to be led to the king by the young man. 3. The weapons ought not to be left in camp by the soldiers. 4. This book ought to be read by boys and girls. 5. Many did not know why the barbarians wished to fight.



KEY FROM AN ANCIENT HOUSE



## LESSON XVI

THE PRESENT AND IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE OF *FIŌ* AND *NŌLŌ*: INDIRECT DISCOURSE, COMPLETEDTHE PRESENT AND IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE OF *FIŌ*

83. The irregular verb *fiŏ* is conjugated as follows in the subjunctive:

PRESENT		IMPERFECT	
<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
<i>fiām</i>	<i>fiāmus</i>	<i>fierem</i>	<i>fierēmus</i>
<i>fiās</i>	<i>fiātis</i>	<i>fierēs</i>	<i>fierētis</i>
<i>fiat</i>	<i>fiant</i>	<i>fieret</i>	<i>fierent</i>
PERFECT		PAST PERFECT	
<i>factus sim</i>		<i>factus essem</i>	
<i>factus sis</i>		<i>factus essēs</i>	
<i>etc.</i>		<i>etc.</i>	

a. The present subjunctive is made like that of *capiŏ*.

THE PRESENT AND IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE OF *NŌLŌ*

84. The irregular verb *nŏlŏ* is conjugated as follows in the subjunctive:

PRESENT		IMPERFECT	
<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
<i>nŏlim</i>	<i>nŏlīmus</i>	<i>nŏllem</i>	<i>nŏllēmus</i>
<i>nŏlis</i>	<i>nŏlītis</i>	<i>nŏllēs</i>	<i>nŏllētis</i>
<i>nŏlit</i>	<i>nŏlint</i>	<i>nŏllet</i>	<i>nŏllent</i>
PERFECT		PAST PERFECT	
<i>nŏluerim</i>		<i>nŏluissem</i>	
<i>nŏlueris</i>		<i>nŏluisēs</i>	
<i>etc.</i>		<i>etc.</i>	

a. The imperfect subjunctive, like that of regular verbs, is formed by adding the personal endings to the present infinitive.

## SUBORDINATE CLAUSES AND COMMANDS IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE

85. We have already seen the use of the infinitive with its subject in the accusative in indirect discourse. But all the examples given represented simple sentences consisting of statements in direct discourse. The following rules apply to complex sentences and also to sentences expressing commands.

I. The verb of a principal clause expressing a statement is in the infinitive in indirect discourse, and its subject is in the accusative.

II. The verb of a subordinate clause in indirect discourse is in the subjunctive.

III. A verb expressing a command in indirect discourse is in the subjunctive.<sup>1</sup>

## 86.

## VOCABULARY

<b>benignē</b> , <i>adv.</i> , kindly	<b>supplicium</b> , -ī, N., punishment
<b>explōrātor</b> , -ōris, M., scout	<b>terror</b> , -ōris, M., terror, fright
<b>inde</b> , <i>adv.</i> , thence, from that place	<b>Tiberis</b> , -is, M., the Tiber, a river of Italy
<b>rēgius</b> , -a, -um, royal, of the king	<b>tractō</b> , -āre, -āvī, -ātum, treat

## EXERCISES

87. 1. Miles dixit barbarum magnō in terrōre esse quod supplicium timēret. 2. Cum cōpiae rēgiae pugnāre nōllent, tamen dux eōs impetum facere jussit. 3. Obsidēs tam benignē tractātī sunt ut domum redire nōlint. 4. Explōrātor inde vidēre poterat quid in castris hostium fieret. 5. Cum periculum sociōrum nostrōrum majus fiat, auxilium statim mittēmus. 6. Tiberis, quī nōn longē ab hōc locō abest, magnum flūmen est. 7. Ea urbs Rōmānis nōn dēlenda est. 8. Pāstor crēdidit puerōs quōs invēnisset esse nepōtēs frātris

<sup>1</sup> No examples of commands in indirect discourse are given for the present, but this statement is included for the sake of a complete presentation of the subject.

rēgis. 9. Cum patriam dēfendere nōlis, tē civem esse nōn oportet.

88. 1. The terror of the townspeople is so great that they are unwilling to go out from the town. 2. Although the attack was made fiercely, the legions did not fear. 3. Romulus said that he would give a name to the city which he had founded. 4. Since Ascanius was unwilling to remain longer in the city, the royal power was given to his mother. 5. The scout said that he had remained in the forest because he did not wish to be seen by the enemy.

## LESSON XVII

### PRESENT PASSIVE IMPERATIVE: IMPERSONAL USE OF CERTAIN VERBS IN THE PASSIVE

#### THE PRESENT PASSIVE IMPERATIVE

89. The present passive imperative of regular verbs of the four conjugations is as follows:

#### I

*Sing.* laudāre, be praised (*spoken to one person*)

*Plur.* laudāmini, be praised (*spoken to more than one*)

#### II

#### III

#### IV

*Sing.* monēre

dūcere

capere

audīre

*Plur.* monēmini

dūcimini

capimini

audīmini

#### THE PRESENT IMPERATIVES OF DEPONENTS

90. The present imperative of deponent verbs of the four conjugations is as follows:

#### I

#### II

#### III

#### IV

cōnāre

pollicēre

sequere

potire

cōnāmini

pollicēmini

sequimini

potīmini

a. The imperative of *ēgredior* is formed like that of *sequor*.

## IMPERSONAL USE OF CERTAIN VERBS

91. Certain intransitive verbs are sometimes used impersonally in the passive.

**Pugnātur**, *it is being fought (a fight is going on).*

a. Such impersonal verbs are usually translated in the active, with whatever subject is implied by the general sense of the passage. Thus, **pugnātur** may be translated *they are fighting*. **Perventum est** may be translated *they arrived* or *they have arrived*. These impersonal uses generally refer to the acts of plural subjects.

b. An intransitive verb cannot be used in the passive with a personal subject.

## 92.

## VOCABULARY

<b>adjuvō</b> , -juvāre, -jūvī, -jūtum, help, assist	<b>regō</b> , -ere, <b>rēxī</b> , <b>rēctum</b> , rule
<b>dēcernō</b> , -cernere, -crēvī, -crētum, decide	<b>successus</b> , -ūs, M., success
<b>dīves</b> , <i>gen. dīvitīs</i> , rich, wealthy	<b>toga</b> , -ae, F., toga, a garment worn by the Romans
<b>praeter</b> , <i>prep. with acc.</i> , except	<b>Vesta</b> , -ae, F., Vesta, a goddess worshiped by the Romans

## EXERCISES

93. 1. Regere<sup>1</sup> ā mē et domī manē. 2. Iterum cōnāre, et successum habēbis. 3. Ducem, milītēs<sup>2</sup>, sequiminī et castrīs<sup>3</sup> hostium potiminī. 4. Diū in hōc locō pugnātum est, sed dēnique Rōmānī hostēs reppulērunt. 5. Pater hujus puerī est dīves et magnam domum habet. 6. Explōrātor statim ad exercitum redīre dēcrēvit. 7. Nēmō praeter imperātōrem togam ejus modī habēbat. 8. Templum Vestae in eō locō

<sup>1</sup> Not an infinitive.

<sup>2</sup> See App. 80, note.

<sup>3</sup> See App. 79.

aedificātum est. 9. Cum mē adjuvāre antea nōlueris cūr auxilium meum nunc postulās?

94. 1. Promise your help to my friend. 2. Use your swords, soldiers. 3. They fought (it was fought) long and fiercely in the streets of this town. 4. We have decided to help our allies at once. 5. No one except the centurion dared to go out from the camp. 6. Lavinia ruled the city which the Trojans had built.

---

## LESSON XVIII

### THE GERUNDIVE

95. The future passive participle of a transitive verb is often used in agreement with a noun or pronoun in phrases which are equivalent in meaning to a gerund with an object.<sup>1</sup>

*Spēs urbis capiendae, hope of capturing the city.* The meaning is the same as *spēs urbem capiendī*.

The future passive participle when thus used is called the Gerundive. The gerundive may be used in either number and in any case, to agree with the noun or pronoun to which it belongs.

a. Since the gerund cannot stand as the object of a preposition and at the same time govern an object, gerundive phrases are frequently used with the forms of transitive verbs. The English translation of such phrases is the same as if the gerundive were a gerund having as its object the word with which the gerundive agrees.

---

<sup>1</sup> The gerundive construction was not a substitute for the gerund in the thought of the Romans, but was probably the usage from which the gerund was derived.

b. The case uses of the gerundive construction are in general the same as those of the gerund.

**cupidus oppidī expugnandī**, *desirous of storming the town.*

**auxilii ferendī causā**, *for the purpose (sake) of bringing aid.*

**ad eas res cōficiendās**, *for accomplishing these things (or to accomplish these things).*

**dē auxiliō mittendō**, *about (concerning) sending aid.*

**lapidibus portandis**, *by carrying stones.*

96. The following distinctions between the gerund and gerundive are to be observed:

GERUND	GERUNDIVE
A noun	A participle
Active in meaning	Passive
Neuter gender	All genders
Used only in the singular	Both numbers

## 97.

## VOCABULARY

<b>agnōscō, -nōscere, -nōvī, -nitum</b> , recognize	<b>maestus, -a, -um</b> , sad, sorrowful
<b>comparō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum</b> , compare, prepare	<b>mulier, mulieris, f.</b> , woman
<b>cōnfestim, adv.</b> , at once, immediately	<b>permittō, -mittere, -misi, -missum</b> , permit; entrust
<b>conjūnx, conjugis, m., f.</b> , wife, husband	<b>Sabīnī, -ōrum, m. pl.</b> , the Sabines, <i>an ancient Italian people</i>

## EXERCISES

98. 1. Haec fēmina spem filiae suae vidēdae habet. 2. Ad eas res cōficiendās hominēs cōnfestim missi sunt. 3. Barbari lapidibus jaciendis multōs vulnerāvērunt. 4. Sabīni pācis petendae causā lēgātōs misērunt. 5. Tum conjugēs

Rōmānōrum maestae erant, quod bellum inter Rōmānōs et Sabīnōs gerēbātur. 6. Ille juvenis sorōrem agnōvit, quam multōs annōs nōn viderat. 7. Illa terra cum terrā nostrā nōn comparanda est<sup>1</sup>; itaque barbarī nostrōs agrōs occupāvērunt. 8. Tē adjuvāre volēbam, sed id non permissum est. 9. Proficīscere, puer, ut domum redeās.

99. 1. The cohort was left for the purpose of defending the bridge. 2. By throwing javelins the Romans drove back the enemy, who were trying to cross the river. 3. A leader has been chosen for accomplishing these things. 4. Soldiers, defend your wives and your children. 5. There were so many soldiers in the town that an attack was not made.

## LESSON XIX

### CLAUSES OF PURPOSE WITH *UT* AND *NĒ*

#### EXPRESSIONS OF PURPOSE IN ENGLISH

100. In the sentence *I went to see the fire* the infinitive *to see* tells the purpose of the act expressed by the verb *went*. The use of the infinitive to express purpose is very common in English. Sometimes we use the phrase *in order* before the infinitive in expressions of purpose. Thus, *I stayed in order to hear the music*. In this sentence the expression *in order to hear* denotes the purpose of the act which is expressed by the verb *stayed*.

a. Occasionally we use a subordinate clause introduced by *that* or *in order that* in expressions of purpose. Thus, we may say *I stayed that I might hear*, or *in order that I might hear, the music*. The clause *that I might hear*, or *in order that I might hear*, expresses the purpose of the act denoted by the main verb.

---

<sup>1</sup> See section 78.

## EXPRESSIONS OF PURPOSE IN LATIN

101. In Latin, purpose may be expressed by a subordinate clause introduced by *ut*, with its verb in the subjunctive. The Latin infinitive is not used to express purpose. The sentence *I went to see the fire* is translated as if it read *I went that I might see the fire*; the sentence *I stayed in order to hear the music* is translated as if it read *I stayed that I might hear the music*.

*Vēni ut tē vidērem, I came to see you, literally, I came that I might see you.*

## NEGATIVE EXPRESSIONS OF PURPOSE

102. Negative clauses of purpose are introduced by *nē* instead of *ut*. *Militēs missi sunt nē urbs caperētur, soldiers were sent that the city might not be captured.*

a. Negative clauses of result are introduced by *ut* and contain *nōn*. *Tam celeriter fugit ut nōn caperētur, he fled so swiftly that he was not captured.*

## 103.

## VOCABULARY

<i>aliquot, indeclinable, several</i>	<i>rapiō, rapere, rapui, raptum,</i>
<i>hospitium, -i, N., hospitality</i>	<i>seize, carry off</i>
<i>nē, conj., that . . . not</i>	<i>violō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, violate</i>
<i>parēns, parentis, M., F., parent</i>	<i>virgō, -inis, F., young woman</i>
<i>profugiō, -fugere, -fūgi, flee</i>	

## EXERCISES

104. 1. Eae virginēs raptae sunt, ut Rōmānī conjugēs habērent. 2. Parentēs virginum profugērunt, nē injūriam acciperent. 3. Rōmulus novam urbem mūnivit, ut hostēs repellere posset. 4. Post aliquot diēs Sabīnī exercitum condūxērunt, ut cum Rōmānīs bellum gererent. 5. Patrēs nostrī mare trānsiērunt, ut in terrā liberā habitārent. 6. Sabīnī dīxērunt hospitium ā Rōmānīs violātum esse. 7. Multī vērē-



runt novae urbis videndae causā. 8. Ad pācem petendam lēgātī dēlēctī sunt. 9. Ācriter ab hostibus pugnātur, sed spēs ā nostrīs nōn āmissa est.

105. 1. The Gauls collected an army to defend (that they might defend) their homes. 2. We fled that we might not be captured. 3. These men will cross the sea in order to find (that they may find) wealth. 4. We did not come into your city to receive injury. 5. The boys said they had defended themselves by throwing stones.

---

## LESSON XX

### RELATIVE CLAUSES OF PURPOSE: THE ABLATIVE OF COMPARISON

#### RELATIVE CLAUSES OF PURPOSE

106. Sometimes a relative pronoun is used instead of *ut* to introduce a purpose clause.

*Puerum mittam qui tē adjuvet, I will send a boy to help you, literally, who shall help you.*

a. The relative clause of purpose is found chiefly after *mittō* and its compounds, and after *relinquō* and a few other verbs.

#### THE ABLATIVE OF COMPARISON

107. With a comparative, if *quam*, *than*, is omitted, the noun or pronoun denoting the person or thing with which comparison is made is put in the ablative.

*Ille puer fortior frātre est, that boy is braver than his brother.*

a. If *quam* is used, the word denoting the person or thing with which comparison is made stands in the same case as the thing compared. *Ille puer fortior quam frāter est, that boy is braver than his brother.*

## 108.

## VOCABULARY

**arx, arcis, F.,** citadel

**Neptūnus, -ī, m.,** Neptune, *god of the sea.*

**orior, oriri, ortus sum,** rise

**redūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -duc-**  
**tum,** lead back

**repente, adv.,** suddenly

**secundus, -a, -um,** favorable,  
successful

**spectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum,** ob-  
serve, watch, look at

**umquam, adv.,** ever



MARBLE RELIEF IN ROMAN FORUM

## EXERCISES

**109.** 1. Decem militēs missī sunt quī arcem dēfenderent.  
2. Repente tōta legiō ex castris missa est quae in Gallōs  
venientēs impetum faceret. 3. Hoc flūmen lātius est flūmini-  
bus in patriā nostrā. 4. Ex eō colle in quō templum Nep-  
tūnī stat proelium spectābāmus. 5. Ille rēx potentior erat  
omnibus rēgibus quī umquam antea eam urbem rēxerant.  
6. Post proelium secundum dux Rōmānōrum cōpiās suās in  
castra redūxit. 7. Cum sōl ortus esset, ex vicō cum equis  
profecti sumus, ut ad montēs Irēmus. 8. Temporibus antiquis  
urbēs in collibus conditae sunt, nē ab hostibus caperentur.  
9. Sitūs urbium nostrārum dēlecti sunt in vallibus aut campis.

**110.** 1. I have sent a boy to announce (who shall an-  
nounce) your arrival. 2. We sent a lieutenant to observe the  
battle. 3. The enemy are not braver than our allies. 4. All  
who have ever seen this famous temple of Neptune say that  
it is beautiful. 5. The sun was rising when (*ubi*) we arrived  
at the river. 6. The townspeople fortified the citadel that  
the enemy might not dare make an attack.

## LESSON XXI

THE SUPINE: DECLENSION OF *ISTE*

## THE SUPINE

111. The supine is a form of the verb which has the case endings of a masculine noun of the fourth declension. It is found only in the accusative and ablative singular.

I	II	III	IV	
portātum	monitum	ductum	captum	auditum
portātū	monitū	ductū	captū	auditū

a. The accusative of the supine may be used to express purpose in a clause in which the verb expresses motion.

*Lēgātī pācem petītum vēnērunt, the envoys came to ask peace.*

b. The ablative of the supine is used with a few adjectives as an ablative of respect. It is usually translated by the English present infinitive.

*Optimum factū, best to do (the best thing to do).*

THE DEMONSTRATIVE *ISTE*

112. Besides *hic*, *ille*, and *is*, there is another demonstrative, *iste*, translated *that of yours*, or simply *that*. It is used less frequently than the others and commonly refers to something connected with the person addressed. It is declined exactly like *ille*.

Mas.	Fem.	Neut.
iste	ista	istud
istīus	istīus	istīus, etc.

a. *Iste* is sometimes used to express contempt.

## 113.

## VOCABULARY

<b>afferō, -ferre, attulī, allātum,</b>	<b>iste, ista, istud,</b> that of yours,
bring to, bring	that
<b>ambō, -ae, -ō,</b> both	<b>mirābilis, -e,</b> wonderful
<b>dispār, gen. disparis,</b> unequal	<b>nocturnus, -a, -um,</b> nightly, at
<b>ingenium, -ī, N.,</b> intellect, abil-	night, night ( <i>as adjective</i> )
ity	<b>superbia, -ae, F.,</b> pride, haugh-
	tiness



ROMAN SWORD AND SCABBARD

## EXERCISES

114. 1. Istā superbia tibi magnum dētrīmentum afferet. 2. Potentia istius gentis crūdēlis nōn jam timētur. 3. Istud periculum dē quō scrīpsistī nōn magnum vidētur. 4. Oppidānī impetum nocturnum in nostra castra fēcērunt. 5. Frāter meus in externās terrās divitiās petītum ire vult. 6. Ingenia filiōrum tuōrum disparia sunt, sed ambō impigrē labōrant. 7. Agrī nostrī vāstātī sunt; itaque lēgātōs ad Caesarem questum mittimus. 8. Difficile dictū est quanta superbia istius gentis fuerit (Section 73). 9. Tum gaudium illōrum captīvōrum quī domum redierant mirābile visū erat. 10. Patria huic virō est cārīor vitā ipsā. 11. Gallus missus est quī epistulam ad castra portāret.

115. 1. We despise that army (of yours) which you are sending. 2. The centurion set out alone to ask help. 3. This is easy to say, but difficult to do. 4. Nothing is dearer to us than friends. 5. A night attack was made by the townspeople, who had concealed their arms in the houses (tēcta).

## LESSON XXII

## NOUN CLAUSES OF DESIRE

116. We have already seen (Section 33) that the subjunctive is used in noun clauses of fact introduced by **ut** which are employed as subjects or objects of verbs.

There is another class of noun clauses which are slightly different from these. The difference in their form consists in the fact that when they are negative they are introduced by **nē** instead of **ut**, and they do not have **nōn**. When they do not contain a negative idea, they are introduced by **ut**, like the noun clauses of section 33.

**Lēgātus hortātur ut auxilium statim mittātur**, the envoy urges that aid be sent at once.

**Amīcī nostrī hortābantur nē in urbe manērēmus**, our friends urged that we should not remain in the city.

a. Noun clauses of this class are often translated by the English infinitive with a subject accusative. The second sentence above might be translated, *Our friends urged us not to remain in the city.*

b. The verbs with which this construction is most frequently found are those meaning *persuade*, *urge*, *direct*, and some verbs meaning *command*, *wish*, and *decide*.

117.

## VOCABULARY

<b>alloquor, -loquī, -locūtus sum</b> , speak to, address	<b>imperō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum</b> , com- mand
<b>certāmen, certāminis, n.</b> , struggle, rivalry	<b>mūnitiō, -ōnis, f.</b> , fortification, intrenchment
<b>extrā, prep. with acc.</b> , outside of	<b>plēbs, plēbis, f.</b> , the common people
<b>hortor, -ārī, hortātus sum</b> , urge	<b>prōditiō, -ōnis, f.</b> , treason, be- trayal

## EXERCISES

**118.** 1. Cōsul hortātur ut major exercitus statim mittātur. 2. Lēgātus militibus quī extrā mūnitiōnēs erant imperāvit nē in hostēs impetum facerent. 3. Ōrātor plēbi persuāsit ut iste homō propter prōditiōnem interficeretur. 4. Imperātor militēs allocūtus est, et hortātus est nē hostēs timērent. 5. Inter hōs duōs centuriōnēs erat magnum certāmen, et difficile dictū erat uter esset fortior. 6. Cōsulēs ad plēbem nūntium misērunt colloquium petītum. 7. Ūna cohors extrā oppidum missa est quae adventum equitum expectāret. 8. Centuriō nōbīs imperat nē extrā mūnitiōnēs eāmus.

**119.** 1. The general commanded the soldiers (*dative*) to remain (that they remain) in the town. 2. No one can persuade (is able to persuade) me to go (Section 116) outside the fortifications. 3. I urge you not to fear (that you do not fear) the common people. 4. On account of your treason there was a great struggle in the city, and many lost their lives. 5. The leader addressed the townspeople and persuaded them not to surrender their arms.

## LESSON XXIII

## RELATIVE CLAUSES OF DESCRIPTION

**120.** All the relative clauses which we have seen thus far have had their verbs in the indicative, except relative clauses of purpose and relative clauses in indirect discourse.

There is, however, a rather important class of relative clauses which serve to tell what kind of person or thing is meant by the antecedent to which they refer. Such clauses have their verbs in the subjunctive.

**Rōma erat civitās quae civēs suōs dēfenderet, Rome was a state which defended its citizens.**

In this sentence the relative clause makes known, not

what state is meant, but what kind of state, and hence its verb is in the subjunctive.

a. In the sentence *Urbs quam Rōmulus condidit Rōma appellāta est*, the city which Romulus founded was called Rome, the relative clause does not tell what kind of city is meant, but merely what city, and hence its verb is in the indicative.

## 121.

## VOCABULARY

carcer, carceris, M., prison	perturbō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum,
casa, -ae, F., cottage	throw into confusion, throw
dolus, -i, M., trick, treachery,	into disorder
deceit	prohibeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, re-
effugiō, -fugere, -fūgī, escape	strain
nix, nivis, F., snow	recuperō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, re-
	gain, recover

## EXERCISES

122. 1. Locum dēligēmus quī facile dēfendātur. 2. Hominem mīsistī quī ex nāve ēgredi nōn audēret. 3. Apud ducēs hostium tum erant multī quī dolōs amārēnt. 4. Servus ex carcere effūgit et libertātem recuperāvit. 5. Tempestātēs secūtae sunt quae exercitūs ā pugnā prohibērent. 6. Est ūna via quā domō exire possimus. 7. Imperātor suōs hortātus est nē perturbārentur. 8. In hīs locīs nix alta interdum casās pās-tōrum tegit. 9. Propter prōditionem, illī in carcere interfectī sunt.

123. 1. There were two roads by which we could cross the mountains. 2. The centurion chose a place which was easily defended. 3. There are many who do not love their country. 4. The two men who escaped from prison have not yet been captured. 5. The slave was killed when he attempted to regain his liberty.

## LESSON XXIV

## CLAUSES OF FEAR

124. With verbs and other expressions of fear a dependent clause with its verb in the subjunctive may be used to tell what one fears will happen. Such clauses are introduced by *nē* meaning *that* or by *ut* meaning *that . . . not*.

*Hostēs verēbantur nē urbēs suae dēlērentur, the enemy feared that their cities would be destroyed.*

*Timēmus ut fortis sis, We are afraid that you are not brave.*

a. The English future tense in a clause of fear is translated by the Latin present subjunctive.

*I am afraid that he will not arrive today, Timeō ut hodiē perveniat.*

b. With English expressions of fear the conjunction (*that*) is sometimes omitted. We may say *I am afraid he will not arrive today*. In Latin the conjunction (*nē* or *ut*) is always employed.

c. It must be remembered that with other subjunctive clauses *ut* means *that* and *nē* means *that . . . not*.

## 125.

## VOCABULARY

abeō, -īre, -ī (-ivī), -itum, go away	militāris, -e, military
colō, -ere, -uī, cultivate, till	ōtium, -ī, N., peace, quiet
factiō, -ōnis, F., faction, party	senex, senis, M., old man
īra, -ae, F., anger	voveō, -ēre, vōvī, vōtum, vow, promise solemnly

## EXERCISES

126. 1. Senex timēbat nē filius suus vulnerārētur. 2. Verēmur nē bellum inter hās factiōnēs oriātur. 3. Agricola



verēbātur ut puer agrum bene coleret. 4. Multōs annōs in patriā nostrā erat ōtium. 5. Ille puer iram patris suī semper timet. 6. Propter illam victōriam cōsul templum deīs vōvit. 7. Militēs timēbant nē signa (*standards*) militāria ā barbaris caperentur. 8. Hostēs abiērunt, et urbs nostra nunc tūta est. 9. Homō quī bellum amet in patriā nostrā nōn facile reperitur.

127. 1. The old man was afraid that his son would go away. 2. The woman is afraid (that) military life will please her son (App. 51). 3. The general vowed a temple to the gods, because he feared that his army would be defeated. 4. Our allies were afraid (that) we would not send aid that year. 5. No one who wishes to work will be sent home.

---

## LESSON XXV

### REVIEW OF PARTICIPLES

128. The Latin verb has four participles, the present active, the past passive, the future active, and the future passive. The four participles of **portō** are as follows:

	ACTIVE	PASSIVE
PRESENT	portāns	
PAST		portātus
FUTURE	portātūrus	portandus

a. Deponent verbs have the same number of participles as other verbs: **cōnāns**, **cōnātus**, **cōnātūrus**, **cōnandus**. The past participle of a deponent verb is usually, but not always, active in meaning. The sense of the sentence in which the past participle stands will make it possible to decide in which voice it is used.

THE COMPARATIVE WITH *TOO* OR *RATHER*

129. A comparative form is sometimes translated by the English positive with *too* or *rather*.

*Erat mōns altior, there was a rather high mountain.*

## 130.

## VOCABULARY

cōspiciō, -spicere, -spexī,	indignātiō, -ōnis, F., indigna-
-spectrum, perceive, observe	tion
dēspondeō, -spondere, -spon-	lūmen, lūminis, N., light
dī, -spōnsum, betroth, prom-	tālis, -e, such
ise in marriage	vērē, adv., truly
foedus, foederis, N., treaty	

## EXERCISES

131. 1. Hostēs ab exercitū nostrō victī foedus facere volunt. 2. Viātōrēs montem ascendentēs magnum lūmen in valle subitō cōspexērunt. 3. Dux Helvētiōrum filiam suam illi rēgi dēsponsūrus est. 4. Filius tuus inter tālēs hominēs nōn ēducandus est (Section 78, a). 5. Tum magna indignātiō Rōmae (Section 1) erat propter injūriās sociōrum. 6. Ingenium ejus juvenis vērē rēgium vidēbātur, itaque rēx creātus est. 7. Nulla gēns quae foedera violat amicōs et sociōs habēre potest. 8. Multī verēbantur nē nāvēs hostium Ōceanum trānsīrent. 9. Hostēs bellum in Galliā gerentēs multōs ē suis amīsērunt.

132. 1. The treaty made with that king is not just. 2. The soldier, standing on the tower, observed the fire. 3. Help should be sent (Section 79, a) at once, because the army is in danger. 4. We are going to cross (App. 125) the ocean next year with a friend. 5. The king is afraid (that) he will lose his power (*imperium*).

## LESSON XXVI

## THE VOLITIVE SUBJUNCTIVE IN PRINCIPAL CLAUSES

## EXPRESSIONS OF DESIRE OR WILL

133. In English one sometimes expresses the desire or will that an act should be done by the use of *let* with the verb expressing the act desired. Thus, *Let us defend our homes bravely*. Such expressions have the present subjunctive in Latin, and no separate word for *let* is used. The sentence given above will be translated **Domōs nostrās fortiter dēfendāmus**.

**Centuriō legiōnem ex castris ēdūcat**, *let the centurion lead the legion out of camp*.

## THE NEGATIVE WITH EXPRESSIONS OF DESIRE

134. The negative word used with the subjunctive in expressions of desire or will is **nē**.

**Nē diūtius maneāmus**, *let us not remain longer*.

## 135.

## VOCABULARY

dēmum, <i>adv.</i> , at last, at length, finally	laetor, -ārī, laetātus sum, re- joice, be delighted
divīnus, -a, -um, divine, of the gods	mātūrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, hasten
hūmānus, -a, -um, human	portendō, -tendere, -tendī, -tentum, indicate, foretell
impiger, -gra, -grum, indus- trious, energetic	totiēns, <i>adv.</i> , so many times, so often

## EXERCISES

136. 1. Puerōs impigrōs in eum locum mittāmus. 2. Nē idem totiēns dicāmus. 3. Hōs puerōs ita educēmus ut civēs

boni sint. 4. Viator lumen in casa vidit et statim iter maturavit. 5. Illi barbari omnia jura humana atque divina violaverunt. 6. Tum demum vidimus eos hostes esse vere barbaros. 7. Illud signum portendit deus urbem nostram defendere. 8. Magnopere laetati sumus, cum milites nostri domum rediissent. 9. Quaero cum pastor queratur (Section 73). 10. Maturans; maturaturus; educandus est; educatus est.

137. 1. Let us cross the river with the other soldiers. 2. Let us work industriously today. 3. Let him not remain longer in the city. 4. The shepherd was delighted (*a form of laetor*) when he saw the light in his cottage. 5. This boy is industrious and pleases the farmer.

## LESSON XXVII

### THE SUBJUNCTIVE IN WISHES

#### THE OPTATIVE SUBJUNCTIVE

138. In older English, wishes were often introduced by *would that*, or *O that*, as in the sentence *Would that (or O that) I had never seen this place*. Such sentences take the subjunctive in Latin, and are commonly introduced by *utinam*, if the wish refers to present or past time. Thus, the sentence given above would be translated, **Utinam hunc locum numquam vidissem.**

a. In modern English we should usually say *I wish I had never seen this place*. In some of the exercises of this book the old form of expression is used.

#### TENSE IN WISHES

139. The present subjunctive is used in wishes referring to future time, the imperfect subjunctive in wishes referring to

present time, and the past perfect subjunctive in wishes referring to past time.

(Utinam) *imperātor auxilium mittat*, *O that the general may send help.*

*Utinam frāter meus mē nunc vidēre posset*, *O that (I wish that) my brother could see me now.*

*Utinam heri pervēnissēs*, *would that (I wish that) you had arrived yesterday.*

a. The negative adverb with wishes is sometimes *nē* and sometimes *nōn*.

## 140.

## VOCABULARY

<i>expōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positum</i> , set forth, explain	<i>rēgia, -ae, f.</i> , palace
<i>facinus, facinoris, n.</i> , crime	<i>speciēs, -ēī, f.</i> , appearance
<i>ōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum</i> , beg, entreat, ask for	<i>sustineō, -tinēre, -tinuī, -tentum</i> , sustain, withstand
<i>peregrinus, -ī, m.</i> , foreigner	<i>vestibulum, -ī, n.</i> , entrance

## EXERCISES

141. 1. *Utinam rēgia ā fortiōribus militibus dēfēnsa esset.* 2. *Utinam illī peregrinī in patriā suā essent.* 3. *(Utinam) dux sapiēns sis.* 4. *Ille homō propter facinora sua ex urbe expellendus est.* 5. *Rēx in vestibulō rēgiae ā duōbus pās-tōribus interfectus est.* 6. *Speciēs hōrum hominum honesta est, sed nōn sunt civēs bonī.* 7. *Tum nūntius exposuit quid factum esset.* 8. *Utinam legiō impetum barbarōrum diūtius sustinuisset.* 9. *Auxilium Caesaris ōrēmus, quod hostēs magnis cum cōpiis appropinquant.*

142. 1. Would that we had never seen this city. 2. I wish that (would that) I were crossing the sea with my friends. 3. May the fame of our country increase (*a form of crēscere*). 4. I wish (would that) we had a braver and wiser leader. 5. Although you are (Section 62) a foreigner, you have all the rights of a citizen.

## LESSON XXVIII

## THE ANTICIPATORY SUBJUNCTIVE: DATIVE OF POSSESSION

## THE ANTICIPATORY SUBJUNCTIVE

143. The subjunctive may be used in subordinate clauses to denote an act which is anticipated or expected.

*Expectābam dum frāter rediret, I was waiting until my brother should return (or for my brother to return).*

a. The Anticipatory Subjunctive is most frequently used after conjunctions meaning *until* or *before*.

## THE DATIVE OF POSSESSION

144. The possessor of something may be denoted by a noun or pronoun in the dative case, with the word denoting the thing possessed in the nominative as the subject of a form of the verb meaning *to be*.

*Puerō duo frātrēs sunt, the boy has two brothers.*

## 145.

## VOCABULARY

administrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum,	firmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum,
manage, direct	strengthen
breviter, <i>adv.</i> , briefly	priusquam, <i>conj.</i> , before
clāmor, -ōris, <i>m.</i> , shouting,	superior, -ius, higher; previ-
noise	ous, preceding
dum, <i>conj.</i> , until	tumultus, -ūs, <i>m.</i> , confusion,
	disturbance

## EXERCISES

146. 1. Legiōnēs pervēnērunt priusquam oppidum caperētur. 2. Caesar expectāre nōn poterat dum reliquae nāvēs pervenirent. 3. Gallī magnō cum (App. 145) clāmōre et tumultū ex castris ēgressī sunt, priusquam cōpiaē Rōmānae



JARS FOR STORING OIL AND GRAIN, ANCIENT OSTIA

impetum facerent. 4. His militibus bona arma sunt, et hostēs ē superiōre locō ab eis pellentur. 5. Frāter rēgis rēs administrāvit, quod rēgī nūllus filius erat. 6. Utinam rēx novus opēs suās firmāvisset et omnēs inimicōs suōs ex rēgnō expulisset. 7. Cum rēs breviter exposita esset, militēs magnis clāmōribus profectī sunt. 8. Frātrī tuō est equus pulcher, quem amicus ex Britannia misit. 9. Rēs Rōmānae ā duobus cōsulibus administratāe sunt.

147. 1. The boy has a sword (Section 144), which was given him by his father. 2. We made a bridge before we crossed the river. 3. The Gauls waited until the first legion was in sight. 4. The Romans had many brave generals. 5. The boy has two brothers, but no sister.

## LESSON XXIX

## CONDITIONAL SENTENCES: FUTURE CONDITIONAL SENTENCES, MORE VIVID AND LESS VIVID

## CONDITIONS AND CONCLUSIONS

**148.** A complex sentence in which the subordinate clause is introduced by *if* is called a Conditional Sentence. The subordinate clause of a sentence of this kind is called the Condition and the principal clause is called the Conclusion.

## FUTURE MORE VIVID CONDITIONAL SENTENCES

**149.** A conditional sentence which refers to future time and which is translated with *shall* or *will* in the conclusion and with a present tense with future meaning in the condition is called a Future More Vivid conditional sentence. Thus, *I shall start tomorrow if the weather is pleasant.* In this sentence the verb *is* has future meaning.

a. Sometimes a future tense with *shall* is used in the condition. Thus, *If he shall prove efficient, he will be promoted.*

**150.** In Latin a future more vivid conditional sentence commonly has its verbs in the future indicative.

***Si impigrē labōrābis, praemium accipiēs,*** *if you work industriously you will receive a reward.*

a. Sometimes the future perfect is used instead of the future to indicate that the act will take place before another act or before some future time.

## FUTURE LESS VIVID CONDITIONAL SENTENCES

**151.** A conditional sentence which refers to future time and which is translated with *should* or *would* in both the condition and the conclusion is called a Future Less Vivid conditional sentence. Thus, *If it should rain, no one would come.*



152. In Latin the verbs of a future less vivid conditional sentence are commonly in the present subjunctive.

*Si hostēs nōs videant, impetum faciant, if the enemy should see us, they would make an attack.*

a. Occasionally the perfect subjunctive is used instead of the present to indicate that an act would take place before another act or before a particular time.

## 153.

## VOCABULARY

cēsus, -ūs, m., census, enumeration	īstituō, -stituere, -stitui, -stitūtum, establish, institute, arrange
commūniter, adv., commonly	nōbilis, -e, famous, well known
cōnsēsus, -ūs, m., agreement	officiū, -ī, n., duty
excūsō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, excuse	prīnceps, prīncipis, m., chief, prominent man

## EXERCISES

154. 1. Si in terram nostram veniēs, nōbilēs urbēs vidēbis. 2. Si in terram nostram veniās, nōbilēs urbēs videās. 3. Si cēsus īstituātur, numerus Rōmānōrum magnus esse reperiātur. 4. Si cōsul officiū suū faciet, urbs ex periculō servābitur. 5. Ex cōnsēnsū hārum gentium pāx est facta, et spērāmus eam pācem firmam futūrā esse. 6. Tum decem hominēs rēs Rōmānās aliquot annōs commūniter administrāvērunt. 7. Prīncipēs Britanniae ad Caesarem vēnērunt, ut sē excūsārent. 8. Si patriam dēfendētis, omnēs vōs laudābunt. 9. Si illōs montēs ascendās, magnum lacum videās.

155. 1. If the centurion leaves (*future*) a legion in the town, the enemy will not make an attack. 2. If the Romans should leave two cohorts in the camp, the barbarians would not make an attack. 3. If I should find the book, I would not give it to you. 4. If my father sends the money, I shall set out at once.

## LESSON XXX

## CONDITIONAL SENTENCES CONTRARY TO FACT

## MEANING OF CONDITIONAL SENTENCES CONTRARY TO FACT

**156.** The form of the verbs in a conditional sentence sometimes shows that the condition is not true, and that the actual situation is not that which is referred to in the conclusion. Such a conditional sentence is said to be contrary to fact.

*If the man had been honest, he would have paid his debts*  
(implying that the man was not honest and that he did not pay his debts).

## MOOD AND TENSE IN CONDITIONAL SENTENCES CONTRARY TO FACT

**157.** In Latin, conditional sentences contrary to fact have their verbs in the imperfect subjunctive to denote present time, and in the past perfect subjunctive to denote past time.

*Sī periculum vidērēs, hic nōn manērēs, if you saw the danger, you would not remain here.*

*Sī periculum vidissēs, hic nōn mānsissēs, if you had seen the danger, you would not have remained here.*

## 158.

## VOCABULARY

cōfessiō, -ōnis, F., confession	occāsus, -ūs, M., falling down,
crimen, criminis, N., charge	setting; sōlis occāsus, sunset
falsus, -a, -um, false	paulātim, adv., gradually
irrupō, -rumpere, -rūpī, -rup-	postrēmō, adv., at last
tum, break in, rush into	praecō, praecōnis, M., herald

## EXERCISES

- 159.** 1. Si hoc crimen falsum esset, amici tui te defenderent.  
2. Si cōfessionem ejus audivissēs, eum nōn laudavissēs. 3.  
Si ante occāsum sōlis pervenissēs, porta nōn clausa esset.  
4. Si praecō in locō altiōre stāret, facilius eum audirēmus.

5. Si pater ejus pueri viveret, puer non in tali loco laboraret.  
6. Postrimo Galli victi sunt, et legiones in urbem irruerunt.  
7. Principes hostium paulatim ex castris excesserunt, ut bellum renovarent. 8. Si patriam tuam amares, eam nunc defenderes.  
9. Si ante occasum solis pervenias, porta non claudatur.

160. 1. If you were standing on that hill, you would see the town. 2. If the enemy had crossed the river, they would have captured the town. 3. If the soldiers had a better leader, they would fight more bravely. 4. If I had seen the signal, I should have returned. 5. If I should see the signal, I should return.

---

### LESSON XXXI

#### NON-COMMITTAL CONDITIONAL SENTENCES: ABLATIVE OF ROUTE

##### NON-COMMITTAL CONDITIONAL SENTENCES

161. A conditional sentence which does not imply that the condition is either true or false regularly has both verbs in the indicative.

**Si pueri in silva errant, in periculo sunt,** *if the boys are wandering in the forest, they are in danger.*

**Si pecuniam misisti, benignus eras,** *if you sent the money, you were kind.*

a. Sometimes an imperative or a volitive subjunctive is used in the conclusion instead of an indicative.

**Si pacem cupitis, arma tradite,** *if you desire peace, surrender your arms.*

NOTE.—The future more vivid conditional sentence is merely a non-committal conditional sentence referring to future time.

## THE ABLATIVE OF ROUTE

162. The route by which one goes is sometimes denoted by a noun or pronoun in the ablative case without a preposition.

*Eādem viā ibimus quā hostēs profecti sunt, we shall go by the same road by which the enemy set out.*

## 163.

## VOCABULARY

audācia, -ae, F., boldness	occidō, -cidere, -cidi, -cīsum, kill
catēna, -ae, F., chain	
cōsulō, -ere, -uī, -tum, consult	refringō, -fringere, -frēgī, -fractum, break down
ēvocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, call out, call forth, summon	spoliō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, de-spoil, plunder
	vīvus, -a, -um, alive

## EXERCISES

164. 1. Si barbari cum omnibus copiis appropinquant, periculum nostrum est magnum. 2. Si hostes flumen transierunt, nostri pontem non defenderunt. 3. Si rex senatum consulit, periculum timet. 4. Ille centurio est vir magna audacia (App. 77), qui numquam vivus capiatur. 5. Captivus ex catenis et carcere effugere conatus est, sed in fuga occisus est. 6. Portae oppidi refractae sunt, et templa ab militibus spoliata sunt. 7. Tum principes a Caesare ex oppido evocati sunt. 8. Hoc itinere profecti sumus, quod nullum aliud iter habebamus. 9. Eodem itinere redibo, si poterō.

165. 1. If the barbarians are laying waste the fields, the cities are in danger. 2. If the townspeople have weapons, they are able to defend themselves. 3. We shall return by a shorter route. 4. The two armies did not cross the mountains by the same route. 5. If the enemy are collecting an army, they wish to wage war.

## LESSON XXXII

THE FUTURE IMPERATIVE: VOCATIVE IN *i*

## TENSE IN THE IMPERATIVE

166. English verbs have only the present tense of the imperative. Latin verbs have a future as well as a present imperative. The future imperative is not often used.

## FORMS OF THE FUTURE IMPERATIVE

167. The future imperative is found in the second and third persons. Its forms in the four conjugations are as follows:

ACTIVE				
<i>Singular</i>				
2. portātō	monētō	mittitō	capitō	auditō
3. portātō	monētō	mittitō	capitō	auditō
<i>Plural</i>				
2. portātōte	monētōte	mittitōte	capitōte	auditōte
3. portantō	monentō	mittuntō	capiuntō	audiuntō
PASSIVE				
<i>Singular</i>				
2. portātor	monētor	mittitor	capitor	auditor
3. portātor	monētor	mittitor	capitor	auditor
<i>Plural</i>				
2. ( <i>Lacking</i> )	_____	_____	_____	_____
3. portantor	monentor	mittuntor	capiuntor	audiuntor

a. The future imperative is used when there is a clear reference to future time indicated by an adverb or other expression of time. It is translated *you shall carry, he shall carry, or let him carry, etc.*

b. The verbs **memini** and **sciō** regularly (and **habeō** occasionally) use the future imperative instead of the present.

THE VOCATIVE IN *I*

**168.** Proper nouns ending in *-ius* and also the common noun *filius* form the vocative by replacing *-ius* of the nominative by *-i*. Thus *Cornēlius*, vocative *Cornēli*.

**169.**

## VOCABULARY

<i>carpentum</i> , -i, N., carriage	<i>intrō</i> , -āre, -āvi, -ātum, enter,
<i>Cornēlius</i> , -i, M., Cornelius,	go into
<i>name of a man or boy</i>	<i>memini</i> , <i>infin.</i> <i>meminisse</i> , re-
<i>gradus</i> , -ūs, M., step	member
<i>injūstus</i> , -a, -um, unjust	<i>sedeō</i> , -ēre, <i>sēdi</i> , <i>sessum</i> , sit
	<i>venia</i> , -ae, F., pardon

a. The verb *memini* is used only in the perfect, past perfect, and future perfect tenses. The perfect is translated as a present, the past perfect is translated as an imperfect, and the future perfect is translated as a future. The infinitive *meminisse* is translated as a present infinitive.

## EXERCISES

**170.** 1. *Mementō amicōs tuōs in periculō esse.* 2. *Scitō mē frātre tuum semper amāvisse.* 3. *Cūr, Cornēli, hīc sōlus sedēs?* 4. *Nūntius gradūs celeriter ascendit et domum intrāvit.* 5. *Carpentum rēgināe ante rēgiam stābat, et multī convēnerant ut rēginam vidērent.* 6. *Domum, mī (App. 19, a) fili, redī et veniam ōrā.* 7. *Cum ille agricola injūstus sit, puer cum eō nōn manēbit.* 8. *Domum (Section 8, 1), pater, redī, ut veniam tuam peterem.* 9. *Captivus in carcere sedēs miserrimus est.*

**171.** 1. Remember that you have never seen this place before. 2. Be assured (know) that your country is defended by a brave army. 3. Why do you not stay at home, my son? 4. Cornelius, where is the book that I gave you? 5. All knew that you were unjust.

## LESSON XXXIII

THE CONJUGATION OF *MĀLŌ*: ADJECTIVES DENOTING A PARTTHE CONJUGATION OF *MĀLŌ*

172. The verb *mālō*, *prefer*, is a compound of *magis* and *volō*. Its principal parts are *mālō*, *mālle*, *māluī*. It is conjugated as follows:

## PRESENT

INDICATIVE		SUBJUNCTIVE	
<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
<i>mālō</i>	<i>mālumus</i>	<i>mālim</i>	<i>mālmus</i>
<i>māvis</i>	<i>māvultis</i>	<i>mālis</i>	<i>māltis</i>
<i>māvult</i>	<i>mālunt</i>	<i>mālit</i>	<i>mālint</i>

## IMPERFECT

<i>mālēbam</i>	<i>mālēbāmus</i>	<i>māllem</i>	<i>māllēmus</i>
<i>mālēbās</i>	<i>mālēbātis</i>	<i>māllēs</i>	<i>māllētis</i>
<i>mālēbat</i>	<i>mālēbant</i>	<i>māllet</i>	<i>māllent</i>

## FUTURE

<i>mālam</i>	<i>mālēmus</i>
<i>mālēs</i>	<i>mālētis</i>
<i>mālet</i>	<i>mālent</i>

## PERFECT

<i>māluī, etc.</i>	<i>māluerim, etc.</i>
--------------------	-----------------------

## PAST PERFECT

<i>mālueram, etc.</i>	<i>māluissem, etc.</i>
-----------------------	------------------------

## FUTURE PERFECT

<i>māluerō, etc.</i>
----------------------

## INFINITIVES

<i>Pres. mālle</i>	<i>Perfect māluisse</i>
--------------------	-------------------------

a. This verb has no imperatives or participles.

## ADJECTIVES DENOTING A PART

**173.** There are a few adjectives which tell what part of a thing is meant, instead of telling what kind. Among the most important are **summus**, **medius**, **extrēmus**, and **imū**. Thus, **summus mōns**, *the highest part of the mountain, the mountain top.*

## 174.

## VOCABULARY

<b>color</b> , colōris, m., color	<b>medius</b> , -a, -um, middle, middle of
<b>imū</b> , -a, -um, lowest part of, base of	<b>plānitēs</b> , -ēī, f., plain
<b>mālō</b> , mālī, mālūī, prefer, choose	<b>summus</b> , -ā, -um, top of, highest part of
	<b>vestītus</b> , -ūs, m., clothing

## EXERCISES

**175.** 1. Lēgātus cum duōbus centuriōnibus in summō monte stābat. 2. Legiō in mediō colle (*half way up the hill*) instrūcta erat, ut adventum hostium expectāret. 3. Ille peregrinus in patriam nōn redit, quod hīc habitāre māvult. 4. Cum pācem habēre semper māllemus, tamen bellum gerere dēnique cōstituimus. 5. Hic vir bonus esse mālēbat quam bonus vidēri. 6. Ducēs ex colōre vestītūs agnōscēbantur, et equitātus in eōs impetum fēcit. 7. Viātōrēs plānitē transiērunt et ad imū montem pervēnērunt. 8. Cūr in his locīs manēre māvīs ubi tot tempestātēs sunt? 9. Plānitēs ab imīs montibus ad flūmen patēbat.

**176.** 1. You know that I prefer to remain in the city in winter. 2. The top of the mountain can be seen (**cōspiciō**) from this place. 3. You say that you prefer to be without companions. 4. The legion which had been enrolled in the province was drawn up half way up the hill (on the middle of the hill). 5. Although I preferred to remain at home, I set out to war with the other (**reliqūī**) young men.



## LESSON XXXIV

## CLASSES OF PERFECT STEMS: NEGATIVE COMMANDS

## CLASSES OF PERFECT STEMS

177. There are six different classes of perfect stems in regular verbs. They are as follows:

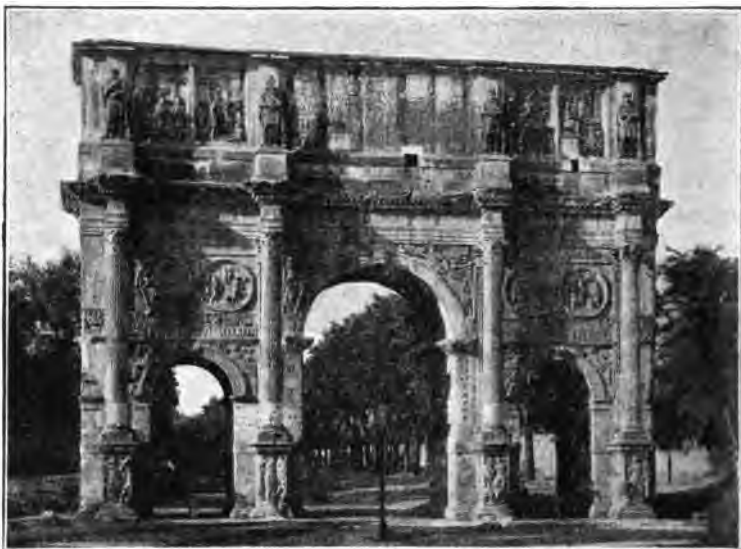
1. Perfects in **-vī**  
**amō, amāre, amāvī, amātum**  
**compleō, complēre, complēvī, complētum**  
**petō, petere, petivī, petitum**
2. Perfects in **-uī**  
**moneō, monēre, monuī, monitum**
3. Perfects in **-sī** (cs and gs give x).  
**maneō, manēre, mānsī, mānsum**  
**dūcō, dūcere, dūxī, ductum**
4. Reduplicated perfects  
**dō, dare, dedī, datum**  
**pellō, pellere, pepulī, pulsum**
5. Long vowel perfects  
**veniō, venīre, vēnī, ventum**  
**juvō, juvāre, jūvī, jūtum**
6. Perfects with the stem unchanged, **+ī**.  
**dēfendō, dēfendere, dēfendī, dēfēnsum**

a. Most verbs of the first conjugation form the perfect with **-vī**, but a few belong to other classes.

## NEGATIVE COMMANDS

178. Negative commands (prohibitions) in the second person are frequently expressed by the imperative of **nōlō** (**nōlī, nōlīte**) with the infinitive of the verb denoting the act forbidden.

**Nōlī hīc manēre, do not remain here.**



ARCH OF CONSTANTINE

## 179.

## VOCABULARY

**argentum**, -ī, *N.*, silver

**inopināns**, *gen. inopinantis*, not  
expecting, unawares, off  
one's guard

**obsideō**, -sidēre, -sēdī, -ses-  
sum, besiege

**offendō**, -fendere, -fendī, -fēn-  
sum, offend

**patior**, patī, passus sum, per-  
mit, allow

**speculātor**, -ōris, *M.*, scout

**tangō**, -ere, tetigī, tāctum,  
touch

**vetō**, -āre, vetuī, vetitum, for-  
bid

*a.* The verb **vetō**, like **jubeō**, takes the infinitive and accusative.

## EXERCISES

**180.** 1. Frātre<sup>m</sup> tuu<sup>m</sup>, Cornēlī, offendistī, quī semper tē  
amāvit. 2. Caesar impetum in hostēs inopinantēs fecit et

eōs fugāvit. 3. Barbarī aurum et argentum rēgī dedērunt postquam in proeliō victī sunt. 4. Graecī illam urbem clāram decem annōs obsēdērunt et dēnique cōpērunt. 5. Rēx peregrīnum urbem intrāre vetuit, quod quīdam peregrīni erant speculātōrēs. 6. Nōli mē tangere, nisi mē offendere vis. 7. Nōlite patī illōs hominēs quī nōbīs bellum inferre volunt per finēs vestrōs iter facere. 8. In eā terrā argentum inventum est, et spērāmus nōs aurum quoque inventūrōs esse. 9. Petivimus ut Helvētiī nōs per finēs suōs ire paterentur.

181. 1. Do not wait until the lands (fields) of our allies are laid waste by the army of the enemy. 2. Do not praise the nation that made war on your own country. 3. I warned you, but you remained in the dangerous place. 4. We routed (*pellere*) the enemy and we killed many. 5. I have helped you, but I will not help you again.

---

## LESSON XXXV

### GENITIVE WITH CERTAIN VERBS: SUBJUNCTIVE BY ATTRACTION

#### THE GENITIVE WITH VERBS OF REMEMBERING AND FORGETTING

182. The verbs *memini* and *reminiscor*, *remember*, and *obliscor*, *forget*, frequently take a noun or pronoun in the genitive as object.

*Numquam illius diēi obliscar, I shall never forget that day.*

a. If the object is a neuter pronoun or a neuter adjective used as a noun, it is always in the accusative.

*Numquam haec obliscar, I shall never forget these things.*

## THE SUBJUNCTIVE BY ATTRACTION

**183.** Sometimes a subordinate clause which would otherwise have its verb in the indicative takes the subjunctive because it is closely dependent on a subjunctive or an infinitive.

*Ita ācritēr pugnāvērunt ut omnēs quī in pugnā essent vulnerārentur, they fought so fiercely that all who were in the battle were wounded.*

## 184.

## VOCABULARY

**dissēnsiō, -ōnis, F.,** disagreement.

**interclūdō, -clūdere, -clūsī, -clūsum,** cut off

**liberātor, -ōris, M.,** liberator

**obliviscor, obliviscī, oblītus sum,** forget

**palūs, -ūdis, F.,** swamp

**reminiscor, reminiscī, remember**

**studium, -ī, N.,** zeal, enthusiasm, eagerness

**suscipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum,** undertake

## EXERCISES

**185.** 1. Omnēs cīvēs nostrī virtūtis eōrum fortium hominum semper reminiscuntur. 2. Tum dissēnsiōnēs ortae sunt inter eōs quī liberātōrēs patriae appellātī sunt. 3. Rōmānī mōrum majōrum (*of their ancestors*) nōn oblītī sunt. 4. Hostēs id bellum magnō studiō suscēpērunt, sed nunc pācem volunt. 5. Omnibus itineribus interclūsīs, pars barbarōrum sē Rōmānīs dēdidit, et reliquī in palūdēs et silvās fūgērunt. 6. Signum datum est ut ei quī profectī essent statim redīrent. 7. Caesar scūtum cēpit et in primam aciem prōcessit. 8. Beneficiōrum tuōrum semper meminērō, et amīcus fidēlis tibi erō. 9. Galli itinera interclūsērunt et castra obsidēre parāvērunt.

**186.** 1. The Romans remembered the victory of the Helvetians, with whom they had formerly waged war. 2. We cannot forget the wrongs of our allies, the Gauls. 3. The

Germans fled so swiftly that the legion which had crossed the river did not make an attack. 4. They came to the camp because they wished to beg for peace. 5. We shall find out who is in the town (Section 73).



WALL PAINTING FROM POMPEII

## THE ARGONAUTS

Jason, the leader of the expedition of the Argonauts, was the son of Aeson, king of Thessaly. Aeson had been deprived of this kingdom by his brother, Pelias, who also intended to kill Jason. Through the help of his friends Jason escaped, but the king was led to believe that he was dead.

Pelias was warned by an oracle to be on his guard against a man who should come to him wearing only one shoe, and when Jason, who had grown up, came into the city, having lost one of his shoes on the way, the king took fright. Thinking to be rid of this dangerous person, he ordered him to bring from Colchis the golden fleece which had been taken there by Phrixus. With a company of friends Jason set out in a ship called the Argo, which had been built by Argus, whence the name Argonauts was given the adventurers. After many adventures Jason obtained the golden fleece through the aid of Medea, daughter of the king of Colchis, who then fled from Colchis with the hero. When they had returned to Thessaly, Medea, who was famed for her power as a sorceress, brought about the death of Pelias by a trick, and as a result she and Jason were compelled to flee. They took refuge in Corinth, where Medea found a rival for the love of Jason in the person of the king's daughter. She caused the death of the unfortunate princess, and then sought revenge on Jason for his faithlessness by killing the children she had borne to him. After this she escaped by the aid of the sun-god. Jason met his death by being crushed by his boat, near which he was sitting, as it was propped up on the shore.

## PART III

### THE ARGONAUTS

#### 1. THE WICKED UNCLE

Erant olim in Thessaliā duo frātrēs, quōrum alter Aesōn, alter Peliās appellātus est. Hōrum Aesōn prīmus rēgnum obtinuerat; at post paucōs annōs Peliās, rēgnī cupiditāte adductus, nōn modo frātre suum expulit, sed etiam in animō habēbat Jāsonem, Aesonis filium, interficere. Quīdam tamen ex amicis Aesonis, ubi sententiam Peliae intellēxērunt, puerum ē tantō periculō ēripere cōstituērunt. Noctū igitur Jāsonem ex urbe abstulērunt, et, cum posterō diē ad rēgem rediissent, eī renūntiāvērunt puerum mortuum esse. Peliās, cum haec audivisset, etsī rē vērā magnum gaudium 10 percipiēbat, speciem tamen dolōris praeibuit, et quae causa esset mortis quaesivit. Illi tamen, cum bene intellegerent dolōrem ejus falsum esse, nesciō quam fābulam dē morte pueri finxērunt.

---

4, 5. in animō habēbat interficere, *had it in mind to kill; interficere* is the object of *habēbat*.

6. ex amicis: see note on Her. 380.

8. cum: in this section three uses of the subjunctive are introduced: with *cum* meaning *when*, here and in l. 10; with *cum* meaning *although* in l. 12; in an indirect question, *quae causa esset*, in l. 11.

13. nesciō quam fābulam, *some story or other*; literally, *I know not what story*. This combination of *nesciō* and the interrogative pronoun constitutes virtually an indefinite pronoun.

---

6. sententia, -ae, f. [sentio], opinion, thought, purpose.

8. posterus, -a, -um, adj. [post], following, next.

13. ne-sciō, -ire, -ivī, —, tr., not know, be ignorant.

14. fingō, fingere, finxī, fictum, tr., form, fashion, make up.

## 2. A CARELESS SHOE-STRING

- 15 Post breve tempus Peliās, veritus nē rēgnum suum tantā  
vī et fraude occupātum āmitteret, amicum quendam Delphōs  
mīsīt quī ōrāculum cōnsuleret. Ille igitur quam celerrimē  
Delphōs sē contulit, et quam ob causam vēnisset dēmōn-  
strāvit. Respondit ōrāculum nūllum esse in praesentiā peri-  
20 culum; monuit tamen Peliam ut, sī quis venīret calceum  
ūnum gerēns, eum cavēret. Post paucōs annōs accidit ut  
Peliās magnum sacrificium factūrus esset; nūntiōs in omnēs  
partēs dīmīserat, et certum diem conveniendī dīxerat. Diē

15. *veritus*, *fearing*; past participle of a deponent verb with present force, like *mīrātus*, *suspīcātus*, *arbitrātus*.

nē . . . *āmitteret*, *that he would lose*; a noun clause after a verb of fearing, App. 99.

16. *Delphōs*: accusative of a town name as the place to which.

17. *quī . . . cōnsuleret*: a relative clause of purpose, to be translated by an infinitive. What subordinate conjunctions also introduce clauses of purpose?

18. *quam ob causam*, *for what reason*; the subjunctive *vēnisset* can be explained by comparison with a similar clause in l. 11. For the position of the preposition see the note on Her. 73.

20. *ut . . . cavēret*: a noun clause, object of *monuit*.

sī *quis*, *if anyone*; *quis* here is itself an indefinite pronoun, to be distinguished from interrogative *quis*; it is found most frequently with *sī* and *nē*. Since this clause depends upon a subjunctive, *cavēret*, the verb *venīret* is itself made subjunctive by attraction.

21. *gerēns*, *wearing*.

*ut . . . factūrus esset*: a noun clause of fact, subject of *accidit*, *it happened that*, etc. The future active participle, here *factūrus*, with a past tense of *sum*, expresses a past intention, *was about to make*.

23. *conveniendī*, *for the people to assemble*; literally, *of assembling*.

*dīxerat*, *had appointed*.

15. *nē*, *conj.*, *that . . . not*, in order that . . . not; *after words of fear*, *that; as adv.*, *not*; *nē . . . quidem*, *not even, not either*.

16. *fraus*, *fraudis*, *f.*, *deceit*, *deception*, *fraud*.

19. *re-spondeō*, *-spondēre*, *-spondī*, *-spōnsum*, *intr.*, *reply*, *respond*, *answer*.

*praesentia*, *-ae*, *f.* [*praesēns*], *presence*; *the present*; *in praesentiā*, *at the moment, for the present*.

20. *quis*, *qua*, *quid*, *indef. pron.*, *anyone*, *anybody*, *anything*; *someone*, *somebody*, *something*.

*calceus*, *-i*, *m.*, *shoe*.

21. *caveō*, *cavēre*, *cāvī*, *cautum*, *tr. and intr.*, *beware of*, *beware*.



cōstitūtō magnus numerus hominum undique ex agrīs cōvenit; inter aliōs vēnit Jāsōn, quī ā puerō apud Centaurum 25 quendam vīxerat. Dum tamen iter facit, calceum alterum in trāseundō nesciō quō flūmine āmisit.

26. *alterum, one.*

27. *trāseundō, in crossing; ablative of the gerundive of trānsire, App. 127.*

### 3. THE GOLDEN FLEECE

Jāsōn igitur, cum calceum āmissum nūllō modō recipere posset, alterō pede nūdō in rēgiam pervēnit. Quem cum vīdisset, Peliās subitō timōre affectus est; intellēxit enim 30 hunc esse hominem quem ōrāculum dēmōnstrāvisset. Hoc igitur iniit cōnsilium. Rēx erat quīdam nōmine Aeētēs, quī rēgnum Colchidis illō tempore obtinēbat. Huic commissum erat vellus illud aureum quod Phrixus ōlim ibi reliquerat. Cōstituit igitur Peliās Jāsōnī negōtium dare ut hōc vellere 35 potirētur; cum enim rēs esset magnī periculī, spērābat eum in itinere peritūrum esse. Jāsonem igitur ad sē arcessivit,

28. *cum*: here and in l. 36 with causal force, hence the subjunctive.

29. *alterō pede nūdō, with one foot bare*, an ablative absolute.

*Quem cum*: translate as if *cum eum*.

31. *dēmōnstrāvisset*: subjunctive in a subordinate clause in indirect discourse.

34. *Phrixus*: the story was that Phrixus, accompanied by his sister Helle, was forced to flee for his life from the intrigues of his stepmother Ino. The two were carried through the air on the back of a ram with a golden fleece sent by the god Hermes. Helle fell into the sea which was thereafter called the Hellespont. Phrixus arrived safely in Colchis, where he sacrificed the ram to Zeus and gave the fleece to king Aeetes. The king fastened the fleece to an oak tree in the grove of Ares.

35. *ut . . . potirētur*: a noun clause of desire may depend upon a verb, as in l. 20, or be in apposition with a noun, here *negōtium*; translate, *the task of obtaining*.

*vellere*: with *potirētur*, which, like *utor*, is one of the deponent verbs governing the ablative.

29. *nūdus, -a, -um, adj.*, naked, 34. *vellus, velloris, n.*, fleece, pelt. bare.

et quid fieri vellet dēmonstrāvit. Jāsōn autem, etsi bene intellegēbat rem esse difficillimam, negōtium libenter suscepit.

38. quid fieri vellet: an indirect question.

#### 4. THE BUILDING OF THE GOOD SHIP ARGO

- 40 Cum tamen Colchis multōrum diērum iter ab eō locō abesset, nōluit Jāsōn sōlus proficisci. Dimisit igitur nūntiōs in omnēs partēs quī causam itineris docerent et diem certum conveniendī dicerent. Intereā postquam omnia quae sunt ūsuī ad armandās nāvēs comportārī jussit, negōtium dedit
- 45 Argō cuidam, quī summam scientiam rērum nauticārum habēbat, ut nāvem aedificāret. In hīs rēbus circiter decem diēs cōsumptī sunt. Argus enim, quī operī praeerat, tantam dīligentiam praebēbat ut nē nocturnum quidem tempus ad labōrem intermitteret. Ad multitūdinem hominum trāns-
- 50 portandam nāvis paulō erat lātior quam quae fieri solitae

40. Cum: as *cum* with the subjunctive may mean either *when*, *since*, or *although*, one must decide from the context which meaning is the right one.

iter: an accusative of extent, further defined by the genitive of measure, *multōrum diērum*.

44. ūsuī, *of service*; dative of purpose, App. 53.

armandās: gerundive with *ad* expressing purpose. Two more examples occur in this section.

negōtium . . . ut: the same combination was noted in l. 35.

47. operī: why dative?

48. ut . . . intermitteret: a clause of result, App. 96.

nē . . . quidem: this phrase encloses the word emphasized, here *nocturnum*.

50. quam quae: for *quam eae quae*.

44. com-portō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.*, carry together, bring together, collect.

45. nauticus, -a, -um, *adj.* [nauta], naval, nautical.

46. circiter, *adv.* [circus], about, nearly.

49. inter-mittō, -mittere, -misi, -missum, *tr.*, suspend, interrupt; let pass; *pass.*, intervene.

erant, et ad vim tempestātum perferendam tōta ē rōbre facta est.

51. *per-ferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum*, withstand; bring; carry (*a law*).  
*tr.*, bear through; bear, endure, *rōbur, rōboris, n.*, oak.

## 5. THE ANCHOR IS WEIGHED

Intereā ea diēs appetēbat quam Jāsōn per nūntiōs ēdixerat, et ex omnibus regiōnibus Graeciae multī quōs aut rei novitās aut spēs glōriae movēbat undique conveniēbant. Trādunt autem in hōc numerō fuisse Herculem (dē quō ante multa perscrīpsimus), Orpheum, citharoedum praeclārissimum, Thēseum, Castorem et multōs aliōs quōrum nōmina nōtissima sunt. Ex hīs Jāsōn, quōs arbitrātus est ad omnia subeunda pericula parātissimōs esse, eōs ad numerum quīnquāgintā dēlēgit et sociōs sibi adjūxit. Tum, paucōs diēs commorātus, ut ad omnēs cāsūs subsidia comparāret, nāvem dēdūxit

53. *diēs*: here feminine. It is always masculine in the plural and frequently so in the singular.

55. *Trādunt, they say, it is commonly reported.*

57. *Orpheum*: a mythical musician and poet, son of the Muse Calliope, reputed to have been so skilled as to move rocks and trees by the power of his song, to charm wild beasts, and to stay rivers in their course.

*Thēseum*: a celebrated Athenian hero, whose adventures resemble the labors of Hercules. The best known adventure was the killing of the Minotaur in the Cretan Labyrinth.

58. *Castorem*: Castor was the son of Zeus and Leda and the brother of Pollux. The latter was famed as a boxer, Castor as a tamer of horses.

59. *quōs*: subject of *esse*; *eōs* is its antecedent. A relative clause in Latin often precedes the antecedent. English order requires that the antecedent be translated first.

62. *ut . . . comparāret*: a clause of purpose, App. 94.

54. *novitās, -ātis, f. [novus]*, newness, novelty.

57. *citharoedus, -i, m.*, citharoedus, one who plays on the cithara and sings at the same time.

60. *quīnquāgintā, indecl. num.* [quinque], fifty.

61. *com-moror, -ārī, -ātus sum, intr.*, tarry, linger.

et, tempestātem ad nāvigandum idōneam nactus, magnō cum plausū omnium solvit.

63. tempestātem: not "tempest" or "storm."

nāvigandum: gerund or gerundive?

64. plausus, -ūs, *m.* [plaudō, to clap], clapping, applause.

### C. A FATAL MISTAKE

- 65 Haud multō post Argonautae (ita enim appellāti sunt qui in istā nāvi vehēbantur) insulam quandam nōmine Cyzicum attigērunt et, ē nāvi ēgressī, ā rēge illius regiōnis hospitio excepti sunt. Paucās hōrās ibi commorāti, ad sōlis occāsum rūsus solvērunt. At, postquam pauca milia passuum prōgressi sunt, tanta tempestās subitō coōrta est ut cursum tenēre nōn possent, et in eandem partem insulae unde nūper profecti erant magnō cum periculō dējicerentur. Incolae tamen, cum nox esset obscura, Argonautās nōn agnōscēbant, et, nāvem inimicam vēnisse arbitrāti, arma rapuērunt et eōs
- 75 ēgredi prohibēbant. Acriter in litore pugnātum est, et rēx

65. Argonautae: the word means *the sailors of the Argo*; we have Anglicized it as Argonauts.

66. nāvi: the ablative singular of *nāvis* is occasionally written *nāve*, but usually *nāvi*.

70. ut . . . nōn possent: a negative clause of result; what is the introductory word in a negative clause of purpose? In the second part of this sentence the result becomes positive, *et . . . dējicerentur*, but *were driven along*.

73. cum: is the meaning *when*, *since*, or *although*?

75. pugnātum est: certain intransitive verbs may be used impersonally in the passive, the subject of such a passive being suggested by the meaning of the verb itself; here, with *acriter*, *a fierce battle was fought*. Compare Her. 280.

65. haud, *adv.*, not at all, by no means, not.

multō, *adv.* [*abl. of multum*], by much, much, by far, far.

66. vehō, -ere, vexi, vectum, *tr.*,

bear, carry, bring.

71. nūper, *adv.*, newly, lately, recently.

73. obscurus, -a, -um, *adj.*, dark, dim.

ipse, qui cum aliis dēcucurrerat, ab Argonautis occisus est. Mox tamen, cum jam dilucēsceret, sēnsērunt incolae sē errāre, et arma abjēcērunt. Argonautae autem, cum vidērent rēgem occisum esse, magnum dolōrem percēpērunt.

76. dē-currō, -currere, -cucurri,  
or -curri, -cursum, *intr.*, run  
down; maneuver.

77. di-lucēscō, -lucēscere, -lūxī, —,

*intr.* [lūx], grow light, dawn.

78. abjiciō, -jicere, -jēcī, -jectum,  
*tr.* [ab+jaciō], throw away, throw  
aside.

## 7. THE LOSS OF HYLAS

Postridiē ejus diēi Jāsōn, tempestātem satis idōneam esse so arbitratūs (summa enim tranquillitās jam cōnsecūta erat), ancorās sustulit et, pauca milia passuum prōgressus, ante noctem Mȳsiam attigit. Ibi paucās hōrās in ancoris expectāvit; ā nautis enim cognōverat aquae cōpiam quam sēcum habērent jam dēficere; quam ob causam quīdam ex Argonautis ss in terram ēgressī aquam quaerēbant. Hōrum in numerō erat Hylās quīdam, puer fōrmā praestantissimā; quī dum fontem quaerit, ā comitibus paulum sēcesserat. Nymphae autem quae fontem colēbant, cum juvenem vidissent, ei persuādēre cōnātae sunt ut sēcum manēret; et cum ille 90 negāret sē hoc factūrum esse, puerum vī abstulērunt.

80. ejus diēi: these words are, strictly speaking, unnecessary, since *postridiē* alone means *the next day*. The use of the full phrase is, however, quite common.

83. in ancoris, at anchor.

84. cōpiam . . . dēficere: indirect discourse; why is *habērent* subjunctive?

87. quī: the relative at the head of an independent sentence, to be translated by a personal pronoun.

90. ut . . . manēret: a noun clause, object of *persuādēre*, App. 97; to be translated by an infinitive.

91. negāret: *negō* is the normal Latin for *say that not*.

80. postridiē, *adv.* [posterō diē], the next day.

88. fōns, fontis, *m.*, spring, fountain.

sē-cēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum,  
*intr.*, go apart, retire, withdraw.

Comitēs ejus, postquam Hylam āmissum esse sēnsērunt, magnō dolōre affectī, diū frūstrā quaerēbant. Herculēs autem et Polyphēmus, quī vestigia puerī longius secūtī erant, ubi  
 95 tandem ad litus rediērunt, Jāsonem solvisse cognōvērunt.

### 8. DINING MADE DIFFICULT

Post haec Argonautae ad Thrāciam cursum tenuērunt, et, postquam ad oppidum Salmydessum nāvem appulerant, in terram ēgressī sunt. Ibi, cum ab incolis quaesissent quis rēgnum ejus regiōnis obtinēret, certiōrēs factī sunt Phīneum  
 100 quendam tum rēgem esse. Cognōvērunt etiam hunc caecum esse et dīrō quōdam suppliciō afficī, quod ōlim sē crūdēlissimum in filiōs suōs prae buisset. Cujus suppliciī hoc erat genus. Missa erant ā Jove mōnstra quaedam, speciēs horribili, quae capita virginum, corpora volucrum habēbant.  
 105 Hae volucrēs, quae Harpyiae appellābantur, Phīneō summam molestiam afferēbant; quotiēns enim ille accubuerat, veniēbant et cibum appositum statim auferēbant. Quae cum ita essent, Phīneus famē paene mortuus est.

98. quis . . . obtinēret: the original form of the question would be *quis . . . obtinet?* Why the subjunctive?

99. certiōrēs factī sunt, *were informed*; the phrase is followed by indirect discourse. What is the literal translation?

106. accubuerat: the Roman custom of assuming a half reclining position at table is here attributed to a much earlier period.

107. Quae cum ita essent: a clause frequently employed by Latin authors; literally, *since these things were so*; better, *in consequence*, or *in view of these facts*.

108. famē: the ablative of this word has the ending of a fifth declension noun, although its other forms belong to the third declension.

100. caecus, -a, -um, *adj.*, blind.

104. volucris, -is, *f.* [volucer, flying], bird.

106. molestia, -ae, *f.* [molestus], vexation, annoyance.

accumbō, -cumbere, -cubui, -cu-

bitum, *intr.* [ad+cumbō, recline], recline (*at table*).

107. appōnō, -pōnere, -posui, -positum, *tr.* [ad+pōnō], place near; serve, set before.

108. famēs, -is, *f.*, hunger.

## 9. THE HARPIES BEATEN

Rēs igitur in hōc locō erant, cum Argonautae nāvem ap-  
 pulērunt. Phīneus autem, simul atque audiuit eōs in suōs 110  
 finēs ēgressōs esse, magnopere gāvīsus est. Sciēbat enim  
 quantam opīniōnem virtūtis Argonautae habērent, nec dubi-  
 tābat quī sibi auxilium ferrent. Nūntium igitur ad nāvem  
 mīsit quī Jāsonem sociōsque ad rēgiā vocāret. Eō cum  
 vēnissent, Phīneus dēmōnstrāvit quantō in periculō suae rēs 115  
 essent, et prōmīsit sē magna praemia datūrum esse, sī illi  
 remedium repperissent. Argonautae negōtium libenter sus-  
 cēpērunt, et, ubi hōra vēnit, cum rēge accubuērunt; at simul  
 ac cēna apposita est, Harpyiae cēnāculum intrāvērunt, et  
 cibum auferre cōnābantur. Argonautae prīmum ēnsibus vo- 120  
 lucrēs petiērunt; cum tamen vidērent hoc nihil prōdesse,  
 Zētus et Calais, quī ālis instrūctī erant, in āera sē sublevāvē-  
 runt, ut dēsuper impetum facerent. Quod cum sēnsissent

109. *cum . . . appulērunt*: when *cum* introduces a new event in the narrative instead of describing a situation, it takes the perfect indicative.

112. *quantam*: this word may be either a relative or an interrogative; the subjunctive *habērent* shows the clause to be an indirect question.

*opīniōnem*: the word sometimes means *opinion*, but not here.

113. *quī . . . ferrent*, *that they were coming to his rescue*; the use of *quī* with the subjunctive is explained in App. 106.

117. *repperissent*: representing a future perfect indicative, second person, in direct discourse; translate with the auxiliary "would."

121. *nihil*: accusative of extent; with *prōdesse*, *availed nothing, had no effect*.

122. *āera*: for the case see note on Per. 33.

123. *Quod cum*: do not translate *which when*.

112. *dubitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, intr.*  
*[dubius]*, doubt, hesitate.

113. *quī, conj. and adv.* [*quī, how, +ne*]; *as conj., after words of doubt, that; after words of hindering, from; as adv., quī etiam, nay, nay even, nay in fact.*

116. *prōmittō, -mittere, -mīsi, -mis-  
 sum, tr.*, send forth, promise.

117. *remedium, -ī, n.* [*re-, compare medeor, heal*], remedy, cure.

119. *cēnāculum, -ī, n.* [*cēna*], dining-room.

120. *ēnsis, -is, m.*, sword.

122. *āla, -ae, f.*, wing.

*sub-levō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr.*, hold up, support; assist, help.

Harpylae, rei novitate perterritae, statim aufugerunt, neque  
125 postea umquam redierunt.

124. aufugiō, -fugere, -fūgī, —, *intr.* [ab + fugiō], flee away, run away.

## 10. THE SYMPLEGADES

Hoc factō, Phineus, ut prō tantō beneficiō meritam grātiā  
referret, Jāsonī dēmōnstrāvit quā ratiōne Symplēgadēs vitāre  
posset. Symplēgadēs autem duae erant rūpēs ingentī magni-  
tūdine, quae ā Jove pōitae erant eō cōnsiliō, nē quis ad  
130 Colchida perveniret. Hae parvō intervallō in marī natābant  
et, si quid in medium spatium vēnerat, incrēdibilī celeritāte  
concurrēbant. Postquam igitur ā Phīneō doctus est quid  
faciendum esset Jāsōn, sublātis ancoris, nāvem solvit et, lēnī  
ventō prōvectus, mox ad Symplēgadēs appropinquāvit; tum  
135 in prōrā stāns columbam quam in manū tenēbat ēmisit. Illa

126. Hoc factō: ablative absolute, to be translated by a clause with "when," App. 75.

129. eō cōnsiliō, *with this design (purpose)*; explained by the clause which follows.

nē quis, *that no one*; the force and use of *quis* were explained in the note on *sī quis*, l. 20.

132. quid faciendum esset, *what had to be done*. For the use of the future passive participle see App. 126.

133. sublātis ancoris: ablative absolute; we say *weigh anchor*. When the perfect passive participle in an ablative absolute phrase, as here, denotes an act by the subject of the principal verb, it is usually best rendered in the active voice. Here are typical translations:

by a past active participle: *having weighed anchor*

by a coördinate verb: *weighed anchor and*

by a prepositional phrase: *after weighing anchor*

by a temporal clause: *when he had weighed anchor*.

127. ratiō, -ōnis, *f.*, reckoning, account; list, record; plan, course, manner; principle, reason.

130. natō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *intr.* [*freq.* of nō, swim], swim, float.

133. lēnis, -e, *adj.*, mild, gentle.

135. prōra, -ae, *f.*, bow, prow.

columba, -ae, *f.*, dove, pigeon.

ē-mittō, -mittere, -misi, -missum, *tr.*, send forth, release; utter.



rēctā viā per medium spatium volāvit et, priusquam rūpēs cōnfixērunt, incolumis ēvāsīt, caudā tantum āmissā. Tum rūpēs utrimque discessērunt; antequam tamen rūrsus concurrerent, Argonautae, bene intellegentēs omnem spem salutis in celeritāte positam esse, summā vī rēmīs contendērunt, et nāvem incolumem perdūxērunt. Hōc factō, dīs grātiās libenter ēgērunt, quōrum auxiliō ē tantō periculō ēreptī essent; bene enim sciēbant nōn sine auxiliō deōrum rem ita fēliciter ēvēnisse.

136. rēctā viā, *straight*; how literally? The ablative is employed to denote the road or route.

138. antequam . . . concurrerent: heretofore *antequam* and *priusquam* have taken an indicative, signifying merely that one event occurred before another. In this passage is an example of the anticipatory use of the subjunctive with *antequam*, App. 100. The person anticipating may view the event in various ways. The Argonauts evidently wished to forestall the closing in of the movable cliffs, which we can indicate by translating *should rush together*.

142. ēreptī essent: the subjunctive is due to the informal indirect discourse, App. 106; that is, while no verb of saying is employed, one is implied in *grātiās ēgērunt*: *they thanked the gods, by whose help* (as they said), etc. At the same time the clause expresses the reason assigned for their prayer of thanks.

136. rēctus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*p. part.* of *regō*], straight, direct; upright.

137. cōn-fligō, -fligere, -fixi, -flic-tum, *intr.*, dash or strike together.

138. utrimque, *adv.* [*uterque*], on both sides.

143. fēliciter, *adv.* [*fēlix*], happily, luckily.

## 11. A HEAVY TASK

Brevi intermissō spatiō, Argonautae ad flūmen Phāsīm vērērunt, quod in finibus Colchōrum erat. Ibi, cum nāvem appulissent et in terram ēgressī essent, statim ad rēgem Aeētem sē contulērunt, et ab eō postulāvērunt ut vellus aureum sibi trāderētur. Ille, cum audīvisset quam ob causam Argonautae vēnissent, irā commōtus est, et diū negāvit

145. Brevi intermissō spatiō, *after a short time*; ablative absolute.

148. ut . . . trāderētur: a noun clause, object of *postulāvērunt*.

sē vellus trāditūrum esse. Tandem tamen, quod sciēbat Jāsonem nōn sine auxiliō deōrum hoc negōtium suscēpisse, mūtātā sententiā, prōmisit sē vellus trāditūrum, sī Jāsōn labōrēs duōs difficillimōs prius perfēcisset; et, cum Jāsōn  
 155 dīxisset sē ad omnia perīcula subeunda parātum esse, quid fieri vellet ostendit. Primum jungendī erant duo taurī speciē horribilī, quī flammās ex ore ēdēbant; tum, his jūctīs, ager quīdam arandus erat, et dentēs dracōnis serendī. His audītīs, Jāsōn, etsī rem esse summī perīculi intellegēbat, tamen, nē  
 160 hanc occāsionem rei bene gerendae āmitteret, negōtium suscēpit.

154. *perfēcisset*: for a future perfect indicative of direct discourse, as in l. 117.

156. *jungendī erant*: *had to be, must be, were to be (yoked)* illustrate possible renderings of the future passive participle with *sum*.

159. *nē . . . āmitteret*: *in order not to lose*, a negative clause of purpose.

160. *rei bene gerendae*, *of successfully accomplishing his purpose*; a gerundive construction, App. 128.

154. *prius*, *adv.* [*n. of prior*], before, first.

158. *serō, -ere, sēvi, satum, tr.*, sow, plant.

157. *flamma, -ae, f.*, flame.

## 12. THE MAGIC OINTMENT

At Mēdēa, rēgis filia, Jāsonem adamāvit, et, ubi audīvit eum tantum periculum subitūrum esse, rem aegrē ferēbat. Intellegēbat enim patrem suum hunc labōrem prōposuisse eō  
 165 ipsō cōsiliō, ut Jāsōn morerētur. Quae cum ita essent, Mēdēa (quae summam peritiā medicināe habēbat) hoc cōn-

163. *rem aegrē ferēbat*, *was deeply grieved*; literally, *bore the thing with distress*.

165. *ut . . . morerētur*: a clause explaining *cōsiliō*, as in l. 129.

162. *ad-amō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr.*, fall in love with.

166. *peritiā, -ae, f.* [*peritus*], experience, knowledge.

163. *aegrē, adv.* [*aeger*], painfully; with difficulty; with grief; with resentment.

*medicinā, -ae, f.* [*medeor*, heal], the healing art, medicine.

silium iniit. Mediā nocte insciente patre ex urbe ēvāsīt; et, postquam in montēs finitimōs vēnit, herbās quāsdam carpsit; tum, sūcō expressō, unguentum parāvit, quod vī suā corpus aleret nervōsque cōfirmāret. Hōc factō, Jāsōnī unguentum 170 dedit; praecēpit autem ut eō diē quō isti labōrēs cōficiendī essent corpus suum et arma māne oblineret. Jāsōn, etsī paene omnibus magnitūdine et vīribus corporis praestābat (vīta enim omnis in vēnātiōnibus atque in studiis rei militāris cōnstitat), cēnsēbat tamen hoc cōnsilium nōn neglegendum 175 esse.

167. *insciente patre*, *without her father's knowledge*, ablative absolute.

170. *aleret, cōfirmāret*: employ the auxiliary "should" in translation; the clause is a relative clause of purpose.

171. *quō*: for *quō diē*, *when*.

*cōficiendī essent*, *were to be performed*; the principle of subjunctive by attraction is explained in the note on *sī quis*, l. 20.

175 *cōnstitat*, *had consisted*; from *cōnstō*.

167. *in-sciēns*, *gen. -scientis, adj.*, unknowing, without knowledge, unaware.

168. *herba, -ae, f.*, herb; grass, turf. *carpō, carpere, carpsī, carptum, tr.*, pluck.

169. *sūcus, -i, m.*, juice, sap.

*exprimō, -primere, -pressī, -pressum, tr.* [*ex + premō*], press out: wring out; elicit.

*unguentum, -i, n.* [*ungō, anoint*], ointment.

170. *alō, alere, alui, altum, tr.*, nourish, sustain.

*nervus, -i, m.*, sinew, muscle, power, strength.

172. *māne, adv.*, in the morning, early in the morning.

*qb-linō, -linere, -lēvī, -litum, tr.*, daub, smear over.

174. *vēnātiō, -ōnis, f.* [*vēnor*], hunting, the chase.

175. *cēnsēō, cēnsēre, cēnsui, cēnsūm, tr.*, estimate, think, believe.

*neglegō, -legere, -lēxī, -lēctum, tr.* [*nec + legō*], disregard, neglect, slight.

### 13. SOWING THE DRAGON'S TEETH

Ubi is diēs vēnit quem rēx ad arandum agrum ēdixerat, Jāsōn, ortā lūce, cum sociis ad locum cōstitutum sē contulit. Ibi stabulum ingēns repperit, in quō tauri inclūsī erant. Tum,

178. *ortā lūce, at daybreak*.

- 180 portis apertis, taurōs in lūcem trāxit, et summā cum difficul-  
tate jugum imposuit. At Aeētēs, cum vidēret taurōs nihil  
contrā Jāsonem valēre, magnopere mirātus est; nesciēbat  
enim filiam suam auxilium ei dedisse. Tum Jāsōn, omnibus  
aspicientibus, agrum arāre coepit; quā in rē tantam diligen-  
185 tiam praeiuit ut ante meridiem tōtum opus cōfēcērit. Hōc  
factō, ad locum ubi rēx sedēbat adiit, et dentēs dracōnis  
postulāvit; quōs ubi accēpit, in agrum quem arāverat magnā  
cum diligentia sparsit. Hōrum autem dentium nātūra erat  
tālis ut in eō locō ubi sparsi essent viri armātī mīrō quōdam  
190 modō gignerentur.

181. nihil: accusative of extent, as in l. 121; with *valēre*, *had no power*.

184. quā in rē: the position of the preposition is like that of *ob* in l. 18.

tantam: this word (also *tālis* in l. 189) indicates clearly whether the *ut* clause following is one of purpose or of result.

185. cōfēcērit: the perfect subjunctive where an imperfect would seem to be required by sequence of tenses, App. 141, 1.

181. jugum, -i, *n.*, yoke.

182. valeō, -ēre, *valui*, *valitūrus*,  
*intr.*, be strong, have power; be  
valid.

184. aspicō, *aspicere*, *aspexi*, *as-*  
*spectum*, *tr.* [ad+speciō, look], look  
at, behold, look on.

185. meridiēs, -ēi, *m.* [medius+  
diēs], mid-day, noon; the south.

188. spargō, -ere, *sparsi*, *sparum*  
*tr.*, strew, scatter, sprinkle.

190. gignō, -ere, *genui*, *genitus*, *tr.*,  
give birth to; beget.

#### 14. A STRANGE CROP

Nōndum tamen Jāsōn tōtum opus cōfēcērat; imperāverat  
enim ei Aeētēs ut armātōs virōs quī ē dentibus gignerentur  
sōlus interficeret. Postquam omnēs dentēs in agrum sparsit,  
Jāsōn, lassitūdine exanimātus, quiētī sē trādīdit, dum viri

192. ut . . . interficeret, *to kill*; a noun clause with its verb in the active  
when used as the object of a verb of commanding, persuading, or warning  
is usually to be translated by an infinitive.

193. sōlus, *without assistance*.

194. lassitūdō, -dinis, *f.* [lassus, weary], weariness.

istī gignerentur. Paucās hōrās dormiēbat; sub vesperum, 195  
tamen, ē somnō subitō excitātus, rem ita ēvēnisse ut praedic-  
tum erat cognōvit; nam in omnibus agrī partibus virī in-  
gentī magnitūdine corporis, ēnsibus galeisque armātī, mīrum  
in modum ē terrā oriēbantur. Hōc cognitō, Jāsōn cōnsilium  
quod dederat Mēdēa nōn omittendum esse putābat; saxum 200  
igitur ingēns (ita enim praecēperat Mēdēa) in mediōs virōs  
conjēcit. Illi undique ad locum concurrērunt, et cum quis-  
que sibi id saxum (nesciō cūr) habēre vellet, magna contrō-  
versia orta est. Mox, strictīs ēnsibus, inter sē pugnāre  
coepērunt, et, cum hōc modō plūrimī occisī essent, reliquī 205  
vulneribus cōfectī ā Jāsone nullō negōtiō interfectī sunt.

195. *gignerentur*, should be born; an anticipatory subjunctive with *dum*, until. In l. 138 the event was one to be forestalled; here it is one to prepare for.

sub *vesperum*, toward evening.

196. *ut*: with the indicative this word means *as* or *when*; in the sense of *as*, it may be correlative with *ita* or *sic*, as in this sentence.

198. *mīrum in modum*: a prepositional phrase equivalent to *mīrō modō*,

203. *nesciō cūr*, for some reason or other; in l. 13 occurred *nesciō quam fabulam*.

204. *inter sē*, one another; a phrase denoting reciprocal action, and of frequent occurrence.

196. ē-veniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ven-  
tum, *intr.*, come out; result, turn  
out.

prae-dicō, -dicere, -dixī, -dictum, *tr.*,  
foretell, predict.

200. omittō, -mittere, omisī, -omis-

sum, *tr.* [ob + mittō], let go; neg-  
lect.

203. contrōversia, -ae, *f.* [contrō-  
versus, disputed], dispute, quarrel.

204. stringō, -ere, strinxī, strictum,  
*tr.*, strip off; draw, unsheathe.

## 15. FLIGHT OF MEDEA

At rēx Aeētēs, ubi cognōvit Jāsōnem labōrem prōpositum  
cōnfēcisse, irā graviter commōtus est; intellegēbat enim id  
per dolum factum esse, nec dubitābat quīn Mēdēa auxilium

209. quīn . . . tulisset: *quīn* and the subjunctive after a verb of doubt-  
ing, as in l. 113.

- 210 eī tulisset. Mēdēa autem, cum intellexeret sē in magnō fore periculō, sī in rēgiā mānsisset, fugā salūtem petere cōstituit. Omnibus igitur ad fugam parātis, mediā nocte, insciente patre, cum frātre Absyrtō ēvāsīt, et quam celerrimē ad locum ubi Argō subducta erat sē contulit. Eō cum vēnisset, ad  
 215 pedēs Jāsonis sē prōjēcīt, et multīs cum lacrimīs obsecrāvit eum nē in tantō discrimine mulierem dēsereret quae ei tantum prōfuisset. Ille, quod memoriā tenēbat sē per ejus auxilium ē magnō periculō ēvāsisse, libenter eam excēpit et, postquam causam veniendī audīvit, hortātus est nē patris  
 220 iram timēret. Prōmīsīt autem sē quam primum eam in nāve suā āvectūrum.

210. fore: a future infinitive, often employed instead of *futūrus esse*.

214. subducta: the size of ancient ships made it possible to "beach" them; for "launch" we have found *dēducō*.

216. nē, not to.

220. quam primum, as soon as possible. What is the force of a superlative with *quam*? Point out another example a few lines above.

214. sub-ducō, -ducere, -dūxī, -ductum, *tr.*, lead up, lead away; draw up, beach.

215. obsecrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.* [ob+sacrō, make sacred], entreat, implore.

216. discrimen, -inis, *n.* [discernō, separate], crisis, peril.

217. tantum, *adv.* [*acc. n. of tantus*], so greatly; this much, only.

221. ā-vehō, -vehere, -vexī, -vectum, *tr.*, carry off, take away.

## 16. SEIZURE OF THE FLEECE

- Postridiē ejus diēi Jāsōn cum sociīs suis, ortā lūce, nāvem dēdūxit et, tempestātem idōneam nactī, ad eum locum rēmis contendērunt, quō in locō Mēdēa vellus cēlātum esse dēmōn-  
 225 strāvit. Eō cum vēnissent, Jāsōn in terram ēgressus est et, sociīs ad mare relictīs quī praesidiō nāvi essent, ipse cum

224. quō in locō = ubi.

226. quī praesidiō nāvi essent, to guard the ship; the clause is one of purpose; *praesidiō* is a dative of purpose, *nāvi* a dative of reference, App. 53, 54.

Mēdēā in silvās viam cēpit. Pauca mīlia passuum per silvam  
 p̄gressus, vellus quod quaerēbat ex arbore suspēsum vidit.  
 Id tamen auferre rēs erat summae difficultātis; nōn modo  
 enim locus ipse ēgregiē et nātūrā et arte mūnītus erat, sed 230  
 etiam dracō quīdam, speciē terribili, arborem custōdiēbat.  
 At Mēdēā, quae, ut sup̄rā dēmōnstrāvimus, artis medicae  
 summam scientiam habuit, rārum quem ex arbore proximā  
 dēripuerat venēnō infēcit. Hōc factō, ad locum appropin-  
 quāvit, et dracōnem, quī faucibus apertis adventum expectā- 235  
 bat, venēnō sparsit; proinde, dum dracō somnō oppressus  
 dormit, Jāsōn vellus aureum ex arbore dēripuit, et cum  
 Mēdēā quam celerrimē pedem rettulit.

238. pedem rettulit: see *referō* in final vocabulary.

228. suspendō, -pendere, -pendi, -pēsum, *tr.* [sub+pendō], hang up, suspend.

230. ēgregiē, *adv.* [ēgregius], excellently, unusually.

232. medicus, -a, -um, *adj.* [medeor, heal], of healing, medical.

233. rāmus, -i, *m.*, branch, bough.

234. dēripiō, -ripere, -ripui, -reptum, *tr.* [dē+ripiō], tear away; pull off.

236. pro-inde, *adv.*, therefore, accordingly.

opprimō, -primere, -pressi, -pressum, *tr.* [ob+premō], press down, weigh down, overwhelm; overpower.

## 17. BACK TO THE ARGO

Dum tamen ea geruntur, Argonautae, quī ad mare relictī  
 erant, animō ānxiō reditum Jāsonis expectābant; bene enim 240  
 intellegēbant id negōtium summī esse periculī. Postquam  
 igitur ad occāsum sōlis frūstrā expectāverant, dē ejus salūte  
 dēspērāre coepērunt, nec dubitābant quīn aliquī cāsus acci-  
 disset. Quae cum ita essent, mātūrandum sibi cēnsuērunt,  
 ut auxilium duci ferrent; at, dum proficiēsci parant, lūmen 245  
 quoddam subitō cōspiciunt, mīrum in modum inter silvās

244. mātūrandum (esse) sibi, *that they ought to make haste*; impersonal use of the passive of an intransitive verb; *sibi* is a dative of agent, App. 56.

240. ānxius, -a, -um, *adj.*, anxious.

refulgēns, et magnopere mirāti quae causa esset ejus rei, ad locum concurrunt. Quō cum vēnissent, Jāsoni et Mēdēae advenientibus occurrerunt, et vellus aureum lūminis ejus  
 250 causam esse cognōverunt. Omni timōre sublātō, magnō cum gaudiō ducem suum excēpērunt, et dīs grātiās libenter ēgērunt, quod rēs ita fēliciter ēvēnisset.

248. Quō cum: translate as if *eō cum*.

251. dīs: the form regularly employed for the dative and ablative plural of *deus*.

252. quod . . . ēvēnisset: the indicative is used with *quod* causal unless the reason is regarded as a quotation. Here the causal clause contains the reason assigned in the Argonauts' prayer; compare l. 142.

247. re-fulgēō, -fulgēre, -fulsi, —, *intr.*, flash back, glitter.

any place, anywhere; with *compar.*, in order that.

248. Quō, *adv.* [quī], *interrog.*, whither? where? *relative*, to which place or point, whither; *indef.*, to

249. ad-veniō, -venīre, -vēni, -ventum, *intr.*, come to, come up, approach.

## 18. PURSUED BY THE ANGRY FATHER

His rēbus gestīs, omnēs sine morā nāvem rūrsus cōnscenderunt et, sublātīs ancorīs, primā vigiliā solvērunt; neque  
 255 enim satis tūtum esse arbitrātī sunt, in eō locō manēre. At rēx Aeētēs, quī jam ante inimicō in eōs fuerat animō, ubi cognōvit filiam suam nōn modo ad Argonautās sē recēpisse, sed etiam ad vellus auferendum auxilium tulisse, hōc dolōre gravius exārsit. Nāvem longam quam celerrimē dēdūcī jussit

254. vigiliā: a method of reckoning time in the night, which was divided, from sunset to sunrise, into four equal "watches."

256. inimicō in eōs fuerat animō, *had entertained hostile feelings toward them*; animō is a descriptive ablative in the predicate.

258. hōc dolōre: for *hujus rei dolōre*, in resentment at this; literally, because of this resentment.

259. nāvem longam, a war ship.

254. vigilia, -ae, *f.* [vigil, awake], a watching; a watch (as a division of time).

259. ex-ārdēscō, -ārdēscere, -ārsi, -ārsūm, *intr.*, blaze out; be inflamed, be enraged.



et, militibus impositis, fugientes insecutus est. Argonautae, 260  
qui bene sciebant rem in discrimine esse, summis viribus  
remis contendebant. Cum tamen navis quam vehébantur in-  
genti esset magnitudine, non eadem celeritate quam Colchi,  
progredi poterant. Quae cum ita essent, a Colchis sequenti-  
bus paene capti sunt; neque enim longius intererat quam quod 265  
telum adjici posset. At Mēdēa, cum vidisset quod in loco res  
essent, paene omni spe deposita, Infandum hoc consilium  
cepit.

260. *fugientes*: the present participle again as a noun, *fugitives*.

261. *summīs viribus remīs contendēbant*, *plied* (literally *strove with*) the  
oars with all their might; *viribus* is an ablative of manner, *remīs* of means.

262. *quā*, in which; an ablative of means.

265. *neque enim*, etc., for the distance between them was not greater than  
a javelin's throw; *quod . . . posset* is a clause of result, literally *greater than*  
to which a javelin could be thrown.

260. *in-sequor*, -sequi, -secutus  
sum, *tr.* and *intr.*, follow after,  
pursue, follow up.

265. *inter-sum*, -esse, -fui, -futurus,  
*intr.*, be between, lie between; be  
present at, attend.

266. *ad-jiciō*, -jicere, -jēci, -jectum,  
*tr.* [ad+jaciō], hurl to, hurl upon,  
throw.

267. *in-fandus*, -a, -um, *adj.*, un-  
speakable, shocking.

## 19. A FEARFUL EXPEDIENT

Erat in nave Argonautarum filius quidam regis Aeetae,  
nōmine Absyrtus, quem, ut suprā dēmōnstrāvimus, Mēdēa, 270  
ex urbe fugiēns, secum abduxerat. Hunc puerum Mēdēa  
cōstituit interficere eō cōsiliō, ut, membris ejus in mare  
conjectis, cursum Colchorum impediret; prō certō enim  
sciebat Aeetem, cum membra filii vidisset, nōn longius prō-  
secuturum esse; neque opiniō eam fefellit. Omnia enim ita 275

273. *prō certō sciebat*, *she felt certain*; literally, *knew it for certain*.

275. *neque opiniō eam fefellit*, and she was not mistaken; literally, the  
expectation did not deceive her.

271. *ab-ducō*, -ducere, -dūxi, -duc-  
tum, *tr.*, lead away, bring away.

274. *prō-sequor*, -sequi, -secutus

sum, *tr.*, follow, follow after.

275. *fallō*, *fallere*, *fefelli*, *falsum*, *tr.*,  
deceive, cheat, elude.

evēnērunt ut Mēdēa spērāverat. Aeētēs, ubi primum membra vidit, ad ea colligenda nāvem statui jussit. Dum tamen ea geruntur, Argonautae, nōn intermissō rēmigandī labōre, mox (quod necesse fuit) ē cōspectū hostium remōtī sunt, neque prius fugere dēstitērunt quam ad flūmen Ēridanum pervēnērunt. At Aeētēs, nihil sibi prōfutūrum esse arbitrātus, sī longius prōgressus esset, animō dēmissō domum revertit, ut filiī corpus ad sepultūrā daret.

276. ubi primum: a phrase with the same meaning as *simul ac*; *cum primum* is more common.

278. nōn intermissō . . . labōre, by *uninterrupted labor at the oars*, ablative absolute.

279. quod: neuter, because reference is made to the following statement of fact.

280. prius: to be translated with *quam, before*; the two are often written as one word.

282. sī longius prōgressus esset: in form a condition, in thought the subject of *prōfutūrum esse*, it would do him no good to go farther.

animō dēmissō, *dejected*.

277. colligō, -ligere, -lēgī, -lēctum, *tr.* [com-+lēgō], collect

statuō, -ere, statui, statūtum, *tr.* [status, a standing], cause to stand, stop; resolve, determine.

278. rēmigō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *intr.*

[rēmex, rower], row, ply an oar.

279. re-moveō, -movēre, -mōvi, -mōtum, *tr.*, move back; take away, remove.

282. dē-mittō, -mittere, -misi, -misum, *tr.*, send down, let fall.

## 20. THE BARGAIN WITH PELIAS

Tandem post multa pericula Jāsōn in eundem locum pervēnit unde ōlim profectus erat. Tum ē nāvi ēgressus, ad rēgem Peliam, quī rēgnū adhūc obtinēbat, statim sē contulit et, vellere aureō mōnstrātō, ab eō postulāvit ut rēgnū sibi trāderetur. Peliās enim pollicitus erat, sī Jāsōn velle rettulisset, sē rēgnū ei trāditūrum. Postquam Jāsōn quid fieri vellet ostendit, Peliās primum nihil respondit, sed diū

289. rettulisset, *should bring back*. In direct discourse the future perfect indicative, *rettuleris*, would be used.

in eādem tristitiā tacitus permānsit; tandem ita locūtus est: "Vidēs mē aetāte jam esse cōfectum, neque dubium est quā diēs suprēmus mihi adsit. Liceat igitur mihi, dum vivam, hoc rēgnum obtinēre; tum, postquam ego ē vitā discesserō, tū in meum locum veniēs." Hāc ōrātiōne adductus, 295 Jāsōn respondit sē id factūrum quod ille rogāssset.

**293. mihi (adsit):** a dative of reference, *for me*; best translated here by a possessive, *my last day*.

**adsit:** like *nōn dubiō*, the phrase *nōn dubium est* takes *quā* and the subjunctive.

**Liceat:** the subjunctive expresses an entreaty, *allow me*, etc.; literally, *may it be permitted me*; App. 92.

**294. vivam:** future indicative with *dum* meaning *as long as*.

**ego, tū:** the personal pronouns are here employed for emphasis and contrast.

**291. tristitia, -ae, f. [tristis],** dejection, sadness.

**tacitus, -a, -um, adj. [p. part. of taceō],** silent, still.

**per-maneō, -manēre, -mānsī, -mānsū, intr.,** remain, continue.

**292. dubius, -a, -um, adj.,** doubtful, uncertain.

**293. suprēmus, -a, -um, adj. [superl. of superus],** highest; last.

**ad-sum, -esse, -fui, -futūrus, intr.,** be at hand, be near.

## 21. A MAGICAL TRANSFORMATION

His rēbus cognitīs, Mēdēa rem aegrē tulit et rēgnī cupiditāte adducta cōstituit mortem rēgī per dolum inferre. Hōc cōstitutō, ad filiās rēgis vēnit atque ita locūta est: "Vidētis patrem vestrum aetāte jam esse cōfectum, neque 300 ad labōrem rēgnandī perferendum satis valēre. Vultisne eum rūsus juvenem fieri?" Tum filiae rēgis ita respondērunt: "Num hoc fieri potest? Quis enim umquam ē sene juvenis

**297. rem aegrē tulit:** a combination commented on in connection with l. 163.

**298. mortem rēgī inferre, to cause the death of the king.** What is the literal translation? *Rēgī* is a dative with the compound verb *inferre*.

**301. Vultisne:** the enclitic *-ne* serves as sign of a direct question, without indicating whether a positive or a negative answer is expected.

**303. Num:** this particle indicates that "no" is the expected answer, *this can not be done, can it?*

factus est?" At Mēdēa respondit, "Scitis mē artis medicae  
 305 summam habēre scientiam. Nunc igitur vōbīs dēmōnstrābō  
 quō modō haec rēs fieri possit." His dictīs, cum arietem  
 aetāte jam cōfectum interfēcisset, membra ejus in vāse  
 aēneō posuit et, igne suppositō, in aquam herbās quāsdam  
 infūdīt. Tum, dum aqua effervēsceret, carmen magicum  
 310 cantābat. Post breve tempus ariēs ē vāse exiit et, viribus  
 refectīs, per agrōs currēbat.

---

309. *effervēsceret*: anticipatory subjunctive with *dum*, *until*, as in l. 135.

---

305. *vōs*, *gen. vestrum or vestri*,  
*pers. pron., pl. of tū*, you.

306. *ariēs*, *-etis*, *m.*, ram.

307. *vās*, *vāsis*, *n.*, vessel, utensil.

308. *suppōnō*, *-pōnere*, *-posuī*, *-posi-*  
*situm*, *tr.* [sub+pōnō], put under.

309. *in-fundō*, *-fundere*, *-fūdī*,  
*-fūsum*, *tr.*, pour into, pour upon.

*effervēscō*, *-fervēscere*, *-ferbuī*, —,  
 [ex+fervēscō, boil], boil up, boil.

*carmen*, *-inis*, *n.*, a song; charm,  
 incantation.

310. *cantō*, *-āre*, *-āvī*, *-ātum*, *intr.*  
 [freq. of canō], sing.

*exiliō*, *-ire*, *-uī*, —, *intr.* [ex+saliō],  
 leap, spring forth.

## 22. A DANGEROUS EXPERIMENT

Dum filiae rēgis hoc mīrāculum stupentēs intuentur,  
 Mēdēa ita locūta est: "Vidētis quantum valeat ars medica.  
 Vōs igitur, sī vultis patrem vestrum in adulēscēntiam re-  
 315 dūcere, id quod fēcī ipsae faciētis. Vōs patris membra in  
 vās conjicite; ego herbās magicās praebēbō." Filiae rēgis  
 cōnsilium quod dederat Mēdēa nōn omittendum putāvērunt.  
 Patrem igitur Peliam necāvērunt, et membra ejus in vās  
 aēneum conjecērunt; nihil enim dubitābant quā hoc maximē

---

314. *Vōs*, *you (also)*. In 315 and 316 *vōs* and *ego* are in contrast.

319. *nihil*: *not at all*; accusative of extent, a stronger negative than *nōn*.

---

312. *mīrāculum*, *-ī*, *n.* [mīror], mar-  
 vel, miracle.

*stupeō*, *-ēre*, *stupuī*, —, *intr.*, be  
 astounded, amazed, aghast.

*in-tueor*, *-tuērī*, *-tuitus sum*, *tr.*,  
 look upon, gaze at; protect.

314. *adulēscēntia*, *-ae*, *f.* [adulēs-  
 cēns], youth.

ei prōfutūrum esset. At rēs omnīnō aliter ēvēnit ac spērā- 320  
verant; Mēdēa enim nōn eāsdem herbās dedit, quibus ipsa  
ūsa erat. Itaque, postquam diū frūstrā expectāvērunt, pa-  
trem suum rē vērā mortuum esse intellēxērunt. His rēbus  
gestis, Mēdēa spērābat sē cum conjugē suō rēgnum accep-  
tūram esse. At civēs, cum intellegerent quō modō Peliās 325  
periisset, tantum scelus aegrē tulērunt; itaque, Jāsonē et  
Mēdēā ē rēgnō expulsīs, Acastum rēgem creāvērunt.

320. prōfutūrum esset, *would benefit*; a simple form of the subjunctive dependent upon a verb of doubting would not express futurity; Latin therefore resorts to the future active participle with the subjunctive of *sum*.

ac: after *aliter* and similar words *ac* is translated *than*.

323. rē vērā, *really, in truth*.

324. sē . . . acceptūram esse: the infinitive with subject accusative is used after *spērō* as after verbs of thinking, knowing, etc.

326. aegrē tulērunt: *were incensed at*.

320. *aliter, adv. [alius], otherwise.*

### 23. A FATAL GIFT

Post haec Jāsōn et Mēdēa, ē Thessaliā expulsī, ad urbem  
Corinthum vēnērunt, cujus urbis Creōn quidam rēgnum tum  
obtinēbat. Erat autem Creontī filia ūna, nōmine Glaucē; 330  
quam cum vidisset, Jāsōn cōstituit Mēdēam uxōrem suam  
repudiāre eō cōsiliō, ut Glaucēn in mātīmōnium dūceret.  
At Mēdēa, ubi intellēxit quae ille in animō habēret, Irā  
graviter commōta, jūre jūrandō cōfirmāvit sē tantam in-  
jūriam ultūram. Hoc igitur cōsiliū cēpit. Vestem parāvit 335  
summā arte contextam et variis colōribus tinctam. Hanc

330. Erat Creontī filia ūna = *Creōn fīliam ūnam habēbat*; *Creontī* is a dative of possession, App. 52.

332. Glaucēn: accusative; see note on *Danaē*, Per. 6.

335. Vestem: like the robe of Nessus in the story of Hercules.

334. jūs jūrandum, jūris jūrandī, tum, *tr.*, weave.

*n.*, an oath.

336. con-texō, -texere, -texui, -tex-

tingō, -ere, tinxī, tinctum, *tr.*, dip,  
dye.

dirō quōdam Infēcit venēnō, cujus vīs tālis erat ut, sī quis eam vestem induisset, corpus ejus quasi igne ūrerētur. Hōc factō, vestem Glaucæ mīsit. Illa autem, nihil malī suspiciāns,  
 340 dōnum libenter accēpit, et vestem novam (mōre fēminārum) statim induit.

---

**338. induisset:** the clause *sī quis . . . induisset* depends upon a subjunctive, *ūrerētur*; by what principle is *induisset* made subjunctive?

---

**338. ūrō, -ere, ussī, ustum, tr., burn.**

---

## 24. FLIGHT OF MEDEA, AND DEATH OF JASON

Vix vestem induerat Glaucē, cum dolōrem gravem per omnia membra sēnsit, et post paulum dirō cruciātū affecta ē vitā excessit. Hīs rēbus gestīs, Mēdēa, furōre atque āmentia  
 345 impulsa, filiōs suōs necāvit. Tum magnum sibi fore periculum arbitrāta sī in Thessaliā maneret, ex eā regiōne fugere cōstituit. Hōc cōstitutō, Sōlem ōrāvit ut in tantō periculō auxilium sibi praeberet. Sōl autem, hīs precibus commōtus, currum mīsit, cui dracōnēs, ālīs instrūctī, jūctī erant.  
 350 Mēdēa nōn omittendam tantam occāsiōnem arbitrāta currum cōnscendit, itaque per āera vecta incolumis ad urbem Athēnās pervēnit. Jāsōn autem post breve tempus mīrō modō occīsus est. Ille enim (sive cāsū sive cōnsiliō deōrum) sub umbrā nāvis suae, quae in lītus subducta erat, ōlim dormiēbat. At  
 355 nāvis, quae adhūc ērēcta steterat, in eam partem ubi Jāsōn jacēbat subitō delāpsa virum infēlicem oppressit.

---

**342. cum . . . sēnsit:** the same use of *cum*, *when*, noted in connection with l. 109.

**351. itaque:** the two parts of the word are here to be translated separately, *and so*. What is the usual meaning?

---

**344. āmentia, -ae, f.** [āmēns, out of one's mind], madness.

**349. currus, -ūs, m.,** chariot.

**353. umbra, -ae, f.,** shadow.

**348. prex, precis, f. (usually pl.),** prayer, entreaty.

**356. de-lābor, -lābī, -lāpsus sum, intr.,** fall down, slip down.



## STORIES FROM ROMAN HISTORY

The city of Rome was believed by the Romans to have been founded by Romulus, who was the grandson of the king of Alba Longa, a town situated in the Alban Hills, not far from Rome. According to legend Romulus was the descendant of Aeneas, who had fled from Troy to Italy when Troy was captured by the Greeks.

Following Romulus six other kings ruled over Rome, the last of whom was driven from his throne and compelled to go into exile. A republican form of government was then established which continued nearly to the beginning of the Christian era.

The stories of Romulus and the other heroes of Rome's early history are so involved with legend and myth that they have but little historical value. But because of the large place which they hold in the literature and art of the Romans they are scarcely less significant than the more truthful narrative of later times.

The stories of the republican period and probably of the greater part of the period of the kings, as here given, deal with historical facts. Since the civilization of today is so closely bound up with that of the Romans, these stories of Rome may be said to have a direct connection with the life of the great nations of the present time, our own nation included.

The narrative is not given in the exact form in which it has come down to us in the works of the Roman writers, but the incidents are told substantially as they are found in their works.



## STORIES FROM ROMAN HISTORY

### 1. AENEAS SETTLES IN ITALY

Ōlim in Asiā erat urbs antīqua, quae Troja appellāta est. Eam urbem Graeci decem annōs obsēdērunt tandemque cēpērunt. Priamō rēge filiisque ejus interfectis, urbem dēlēvērunt. Sed Aenēās, qui inter clārissimōs dēfēnsōrēs urbis fuerat, cum paucis comitibus ex urbe effūgit; cum profugōs 5 ex omnibus partibus cōgisset, in Italiam migrāre cōstituit.

Post septem annōs vēnit in eam partem Italiae ubi erat urbs Laurentum. Ibi cum Trojāni praedam ex agris agerent, Latīnus rēx Aboriginēsque, qui tum ea loca tenēbant, agrōs dēfendere parāvērunt. Sed Latīnus, postquam in colloquiō 10 originem multitudinis ducisque cognōvit, pācem cum Aenēā fēcit atque postea ei Lāvīniam filiam in mātrimonium dedit. Trojāni urbem condidērunt, quam Aenēās ab nōmine uxōris Lāvīnium appellāvit.

Deinde Turnus, rēx Rutulōrum, cui Lāvīnia ante adventum 15 Aenēae dēspōnsa erat, bellō Latīnum Trojānōsque aggressus est. Victi sunt Rutuli, sed victōrēs ducem Latīnum amīserunt. Inde Turnus auxilium petiit ab Etrūscis, qui tōtam

---

4. *Aenēās*: a Greek noun adapted to the Latin first declension; nom. *Aenēās*, gen. and dat. *Aenēae*, acc. *Aenēan* or *Aenēam*, abl. *Aenēā*.

5. *cum, when*; with the subjunctive in a descriptive clause of situation, App. 102.

8. *praedam*: since booty consisted largely of cattle, *agō, drive*, is an appropriate verb; in English, "collect," "carry off," are the usual terms.

16. *bellō, in war*, ablative of means.

18. *Etrūscis*: the Etruscans were a people whose origin is unknown. They were not of the same racial stock as the Romans and other peoples of Italy. They attained a high degree of civilization and exercised a marked influence on Roman civilization.

---

4. *dēfēnsor, -ōris, m. [dēfendō]*, defender.

5. *profugus, -i, m. [profugiō]*, fugitive, refugee.

Italiam fāmā nōminis sui implēverant; illi metuentēs novam  
 20 urbem multitudine opibusque crēscēntem laetī auxilium tu-  
 lērunt. Aenēās in tantō discrimine, ut Aboriginēs Tro-  
 jānōsque sub eōdem jūre atque nōmine habēret, Latīnōs  
 utramque gentem appellāvit. Cum adversus Etruscōs sē  
 moenibus dēfendere posset, tamen in aciem cōpiās ēdūxit.  
 25 Etruscī victī sunt; victōrēs tamen ducem ut antea amiser-  
 runt; post pugnam enim Aenēam reperire nōn potuerunt;  
 multī igitur eum ad deōs trānsisse crēdidērunt.

---

20. multitudine, opibus: ablatives of respect.

laetī: to be translated by an adverb; an adjective is frequently employed in Latin where English requires an adverb.

21. ut . . . habēret: a clause of purpose, App. 94.

22. Latīnōs utramque gentem appellāvit, called both nations Latini; two accusatives with the active of a verb of naming; likewise in l. 13.

23. Cum: that the conjunction is adversative, although, is shown by tamen, nevertheless, in the principal clause.

24. dēfendere posset, could have defended.

27. trānsisse: since Aeneas was by legend the son of the goddess Venus, it was not unnatural to represent his disappearance as a "translation" to the ranks of the gods.

---

23. adversus, prep. with acc., opposed to, against.

---

## 2. FOUNDING OF ALBA LONGA

Lāvīnia inde rēgnāvit, quoad Ascanius, Aenēae filius, ado-  
 lēvit. Tum ille propter abundantem Lāvīnī multitudinem  
 mātī urbem reliquit; ipse novam aliam urbem sub Albānō  
 monte condidit, quae Alba Longa appellāta est. Multī rēgēs  
 5 post Ascanium imperium Albānum gessērunt. Quīdam ex

---

3. sub: with an ablative the meaning is under, or at the foot of.

Albānō monte: this mountain in historical times was the site of a temple of Jupiter Latiaris, i.e., Jupiter as the god of the towns belonging to the Latin League.

---

1. quo-ad, adv. and conj., until, as long as.

his, cui nōmen Proca erat, duōs filiōs, Numitōrem atque Amūlium, habuit. Numitōrī, quī major erat, rēgnum reliquit. Pulsō tamen frātre, Amūlius rēgnāvit. Fīlium frātris necāvit; fīliam Rhēam Silviam per speciem honōris sacerdōtem Vestae lēgit.

10

6. cui nōmen Proca erat, whose name was Proca; cui is a dative of possession, App. 52.

7. major, older; a frequent meaning, the full expression being *major nātū*, (literally) *greater by birth*.

9. sacerdōtem: a second accusative after *lēgit*, which belongs to the list of verbs of "naming," "choosing," etc.; one accusative denotes the person named or chosen, the other what he is named or the office to which he is chosen.

10. Vestae: goddess of the hearth of each home, but also worshiped by the state. In the Roman Forum stood the small round temple which was the seat of the state cult. Here was kept burning a never-dying fire tended by the Vestal Virgins, who during their service of thirty years were not allowed to marry.

7. major, majus, *adj.* [*compar.* of magnus], larger, greater; major nātū, older; *subst.*, majōrēs, -um,

*m. pl.*, ancestors.

9. sacerdōs, -ōtis, *m. and f.* [sacer], priest, priestess.

### 3. ROMULUS AND REMUS

Ex hāc filiā nātī sunt duo filiī, Rōmulus et Remus. Pater eōrum, ut fāma est, Mārs deus erat. Sed nec deī nec hominēs mātrem ei puerōs ā crūdēlitāte rēgiā dēfendērunt. Sacerdōs in custōdiam data est; puerōs rēx in Tiberim injici jussit. Forte Tiberis abundāverat, neque ei quī puerōs ferēbant adīre ad altam aquam poterant. Itaque puerōs in alveo posuērunt atque in tenuī aquā reliquērunt. Sed alveus

2. ut fāma est, according to tradition; literally, as the report is.

4. Tiberim: what common noun has the accusative in -im?

5. neque: the common word for *and not*; the negative should be taken with *poterant*.

7. reliquērunt: supply *eōs* as object.

4. custōdia, -ae, *f.* [custōs], watch, custody, guard.

7. alveus, -i, *m.*, trough.

in sicco sedit. Deinde lupa sitiens — sic enim est traditum — ex montibus qui circa sunt ad puerorum vagitum cursum  
 10 flexit. Faustulus, pastor regius, eam invenit pueros nutrien-  
 tem. Ab eo atque Larentia uxore pueri educati sunt. Cum  
 primum adoleverunt, venari coeperunt et in latrones praeda  
 onustos impetus facere pastoribusque praedam dividere.

Dum quoddam ludicrum celebratur, latrones fratres ob prae-  
 15 dam amissam impetum in Romulum et Remum fecerunt;  
 captum Remum regi Amulio tradiderunt. Pueros praedam  
 ex agris Numitoris egisse incusabant. Sic ad supplicium  
 Numitori Remus deditur.

Ab initio Faustulus crediderat pueros iussu regis expositos

8. in sicco sedit, *drifted ashore*; literally, *settled on dry ground*.

sic enim est traditum: translate in the same manner as *ut fama est*, l. 2.

10. nutrientem: a verb of "finding" often takes a participle as a second accusative.

11. educati sunt: although we derive "educate" from this verb, it should regularly be translated *rear*, *bring up*. What is the difference between *educō* and *educō*?

Cum primum, *as soon as*; as we have seen, *cum* in this combination regularly takes the indicative, like *simul atque*, *postquam*, *ubi*.

13. pastoribus: dative of indirect object, although we say "among" with the verbs "divide," "distribute."

14. Dum . . . celebratur: for the present indicative with *dum* see note on Per. 46; the verb should be translated by a past tense.

15. amissam: the past passive participle in a prepositional phrase is sometimes best translated by an English noun, here *loss of*.

17. incusabant, *brought as an accusation*, with dependent indirect discourse, *pueros . . . egisse*; better, *accused the boys of*, etc.

19. expositos: equivalent to a relative clause, *who had been abandoned*.

8. siccus, -a, -um, *adj.*, dry; *subst.*, siccum, -i, *n.*, dry land.

lupa, -ae, *f.*, a she-wolf.

sitiens, *gen. -entis, adj. [pr. part. of sitiō, to thirst]*, thirsty.

9. circa, *adv. and prep. with acc.*, around, round about.

10. nutrio, -ire, -ivi, -itum, *tr.*, nourish, nurse.

13. onustus, -a, -um, *adj.* [onus, a burden], loaded, burdened.

14. celebrō, -āre, -avi, -atum, *tr.* [celeber], throng; celebrate.

17. incuso, -āre, -avi, -atum, *tr.* [in+causa], accuse, complain of.

19. (jussus, -ūs, *m.*), *only in the abl.*, jussu, by order, command, decree.

apud sē educārī. Tum periculō Remī mōtus rem Rōmulō 20  
aperit. Forte Numitor quoque audīverat frātēs geminōs  
esse; tum comparāns et aetātem eōrum et nōbilem animum  
Remī nepōtem agnōvit. Rōmulus cum manū pāstōrum in  
rēgem Amūlium impetum facit; Remus aliā parātā manū  
adjuvat. Ita rēx interfectus est. Imperium Albānum Numi- 25  
tōrī avō ab juvenibus restitūtum est. Deinde Rōmulus et  
Remus in iīs locīs ubi expositī ubique educātī erant urbem  
condere cōstituērunt.

---

20. *apud sē, at his house, in his home; apud is frequently used in the sense here indicated with a pronoun or a person's name.*

---

22. *comparō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr. [compar, like], compare.*

26. *restituō, -stituere, -stitui, -stitūtum, tr. [re-+statuō, station], restore.*

---

#### 4. FOUNDING OF ROME

Uterque juvenis nōmen novae urbi dare eamque regere cupiebāt. Sed quod geminī erant, nec rēs aetāte dēcernī poterat, auguriis ūsī sunt. Ā Remō prius visī sunt sex vulturēs. Rōmulō postea duodecim sēsē ostendērunt. Uterque ab amicis rēx appellātus est atque rēgnum postulābat. 5  
Cum irātī arma rapuissent, in pugnā Remus cecidit. Ex aliā fāmā Remus illūdēns frātre novōs mūrōs urbis trānsiit, inde interfectus est ab irātō Rōmulō, qui haec verba quoque addidit: "Sic deinde pereat quicumque aiūs trān-

---

3. *ūsī sunt, resorted to; notice the case of the object.*

6. *Ex, according to.*

7. *illūdēns, in mockery of.*

9. *Sic pereat, so perish; optative subjunctive, App. 93.*

---

3. *augurium, -ī, n. [augur, augur], augury, divination.*

7. *illūdō, -lūdēre, -lūsī, -lūsum, tr. [in+lūdō, play], make sport of, ridicule.*

9. *quicumque, quaecumque, quodcumque, indef. pron., whoever, whatever, everyone who, everything that.*

10 siliet moenia mea." Ita sōlus potītus est imperiō Rōmulus; conditam urbem ā suō nōmine Rōmam appellāvit.

Palātium primum, in quō ipse erat ēducātus, mūnivit. Vocātā ad concilium multitudīne, jūra dedit. Insignia quoque imperiī, sellam curūlem togamque praetextam, et duo-  
 15 decim lictōrēs sūmpsit. Asylum aperuit in monte Capitōlinō, quō multī ex finitimīs populīs profūgērunt. Creāvit etiam centum senātōrēs, quī honōris causā patrēs appellāti sunt.

10. *imperiō*: the same case use as *auguriis*, l. 3.

11. *conditam*: a past participle equivalent to a relative clause, as in 3, 19.

12. *Palātium*: the Palatine Hill was doubtless the location of the earliest settlement made on the site of Rome. Its isolated position and considerable area made it the natural situation for a fortified town dominating the surrounding hills.

13. *jūra dedit*, gave them laws.

14. *sellam curūlem*: an ivory stool without back, with curved legs, and with a seat of plaited leather straps.

*togam praetextam*: the toga of the Roman citizen was white. Boys and curule magistrates wore a toga with a scarlet border.

15. *lictōrēs*: the lictors were attendants upon the Roman kings, later upon certain magistrates of the republic. They accompanied the official in public, clearing the way, and exacting due obeisance from passers-by. As symbols of the king's power to scourge and to put to death, the lictors carried the *fascēs*, a bundle of rods with an ax enclosed. The magistrates of the republic, however, were obliged to remove the ax within the city and to lower the rods before the popular assembly.

*Asylum in monte Capitōlinō*: the Capitoline was the smallest of the hills of Rome. It had two peaks. On the northern was the citadel, on the southern the Capitolium, or temple of Jupiter. The saddle between the two peaks was the site of the *asylum*, place of refuge.

16. *quō*: an adverb.

17. *honōris causā*, as a mark of distinction; remember that *causa* and *grātia* in the ablative with the meaning *for the sake of* stand after the accompanying genitive.

14. *sella*, -ae, f. [sedeō], chair, seat.

*curūlis*, -e, *adj.*, curule.

*praetextus*, -a, -um, *adj.* [p. part. of *praetexō*, to border], bordered;

*toga praetexta*, the toga of a Roman magistrate, which was edged with scarlet.

15. *asylum*, -ī, n., a place of refuge; *asylum*.

## 5. THE SABINE WOMEN

Jam rēs Rōmāna firma et finitimīs civitatibus bellō pār erat. Sed Rōmānī neque uxōrēs neque cum finitimīs jūs cōnūbiū habēbant. Tum Rōmulus quōsdam ex patribus lēgātōs in vicinās gentēs mīsīt quī societātem cōnūbiumque novō populō peterent. Nusquam benignē lēgātī audītī sunt; 5 nam finitimī nōn solum Rōmānōs spernēbant, sed etiam tantam in mediō crēscēntem urbem metuēbant. Itaque irātī Rōmānī vī ūtī statuērunt.

Ad eam rem Rōmulus, lūdīs parātīs, finitimōs ad spectāculum invitāvit. Multī convēnērunt, ut et lūdōs spectārent 10 et novam urbem vidērent. Sabinōrum omnis multitudō cum liberis ac conjugibus vēnit. Ubi spectāculī tempus vēnit omnēsque intentī in lūdōs erant, tum, signō datō, Rōmānī rapere virginēs coepērunt. Parentēs virginum profūgērunt clāmāntēs Rōmānōs hospitium violāvisse. Nec raptāe vir- 15 ginēs aut spem dē sē meliōrem aut indignātiōnem minōrem habēbant.

Sed ipse Rōmulus circumibat ostendēbatque id patrum

1. rēs Rōmāna: virtually equivalent to *rēs publica Rōmāna*.

civitātibus: dative depending on *pār*; give the list of adjectives governing the dative.

bellō: ablative of respect. What English preposition is regularly used in translating this ablative?

4. quī . . . peterent, to ask for; a relative clause of purpose.

13. in lūdōs, on the games.

1. pār, paris, *adj.*, equal, like.

3. cōnūbium, -i, *n.* [com-+nūbō], marriage.

4. vicinus, -a, -um, *adj.* [vicus], neighboring.

societās, -ātis, *f.* [socius], association, alliance.

6. solum, *adv.* [sōlus], only, merely, alone.

spernō, -ere, sprēvī, sprētum, *tr.*,

despise, scorn, spurn.

13. intentus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*p. part.* of intendō], attentive, intent.

16. melior, -ius, *adj.* [*compar.* of bonus], better.

minor, minus, *adj.* [*compar.* of parvus], less, smaller; minor nātū, younger.

18. circum-eō, -īre, -ī (-ivī), -itum, *tr. and intr.*, go around, go from one to another.

superbiā factum esse. "Quamquam vī captae estis," inquit,  
 20 "omnia jūra Rōmānōrum habēbitis."

Jam multō minus perturbāti animī raptārum erant. At  
 parentēs eārum civitatēs finitimās, ad quās ejus injūriae  
 pars pertinēbat, ad arma concitābant. Hae civitatēs omnēs  
 ā Rōmulō victae sunt. Novissimum bellum ab Sabīnīs ortum  
 25 est, quod multō maximum fuit. Sabīnī arcem Rōmānam in  
 monte Capitōlinō dolō cēpērunt. Rōmānī posterō diē arcem  
 recipere cōnātī sunt. Ubi Hostius Hostilius, dux exercitūs  
 Rōmānī, cecidit, cōnfestim aciēs Rōmāna pulsa est. At  
 Rōmulus templum vōvit Jovī Statōrī ōrāvitque auxilium.  
 30 Tum crēdēs precēs suās auditās esse "hinc," inquit, "Rō-  
 mānī, Juppiter optimus maximus nōs resistere ac renovāre  
 pugnam jubet." Restitērunt Rōmānī tamquam caelestī vōce  
 jussī.

Tum Sabīnae mulierēs ausae sunt sē inter tēla volantia  
 35 inferre, ut pācem ā patribus virisque implōrārent. Ducēs eā  
 rē mōtī nōn modo pācem sed etiam civitātem ūnam ex

19. *superbiā*: ablative of cause.

*Quamquam*: this conjunction takes an indicative. What mood is used with *cum* meaning *although*?

21. *raptārum*: the past passive participle is frequently employed as a noun, here of the captured women.

29. *templum*: this temple lay outside the Palatine city. It was probably situated somewhere near the spot where the Arch of Titus now stands.

31. *optimus maximus*: a set phrase applied to Jupiter; English inserts "and" between the adjectives in translation.

*resistere*: here in the less frequent meaning *make a stand*.

32. *Restitērunt*: emphatic by its position as first word in the sentence; the emphasis is reproduced in English by translating, *the Romans did make a stand*.

34. *sē inferre*, rush in.

23. *pertineō, -tinēre, -tinui*, —, *intr.*  
 [per+teneō], stretch out, extend;  
 relate, pertain.

*con-citō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr.*,  
 rouse, incite.

32. *caelestis, -e, adj.* [caelum], from  
 heaven, celestial.

*vōx, vōcis, f.*, voice, cry, utterance,  
 word.



duābus faciunt; rēgnum quoque cōnsociant atque Rōmam faciunt sēdem imperiī. Multitūdō ita aucta novō nōmine Quiritēs appellāta est ex Curibus, quae urbs caput Sabīnōrum erat. Deinde Rōmulus, populō in cūriās trīgintā 40 divisō, nōmina mulierum raptārum cūriīs dedit.

Post aliquot annōs Tatius ab Laurentibus interfectus est. Rōmulus postea sōlus rēgnāvit. Annīs sequentibus bella secunda cum Fidēnātibus Veientibusque, populis Etrūscis, gesta sunt.

45

Dum Rōmulus quōdam tempore exercitum in campō Mār-tiō recēnsset, tempestās subitō coōrta eum nimbō operuit. Patrēs quī proximī steterant dixerunt rēgem sublimem rap-

37. *faciunt*: for the historical present consult the note on Per. 64.

39. *quae urbs*: we say a city which, putting city in apposition with the name. Latin writers avoided putting an appositive directly before a relative, preferring to include it in the relative clause.

41. *cūriīs*: this division by "wards" continued through the republic as the basis of a curiate assembly of the people which was convened for certain purposes.

42. *ab Laurentibus*: Tatius was killed in revenge for ill treatment inflicted by certain of his relatives upon envoys from Laurentum.

44. *secunda*: derived from *sequor*, follow; from one point of view that which "follows" is "second"; from another, that which "follows" or "goes with you" is "favorable," "successful." Which meaning is appropriate here?

46. *campō Mār-tiō*: the northern part of the Campus Martius was devoted to athletic purposes, the southern part was a place of meeting for public assemblies.

47. *recēnsset*: why is the present tense used? What English tense should be employed in translation?

48. *sublimem*: predicate adjective after *raptum esse*; translate, *had been carried away on high*.

37. *cōn-sociō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.*, associate, unite.

40. *cūria*, -ae, *f.* [cūria, a division of the Roman people], ward; senate-house.

*trīgintā*, *indecl. numeral*, thirty.

47. *re-cēnsō*, -cēnsēre, -cēnsui, -cēnsus, *tr.*, number, reckon;

review.

*nimb*, -ī, *m.*, rain-storm; thunder-cloud.

*operiō*, -ire, *operui*, *opertum*, *tr.*, cover, cover over, conceal.

48. *sublimis*, -e, *adj.*, uplifted, high; up, aloft.

tum esse. Deinde ūniversī clāmant: "Salvē, deus deō nāte."  
 50 Rōmulus dīcitur postea cūdam cīvī sē ostendisse et eum hīs  
 verbīs allocūtus esse: "Nūntiā Rōmānīs deōs velle meam  
 Rōmam caput orbis terrārum esse; proinde rēs militāris  
 colenda est; nam nūllae opēs hūmānae armīs Rōmānīs re-  
 sistere possunt." Postea nōmen Quirīnus Rōmulō additum  
 55 est. Rēgnāvit septem et trīgintā annōs.

49. *Salvē*, etc., *hail to thee, thou god, son of a god.*

51. *meam Rōmam . . . esse*: an infinitive with subject accusative is frequently used as an object of *volō*.

53. *colenda est*: the use of the future passive participle with *sum* is explained in App. 126.

49. *ūniversus, -a, -um, adj.* [ūnus+ versus], all together, all. *salvē, -ēre, —, —, intr.*, be well; *salvē, imper.* (*in greetings*), hail to you.

## 6. NUMA POMPILIUS

Certāmen inde dē rēgnō inter factiōnēs ortum est. Sabīni  
 rēgem suae factiōnis creārī cupiēbant. Rōmānī veterēs pere-  
 grīnum rēgem recūsābant. Interrēgnō secūtō, senātus im-  
 perium gessit. Deinde plēbs clāmāre coepit multōs dominōs  
 5 prō ūnō factōs esse. Optimum igitur vīsum est sine morā  
 rēgem creāre.

Habitābat eō tempore Curibus Numa Pompilius, vir jū-  
 tissimus perītusque omnis dīvīnī atque hūmānī jūris. Rēg-

2. *rēgem . . . creārī*: object of *cupiēbant*, like *Rōmam . . . esse*, object of *velle* in 5, 52.

3. *interrēgnō*: this word was employed originally of the time intervening between the death of one king and the accession of another; it continued in use in the republic with reference to those periods in which the state was without consuls.

7. *Curibus, at Cures*; a locative, App. 81.

8. *jūris*: an objective genitive with *perītus*; we say *skilled in or familiar with*.

3. *inter-rēgnum, -i, n.*, interregnum.

7. *jūstus, -a, -um, adj.* [jūs], just, upright.

8. *perītus, -a, -um, adj.*, experienced, skilled.

num ei omnium cōsēnsū dēlātum est. Is urbem novam, quae ā Rōmulō armīs condita erat, jūre lēgibusque firmāvit. 10 Arcum portīs instrūctum fēcit, quī arcus Jāni appellātus est; apertus belli index erat, clausus pācis. Per omne rēgnum Numae clausus fuit. Pāx cum civitātibus finitimis societāte ac foederibus facta est.

Rēx inde ad mōrēs populī cultumque deōrum animum con- 15 vertit. Ut populī fidem conciliāret, simulāvit sē cum deā Ēgeriā congressūs habēre et monitū ejus sacra instituere sacerdotēsque legere. Annum ad cursum lūnae in duodecim mēnsēs discrīpsit. Quōsdam diēs nefāstōs fēcit, per quōs diēs comitia nōn habēbantur. Virginēs Vestālēs lēgit, quās caeri- 20 mōniis quibusdam sāctās fēcit.

Multa etiam alia ā rēge Institūta sunt, rītūs, caerimōniae, sacerdōtia. Multitūdō hīs rēbus ā vī et armīs conversa rēgis

11. instrūctum, *provided with*.

12. apertus, *when open*; arcus is to be understood.

13. societāte, foederibus: ablatives of means.

17. monitū: an ablative expressing accordance.

18. ad cursum lūnae, *according to*, etc.; this old lunar year of 355 days stood as the official year until Julius Caesar reformed the calendar in 46 B.C. See note on 26, 93.

20. Virginēs Vestālēs: see the note on 2, 10.

9. dē-ferō, -ferre, dētulī, dēlātum, *tr.*, carry away; confer.

12. index, -dici, *m. and f.*, informer, witness; index, sign.

15. cultus, -ūs, *m.* [colō], cultivation, culture; civilization, refinement.

16. fidēs, -ei, *f.*, faith, confidence; faithfulness; pledge.

simulō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.* [similis], make like; pretend.

17. congressus, -ūs, *m.* [congregior], meeting, conference.

monitus, -ūs, *m.* [moneō], admonition, advice.

19. di-scribō, -scribere, -scripsi,

-scriptum, *tr.*, distribute, divide.

nefāstus, -a, -um, *adj.* [nefās, wrong, crime], unhallowed; diēs nefāstus, a day not open to the transaction of state business.

20. comitium, -i, *n.* [com-+eō], a place of assembly; the Comitium, a meeting place adjoining the old Roman Forum; comitia, -ōrum, *pl.*, public assembly, election.

caerimōnia, -ae, *f.*, ceremony, rite.

21. sāctus, -a, -um, *adj.* [p. part. of sanciō], sacred, holy, inviolate.

22. rītus, -ūs, *m.*, rite, ceremony.

23. sacerdōtium, -i, *n.* [sacerdōs], priesthood.

mōrēs imitābātur. Finitimī populī cīvitātem Rōmānam  
 25 tōtam in cultum deōrum versam violāre nōlēbant. Ita duo  
 deinceps rēgēs, Rōmulus bellō, Numa pāce, cīvitātem auxē-  
 runt. Numa annōs trēs et quadrāgintā rēgnāvit.

25. tōtam, *wholly*; an adjective where English would employ an adverb; compare *laetū* in 1, 20.

24. imitor, -ārī, -ātus sum, *tr.*, imi-  
 tate, copy after.

26. deinceps, *adv.*, in succession.

## 7. TULLUS HOSTILIUS

Numā mortuō, interrēgnum ut antea secūtum est. Inde  
 Tullus Hostilius, nepōs Hostiliū quī Rōmulō rēgnante pug-  
 nāns adversus Sabīnōs ceciderat, rēx creatus est. Hic ferō-  
 cior etiam quam Rōmulus fuit. Quod cīvitās torpēre otiō  
 5 vidēbātur, causās undique bellī quaerēbat. Bellum cum  
 Albānīs prīmum ortum est. Albānī priōrēs magnō exercitū  
 in agrum Rōmānum impetum fēcērunt. Ibi Cluilius, Albānus  
 rēx, moritur. Albānī dictātōrem Mettium Fufetium creant.  
 Ubi is ab Tullō colloquium petiit, rēx Rōmānus nōn re-  
 10 cūsāvit. Mettius sic locūtus est: "Uterque populus sē bel-  
 lum gerere propter injūriās dicit. Rē vērā cupidō imperiī  
 duōs cognātōs vicīnōsque populōs ad arma concitat. Sed  
 potius metuere debēmus Etrūscōs, quī, cum dēfessī cōn-

2. Rōmulō rēgnante, *in the reign of Romulus*, ablative absolute.

6. magnō exercitū: ablative of accompaniment without a preposition  
 in a military expression.

8. dictātōrem: in the time of the republic the Romans also occasionally  
 replaced their consuls by a dictator in order better to conduct a war.  
 The dictatorship amounted to a temporary restoration of the kingship.  
 Here the Albans are represented as employing the dictatorship to fill in  
 an interregnum.

11. Rē vērā, *in reality, in truth*.

4. torpeō, -ēre, —, —, *intr.*, be in-  
 active, languish.

6. prior, prius, *compar. adj.*, former;  
 previous; first.

11. cupidō, -inis, *f.* [cupidus], pas-

sion, greed.

12. cognātus, -a, -um, *adj.* [com-+  
 (g)nāscor], related.

13. potius, *adv.* [compar. of potis,  
 able], rather, preferably.

fectique erimus, simul victōrem ac victum aggredientur. Certāmen igitur dē imperiō paucōrum proeliō potius decernā-  
mus." Tullus cōnsilium probāvit, quamquam magnam spem  
victōriæ habēbat.

Forte in utrōque exercitū erant trigeminī frātrēs, nec  
aetāte nec viribus disparēs, Horātiū et Cūriātiū. Hi Albānī  
erant, illi Rōmānī. Trigeminī ad hanc pugnam dēlectī arma  
capiunt et in medium inter duās aciēs prōcēdunt. Duo  
exercitūs, ērēctī ānxiūque, in spectāculum animōs intēdunt.  
Signō datō, ternī juvenēs concurrunt.

Primō congressū duo Rōmānī interfectī sunt et trēs  
Albānī vulnerāti. Eum qui integer fuit trēs Cūriātiū cir-  
cumsistere cōnātī sunt. Cum jam Rōmānus paulum fūgisset,  
respexit atque vidit trēs Cūriātiōs magnīs intervāllis sequen-  
tēs. Subitō cōstitit et in proximum Cūriātium impetum  
facit; dum exercitus Albānus Cūriātiōs obsecrant ut frātrī  
auxilium ferant, Horātius eum interfecit; deinde victor  
secundum frātrem petit. Tum magnō clamōre Rōmānī ad-  
juvant militem suum et ille cōficere proelium properat.  
Priusquam cōsecūtus est tertius, Horātius alterum Cūriā-

15. *decernāmus*: an instance of the subjunctive in an independent use, App. 92. The proposal was that the people whose champions should be victorious should rule the other people.

18. *trigeminī frātrēs*, *three brothers who were triplets*.

23. *terni*: a distributive numeral, employed because two groups of three each are involved.

25. *vulnerāti*: *est* or *sunt* is often omitted in the perfect passive; here *sunt* is readily supplied from the preceding verb.

29. *ut . . . ferant*: a noun clause, object of *obsecrant*, App. 97.

18. *trigeminus*, -a, -um, *adj.* [trēs + *geminus*, born together], born three at a birth; *subst.*, *trigeminī*, -ōrum, *m. pl.*, triplets.

21. *medium*, -ī, *n.* [*n. of medius*], the middle, the intervening space.

23. *ternī*, -ae, -a, *distrib. num. adj.* [ter], three each.

25. *integer*, -gra, -grum, *adj.*, untouched, unhurt; fresh, vigorous. *circum-sistō*, -sistere, -stetī, —, *tr.*, surround.

27. *re-spiciō*, -spicere, -spexi, -spec-  
tum, *tr. and intr.* [re- + *speciō*, look], look back; have regard for.

33. *tertius*, -a, -um, *adj.* [ter], third.

tium cōnficit. Jamque singulī supererant, sed nec spēs nec  
 35 viribus parēs; alter integer et ferōx superiōribus victōriis  
 erat; alter dēfessus vulnere, animō frāctus, in certāmen vēnit.  
 Nec illud proelium fuit. Cūriātium vix sustinentem arma  
 Horātius caedit et jacentem spoliat.

Ad sepultūrā inde suōrum Rōmānī atque Albānī nēquā-  
 40 quam paribus animīs vertuntur, alterī victōrēs alterī victī.  
 Exercitūs domōs abductī sunt. Horātiū soror, quae ūnī ex  
 Cūriātiis dēspōnsa erat, cognōvit inter spolia paulūdāmentum  
 spōnsī, quod ipsa cōnfēcerat. Solvit crīnēs et multis cum  
 lacrimis spōnsum mortuum appellat. Frāter, irātus propter  
 45 maerōrem sorōris in victōriā suā tantōque pūblicō gaudiō,  
 gladiō eam interfēcit. Rēs ad populum relāta est. Hominēs  
 vehementer mōtī sunt in eō jūdiō, Pūbliō Horātiō patre  
 clāmante filiam jūre caesam esse. Sed magis admirātiōne  
 virtūtis quam jūre causae juvenem absolvērunt.

40. *vertuntur, turn*; the passive voice in a reflexive sense, as explained in the note on Her. 301.

*alterī . . . alterī*: *alter . . . alter* mean *the one (person) . . . the other*; the plural is here employed to mean *the one people . . . the other*.

41. *domōs*: the plural of this noun may be used like the singular *domum* to denote the place to which without a preposition.

43. *Solvit crīnēs*: a common sign of mourning in antiquity.

44. *appellat*: here in the less usual sense of *call upon*.

47. *Pūbliō Horātiō . . . clāmante*: ablative absolute, expressing an additional reason for the excitement of the people.

48. *jūre*: ablative of accordance.

*admirātiōne, jūre*: ablatives of cause.

34. *singulī, -ae, -a, adj.*, one at a time; *distrib.*, one on a side.

36. *frangō, -ere, frēgi, frāctum, tr.*, break; weaken, dishearten.

39. *nē-quāquam, adv.*, by no means, not at all.

42. *spolium, -ī, n.*, skin; booty, spoil.  
*palūdāmentum, -ī, n.*, military cloak.

43. *spōnsus, -ī, m. [p. part. of spondeō, promise]*, betrothed, lover.

*crinis, -is, -ium, m.*, hair.

45. *maeror, -oris, m. [maereō, be sad]*, mourning, sorrow.

*pūblicus, -a, -um, adj. [populus]*, of the people or state, public.

47. *jūdicium, -ī, n. [jūdex]*, judgment; trial; court.

48. *magis, compar. adv.*, more, rather.

*admirātiō, -ōnis, f. [admiror]*, admiration, surprise.

49. *ab-solvō, -solvere, -solvi, -solutum, tr.*, set free; acquit.

Populus Albānus irā ārdēbat, quod Mettius tribus mīlitibus 50  
 fortūnam publicam commiserat. Is igitur prāvō cōnsiliō  
 civium animōs reconciliāre cōnātus est. Nam pollicitus est  
 adjuvāre Fidēnātēs Veientēsque, quī bellum adversus Rō-  
 mānōs parābant. Bellō inceptō, Mettius, quī in aciē contrā  
 Fidēnātēs positus erat, ad collēs proximōs sine certāmine 55  
 Albānōs abdūxit. Tullus, simulāns sē id iussisse, clārā vōce  
 clāmāvit Mettium exercitum Fidēnātium ā tergō oppugnā-  
 tūrum esse. Fidēnātēs, quī Latīnē sciēbant, hanc vōcem  
 audivērunt et fūgērunt. Veientēs quoque pulsī sunt. Proe-  
 liō factō, rēx Mettium interfici propter prōditionem iussit. 60  
 Populō omnī Albānō Rōmam trāductō, civitās plēbī data  
 est et principēs Albānōrum in patrēs lēctī sunt.

Posteā pestilentia gravis in urbem incidit, quā rēx quoque  
 affectus est. Hāc calamitāte frāctus sacrīs posteā animum  
 dedit. Postrēmō, quia sacrum quoddam nōn ritē fēcerat — 65  
 ita fāma est — Tullus fulmine percussus cum domō cōn-  
 flagrāvit. Rēgnāvit annōs duōs et trigintā.

58. Latīnē sciēbant, *understood Latin*; our idiom leads us to expect a noun instead of the adverb *Latīnē*.

59. Proeliō factō, *at the conclusion of the battle*.

61. Populō . . . Rōmam trāductō: the transfer and incorporation of a related people within the Roman state occurred more than once.

64. sacrīs, *to religious observances*.

51. prāvus, -a, -um, *adj.*, crooked; bad, dishonest.

52. re-cōnciliō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.*, win back, recover; reconcile.

58. Latīnē, *adv.* [Latīnus], in Latin.

63. pestilentia, -ae, *f.* [pestilēns,

pestilential], plague, pestilence.

65. quia, *conj.*, because.

66. fulmen, -inis, *n.*, lightning-flash, thunderbolt.

cōn-flagrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *intr.*, be on fire, be consumed.

## 8. ANCUS MARCIUS

Ancus Mārcius, nepōs Numae Pompiliī, quārtus rēx creātus  
 est. Ut Numa in pāce religiōnēs instituerat, sic Ancus caeri-

2. Ut . . . sic, *just as . . . so*.

2. religiō, -ōnis, *f.*, scruple, religion; religious observance.

mōniās instituit, quibus bella postea indicta sunt. Sacerdōtēs, quibus id negōtium mandātum est, fētīālēs appellāvit.

- 5 Bellis cum urbibus Latīnōrum gestīs, cīvēs Rōmam trādūxit. Jāniculum, quī collis trāns Tiberim est, cum urbe ponte publiciō conjūxit. Carcer, quī etiam nunc extat, sub

7. **Carcer**: a small stone structure with a vaulted roof. Beneath it is a dungeon where criminals were sometimes executed. The *Carcer* is now a church.

3. **in-dīcō**, -dicere, -dīxī, -dictum, *tr.*, proclaim, declare, appoint.

4. **mandō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* [*manus*+*dō*], consign, intrust.

**fētīālis**, -e, *adj.*, diplomatic, fetial; *subst.*, fētīālis, -is, *m.*, a fetial

priest.

7. **sublicius**, -a, -um, *adj.* [*sublica*, pile, stake], of piles, resting on piles.

**extō**, -āre, —, —, *intr.* [*ex*+*stō*], stand forth; be extant, exist.



RUINS OF OSTIA



monte Capitōlinō aedificātus est. Imperium usque ad mare prōlātum est, et in ōre Tiberis Ōstia urbs condita.

Ancō rēgnante, vir quīdam, nōmine Lucumō, habitābat 10 Tarquiniīs, quae urbs Etrūsca erat. Pater ejus erat Dēmarātus, profugus Corinthius. Lucumō in mātīmōnium Tanaquilem, mulierem nōbilem, dūxerat. Etrūscī spernēbant Lucumōnem, exulis filium. Tanaquil, quae ferre indignitatem nōn poterat, cōnsilium migrandī Rōmam cēpit. Facile 15 conjugī persuādet. Dum iter faciunt, aquila dicitur pilleum ab capite Lucumōnis abstulisse et rūsus reposuisse. Laeta Tanquil accēpit id augurium potentiae futūrae. Etrūscī enim caelestium prōdigiorū peritī erant.

Postquam Rōmam vērunt, Lucumō nōmen L. Tar- 20 quinium Prīscum sibi sūmpsit. Ibi paulātim Insignis factus est divitiīs aliisque rēbus. Postrēmō in amicitiam rēgis receptus tūtor liberōrum rēgis testāmētō institūtus est. Ancus annōs quattuor et vīginti rēgnāvit.

9. Ōstia: extensive remains of this city, as it was later, have been unearthed in modern times.

11. Tarquiniīs: what is the locative form of the names of cities which are used in the plural? of those which are used in the singular, in the first and second declensions?

15. Rōmam: *migrō* as a verb of motion is followed by an accusative of the place to which. Why no preposition?

18. id augurium, *this as a token*.

19. prōdigiorū: objective genitive with *peritī*, as in 6, 8.

9. prō-ferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum, *tr.*, bring forth, carry forward, extend, defer.

14. exul, -ulis, *m.*, an exile.

indignitās, -ātis, *f.* [indignus], indignity, outrage.

16. pilleus, -ī, *m.*, a cap.

18. futūrus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*fut. part. of sum*], yet to be, to come, future.

19. prōdigium, -ī, *n.*, omen, portent, prodigy.

21. insignis, -e, *adj.* [in+signum], noted, eminent, distinguished, conspicuous.

23. tūtor, -ōris, *m.* [tueor], defender; guardian.

testāmētum, -ī, *n.* [testor, call to witness], a (last) will.

24. vīginti, *indecl. num.*, twenty.

## 9. TARQUINIUS PRISCUS

Jam filiū Ancī prope adulti erant. Sed Tarquinius ipse rex creārī cupiebat. Is primus palam rēgnū petiit, memorāns officia privāta ac pūblica et benignitatem in omnēs. Magnō cōnsensū populus Rōmānus eum rēgnāre jussit.

- 5 Tarquinius Latīnīs bellō victis lūdōs magnificōs fecit. Tum primum locus circō, quī Maximus dicitur, dēsīgnātus est. Lūdi sollemnēs mānsērunt, Rōmānī aut magnī appellātī.

Magna quoque opera ā rēge incepta sunt, ut populus nōn quiētior in pāce quam in bellō esset. Mūrō lapideō urbem  
10 cingere parāvit, et loca circā forum aliāsque convallēs cloācis siccāvit. Fundāmenta aedis Jovis in Capitoliō jēcit.

Eō ferē tempore in rēgiā prōdigium mirābile fuit. Caput

2. *primus petiit*, was the first to canvass for. What is the literal translation?

6. *circō*: dative of purpose with *dēsīgnātus est*. The Circus Maximus lay between the Palatine and Aventine hills.

7. *Rōmānī aut magnī*: the "Roman games" were celebrated in September each year.

8. *nōn quiētior*, quite as busy; the clause *ut . . . esset* is one of purpose, *nōn* going closely with *quiētior*.

11. *jēcit*, laid.

1. *prope*, *adv.* and *prep.* with *acc.*; as *adv.*, near, nearly, almost, about; as *prep.*, near, near to.

*adultus*, -a, -um, *adj.* [*p. part.* of *adolēscō*], grown up, mature.

2. *palam*, *adv.*, openly, publicly, plainly.

3. *privātus*, -a, -um, *adj.* [*p. part.* of *privō*], private, personal; *subst.*, *privātus*, -i, *m.*, a private citizen. *benignitās*, -ātis, *f.* [benignus], kindness.

5. *magnificus*, -a, -um, *adj.* [magnus + faciō], splendid, fine, magnificent.

6. *circus*, -i, *m.*, a circle; a circus.

*dēsīgnō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.*, mark out, mean, intend.

7. *sollemnis*, -e, *adj.*, established, fixed, regular; solemn.

9. *quiētus*, -a, -um, *adj.* [*p. part.* of *quiēscō*, keep quiet], quiet, peaceful, free from labor.

10. *forum*, -i, *n.*, an open space; market-place; especially, Forum Rōmānum, the Roman Forum.

*convallis*, -vallis, -ium, *f.*, valley.

*cloāca*, -ae, *f.*, sewer.

11. *siccō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* [siccus], dry, drain.

*fundāmentum*, -i, *n.* [fundō, found], foundation.

*aedēs*, *aedis*, -ium, *f. sg.*, temple, sanctuary; *pl.*, dwelling, house.

puerī dormientis, cui Servius Tullius fuit nōmen, multōrum in cōspectū ārsit. Servi, quī aquam ad restinguendam flammam ferēbant, ab rēginā retenti sunt. Mox cum puer ē 15 somnō excitātus esset, flamma abiit. Tum, abductō in sēcrētum virō, Tanaquil "vidēsne tū hunc puerum," inquit, "quem tam humili cultū educāmus? Lūmen profectō portendit eum aliquandō nōbis praesidiō futurum esse. Proinde artibus liberālibus ērudiendus est." Ingenium juvenis vērē 20 rēgium erat. Tarquinius igitur ei filiam suam dēspōndit.

Etsi Ancī filiī duo antea irātī fuerant quod peregrīnus Rōmae rēgnābat, tum major erat indignātiō, quoniam servō jam rēgnum patēre vidēbātur. Rēgem igitur interficere rēgnumque occupāre cōstituērunt. Ex pāstōribus duo ferō- 25 cissimī ad facinus dēlectī in vestibulō rēgiae speciē rixae in sē omnēs apparītōrēs rēgiōs convertērunt. Inde vocātī ad rēgem dicere in vicem iussī sunt. Ūnus rem expōnit. Dum

13. cui: dative of possession, as in 2, 6.

14. ad restinguendam flammam: a gerundive construction, App. 128.

17. virō: *vir* is frequently used to mean *husband*.

18. cultū, *manner of life, station*.

19. nōbis praesidiō futurum esse, *will be a support to us*; dative of reference and dative of purpose.

20. ērudiendus est, *must be educated*; what is the meaning of *educō*?

22. Etsi: like *quamquam* takes the indicative. What other conjunction, meaning "although," takes the subjunctive?

23. servō: dative after *patēre*.

26. in sē . . . convertērunt, *attracted (to themselves) the attention of*.

28. rem, *the (pretended) quarrel*.

14. restinguō, -stinguere, -stīnxi, -stinctum, *tr.*, put out, quench.

16. sēcrētus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*p. part.* of *sēcernō*, to separate], secret; *subst.*, sēcrētum, -ī, *n.*, secret; privacy.

18. profectō, *adv.* [prō+factō], actually, in fact, assuredly, certainly.

19. aliquandō, *adv.*, at some time or other, once.

20. liberālis, -e, *adj.* [liber], befitting a freeman; honorable, liberal.

26. rixa, -ae, *f.*, quarrel, dispute.

27. apparitor, -ōris, *m.*, servant.

28. vicis, *f. gen.* (no *nom.*), change; in vicem, in turn.

intentus in eum sē rēx tōtus āvertit, alter ēlātam secūrim in  
 30 caput rēgis dējēcit; relictō in vulnere tēlō, ambō forās  
 fugiunt. Tarquinius moribundum appāritōrēs excipiunt;  
 illōs fugientēs lictōrēs comprehendunt. Magnus sequitur  
 populī tumultus, inter quem Tanaquil claudī rēgiam jubet.  
 Serviō inde celeriter ad sē vocātō, auxilium ōrāvit. “Tuūm  
 35 est rēgnūm,” inquit, “Servi, sī vir es, nōn eōrum quī aliēnis  
 manibus pessimum facinus fēcērunt. Ērige tē deōsque ducēs  
 sequere, quī dīvinā flammā hoc caput clārum futūrum esse  
 portendērunt. Nōlī perturbārī quod peregrīnus es. Etiam  
 nōs peregrīnī rēgnāvimus. Sī propter subitam rem cōnsilia  
 40 fingere nōn potes, mea tamen cōnsilia sequere.” Cum jam  
 clāmor multitudinis vix sustinērī posset, Tanaquil ex su-  
 periōre parte rēgiae populum ita allocūta est: “Cum vulnus  
 rēgis grave sit, jam tamen ad sē redit; brevī tempore rēgem  
 ipsum vidēbitis. Interim vult Servium Tullium rem pūb-  
 45 licam administrāre.” Itaque Servius per aliquot diēs, cum  
 Tarquinius jam mortuus esset, suās opēs firmāvit. Tum

29. *ēlātam*: Latin frequently employs a past passive participle in agree-  
 ment with an object where we use coördinate verbs, *raised his ax and  
 brought it down*.

34. *Tuum*: emphatic and balanced by the possessive genitive *eōrum*,  
 which is likewise used predicatively, *to you belongs . . . , not to those*.

36. *ducēs*: an appositive; we may translate, *the guidance of the gods*.

37. *sequere*: imperative. Review the imperative of deponent verbs.

38. *Nōlī perturbārī*: negative commands in Latin are explained in App.  
 112.

42. *Cum*: what word in the principal clause determines the meaning of  
*cum*? What meaning for *cum* in l. 45 is required by the context?

29. *ā-vertō, -vertere, -vertī, -ver-  
 -sum, tr.*, turn away, avert.

*efferō, efferre, extulī, ēlātum, tr.* [*ex*  
*+ferō*], carry forth, remove; lift  
 up, raise.

*secūris, -is, f.*, axe.

30. *forās, adv.* [*compare foris*], out  
 of doors, out.

31. *moribundus, -a, -um, adj.*,  
 [morior], dying.

36. *pessimus, -a, -um, adj.* [*superl*  
*of malus*], worst.

39. *subitus, -a, -um, adj.*, sudden,  
 unexpected.

44. *interim, adv.*, meanwhile, in the  
 meantime.

dēmum mors rēgis nūntiāta est. Servius, praesidiō firmō mūntus, prīmus injussū populī voluntāte patrum rēgnāvit.

48. *prīmus*: to be translated as in l. 2.

*injussū, voluntāte*: ablatives of accordance.



FRAGMENT OF THE WALL OF SERVIUS TULLIUS

## 10. SERVIUS TULLIUS

Servius prīmum cēnsū instituit et populum in classēs prō opibus discrīpsit. Ex cēnsū postea officia bellī pācisque tribūta sunt. Ad multitudinem crēscēntem duo collēs,

1. *prīmum*: an adverb.

2. *Ex*, in accordance with, on the basis of.

1. *classis, classis, -ium, f.*, class, fleet.

3. *tribuō, -ere, tribui, tribūtum, tr.* [tribus, tribe], assign, bestow.

Quirinālis Viminālisque, ad urbem additī sunt. Imperium  
 5 quoque hōc cōnsiliō auctum est. Fānum erat nōbile Di-  
 ānae Ephesiae, quod commūniter ā civitatibus Asiae factum  
 esse dicēbātur. Servius inter principēs Latinōrum, eō cōn-  
 sēnsū civitātum Asiaticārum vehementer laudātō, tandem  
 populis Latinis persuāsit ut Rōmae eum populō Rōmānō  
 10 fānum Diānae facerent. Ea erat cōfessiō caput rērum  
 Rōmam esse, dē quō totiēns certātum erat.

Lūcius Tarquinius, Priscī filius, interdum querēbātur quod  
 Servius injussū populī rēgnāret. Servius igitur prius agrum  
 captum ex hostibus viritūm divīsit; hōc modō voluntātem  
 15 plēbis conciliāvit. Populus deinde maximō cōnsēnsū eum  
 rēgnāre jussit.

Rēx duās filiās Lūciō atque Arruntī Tarquiniis, Priscī  
 filiis, in mātirimōnium dederat. Mōrēs hōrum disparēs erant.  
 Nam Arrūns Tarquinius mītis erat, L. Tarquinius ferōx et  
 20 cupidus rēgnī. Duae Tulliae item disparēs erant. Forte  
 Arrūns ferōcem Tulliam in mātirimōnium dūxerat. Simili-  
 tūdō celeriter L. Tarquinium et ferōcem Tulliam contrahit.

5. hōc, *the following*.

9. ut . . . facerent: a noun clause, object of *persuāsit*; to be translated by an infinitive.

10. caput . . . Rōmam esse, *that Rome, etc.*; indirect discourse after *erat cōfessiō*.

11. certātum erat, *there had been a contest*; impersonal passive, see on Arg. 75.

12. quod . . . rēgnāret: for *quod* causal with the subjunctive see App. 110.

15. Populus . . . eum rēgnāre jussit: their action merely ratified the authority which he already held.

21. Similitūdō: *likeness* (of character).

5. fānum, -i, *n.*, shrine, temple.

11. certō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *intr.*  
 [*freg. of cernō*], contend, strive.

14. viritūm, *adv.* [*vir*], man by man,  
 to each man.

19. mītis, -e, *adj.*, mild, gentle,  
 kind.

20. item, *adv.*, likewise, also.

21. similitūdō, -inis, *f.* [*similis*],  
 likeness, resemblance.

22. cōn-trahō, -trahere, -trāxi,  
 -tractum, *tr.*, draw or bring  
 together.

Cum prope continuīs caedibus domōs vacuās fēcissent, junguntur nūptiīs. Paulātim inde mulier conjugem ad caedem Serviī excitat. Itaque Tarquinius prius omnibus rēbus 25 cīvēs et maximē patrēs conciliāvit. Postrēmō, ubi jam tempus agendī vīsum est, stīpātus armātīs in forum irrūpit. Inde in rēgiā sēde prō cūriā sedēns patrēs in cūriam per praecōnem ad rēgem Tarquinium vocārī jussit. Ibi incūsābat rēgem, quod rēgnum muliebrī dōnō occupāvisset; querē- 30 bātur item dē cōsiliīs populāribus, dē agrō plēbī divisō, dē cēnsū institūtō. Dum loquitur, Servius intervēnit et ā vestibulō cūriae magnā vōce “quid tibi vīs,” inquit, “Tarquini? Quā audaciā tū, mē vivō, vocāre patrēs aut in sēde meā cōnsidere ausus es?” Tarquinius ferōciter respondit sē sēdem 35 patris suī tenēre, sē rēgnī hērēdem esse. Tum medium arripit Servium, ēlātumque ē cūriā per gradūs dējicit; inde in cūriam redit. Appāritōrēs rēgis fugiunt. Rēx ipse ā servīs

23. *prope continuīs, almost without an interval between.*

27. *agendī, for action.*

*armātīs: a participle as a noun; see vocabulary.*

30. *quod . . . occupāvisset: the subjunctive as in l. 12.*

33. *quid tibi vīs, what do you mean? How, literally? From what does vīs come?*

34. *mē vivō, while I am alive; ablative absolute.*

36. *rēgnī hērēdem: the kingship had been elective; here was an attempt to create a dynasty.*

*medium, around the waist.*

37. *ēlātum: in agreement with eum, to be supplied; a past participle for a coördinate verb, as in 9, 29; translate, carried him out and hurled per, down; in l. 41 it means over.*

24. *nūptiae, -ārum, f. pl. [nūbō], marriage, wedding.*

27. *stīpō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr., pack, crowd; attend, accompany.*

30. *muliebris, -e, adj. [mulier], of a woman.*

32. *inter-veniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventum, intr., come upon, come in.*

35. *cōn-sidō, -sidere, -sēdī, -sesum, intr., sit down, take one's seat.*

*ferōciter, adv. [ferōx], courageously, fiercely, arrogantly.*

36. *hērēs, -ēdis, m. and f., heir, heiress.*

*arripō, -ripere, -ripuī, -reptum, tr. [ad+rapīō], grasp, seize.*

Tarquiniū interficitur. Tullia carpentō in forum invecta con-  
 40 jugem ēvocāvit rēgemque prima appellāvit. Dum domum  
 redit, dicitur patrem in viā jacentem invēnisse et per corpus  
 carpentum ēgisse. Hic locus postea vicus scelerātus vocātus  
 est. Servius Tullius rēgnāvit annōs quattuor et quadrāgintā.

39. in-vehō, -vehere, -vexi, -vectum, *tr.*, carry in; *pass.*, be carried,  
 ride.

42. scelerātus, -a, -um, *adj.* [sce-  
 lus], wicked, criminal.

### 11. TARQUINIUS SUPERBUS

Inde L. Tarquinius rēgnāre coepit, cui propter facta cog-  
 nōmen Superbus datum est. Principēs patrum, quī Servium  
 dilēxerant, interfēcit. Suum corpus armātis circumsaepsit.  
 Jūdicia capitālium rērum sine cōnsiliis per sē sōlus exercēbat.  
 5 Ita poterat occidere, in exilium agere, bonis spoliāre omnēs  
 quōs cupiēbat. Etsi rēgēs superiōrēs senātum dē omnibus  
 rēbus cōsultare soliti erant, Tarquinius domesticis cōnsiliis  
 rem pūblicam administrāvit. Bellum, pācem, foedera, so-  
 cietātēs per sē ipse fēcit. Latīnōrum gentem sibi maximē  
 10 conciliābat. Octaviō Mamiliō Tusculānō — is longē nōbilis-  
 simus Latīnōrum erat — filiam in mātrimonium dat.

Cum jam magna Tarquiniū auctoritās inter Latīnōrum

4. Jūdicia capitālium rērum, *trials in capital cases.*

cōnsiliis: these were boards from among the senators which assisted the  
 king with advice in the administration of the courts.

5. bonis: ablative of separation.

7. domesticis cōnsiliis: *i.e.*, Tarquin was the first king to rely for advice  
 solely upon personal friends.

1. cognōmen, -inis, *n.* [com-+(g)  
 nōmen], cognomen, surname.

2. superbus, -a, -um, *adj.*, haughty,  
 proud; *subst.*, Superbus, -i, *m.*,  
 the Proud, *an epithet applied to*  
*the second King Tarquin as a*  
*cognomen.*

3. diligō, -ligere, -lēxi, -lēctum, *tr.*  
 [dis-+legō], single out; esteem,

love.

circum-saepiō, -saepire, -saepsi,  
 -saeptum, *tr.*, hedge around,  
 encircle, surround.

4. capitālis, -e, *adj.* [caput], of the  
 head; of the life, capital.

7. domesticus, -a, -um, *adj.*  
 [domus], of the house; private,  
 personal.



principēs esset, concilium in certam diem convocāvit. Conveniunt frequentēs primā lūce. Ipse Tarquinius diem quidem servāvit, sed paulō ante sōlis occāsum vēnit. Turnus Her-<sup>15</sup> donius Aricīnus ferōciter absentem Tarquinium accūsāverat. Dixit Tarquinium patientiam Latīnōrum temptāre et affectāre imperium in eōs. Rēx, hōc cognitō, quia prō imperiō palam Turnum interficere nōn poterat, cōnfestim statuit falsō crimine eum opprimere. Proximā igitur nocte auctōre Tarquiniō<sup>20</sup> quidam Aricīnī, Turnō inimicī, in dēversōrium ejus magnum numerum gladiōrum clam intulērunt.

Tarquinius paulō ante lūcem ad sē principēs Latīnōrum vocāvit certiorēsque dē gladiis cēlātis fēcit: "Cognōvī," inquit, "Turnum cupere Latīnōrum solum imperium tenēre,<sup>25</sup> et jam necem omnium parāre." Dūxit deinde eōs ad dēversōrium. Ubi gladii ex omnibus locis dēversōrii prōlāti sunt, manifesta vīsa est rēs, Turnusque in catēnās coniectus est. Cōnfestim concilium Latīnōrum convocātur. Ibi magna indignātiō oritur, gladiis in mediō positīs. Itaque Turnus,<sup>30</sup> indictā causā, in aquam Ferentinam mersus est.

Rēx, auctōritāte inter Latīnōs ita auctā, cum eis renovāvit foedus quod ā Tullō rēge antea factum erat. Latīnī nōn repugnāverunt, quamquam in eō foedere rēs Rōmāna

14. quidem: with concessive force, *it is true*, as explained in the note on Her. 346.

20. auctōre Tarquiniō, *at the instigation of Tarquinius*.

21. Turnō: dative with *inimicī*, but to be translated as if genitive.

24. certiorēs fēcit, *informed*; how, literally?

31. indictā causā, *without a trial*; literally, *his case unpleaded*, ablative absolute.

14. frequēns, -entis, *adj.*, crowded, in large numbers.

17. patientia, -ae, *f.* [patiēns], patience, endurance.

affectō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.* [freq. of afficiō], strive after, aim at.

20. auctor, -ōris, *m.* [augeō], promoter, instigator.

21. dēversōrium, -ī, *n.* [dēversor,

turn aside, lodge], inn, lodging-place.

26. nex, necis, *f.*, death, murder.

28. manifestus, -a, -um, *adj.*, clear, evident, manifest.

31. in-dictus, -a, -um, *adj.* (not said), not pleaded, unheard.

34. re-pugnō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *intr.*, fight back, resist, oppose.

35 superior erat. Mors enim Turni docēbat potentiam Tarquiniī ac periculum eōrum quī resistēbant.

Tarquinius, quamquam injūstus in pāce rēx fuit, ducem bellī tamen nōn prāvum sē prae-buit. Is prīmus cum Volscis bellum gessit, et magnam praedam cēpit. In aliō bellō, cum  
40 Gabiōs, vicinam urbem, vī capere nōn posset, fraude ac dolō aggressus est. Sextus enim, filiūs Tarquiniī, quī minimus ex tribus erat, trānsiit Gabiōs, crūdēlītatem intolerābilem patris vehementer querēns atque adjuvāre Gabinōs adversus eum pollicēns. Benignē ā Gabinīs exceptus in cōnsilia pūblica  
45 adhibētur, et dēnique dux legitur. Proelia parva inter Rōmam Gabiōsque facta sunt, quibus Gabinī superiōrēs erant. Gabinī Sex. Tarquinius dōnō deōrum sibi missum esse ducem crēdidērunt. Inde Sextus ūnum ex suis Rōmam mīsit, quī mandāta patris peteret. Rēx nihil vōce respondit,  
50 sed tamquam rem dēliberāns in hortum aedium trānsiit, sequente nūntiō filiī; ibi inambulāns tacitus summa papā-verum capita baculō dējēcit. Nūntius, dēfessus interrogandō expectandōque respōsum, redit Gabiōs remque miram refert. Sextus intellēxit quid pater fieri vellet. Prīncipēs igitur

41. *aggressus est: eam (urbem)* is to be supplied as object.

*minimus, youngest*; what does *major* mean with reference to age?

47. *dōnō, by gift.*

48. *ex suis, of his followers.*

49. *quī . . . peteret: a relative clause of purpose.*

52. *interrogandō: the ablative of the gerund may be employed to express cause; observe that expectandō has a direct object, respōsum.*

54. *quid pater fieri vellet: for the indirect question consult App. 107.*

41. *minimus, -a, -um, adj. [superl. of parvus], least, smallest, very small; youngest.*

42. *intolerābilis, adj., intolerable, unbearable.*

45. *adhibeō, -ere, -ui, -itum, tr. [ad + habeō], apply; summon, admit, employ.*

49. *mandātum, -i, n. [p. part. of*

*mandō], injunction, command.*

50. *tamquam, adv., as if, just as if. dē-liberō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr. and intr., ponder, meditate.*

51. *in-ambulō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, intr., walk up and down.*

*papāver, -eris, n., a poppy.*

52. *baculum, -i, n., staff.*

civitātis variis criminibus necāvit. Rēs Gabīna ita spoliāta 55  
cōnsiliō auxiliōque rēgi Rōmānō sine certāmine gravī trāditur.

Gabiis receptis, Tarquinius ad negōtia urbāna animum con-  
vertit. Primum templum in monte Tarpeiō aedificāre  
tōtumque montem Jovī dēdicāre cōstituit. Hoc templum  
pater jam antea vōverat. Ad hoc opus fabrīs Etrūscīs et 60  
operariis ex plēbe Rōmānō ūsus est. Plēbs etiam ad alia  
opera trāducta forōs in circō fēcīt cloācamque maximam sub  
terram ēgit, quam etiam nunc vidēmus. Multī quoque ex  
plēbe colōnī Signiam Circeiōsque missī sunt quī praesidia  
urbī essent. 65

Dum haec aguntur, portentum terribile vīsum est: anguis  
ex columnā lignēā ēlāpsus terrōrem fugamque in rēgiā fēcīt  
atque ipsius rēgis pectus ānxiis cūrīs implēvit. Itaque Tar-  
quinius filiōs, Titum et Arruntem, Delphōs ad clārissimum  
in terrīs ōrāculum mittere statuit. Comes eis additus est 70  
L. Jūnius Brūtus, ex Tarquiniā, sorōre rēgis, nātus. Cog-  
nōmen ejus hōc modō parātum erat: rēx eōs prīncipēs civi-  
tātis quōs timēbat interficere solēbat, in quibus frātre  
Brūtū interfēcīt. Hic, ut crūdēlītatem rēgis vitāret, cōnsultō  
stultitiā imitātus bona sua rēgem spoliāre passus est neque 75

55. Rēs: = *rēs publica*.

62. trāducta, *transferred*.

64. colōnī, *as colonists*.

quī . . . essent: a relative clause of purpose.

70. ōrāculum: see note on Per. 54.

74. Hic, *the latter*.

57. urbānus, -a, -um, *adj.* [urbs],  
of a city, urban; *subst.*, urbānī,  
-ōrum, *m. pl.*, inhabitants of a  
city.

61. operārius, -ī, *m.* [opera], laborer,  
workman.

62. forus, -ī, *m.*, gangway; a row of  
seats in the theater or circus,  
seats.

64. colōnus, -ī, *m.* [colō], farmer;

settler, colonist.

66. portentum, -ī, *n.* [*p. part.* of  
portendō], omen, portent.

anguis, anguis, -ium, *m. and f.*, ser-  
pent, snake.

67. ē-lābor, -lābī, -lāpsus sum, *intr.*,  
glide out, glide away, escape.

74. cōnsultō, *adv.* [*abl.* of cōnsul-  
tum], intentionally.

cognōmen Brūtī recusāvit. Is tum igitur ab Tarquiniis ductus est Delphōs, lūdibrium vērius quam comes. Tulit tamen dōnum Apollinī aureum baculum inclūsum in baculō corneō, tamquam effigiem ingenī suī.

- 80 Postquam juvenēs Delphōs vērērunt patrisque mandāta cōnfēcērunt, statuērunt quaerere ex ōrāculō ad quem eōrum rēgnū esset ventūrum. Vōx reddita est: "Imperium summum Rōmae habebit quī vestrum primus, Ō juvenēs, mātrem ōsculābitur." Tarquiniī, Brūtum contemnentēs, ipsī inter  
85 sē iūs mātis ōsculandae Rōmae sortī permittunt. Brūtus, quī aliō modō ōrāculum interpretātus erat, cecidit terramque ōsculātus est, scilicet quod ea commūnis mātēr est omnium mortālīum. Rediērunt inde juvenēs Rōmam.

76. Brūtī: the word is properly an adjective, *dull*, then as a noun *the dullard*. With *nōmen*, *urbs*, and the like, an explanatory genitive is sometimes used instead of an appositive.

81. *ad quem eōrum*, etc.: an indirect question; *eōrum*, like *vestrum* in l. 83, is a genitive of the whole.

82. *esset ventūrum*, *was destined to come*. The direct question would have a future indicative: *ad quem nostrum rēgnū veniet?* The future indicative in a question of fact is regularly represented in an indirect question by the future active participle with the subjunctive of the verb *sum*.

85. *mātis ōsculandae*: a gerundive construction.

*Rōmae*: a locative.

77. *lūdibrium*, -ī, *n.* [*compare lūdus*], object of ridicule, mockery.

79. *corneus*; -a, -um, *adj.* [*cornum*, cornel-cherry], of cornel-wood.

*effigiēs*, *acc.* -em, *f.*, semblance, effigy.

84. *ōsculor*, -ārī, -ātus sum, *tr.* [ōs-

culum], to kiss.

85. *sors*, *sortis*, *f.*, lot, casting of lots.

86. *interpretor*, -ārī, -ātus sum, *tr.* [*interpres*], explain, interpret.

87. *scilicet*, *adv.* [*scire + licet*], of course, no doubt, doubtless.

## 12. BANISHMENT OF TARQUINIUS SUPERBUS

Paulō post Rōmānī, quī jam dūdum superbiam Tarquiniī rēgis atque filiōrum aegrē ferēbant, ita scelere quōdam Sex.

1. *jam dūdum . . . aegrē ferēbant*, *had long resented*; the use of tenses with *jam dūdum* is explained in the note on Per. 24.

Tarquinii concitāti sunt ut rēgiam familiam in exilium pel-  
lere statuerent. Tum primum vērum ingenium Brūti apertum  
est. Eō enim duce populus iūrāvit sē nec Tarquinium nec  
alium quemquam rēgnāre Rōmae passūrum esse. Brūtus  
inde in castra profectus est, ubi exercitus Rōmānus Ardeam,  
caput Rutulōrum, obsidēbat. Tulliam rēginam domō profu-  
gientem omnēs viri mulierēsque execrāti sunt.

Ubi nūntiī hārum rērum in castra perlāti sunt, rēx Rōmam  
perrexit. Brūtus adventum rēgis sēnsit flexitque viam. Ita  
eōdem ferē tempore diversis itineribus Brūtus Ardeam, Tar-  
quinius Rōmam vēnērunt. Hic portās clausās invēnit;  
Brūtum liberātorem urbis laeta castra accēpērunt exāctique  
sunt liberī rēgis; duo patrem secūtī exulēs Caere, quae  
urbs Etrūsca erat; Sextus Tarquinius Gabiōs, tamquam in  
suum rēgnum, profectus ab ultōribus veterum injūriarum  
quās ipse intulerat interfectus est.

L. Tarquinius Superbus rēgnāvit annōs quinque et viginti.  
Rēgnum Rōmae annōs ducentōs quadrāgintā dūrāverat. Duo  
cōsulēs inde creati sunt, L. Jūnius Brūtus et L. Tarquinius  
Collātinus.

3. ut . . . statuerent: a clause of result, App. 96.

8. domō: why no preposition?

13. Hic: to be translated as in 11, 74.

15. quae: the antecedent of *quae*, *Caere*, is neuter; but the relative is made to agree in gender with a predicate noun instead of with the antecedent, a common usage.

3. familia, -ae, *f.* [famulus, servant], household establishment, slaves in a household; family.

5. iūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *intr.* [jūs], swear, take oath.

9. execror, -ārī, -ātus sum, *tr.* [ex + sacrō], doom, curse.

11. pergō, -ere, perrexi, perrēctum, *intr.* [per + regō], go on, proceed.

12. ferē, *adv.*, about, nearly; in general, usually.

diversus, -versa, -versum, *adj.*, turned different ways, opposite.

14. exigō, -igere, -ēgi, -actum, *tr.* [ex + agō], drive out, expel; exact; spend.

17. ultor, -ōris, *m.* [ulciscor], avenger.

20. ducenti, -ae, -a, *num. adj.* [duo + centum], two hundred.

dūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr. and intr.* [dūrus], harden; last, endure.

## 13. HORATIUS COCLES

Tarquinius, ut rēgnum reciperāret, ad Lartem Porsenam, Clūsīnum rēgem, fūgit. Eī persuāsīt nē rēgem Etrūscae gentis rēgnō privārī paterētur. Porsena Rōmam infestō exercitū vēnit. Magnus terror senātum occupāvit; adeō firma rēs  
 5 Clūsīna tum erat magnumque Porsenae nōmen.

Cum hostēs adessent, omnēs in urbem ex agrīs veniunt urbemque ipsam mūniunt praesidiīs. Alia loca mūrīs, alia Tiberī objectō vidēbantur tūta. Pōns sublicius tamen iter paene hostibus dedit, nī ūnus vir fuisset, Horātius Coclē, qui  
 10 forte ad pontem positus erat. Clūsīnī repentinō impetū Jāniculum cēpērunt atque inde vėlōciter ad flūmen dēcurrēbant. Coclē, cum suōs fugere vidisset, ōrāvit eōs ut manērent et pontem rescinderent: sē impetum hostium, quantum ūnus

Horātius Coclē: Macaulay has celebrated this exploit in one of his Lays of Ancient Rome.

2. nē . . . paterētur, *not to permit*; object of *persuāsīt*.

3. rēgem . . . privārī: like *jubeō*, *patior* takes an infinitive with subject accusative.

3. rēgnō: ablative of separation.

4. rēs Clūsīna = rēs pūblica Clūsīna, *the state of Clusium*.

7. Alia, alia: how are correlative forms of *alius* translated?

8. Tiberī objectō: ablative absolute; but like *mūrīs* it expresses the cause or means; translate, *because of the interposition of the Tiber*, or *with the Tiber as a defense*.

Pōns sublicius: this bridge was preserved for centuries, restored doubtless from time to time.

9. nī . . . fuisset Horātius Coclē, *had it not been for one man*, *Horatius Cocles*; a condition contrary to fact, App. 120; the proper conclusion is only implied, *paene dedit* (*atque dedisset*), *almost afforded* (*and would have afforded*).

12. suōs fugere vidisset, *had seen his men fleeing*. How do you account for the case of *suōs* and the mood of *fugere*?

13. sē . . . exceptūrum esse: dependent on a verb of saying implied in the preceding sentence.

quantum, *so far as*.

3. privō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* [privus, private], deprive, rob.

4. ad-eō, *adv.*, to such a degree, so.

9. nī, *conj.*, if not, unless.

10. repentinus, -a, -um, *adj.* [repēns,

sudden], sudden, unexpected.

11. vėlōciter, *adv.* [vėlōx], swiftly.

13. re-scindō, -scindere, -scidī, -scissum, *tr.*, cut down, break down.

posset id facere, exceptūrum esse. Prōcessit inde in primum aditum pontis ipsāque audāciā turbāvit hostēs.

15

Duōs tamen cum eō pudor tenuit, Sp. Larcium ac T. Herminium, ambōs clārōs genere factisque. Cum hīs primam pugnam paulisper sustinuit. Deinde eōs, parvā parte pontis relictā, cēdere in tūtum jussit. Pudor inde commōvit Etruscōs, et, clāmōre sublātō, undique in ūnum hostem tēla 20 conjiciunt. Dēnique, ponte paene rescissō, Coclēs armātus in Tiberim dēsiliuit incolumisque ad suōs trānāvit. Grāta ergā tantam virtūtem cīvitas fuit; statua ejus in comitiō posita est, et agrī quantum ūnō diē circumarāvit datum.

14. posset: subjunctive in a subordinate clause in indirect discourse.

primum aditum = the farther end.

17. genere, factis: ablatives of respect.

primam: an adjective denoting a part, App. 85.

19. in tūtum, to safety; the adjective is used as a noun.

24. agrī: genitive of the whole with quantum, as much land as.

15. turbō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr. [turbā], disturb, confound, throw into confusion.

16. pudor, -ōris, m., shame, sense of honor.

18. paulisper, adv. [paulum, little + per], a little while, a short time.

19. cēdō, cēdere, cessi, cessum, intr., withdraw, retire, yield.

22. dēsiliō, -ire, -uī, —, intr. [dē + saliō, leap], leap down.

trānō, -nāre, -nāvī, —, tr. and intr. [trāns + nō, swim], swim across.

24. circum-arō, -āre, -āvī, tr., plow around.

#### 14. SECESSION OF THE PLEBS

Prīmīs temporibus rei pūblicae liberae magna dissēnsiō orta est inter patrēs et plēbem propter aes aliēnum, quō paene tōta plēbs premēbantur. Crēditōrī enim licēbat dēbi-

1. liberae: the phrase *rēs pūblica* means *state* or *commonwealth* and implies nothing as to form of government. *Rēs pūblica libera* means *republic*, or *free commonwealth*.

2. aes aliēnum, "another's money" is a striking way of denoting debt.

2. aliēnus, -a, -um, adj. [alius], another's; out of place; unfavorable; aes aliēnum, debt.

3. premō, -ere, pressi, pressum, tr..

press; burden, weigh down.

crēditor, -ōris, m. [crēdō], creditor.

dēbitor, -ōris, m. [dēbeō], debtor.

tōrem etiam in servitūtem dūcere. Praetereā jūs reddēbātur  
 5 ā cōsulis, quī magistrātus tantum patribus patēbat.  
 Cum jam plēbs auxilium ā cōsulis postulārent, Latini  
 equitēs nūntiāverunt Volscōs ad urbem oppugnandam venire.  
 Plēbs exultābant gaudiō, atque inter sē hortābantur nē  
 nōmina darent. At ūnus ē cōsulis, plēbe convocātā, pol-  
 10 licitus est jūdicia intermittere quoad militēs in castris essent;  
 bellō cōfectō, senātum plēbi cōsultūrum esse. Eō modō  
 plēbi persuāsit ut nōmina darent. Volscī aliq̄ue populi  
 finitimī victi sunt.

Posteā tamen jūs dē crēditis pecūniis crūdēliter, ut antea,  
 15 dictum est. Tandem plēbs, cum exercitus, aliō bellō coōrtō,  
 in armis esset, dēspērātō cōsulum senātūisque auxiliō, in  
 Sacrum montem sēcesserunt. Hic mōns trāns Aniēnem flū-  
 men est, tria ab urbe milia passuum. Patrēs arbitrātī nūl-

4. jūs reddēbātur, *justice was administered.*

5. quī magistrātus . . . patēbat, *an office which was open only to patricians.*  
 Of the two classes in Roman society, patricians and plebeians, the former  
 at this time occupied a position of great advantage. In the change from  
 monarchy to free government the patricians had secured for themselves  
 alone the privilege of office-holding, although the plebeians possessed the  
 right to vote. Only after a contest of two centuries or more did the ple-  
 beians gain equal political and social rights with the patricians.

6. postulārent: a collective noun (here *plēbs*) may take a singular verb,  
 or, if the individuals of the group are thought of, the plural may be used,  
 as here.

8. inter sē, *one another.*

nē nōmina darent, *not to enlist.*

10. quoad, *so long as.* The subjunctive *essent* is due to the indirect  
 discourse implied in *pollicitus est*, App. 109.

11. plēbi: cōsulō meaning *consult the interest of* takes a dative; when  
 meaning *consult, ask the advice of*, it takes an accusative.

14. jūs . . . dictum est: with the same meaning as *jūs reddēbātur*, l. 4.  
*crēditis, loaned.*

18. arbitrātī: it should not be forgotten that the past participles of  
 some deponent verbs are to be rendered as present.

5. magistrātus, -ūs, *m.* [magister],  
 magistracy, office; magistrate.

14. crūdēliter, *adv.* [crūdēlis], cru-  
 elty.

17. sacer, -cra, -crum, *adj.*, sacred;  
*subst. sacra, -ōrum, n. pl.*, sacred  
 rites, religious customs; Mōns  
 Sacer, a hill near Rome.



lam spem nisi in concordia civium reliquam esse, ad plēbem miserunt Menēnium Agrippam, ipsum plēbeium et plēbi cārum. 20

19. concordia, -ae, f. [concor, harmonious], concord, harmony.

20. plēbeius, -a, -um, adj. [plēbs], of the common people, plebeian.

### 15. MENENIUS AGRIPPA

Menēnius hoc nārrāsse fertur: "Ōlim reliquae partēs corporis hūmāni indignābantur quod suā cūrā, suō labōre ac ministeriō ventri omnia quaererentur, venter in mediō quiētus datīs voluptātibus frueretur; conjūrāvērunt inde nē manūs ad ōs cibum ferrent, nēve ōs datum cibum acciperet, nēve dentēs cōficerent. Sed dum ventrem famē domāre volunt, ipsa membra tōtumque corpus paene periērunt. Inde sēnsērunt ventris quoque ministerium haud iners esse." Ostendit deinde dissēnsiōnem inter partēs corporis similem esse irae plēbis in patrēs et ita flexit mentēs hominum. 10

Concordiā reconciliāā, plēbi permissum est suōs magistrā-

1. fertur, is said, a frequent meaning.

2. quod: whose reason was this? Why the subjunctives *quaererentur* and *frueretur*?

4. nē...ferrent: the noun clause gives the substance of the oath, that the hands should not, etc.

5. nēve: *nēve*, composed of *nē* and the enclitic *-ve*, or, is the negative conjunction regularly employed between subjunctives, *neque* between indicatives.

6. cōficerent, masticate.

10. in, toward.

11. suōs magistrātūs, as magistrates of their own.

2. indignor, -ārī, -ātus sum, intr., be indignant, be offended.

3. ministerium, -ī, n. [minister, servant], office, service, labor.

venter, -tris, m., belly.

4. voluptās, -ātis, f., pleasure.

fruar, frui, fructus sum, intr. (takes ablative), enjoy, have the benefit of.

con-jūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, intr., swear together, form a conspiracy, conspire.

5. nēve, conj., and that not, and not.

6. domō, -āre, domui, domitum, tr., subdue, master.

8. iners, -ertis, adj. [in-+ars], idle, inert, indolent.

tūs creāre tribūnōs plēbeiōs, quī auxilium plēbī adversus cōsulēs ferrent.

12. quī . . . ferrent: what kind of clause? Observe the mood. The tribunes at first possessed merely the power to nullify the act of a patrician magistrate in a particular case. In time the authority and prestige of the tribunate were so increased as to render it the most powerful magistracy in the state.

12. tribūnus, -ī, m. [tribus, tribe], tribune, *title of a Roman official*.

### 16. LUCIUS QUINCTIUS CINCINNATUS

Posteā, dum tribūnī imperium cōsulāre lēgibus dēfinire cōnantur, L. Quīctius Cincinnātus cōsul factus est. Ut magistrātum iniit, reprehendit et senātum et plēbem, quod eidem tribūnī etiam atque etiam creatī civitātem turbārent.  
 5 Senātus igitur dēcrevit magistrātū continuārī contrā rem publicam esse. Plēbs tamen eōdem, quōs anteā, tribūnōs creāvērunt. Patrēs quoque, nē quid cēderent plēbī, Lūcium Quīctium cōsulem fēcērunt. At is "minimē mīrum est," inquit, "sī nihil auctōritātis, patrēs cōscriptī, habētis apud  
 10 plēbem. Vōs eam minuitis, quī in continuandīs magistrātibus plēbem imitāminī. Ego mē contrā senātū cōsultum

1. dēfinire: the laws had not hitherto been put into written form. To reduce them to writing would somewhat diminish the advantage enjoyed by the patrician magistrates who dispensed justice.

2. Ut: here in a temporal sense, *when*.

5. magistrātū continuārī: infinitive with subject accusative used together as subject of *esse*; the English idiom is, *for magistrates to be reelected*.

rem publicam, the general interest, public policy. What does the phrase usually mean?

7. nē quid cēderent plēbī, *not to yield anything to the plebeians, i.e., not to be outdone by the plebeians*; a clause of purpose.

10. quī imitāminī, *by imitating*. How, literally?

1. cōsulāris, -e, *adj.* [cōsul], of a consul, consular.

dē-finiō, -ire, -ivī, -itum, *tr.*, limit, define.

3. re-prehendō, -prehendere, -prehendī, -prehensum, *tr.*, hold back, seize; censure, rebuke.

5. continuō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* [continuuus], make continuous, hold without an interval.

10. minuō, -ere, minui, minūtum, *tr.*, diminish, weaken, impair.

11. cōsultum, -ī, *n.* [cōsulō], decree.

cōsulem reficī nōn patiar." Alius igitur cōsul factus est.

Post paucōs annōs Aequī exercitum Rōmānum mūnitiōnibus clausum obsidēbant. Cum hoc Rōmānū nūntiātum esset, L. Quīnctius cōnsēnsū omnium dictātor dictus est. Lēgātī ā senātū missī eum invēnērunt trāns Tiberim agrum quattuor jūgerum colentem atque in opus intentum. Rogāvērunt ut togātus mandāta senātūs audiret. Quīnctius admirātus jubet uxōrem togam properē ē tuguriō prōferre. Cum, abstersō sūdore, togā vėlātus prōcessisset, dictātōrem eum lēgātī salutant atque in urbem vocant; quī terror sit in exercitū expōnunt. Quīnctius exercitum obsessum celeriter liberāvit et hostēs sub jugum mīsīt. Triumphāns urbem iniit sextōque decimō diē dictātūrā in sex mēnsēs acceptam dēposuit.

14. **Rōmān:** accusative of the place to which, since *nūntiātum esset* implies motion.

18. **admirātus:** with present force, like *arbitrārī*, 14, 18.

21. **quī:** interrogative adjective; why the subjunctive *sūt*?

23. **sub jugum:** the "yoke" consisted of two spears set upright in the ground with a cross-spear high enough to let the conquered troops pass under.

**Triumphāns, in triumph.** In case of an important victory the Roman senate might grant the successful general the privilege of entering the city in triumphal procession. The general rode in a special triumphal car drawn by four white horses. The procession moved through the Forum up to the temple of Jupiter on the Capitoline Hill, where sacrifice was made to the god.

24. **in sex mēnsēs:** as explained before in the note on 7, 8, the dictatorship was virtually a restoration of the kingship, but only, as indicated here, for the limited period of six months.

17. **jūgerum, -ī, gen. pl. jūgerum, n.,** an acre, a juger (*about two-thirds of an English acre.*)

18. **togātus, -a, -um, adj. [toga],** clad in the toga.

19. **properē, adv. [properus, speedy],** hastily, speedily.

**tugurium, -ī, n.,** hut, cottage.

**abstersēō, -tergēre, -tersī, -tersum, tr.,** wipe off or away.

20. **sūdor, -ōris, m.,** perspiration.

**salūtō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr. [salūs],** greet, hail.

23. **triumphō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, intr. [triumphus],** celebrate a triumph, triumph.

**sextus decimus, -a, -um, adj. (both parts declined),** sixteenth.

24. **dictātūra, -ae, f. [dictātor],** dictatorship.

## 17. THE GALLIC INVASION

Ōlim lēgātī ab Clūsīnīs Rōmam vēnērunt auxilium petentēs  
adversus Senonēs, gentem Gallicam. Tum Rōmānī misērunt  
lēgātōs qui monērent Gallōs nē amīcōs populī Rōmānī op-  
pugnārent. Proeliō tamen commissō, lēgātī Rōmānī contrā  
5 jūs gentium arma cēpērunt auxiliumque Clūsīnīs tulērunt.  
Gallī postea ā senātū Rōmānō postulāvērunt ut prō jūre  
gentium ita violātō lēgātī Rōmānī dēderentur. Hōc negātō,  
exercitus Gallicus Rōmam profectus est.

Rōmānī, qui nihil ad tantum periculum idōneum parāve-  
10 rant, apud flūmen Alliam superātī sunt. Diem quō hoc proe-  
lium factum est Rōmānī postea Allīensem appellāvērunt.  
Magna pars exercitūs incolumis Veīōs perfūgit. Cēterī Rō-  
mam petiērunt et nē clausīs quidem portīs urbis in arcem  
Capitōliumque cum conjugibus et liberis sē contulērunt.

15 Gallī ingressī urbem nēmīnī parcurt, diripiunt incendunt-  
que tēcta. Post aliquot diēs, tēstūdine factā, impetum in  
arcem fēcērunt. At Rōmānī mediō ferē colle restitērunt,

3. nē . . . oppugnārent, *not to attack*; a noun clause, object of *monērent*.

5. jūs gentium: the ancient equivalent of our "international law."

6. prō, *in return for, in satisfaction of*.

11. Allīensem: this day was always regarded as one of ill omen, on which no official assemblies of the people were held.

13. nē clausīs quidem, *without even closing*; remember that the words *nē . . . quidem* enclose the emphatic word.

15. nēmīnī: give the list of "special" verbs that govern the dative.

16. tēstūdine: a formation with shields in close array in front and overhead.

17. mediō ferē colle, *about the middle of the hill*; *mediō* is an adjective denoting a part, like *primam*, 13, 17.

12. per-fugiō, -fugere, -fūgī, —, *intr.*, flee for refuge, flee.

13. quidem, *adv.*, certainly, in fact; to be sure, it is true; nē . . . quidem, not even, not either.

15. parcō, -ere, pepercī, parsūrus, *intr.* (takes dative), spare, treat

with forbearance.

diripiō, -ripere, -ripui, -reptum, *tr.* [dis-+rapiō], plunder.

16. tēstūdō, -dinis, *f.* [tēsta, shell, hard covering], tortoise; covered column (a military term).

atque inde ex locō superiōre, impetū factō, Gallōs populērunt. Obsidiō inde ā Gallīs parāta est. Pars exercitūs Gallicī dimissa est ad frūmentum cōferendum ex agrīs populōrum 20 finitimōrum. Hōs fortūna ipsa dūxit Ardeam, ubi Camillus, imperātor clārissimus, in exiliō vivēbat. Ardeātēs eō duce castra Gallōrum nocte oppugnant et solūtōs somnō trucidant. Veīs interim nōn animī solum in diēs sed etiam virēs crēscēbant. Nam praeter Rōmānōs, quī ex pugnā Alliēnsī eō per- 25 fūgerant, voluntārii ex Latīō conveniēbant. Hī jam cōstituērunt Rōmam hostibus liberāre. Omnibus placuit Camillum arcessī, sed antea senātum cōnsulī. Ad eam rem Pontius Cominius, audāx juvenis, sublevātus cortice secundō Tiberī ad urbem dēfertur. Senātū probante, Camillus dictā- 30 tor dictus est.

20. ad . . . cōferendum: a gerundive construction.

21. Ardeam, to Ardea.

Camillus: he had previously taken the Etruscan city of Veii after a long siege, but had subsequently been exiled on the charge of having unfairly divided the spoils of that place.

23. solūtōs somnō, while sleeping; how, literally?

24. Veīs: a locative.

animī: plural; compare English "their spirits."

in diēs, day by day.

27. placuit: the subject is the infinitive clause *Camillum arcessī*.

28. cōnsulī: passive infinitive; the meaning was explained in the note on 14, 11.

29. cortice: a float made of bark.

secundō Tiberī, down the Tiber; literally, the Tiber being favorable, ablative absolute; in like manner *adversō flūmine* means up stream.

31. dictus est = *creātus est*.

19. obsidiō, -ōnis, *f.* [ob+sedeō], siege, blockade.

20. di-mittō, -mittere, -misi, -missum, *tr.*, send out, send forth; dismiss.

23. trucidō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.*, slaughter, massacre.

26. voluntārius, -a, -um, *adj.* [vo-

luntās], voluntary; *subst.*, voluntārii, -ōrum, *m. pl.*, volunteers.

28. arcessō, -cessere, -cessivi, -cessitum, *tr.*, send for, summon.

29. audāx, -ācis, *adj.* [audeo], daring, bold.

cortex, -icis, *m. and f.*, bark.

Interim arx Rōmae Capitōliumque in ingēnti periculō fuit. Nocte enim Gallī, praemissō milite quī viam temptāret, tantō silentiō in summū ēvāsērunt ut nōn solum custōdēs fallerent, sed nē canēs quidem excitārent. Ānserēs nōn fefellerunt, quī avēs Jūnōnis sacrae erant. Nam M. Mānlius, vir bellō ēgregius, clangōre eōrum ālārumque crepitū excitātus dējēcit Gallum quī jam in summō cōnstitērat. Jamque aliī Rōmānī tēlis saxisque hostēs prōpellunt, tōtaque aciēs Gallōrum praeceps dēfertur.

Sed famēs jam utrumque exercitum urgēbat, Gallōs pestilentia etiam. Diem ex diē Rōmānī frūstrā auxilium ab dictātōre expectābant. Postrēmō mille pondō aurī cum Gallīs pactī sunt ut obsidiōnem relinquerent. Huic rei per sē turpissimae indignitās addita est; nam pondera ab Gallīs allāta sunt inīqua. Rōmānīs recūsantibus gladius ā Brennō, rēge

32. fuit: the verb often agrees in number with the nearest part of a compound subject.

33. temptāret, *try, reconnoiter.*

34. ēvāsērunt, *made their way up.*

ut nōn fallerent: App. 96.

42. Diem ex diē, *day after day.*

43. mille pondō aurī: a peculiar phrase, meaning a thousand pounds of gold. Translate, *they bargained with the Gauls for a thousand pounds of gold that they should abandon the siege.*

44. pactī sunt: from *paciscor*.

per sē, *of itself*; to be taken closely with *turpissimae*.

45. pondera, *weights*; *i.e.*, for the scales.

34. silentium, -ī, *n.* [sileō, be still], silence.

custōs, -ōdis, *m. and f.*, guard, guardian, keeper.

35. ānser, -eris, *m.*, goose.

37. ēgregius, -a, -um, *adj.* [ē+grex, flock], distinguished, eminent.

clangor, -ōris, *m.*, noise.

39. prō-pellō, -pellere, -pulī, -pulsum, *tr.*, drive forward; drive off, repel, rout.

40. praeceps, -cipitis, *adj.* [prae, before, +caput], headforemost, headlong.

41. urgeō, -ēre, ursī, —, *tr.*, press, press hard, beset, urge.

43. pondō, *adv.* [compare pondus], by weight, in weight.

44. paciscor, pacisci, pactus sum, *intr.*, bargain, agree.

46. inīquus, -a, -um, *adj.* [in+aequus], uneven; unfair, unjust.

Gallōrum, ponderī additus est cum hīs verbīs, "vae victīs." Sed priusquam rēs perfecta est, dictātor pervēnit auferrique aurum dē mediō et Gallōs summovērī jussit. Cum illi dicerent sē pactōs esse, negat eam pactiōnem valēre, quae, postquam ipse dictātor creātus esset, injussū suō facta esset; tum dēnūtiat Gallis ut sē ad proelium parent.

Galli et in urbe et alterō proeliō viā Gabīnā superātī sunt. Dictātor triumphāns in urbem rediit; Rōmulus ac parēns patriae conditorque alter urbis appellābātur. Deinde servātam in bellō patriam iterum in pāce servāvit. Cum enim tribūnī plēbem agitārent ut relictis ruīnīs Veiōs migrārent, Camillus orātiōne acriter civibus persuāsit ut Rōmam restituerent. Centuriō quoque populum mōvit vōce opportūnē ēmissā, quī cum cohortibus forum trānsiēns clāmāvit: "Signum statue, signifer; hīc manēbimus optimē." Quā vōce audītā, et senātus ē cūriā ēgressus ōmen accipere sē conclāmāvit, et plēbs circumfūsa probāvērunt.

47. vae victis, *woe to the vanquished.*

51. creātus esset, facta esset: subjunctives in subordinate clauses in indirect discourse.

53. viā Gabīnā, *on the road to Gabii.*

54. Rōmulus: predicate nominative.

55. servātam: to be translated by a relative clause.

57. plēbem agitārent ut . . . migrārent, *were instigating the people to migrate; migrārent takes a subject supplied from plēbem; how is the plural verb to be accounted for?*

59. Centuriō . . . mōvit: this incident illustrates the very common tendency of the Romans to find omens in chance utterances.

62. et . . . et, *both . . . and.*

47. vae, *interj., woe!*

49. summoveo, -movēre, -mōvī, -mōtum, *tr. [sub + moveō], drive away, remove.*

50. pactiō, -ōnis, *f. [paciscor], agreement, bargain.*

52. dē-nūtiō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr., announce, proclaim; give warning.*

57. agitō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr. [freq. of agō], drive; impel, instigate.*

ruīna, -ae, *f. [ruō, fall in ruins], ruin, downfall; pl., ruins.*

59. opportūnē, *adv. [opportūnus], fitly, opportunely.*

61. signifer, -i, *m. [signum + ferō], standard-bearer.*

optimē, *superl. adv. [optimus], best.*

62. ōmen, -inis, *n., omen.*

63. con-clāmō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr. and intr., cry out together, cry out loudly, exclaim.*

circum-fundō, -fundere, -fūdī, -fūsum, *tr., pour around.*

## 18. GAIUS FABRICIUS

Rōmānī ā Pyrrhō, rēge Ēpīrī, proeliō superātī lēgātōs Tarentum ad eum dē redimendis captīvīs mīsērunt. Inter lēgātōs Rōmānōs erat C. Fabricius, vir bonus et bellō ēgregius, sed admodum pauper. Pyrrhus, quī cum Rōmānīs pācem  
5 facere volēbat, lēgātīs magna dōna obtulit, sī Rōmānīs pācem suādērent. Quamquam haec omnia sprēta sunt, rēx tamen captīvōs dicitur sine pretiō Rōmam mīsisse.

Pyrrhus Fabriciū virtūtem admirātus illī sēcrētō quārtam etiam rēgnī suī partem obtulit sī patriam dēsereret sēcumque  
10 viveret; cui Fabricius ita respondit: "Sī mē virum bonum iudicās, cūr mē vīs corrumpere? sīn vērō malum, cūr meam amicitiam cupis?" Annō interjectō, omni spē pācis inter Pyrrhum et Rōmānōs conciliandae ablātā, Fabricius cōsul factus contrā eum missus est. Cumque vicīna castra ipse et  
15 rēx habērent, medicus rēgis nocte ad Fabricium vēnit eīque

1. Pyrrhō: Pyrrhus came into Italy at the invitation of the people of Tarentum as their ally in war with the Romans. In a more general way he stood as the champion of the Greek cities of southern Italy against Roman aggression.

5. sī . . . suādērent, *if they would urge peace upon the Romans*; the subjunctive is due to the informal indirect discourse, *Pyrrhus said that he would make large presents, if, etc.*

12. pācis . . . conciliandae: genitive of the gerundive construction.

2. redimō, -imere, -ēmī, -ēptum, *tr.* [red-+emō], buy back, ransom, buy up.

4. ad-modum, *adv.*, fully, very, quite.

pauper, -eris, *adj.*, poor, of small means.

6. suādeō, -ēre, suāsī, suāsum, *tr. and intr.* [compare suāvis], advise, recommend, urge.

7. pretium, -ī, *n.*, price, value; reward, recompense.

8. sēcrētō, *adv.* [sēcrētus], separately, secretly, in private.

11. iudicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* [iūdex], judge, decide.

corrumpō, -rumpere, -rūpī, -ruptum, *tr.* [com-+rumpō, burst], ruin; corrupt.

sīn, *conj.* [sī+ne], but if.

vērō, *adv.* [vērus], in fact, certainly; but in fact, however.

12. interjiciō, -jicere, -jēcī, -jectum, *tr.* [inter+jacīō], throw between, interpose.

15. medicus, -ī, *m.* [medicus, medical], physician, surgeon.



pollicitus est, si praemium sibi propositisset, se Pyrrhum veniendi necaturum. Hunc Fabricius vinctum ad Pyrrhum remisit atque eum certorem fecit quae medicus pollicitus esset. Tum rex admiratus eum dixisse fertur: "Ille est Fabricius, qui difficilius ab honestate quam soli a suo cursu potest averti."

Fabricius cum apud Pyrrhum regem legatus esset, cum Cineā, legato Pyrrhi, sermonem contulit. Hic dixit quandam philosophum esse Athēns, qui diceret omnia quae faceremus ad voluptatem esse referenda. Tum Fabricium exclamasse ferunt: "Utinam id hostibus nostris persuaderemus, quo facilius vinco possint, cum se voluptatibus dederint!" Nihil magis ab ejus vita alienum erat quam voluptas et luxus. Tota ejus suppellex argentea ex salino uno constabat et ex

16. se . . . necaturum esse: a verb of "promising" may take either a future infinitive with subject accusative, as here, or simply a present infinitive without subject.

18. quae medicus pollicitus esset, *what the physician had promised*; indirect question depending on *certorem fecit*.

19. fertur, *is said*, the same meaning as in 15, 1; in l. 26 occurs the active *ferunt*, *they say*.

23. Cineā: for the declension of this Greek word see the note on *Aenēas*, 1, 4. Cineas was famed for his powers of persuasion and was Pyrrhus' favorite adviser. The king was reported to have said that he had taken more cities through the eloquence of Cineas than by force of arms.

*sermonem contulit*, *engaged in conversation*.

*Hic*, *the latter*.

25. ad voluptatem, *to the standard of pleasure*.

26. Utinam id hostibus nostris persuaderemus, *would that we might persuade our enemies of this*; the accusative *id* replaces an infinitive clause, *id verum esse*. The optative subjunctive *persuaderemus* and the clause of purpose following are explained in App. 93 and 95.

28. ab . . . vitā: with *alienum*; we say "foreign to."

18. re-mittō, -mittere, -misi, -missum, *tr.*, send back; relax, discontinue.

20. difficiliter, *adv.* [difficilis], with difficulty.

honestās, -ātis, *f.* [honor], honesty, honor.

24. philosophus, -i, *m.*, philosopher.

28. lūxus, -ūs, *m.*, luxury, splendor.

29. suppellex, -lectilis, *f.*, domestic utensils, furniture.

argenteus, -a, -um, *adj.* [argentum], of silver.

salinum, -i, *n.* [sāl], salt-cellar.

- 20 patellā ad ūsum sacrōrum, quae corneō pediculō sustinēbātur. Cēnābat ad focum radicēs et herbās, cum lēgātī Samnītium ad eum vērunt māgnamque eī pecūniam obtulērunt; quibus sic respondit: "Quamdiū cupiditatibus imperāre poterō, nihil mihi deerit; vōs autem pecūniam eīs quī eam cupiunt dōnate."
- 35 Fabricius omnem vītā in glōriōsā paupertate exēgit, adeoque inops dēcessit ut unde dōs filiārum darētur nōn relinqueret. Senātus patris sibi partēs sūpsit et, datīs ex aerariō dōtibus, filiās collocāvit.

31. cum . . . vērunt: this use of *cum* with a perfect indicative is explained in the note on Arg. 109.

33. nihil mihi deerit, *I shall lack nothing*; the dative with *dēsum* is similar to the dative of possession with *sum*.

36. unde, *the means from which*; the idea of possibility is involved in the subjunctive darētur, *could be furnished*.

30. patella, -ae, *f.* [*dim. of patina*, pan], a small pan, a small dish.  
corneus, -a, -um, *adj.* [cornū], of horn.

pediculus, -ī, *m.* [pēs], a little foot, a small base.

31. cēnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *intr. and tr.* [cēna], dine, dine upon.

focus, -ī, *m.*, fireplace, hearth.

rādix, -dicis, *f.*, root, radish; lower part, foot, base (*of a mountain*).

33. quam-diū, *adv.*, as long as.

34. dē-sum, -esse, -fui, -futūrus, *intr.*, be wanting, be lacking.

35. glōriōsus, -a, -um, *adj.* [glōria], glorious, famous, renowned.

paupertās, -ātis, *f.* [pauper], small means, poverty.

36. inops, -opis, *adj.* [in-+ops], poor, destitute.

dē-cēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum, *intr.*, withdraw, depart; die.

dōs, dōtis, *f.*, dowry.

38. aerārium, -ī, *n.* [aes], treasury.

collocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* [com-+locō, place], station, arrange; give in marriage.

## 19. MARCUS ATILIUS REGULUS

Cum primō Punicō bellō Rōmānī contrā Carthāginiēnsēs dē imperiō Siciliāe contenderent, M. Atilius Rēgulus, cōsul Rōmānus, nāvālī pugnā classem Pūnicā superāvit. Proeliō factō, Hannō, dux Carthāginiēnsis, ad eum vēnit simulāns sē

3. nāvālis, -e, *adj.* [nāvis], of ships, nautical, naval.

velle dē pāce agere, rē vērā ut tempus extraheret, dum novae 5  
cōpia ex Āfricā advenirent. Militēs Rōmānī clāmāre coe-  
perunt Rēgulum idem facere oportēre quod Carthāginiēnsēs  
paucis ante annis in cōsule quōdam fēcissent. Is enim tam-  
quam in colloquium per fraudem vocātus ā Poenīs compre-  
hēnsus erat et in catēnās coniectus. Jam Hannō timēre in- 10  
cipiēbat, sed periculum respōnsō callidō reppulit. “Sī hoc  
fēcēritis”, inquit, “nihilō eritis Poenīs meliōrēs.” Cōsul  
tacēre jussit eōs quī pār parī referri volēbant, et conveniēns  
gravitātī Rōmānae respōsum dedit: “Istō tē metū, Hannō,  
fidēs Rōmāna liberat.” Dē pāce, quia Poenus ex animō nōn 15  
agēbat et cōsul bellum gerere quam pācem facere mālēbat,  
nōn convēnit.

Deinde Rēgulus et collēga, L. Mānlius Vulsō, in Āfricam  
prīmī Rōmānōrum ducum trāsiērunt. Ibi, multis castellis  
expugnātis magnāque praedā captā, Tūnētem occupāvērunt, 20  
quae urbs decem tantum milibus passuum ā Carthāgine  
aberat. Vulsō in Italiā cum parte militum rediit, collēgā  
ad agrōs vāstandōs relictō. Dum Rēgulus ita hiemem in

5. rē vērā, *in fact, in reality*, as in 7, 11.

6. advenirent: anticipatory subjunctive with *dum*, *until*, App. 100.

7. oportēre: the infinitive is due to the indirect discourse; its subject is another infinitive with subject accusative, *Rēgulum . . . facere*.

8. in, *in the case of*.

9. Poenīs: *Poenī* and *Carthāginiēnsēs* are used of the same people, the former referring to their Phoenician origin, the latter derived from the name of their chief city.

13. pār parī, *like for like, as good as they sent*.

15. ex animō, *sincerely*; literally, *from his heart*.

17. nōn convēnit, *no agreement was reached*; *convēnit* is used impersonally.

21. milibus: ablative of degree or measure of difference; what part of speech is the plural of *mille*?

11. callidus, -a, -um, *adj.* [calleō, be callous, be skilled], shrewd, adroit.

12. nihilum, -ī, *n.* [ne + hilum, a shred], nothing; *esp. in the abl. with a compar., e. g. nihilō minus*, none the less.

13. conveniēns, *gen., -entis, adj.* [*pr. part. of conveniō*], agreeing, appropriate.

14. gravitās, -ātis, *f.* [gravis], heaviness; importance; dignity.

18. collēga, -ae, *m.*, colleague.

25 *Āfricā agit, vilicus in agellō septem jūgerum, quem Rēgulus*  
*cōsul habēbat, mortuus est; occāsionem nactus mercennārius,*  
*ablātō rūsticō instrūmentō, aufūgit. Ita periculum erat nē,*  
*dēsertō agrō, alimenta uxōrī Rēgulī ac liberis deessent. Dici-*  
*tur litteris ā cōsulibus petisse ut sibi successor mitteretur.*  
 30 *At senātus agrum colī publicō et alimenta conjugī ejus ac*  
*liberis praebēri rēsque quās amiserat redimī jussit.*

Insequentī annō Rēgulus, arbitrātus Carthāginiēnsēs jam sē  
 dēdere parātōs esse, ad colloquium eōs invitāvit. Laeti  
 vērunt, ut dē pāce agerent. Sed cum postulāta Rēgulī  
 audivissent, cōstituērunt condiōnēs tam dūrās recūsāre  
 35 bellumque renovāre.

Eō ferē tempore Lacedaemonius quīdam, nōmine Xanthi-  
 pus, rei militāris peritissimus, Carthāginem cum conductis  
 vēnit. Carthāginiēnsibus celeriter persuāsit ut sē ducem  
 facerent. Quō factō fortūna mūtata est. Nam nōn solum

26. *nē . . . deessent*: the noun clause is used with *periculum erat* exactly  
 as with a verb of fearing, App. 99, b; observe that *nē* is to be translated *that*.

27. *uxōrī*: a dative with *dēsum*, like *mihi*, 18, 34.

37. *rei*: objective genitive with *peritissimus*.

24. *vilicus, -ī, m. [villa], steward, balliff.*

*agellus, -ī, m. [dim. of ager], a little field.*

25. *mercennārius, -a, -um, adj. [mercēs], hired, paid; subst., mercennārius, -ī, m., hired servant.*

26. *rūsticus, -a, -um, adj. [rūs], of the country, rustic.*

*instrūmentum, -ī, n., implement, tool; as collective in the sing., implements, tools.*

27. *alimenta, -ōrum, n. pl. [alō], food, provisions; support.*

28. *littera, -ae, f., a letter (of the alphabet); pl., a letter, an epistle; literature.*

*successor, -ōris, m. [succēdō], successor.*

29. *publicē, adv. [pūblicus], in the name of the state, at public expense.*

31. *in-sequēns, gen. -sequentis, adj. [pr. part. of insequor], following, next.*

33. *postulātum, -ī, n. [p. part. of postulō], a demand, request.*

34. *condiciō, -ōnis, f. [condicō, agree], agreement; terms, conditions.*

*dūrus, -a, -um, adj., hard, harsh, severe.*

37. *conducti, -ōrum, m. pl. [p. part. of conducō], mercenary soldiers, mercenaries.*

exercitum Rōmānum vicērunt sed etiam Rēgulum imperā- 40  
tōrem cēpērunt.

Paucis post annis, cum iterum dē pāce agere cōstituissent, Rēgulum cum lēgātīs Rōmam mīsērunt quī Rōmānis pācem suādēret et dē commūtandis captivīs ageret; jūre jūrando autem adstrictus est ut, nisi dē captivīs impetrāret, rediret 45 ipse Carthāginem. Is, cum Rōmam vēnisset, ēgit aliter ac Poenī mandāverant. Nam senātui suāsīt nē pāx cum Poenīs fieret; illōs enim frāctōs tot cāsibus spem nūllam habēre; reddī captivōs negāvit esse ūtile; adulēscentēs esse et bonōs ducēs, sē jam cōfectum senectūte; dixit etiam malum ex- 50 emplum futūrum esse, sī captivī Rōmānī redimerentur. Senātus eō auctōre pācem recūsāvit Poenōsque captivōs retinuit. Rēgulus ut captivus conjugem parvōsque nātōs ā sē remōvit Carthāginemque rediit. Ibi crūdēlissimīs suppliciis necātus esse dicitur.

55

42. *Paucis post annis*: an ablative of degree of difference with *post*; we have also had *post paucos annos*.

43. *Rōmānis . . . suādēret*: translated in the note on 18, 5.

44. *jūre jūrando . . . adstrictus est ut . . . rediret*, *bound himself by an oath to return*; because of the implied indirect discourse (he said he would return), the subordinate clause, *nisi . . . impetrāret*, has the subjunctive.

46. *ac, than*, a meaning explained in the note on Arg. 320.

48. *illōs . . . habēre*: dependent on a verb of "saying" implied in the preceding sentence.

49. *reddī captivōs*: for the infinitive clause as subject of *esse*, see the note on 16, 5. Why is *ūtīle* neuter?

52. *eō auctōre*, *by his advice*, ablative absolute.

53. *ut captivus*, *as a prisoner*; and so not the equal of free Romans.

54. *ā sē remōvit*, *shunned*.

44. *com-mūtō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr.*, change, exchange.

45. *ad-stringō, -stringere, -strinxī, -strictum, tr.*, bind to, bind.

*impetrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr. and intr.* [*in+patrō*, perform], gain, gain one's request.

49. *ūtīlis, -e, adj.* [*ūtōr*], useful, ex-

pedient.

50. *senectūs, -ūtis, f.* [*senex*], old age.

*exemplum, -ī, n.*, example, precedent.

53. *retineō, -tinēre, -tinui, -tentum, tr.* [*re-+teneō*], restrain, retain.

## 20. HANNIBAL

Carthāginiēnsēs post primum Pūnicum bellum imperium opēsque in Hispāniā diligenter auxērunt. Dux hujus operis Hamilcar erat, quī imperātor primō bellō fuerat atque indignābatur quod Carthāgō eō bellō Siciliam Sardiniamque  
5 amiserat.

Hannibal, ejus filius, annōs novem nātus patre incitante jūravit sē semper hostem futurum esse populī Rōmānī. Postea in Hispāniā missus est. Tam similis patrī ore vultūque erat ut milītēs Hamilcarem juvenem redditum sibi esse  
10 crēderent. Ingenium autem erat ad rēs diversissimās, pārendum atque imperandum, aptum. Nōn minus Hasdrubalī, imperātōrī, quī interfectō Hamilcare eī successor fuit in Hispāniā, quam exercituī cārus erat. Neque Hasdrubal alium quemquam milītibus praeficere mālēbat, neque milītēs aliō  
15 duce plūs cōfidēbant aut audēbant. Plūrimum audāciae ad pericula capessenda, plūrimum cōsiliī inter ipsa pericula praebēbat. Nullō labōre aut corpus fatigārī aut animus

---

6. annōs novem nātus, *at the age of nine*; how, literally?

patre incitante, *at the instigation of his father*, ablative absolute.

8. patrī: dative with *similis*, which sometimes takes the genitive.

10. pārendum, imperandum: accusative of the gerund in apposition with *rēs*.

12. eī successor, *successor to him*. Hasdrubal was a brother-in-law of Hannibal.

13. alium quemquam, *any other*.

14. milītibus: dative with the compound *praeficere*, of which *quemquam* is the direct object.

aliō duce, *under another leader*, ablative absolute.

15. plūs cōfidēbant aut audēbant, *displayed more confidence or daring*.

Plūrimum audāciae, *the utmost boldness*; substantive use of the adjective with dependent genitive of the whole.

---

6. in-citō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.* [citō, rouse], rouse, incite, instigate.

8. vultus, -ūs, *m.*, face, features, expression.

11. aptus, -a, -um, *adj.*, fit, adapted.

15. plūs, *adv.* [*n. acc. of plūs*], more.

16. capessō, -ere, —, —, *tr.* [capīō], seize (eagerly), undertake, undergo.

17. fatigō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.*, weary, tire, fatigue.

vinci poterat. Calōris ac frīgoris patientia erat pār. Cibi modus pōtiōnisque dēsideriō nātūrālī, nōn voluptāte, finitus est; tempora vigiliārū somnīque nec diē nec nocte discri- 20 mināta sunt; id quod gerendis rēbus supererat quiētī datum est; ea neque mollī strātō neque silentiō arcessita est; multī saepe eum militārī sagulō opertum humī jacentem inter custōdiās statiōēsque militum cōspexērunt. Vestītus nihil inter aequālēs excellēns; arma atque equī cōspiciēbantur. Equi- 25 tum peditumque idem longē primus erat; princeps in proeli- um ibat, ultimus commissō proeliō excēdēbat.

Hasdrubale interfectō, Hannibal, nātus annōs vīginti sep- tem imperātor creatus, cōstituit Rōmānōs vincere, ut Car- thāginem in pristinam auctōritātem restitueret. Primum 30 obsidiōne urbem Saguntīnōrum cēpit, quī sociī Hispāniēnsēs Rōmānōrum erant. Deinde per montēs Pŷrēnaeos atque Alpēs iter difficilē in Italiam fēcit. Ibi Rōmānōs exercitūs superāvit ad Ticīnum flūmen, ad Trebiam, ad Trasumennum lacum, in Āpulīā ad Cannās. In Āpulīam vēnerat eō cōn- 35

21. id quod . . . supererat, *what time was left from active duties; gerendis rēbus* is a dative of the gerundive construction, the dative being frequently used after *superum*.

23. humī, *on the ground; a locative.*

24. nihil, *not at all; for the case see the note on Arg. 319.*

26. idem, *alike; in agreement with the subject of erat.*

18. frigus, frigoris, *n.*, cold, coldness.

19. pōtiō, -ōnis, *f.* [pōtō, to drink], a drink, drink.

dēsiderium, -i, *n.* [dēsiderō, long for], desire, longing.

nātūrālis, -e, *adj.* [nātūra], of nature, natural.

finiō, -ire, -ivī, -itum, *tr.* [finis], limit, determine, fix.

20. discriminō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.* [discrimen], divide, distinguish.

22. mollis, -e, *adj.*, soft.

strātum, -i, *n.* [*p. part.* of sternō, spread out], bed-covering, coverlet.

23. sagulum, -i, *n.* [*dim.* of sagum, mantle], a military cloak.

24. statio, -ōnis, *f.* [stō], station, post; *pl.* sentries, outposts.

25. aequālis, -e, *adj.*, equal; *subst.*, aequālis, -is, *m.*, one of the same age.

excellēns, *gen.* -entis, *adj.* [*pr. part.* of excellō, excel], prominent, distinguished.

siliō, ut spē libertātis sociōs Rōmānōrum sollicitāret. Quīdam ex sociīs amicitiam Hannibalis secūtī sunt, sed multī in fidē Rōmānōrum mānsērunt. Cum optimī ducēs Rōmānī adversus Hannibalem mitterentur, numquam tamen eum  
 40 dēvincere potuērunt. Sēdecim annōs in Italiā neque victor neque victus mānsit.

---

36. ut . . . sollicitāret: a clause explaining *cōnsiliō*.

37. amicitiam Hannibalis secūtī sunt, *made friends with Hannibal*.

---

36. sollicitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.*,  
 disturb, tempt, incite.

tum, *tr.*, conquer completely.

sēdecim, *indecl. num. [sex+decem]*,  
 sixteen.

40. dē-vincō, -vincere, -vici, -vic-

---

## 21. QUINTUS FABIVS MAXIMVS

Initiō secundī Pūnici bellī Rōmānī lēgātōs Carthāginem mīsērunt quī reperirent num pūblicō cōnsiliō Hannibal Saguntum oppugnāset. Rē diū atque frūstrā in senātū Carthāginiēnsī dēliberātā, tandem ūnus ex Carthāginiēnsibus clāmāvit: "Omittite Saguntī mentiōnem facere, et quod fertis aliquandō dicite." Tum Q. Fabius Maximus, lēgatiōnis Rōmānae princeps, sinū ex togā factō, "hīc," inquit, "vōbis bellum et pācem portāmus; utrum placet, sūmite." Carthāginiēnsēs haud minus ferōciter eum jussērunt dare utrum  
 5 vellet. Et cum is iterum sinū effūsō bellum sē dare dīxisset, Carthāginiēnsēs respondērunt: "Bellum accipimus et quibus  
 10 animīs accipimus īdem gerēmus."

---

2. num: this word may introduce indirect questions as well as direct; with indirect questions it should be translated *whether*.

pūblicō cōnsiliō, *with the sanction of the government*.

8. utrum, *whichever*; literally, *which of the two*.

11. quibus animīs . . . īdem: here, as often in Latin, the antecedent *animīs* is placed in the relative clause, with a demonstrative standing after; it is best to translate as if we had *īdem animīs gerēmus quibus accipimus*.

---

6. lēgatiō, -ōnis, *f. [lēgō, appoint as deputy], embassy, legation*.



Postquam Rōmānī clādem ad Trasumennum lacum accē-  
perunt, Fabius dictātor creātus est, et M. Minucius Rūfus  
magister equitum. Cōnsilium erat Fabiī nullō locō cum 15  
hoste decertāre, sed finēs Rōmānōrum sociōrumque intueri et  
levibus proeliis militum fortitudinem augere. Hannibal hōc  
cōnsilio turbātus dictātōrem invidiā onerāre cōstituit. Ita-  
que cum ager Fabiī ei mōnstrātus esset, omnibus agrīs circā  
vāstātis, ūnī agrō dictātōris pepercit. At Fabius, missō Rō- 20  
mam Quintō filiō, agrum vēndidit pecūniāque redāctā capti-  
vōs Rōmānōs redēmit.

Ratiō Fabiāna bellī gerendī, propter quam Fabiō cognōmen  
Cūctātor datum est, Rōmānīs grāta nōn erat. Cum Minu-  
cius, absente dictātōre, aliquantum victōriāe forte adeptus 25  
esset, lēx lāta est ut iūs magistrī equitum et dictātōris ae-  
quārētur. Injūriam tamen Fabius aequō animō tulit, satis  
fidēs haudquāquam cum imperiī jūre artem imperandī  
aequātam esse. Legiōnēs inter dictātōrem et magistrum  
divisae sunt. Dēnique Minucius, temere proeliō commissō, 30  
ā Fabiō servātus est. Tum sub imperium dictātōris rediit

20. ūnī, *alone*; a not infrequent meaning of *ūnus*.

21. pecūniā redāctā, *with the money realized*, ablative absolute.

25. aliquantum victōriāe, *somewhat of a victory*.

26. ut . . . aequārētur: a noun clause defining *lēx*.

27. aequō animō, *with composure*. satis fidēs, *quite convinced*.

31. ā Fabiō: to be taken with *servātus est*.

13. clādēs, clādis, -ium, *f.*, disaster, misfortune; defeat.

16. dē-certō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *intr.*, fight it out, fight a decisive battle.

17. fortitūdō, -dinis, *f.* [fortis], fortitude, bravery.

18. invidia, -ae, *f.* [invidus, envious], envy, jealousy.

21. vēndō, -dere, -didī, -ditum, *tr.* [vēnum, sale, +dō], sell.

redigō, -igere, -ēgī, -actum, *tr.* [red- +agō], force back; bring under, reduce; collect.

24. cūctātor, -ōris, *m.* [cūctor], a delayer; as a proper noun, bestowed informally as a cognomen on Q. Fabius Maximus.

25. aliquantum, -i, *n.* [aliquantus, some], something.

adipiscor, adipisci, adeptus sum, *tr.* [ad + apiscor, reach], attain, obtain, win.

26. aequō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* [aequus], make equal, equalize.

28. fidō, -ere, fisis sum, *intr.*, trust, rely upon.

30. temere, *adv.*, rashly, heedlessly.

legiōnēſque reſtituit et Fabium patrem appellāvit. Rōmae, ut eſt perlāta fāma ejus rei, omnēs Maximum laudibus ad caelum ferēbant.

- 35 Multis poſt annis, aliis rēbus interim geſtis, Fabius mortuus eſt. Quamquam alius dux prōptior ad proelium Hannibalem dēnique dēvicit, certum tamen eſt Fabium rem Rōmānam cōſiliō cūctandī reſtituiſſe.

32. ut, *when*.

33. laudibus ferēbant, *extolled*.

37. rem Rōmānam, *Roman fortunes*.

36. prōptus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*p. part.* of prōmō, bring forth], ready, prompt.

38. cūctor, -āri, -ātus sum, *intr.*, delay, hesitate.

## 22. PUBLIUS CORNELIUS SCIPIO AFRICANUS

P. Cornēlius Scipiō filius erat cōſulis qui exercitui Rōmānō in proeliō ad Tīcinum flūmen praefuerat. Fāma eſt patrem, cum in eō proeliō vulnerātus ab hoſtibus circumvenirētur, ā filiō ſeptendecim nātō annōs ſervātum eſſe.

- 5 Poſt pugnam Cannēſem quattuor milia militum Rōmānōrum Canuſium perfūgērunt. Cum ibi tribūni militum quattuor eſſent, omnium tamen cōſenſū ad duōs tribūnōs, P. Scipiōnem et Ap. Claudium, ſumma imperiī dēlāta eſt. Eis nūntiātum eſt nōbilēs juvenēs quōſdam dē dēſerendā Italiā  
10 cōſultāre. Scipiō ſequentibus paucis vēnit in dēverſōrium

1. exercitui: dative with the compound verb *praefuerat*.

2. Fāma eſt, *there is a ſtory*; governing indirect diſcourſe, *patrem . . . ſervātum eſſe*.

6. Cum: of the three poſſible meanings, *when, ſince, although, which* one ſuits the context?

4. ſeptendecim, *indecl. num.* [ſeptem+decem], ſeventeen.

8. ſumma, -ae, *f.* [ſummus], chief place, ſupremacy; ſum, total.

10. cōſultō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *intr.* [*freq. of cōſulō*], conſult, deliberate.

ubi conjūrātī erant, strictōque gladiō eōs coēgit jūrāre sē numquam rem publicam dēsertūrōs esse.

Posteā cum aeditatē peteret, tribūnī plēbis resistēbant, quod nōndum ad petendum lēgitima aetās esset. Tum Scipiō "sī mē," inquit, "omnēs Quirītēs aedilem facere volunt, 15 satis annōrum habēō." Aedilis magnō favōre populī nullō tribūnō resistente creātus est.

Quattuor post annis Scipiōnis et patruus, quī bellum in Hispāniā gesserant, intrā diēs trīgintā ceciderunt. Comitīis ēdictis ad imperātōrem creandum omnēs seniōrēs imperium 20 Hispāniēse accipere nōlēbant; tum subitō P. Cornēlius Scipiō, quattuor et vīgintī annōs nātus, professus est sē petere et in superiōre locō unde cōspici posset, cōstitit. Deinde ad ūnum omnēs P. Scipiōnī imperium esse in Hispāniā jussērunt. Posteā tamen civēs ob aetātem imperātōris 25 novī dubitāre incipiēbant num rēctē fēcissent. Scipiō, hōc animadversō, cōntiōnem habuit et tam graviter disseruit ut animōs rūrsus excitāret omnēsque certā spē implēret.

14. quod . . . esset: what difference is there between the indicative and the subjunctive with *quod* causal?

petendum: *petō* is the technical term for "seek office," "be a candidate."

23. unde cōspici posset: a clause of purpose introduced by a relative adverb.

24. P. Scipiōnī imperium esse, that P. Scipio should have the command; Scipiōnī is a dative of possession.

26. num: see note on 21, 2.

11. conjūrātī, -ōrum, *m. pl.* [*pf. part. of conjūrō*, conspire], conspirators.

13. aeditās, -ātis, *f.* [aedilis], the office of an aedile, aedileship.

14. lēgitimus, -a, -um, *adj.* [lēx], fixed by law, legal.

15. aedilis, aedilis, -ium, *m.*, aedile, title of a Roman magistrate.

16. favor, -ōris, *m.* [faveō], favor, good-will.

18. patruus, -i, *m.* [pater], a father's brother, uncle.

20. senior, *gen.* -ōris, *adj.* [*compar. of senex*], older; *subst., m. pl.*, the older men, the elders.

22. profiteor, -ēri, -fessus sum, *tr.* [pro+ fateor, confess], declare publicly, profess, avow.

26. rēctē, *adv.* [rēctus], straight; right, properly.

27. cōntiō, -ōnis, *f.* [compare command and veniō], a public assembly; a speech.

dis-serō, -serere, -serui, -sertum, *intr.* [serō, join], discourse, argue.

Quīnque annōs in Hispāniā bellum adversus Carthāginiēnsēs  
 30 continuō cursū victoriārum gessit. Exercitūs hostium ex  
 Hispāniā expulit et amicitias gentium Hispāniēnsium sibi  
 conciliāvit. Multa narrantur de Scipionis mānsuetūdine in  
 miserōs et de comitāte in hostēs ac barbarōs. Virginem  
 Hispānam captam Carthāgine Novā, quae Alluciō, principi  
 35 Celtibērōrum, dēspōnsa erat, spōnsō trādīdit. Magnum quo-  
 que aurī pondus, quod virginis parentēs ad redimendam  
 filiā attulērunt, spōnsō dedit. Allucius, ut beneficium  
 remunerārētur, domum profectus ad Scipionem cum dēlēctis  
 mille et quadringentis equitibus revertit. Massivā adulēs-  
 40 centem, captivum Afrum, restituit avunculō Masinissae,  
 Numidarum regi, qui cum equitatū subsidio Carthāginiēnsi-  
 bus venerat.

Scipio, receptā Hispāniā, glōriam cōficiendī belli spectāre  
 coepit. Cōstituit prius conciliāre rēgēs Afrōs, Syphācem et  
 45 Masinissam, qui socii Carthāginiēnsium erant. Syphāx col-  
 loquium cum duce Rōmānō postulāvit. Scipio ab Carthāgine  
 Novā profectus forte invecus est in rēgium portum eō ipso  
 tempore quō Hasdrubal, dux Carthāginiēnsis, qui Hispāniā  
 pulsus erat. Rōmānus et Carthāginiēnsis, quamquam hostēs  
 50 erant, ā Syphāce in hospitium invitāti eōdem lectō accubue-

31. *amicitiās*: translate by the singular. The plural is employed because several nations are involved.

33. *in, to, towards*.

41. *subsidio Carthāginiēnsibus*: datives of purpose and reference, App. 53, 54.

50. *in hospitium, to be his guests*.

32. *mānsuetūdō, -inis, f.* [mānsuetus, mild], mildness, gentleness, clemency.

33. *comitās, -ātis, f.* [comis, courteous], courteousness, affability.

38. *re-mūneror, -āri, -ātus sum, tr.*, repay, reward.

39. *quadringentī, -ae, -a, num. adj.* [quattuor+centum], four hundred.

40. *avunculus, -i, m.* [avus], a (maternal) uncle.

43. *recipio, -cipere, -cēpi, -ceptum, tr.* [re+capio], take back, regain; accept, receive; *sē recipere*, to recover oneself, to withdraw, to retreat.

50. *lectus, -i, m.*, couch, bed.

runt. Tanta autem inerat comitās Scīpiōnī ut Hasdrubal nōn minus quam Syphāx Rōmānum admirārētur. Scīpiō cum Syphāce foedere factō Novam Carthāginem rediit.

Posteā iter longum per Hispāniam fēcit, ut cum Masinissā quoque colloquerētur, quem comitāte atque majestāte facile conciliāvit. Numida grātiās ēgit quod Scīpiō frātris filium remisisset dīxitque sē velle in fidē atque amicitīā populi Rōmānī esse; Rōmānōs, sī Scīpiōnem ducem in Āfricam mitterent, brevī tempore Carthāginem captūrōs esse. Scīpiō, fidē datā acceptāque, in castra rediit atque mox Rōmam profectus est.

Cum ibi cōsul ingentī favōre factus esset, Sicilia eī prōvincia dēcrēta est permissumque ut in Āfricam trānsīret. Dum in Siciliā bellum parat, Rōmam ab inimicīs ejus nūntiātum est imperātōrem exercitumque Syrācūsārum amoenitāte licentiāque corrumpī. Lēgātīs ā senātū Syrācūsās ad haec cognōscenda missīs, Scīpiō militēs in terrā dēcurrentēs, classem in portū simulācrum nāvālis pugnae ēdentem, armamentāria, horrea, belli alium apparātum ostendit; tantaque admirātiō lēgātōs cēpit ut satis crēderent aut illō duce atque

57. in fidē atque amicitīā, *under the friendly protection*, a loose sort of alliance between the Roman government and less civilized peoples.

63. permissum (est), *permission was given*; the noun clause *ut . . . trānsīret* is subject of *permissum est*.

64. Rōmam: accusative of the place to which. What suggests the idea of motion?

67. dēcurrentēs, *drilling, maneuvering*.

70. satis crēderent, *were quite convinced*.

51. in-sum, -esse, -fui, *intr.*, be in, be upon.

55. colloquor, -loqui, -locūtus sum, *intr.* [com-+loquor], converse, confer.

majestās, -ātis, *f.* [major], dignity, majesty.

65. amoenitās, -ātis, *f.* [amoenus], charming, pleasantness, charm.

66. licentia, -ae, *f.* [licēns, - free],

freedom, license; boldness.

68. simulācrum, -i, *n.* [simulō], likeness, semblance.

armamentārium, -i, *n.* [arma], arsenal, armory.

69. horreum, -i, *n.*, storehouse, granary.

apparātus, -ūs, *m.* [apparō, prepare], apparatus, equipment.

exercitū vinci Carthāginiēnsēs aut nullō aliō posse. Senātus igitur cēnsuit ut Scipiō quam primum in Āfricā trānsiret.

Scipiō in Āfricā advenienti Masinissa sē conjūxit cum parvā manū equitum. Syphāx, qui ā Rōmānis ad Poenōs  
75 dēfēcerat, captus est Rōmamque missus. Dēnique Carthāginiēnsēs, salūte dēspērātā ob multās victōriās Scipiōnis, Hannibalem ex Italiā revocāvērunt.

Frendēs gemēnsque ac vix ā lacrimis temperāns dicitur lēgātōrum verba audisse. Respexit saepe Italiae litora, sē  
80 accūsāns quod nōn victōrem exercitum statim ab Cannēnsi pugnā Rōmam dūxisset. Zamā vēnit, quae urbs quīque diērum iter ab Carthāgine abest. Inde praemissi speculātōrēs excepti sunt ab custōdibus Rōmānis et ad Scipiōnem dēducti. Ille autem iussit eōs per castra circumdūci et ad  
85 Hannibalem dīmisiit.

Deinde, quaerente colloquium Hannibale, diēs locusque cōstituitur. Itaque congressi sunt duo maximī suae aetātis ducēs. Paulisper tacuērunt admirātiōne mūtūā dēfixi. Cum vērō dē condiōnibus pācis inter eōs nōn convēnisset, ad  
90 suōs sē recēpērunt renūntiantēs armis dēcernendum esse. Commissō deinde proeliō Hannibal victus cum paucis equitibus fūgit.

Pāx Carthāginiēnsibus data est eis condiōnibus quae

72. *quam primum, as soon as possible.*

89. *convēnisset: impersonal, as in 19, 17.*

90. *dēcernendum esse, the matter must be decided; impersonal passive.*

93. *eis . . . quae . . . facerent, such terms as made; quae . . . facerent is a clause of result introduced by a relative pronoun.*

77. *re-vocō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr., call back, recall.*

78. *(frendō, -ere), only in pr. part., intr., gnash the teeth.*

*gemō, -ere, gemui, —, intr., groan, lament.*

*temperō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr. [tempus], restrain, abstain from, refrain from.*

79. *litus, litoris, n., seashore, beach.*

84. *circum-dūcō, -dūcere, -dūxi, -ductum, tr., lead around.*

87. *con-gredior, -gredi, -gressus sum, intr. [com-+gradior, step], come together, meet.*

88. *mūtūus, -a, -um, adj. [mūtō], mutual.*

*dē-figo, -figere, -fixi, -fixum, tr., fasten down; strike motionless, stupefy.*

Rōmānōs suae partis orbis terrārum dominōs facerent. Pāce terrā marique partā, Scipiō exercitū in nāvēs impositō Rō-  
mam profectus est. Per Italiam laetam pāce nōn minus  
quam victōriā iter fēcit. Nōn urbēs modo ad habendōs  
honōrēs effūsae sunt, sed agrestium etiam turba viās obsidē-  
bat. Triumphō omnium clārissimō urbem est invectus cog-  
nōmenque Africānum sibi sūmpsit.

100

95. terrā marique, *by land and sea*; locative ablatives.

98. effūsae sunt: translate in the active voice, *poured out*.

95. pariō, -ere, peperī, partum, *tr.*, -ium, *m.*, a countryman, a peasant.  
bring forth, give birth to, produce.

98. agrestis, -e, *adj.* [ager], of the 99. triumphus, -i, *m.*, a triumphal  
country; *subst.* agrestis, agrestis, procession, triumph.

### 23. GAIUS MARIUS

C. Marius humili locō nātus, prīma stipendia in Hispāniā  
duce Scipiōne fēcit. Imprimis Scipiōni ob ēgregiam virtutem  
cārus erat; Scipiō enim dīxit, sī quid sibi accidisset, rem  
pūblicam nūllum alium successorē Mariō meliōrem in-  
ventūram esse. Quā laude excitātus Marius spīritus dignōs  
rēbus quās postea gessit concēpit.

Postea lēgātus fuit Q. Metellī, quī bellum in Numidiā  
contrā Jugurtham rēgem gerēbat. Rōmam missus Metellum  
apud populum incūsāvit, quod bellum dūceret; sī sē cōn-

1. locō: the ablative of *locus* in the sense of *station* needs no preposition.  
prīma stipendia fēcit, *saw his first service*.

2. Scipiōni: the younger Scipio, the destroyer of Carthage.

6. rēbus: the ablative is regularly governed by *dignus* and its opposite  
*indignus*.

9. sī sē, etc.: dependent on a verb of "saying" implied in *incūsāvit*;  
with *captūrum esse*, *sē* is to be supplied as subject.

2. imprimis, *adv.* [in + *abl. pl.* of *dignus*, -a, -um, *adj.*, worthy.  
primus], especially, chiefly.

5. spīritus, -ūs, *m.* [spīrō, breathe], 6. concipiō, -cipere, -cēpi, -ceptum,  
breath; spirit, pride, ambition, *tr.* [com- + capiō], take hold of;  
arrogance. conceive.

10 sulem fēcissent, brevī tempore aut vīvum aut mortuum Jugurtham captūrum esse. Itaque cōsul creātus in Numidiam rediit atque superāvit Bocchum, rēgem Gaetulōrum, ad quem Jugurtha profūgerat. Deinde Sulla, quaestor Marii, persuāsit Bocchō ut Jugurtham trāderet.

15 Marius iterum cōsul creātus in Galliam profectus est, ubi vicit Teutonēs, gentem Germānicam, quī cum Cimbris novās sēdēs quaerēbant. Cum Teutonī vallem flūmenque medium tenērent, militēsque Rōmānī, quibus aquae nūlla cōpia erat, aquam flāgitārent, Marius "virī," inquit, "estis; ēn, illic  
20 aquam habētis." Militēs ita concitātī tam ācritē pugnāvērunt ut ducenta milia hostium caederentur et nōnāgintā caperentur.

Insequentī annō cum Marius contrā Cimbrōs in Italiā castra habēret, illī lēgātōs ad eum mīsērunt quī agrōs sibi et

---

18. quibus . . . erat = quī . . . habēbant; what kind of dative is quibus?

---

13. quaestor, -ōris, *m.* [for quaesitor, compare quaerō], quaestor, a Roman magistrate connected with state finances.

demand urgently, demand.

ēn, *interj.*, behold! see!

illic, *adv.* [ille], there, yonder.

19. flāgitō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.*,

21. nōnāgintā, *indecl. num.*, ninety.



ROMAN AQUEDUCT



fratribus postularent; Teutonum enim clādem ignōrābant. 25  
Cum quaereret Marius quōs illi frātres dicerent, Teutonēs  
nōmināverunt; tum ridēns Marius "omittite," inquit, "frā-  
trēs; tenent hī acceptam ā nōbīs terram atque in perpetuum  
tenēbunt." Proeliō commissō, Cimbrī caesi sunt. In ipsā  
pugnā Marius duās cohortēs Camertium, quī mirā virtūte 30  
vim Cimbrōrum sustinēbant, contrā lēgem civitāte dōnāvit.  
Dē quā rē postea reprehēnsus sē excūsāvit, quod inter  
armōrum strepitum verba jūris cīvilis exaudire nōn potuisset.

Marius, quī semper factiōnem populārem in rē publicā  
secūtus erat, cum senēsceret, invidēre coepit Sullae, quī dux 35  
nōbilium erat. Itaque, cum Sulla in cōsulātū bellō Mithri-  
dātīcō praefectus esset, tribūnus quīdam lēge imperium  
Sullae abrogāvit Mariōque bellum dētulit. Quā rē commōtus  
Sulla, quī ex Italiā nōndum excesserat, Rōmam cum exercitū  
rediit et urbe occupātā tribūnum interfēcit Mariūque 40  
fugāvit. Marius aliquamdiū in palūde latuit; paulō post  
reptus, injectō in collum lōrō, Minturnās raptus est et in

26. quōs . . . dicerent, *whom they meant by "brothers."*

31. contrā lēgem: Roman citizenship was normally the gift of the senate.

32. sē excūsāvit, quod, *offered as an excuse, that, etc.* There is no verb of "saying" here, yet we have the subjunctive in *potuisset*. Why?

34. in rē publicā, *in politics.*

36. Sulla, bellō: what would be the cases of these words if the compound verb, *praefectus esset*, were in the active voice?

42. injectō . . . lōrō, *with a rope, etc., ablative absolute.*

27. nōminō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.* [nōmen], call by name, mention.

31. dōnō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.* [dōnum], present, bestow.

33. strepitus, -ūs, *m.* [strepō, make a noise], noise, uproar, confusion.  
ex-audiō, -īre, -īvi, -ītum, *tr.*, hear clearly, hear.

34. populāris, -e, *adj.* [populus], of the people, democratic, popular.

35. senēscō, -ere, senuī, —, *intr.* [compare senex], grow old.

in-videō, -vidēre, -vidī, -visum, *intr.*, envy, be jealous of.

36. cōsulātus, -ūs, *m.* [cōsul], consulship.

38. ab-rogō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.*, annul; take away (*an office*).

41. aliquamdiū, *adv.*, for a while.

lateō, -ēre, latuī, —, *intr.*, lie hid, be hidden.

42. lōrum, -ī, *n.*, thong, strap.

custōdiam coniectus. Missus est ad eum occidendum servus publicus, nātiōne Cimber, quem Marius vultūs auctōritāte  
 45 dēterrui. Cum enim hominem ad sē strīctō gladiō venientem vidisset, "tūne, homō," inquit, "C. Marium audēbis occidere?" Quō audītō ille perturbātus gladium abjēcit atque fūgit, Marium sē nōn posse occidere clāmitāns. Marius deinde ab iīs qui prius eum occidere voluerant ē carcere  
 50 ēmissus est.

Acceptā nāviculā in Āfricam trānsiit et in agrum Carthāginiēsem pervēnit. Ibi cum in locīs sōlitāriīs sedēret, vēnit ad eum lictor Sextiliī praetōris, qui tum Āfricam obtinēbat. Ab hōc, quem numquam laeisset, Marius hūmānitātis  
 55 aliquod officium expectābat; at lictor dēcēdere eum prōvinciā iussit, nisi in sē animadverti vellet; torvēque intuentem et vōcem nūllam ēmittentem Marium rogāvit tandem, ecquid renūntiārī praetōrī vellet? Marius "nūntiā," inquit, "tē vidisse Gaium Marium in Carthāginis ruīnis sedentem."

44. nātiōne: ablative of respect.

46. tūne: *-ne* is the enclitic particle employed as sign of a question.

54. quem . . . laeisset, *since he had never injured him*; a relative clause may express a reason or cause and take a subjunctive, the relative pronoun being equivalent to *cum* causal and a demonstrative pronoun, here *cum eum*.

56. nisi in sē animadverti vellet, *unless he wanted himself punished*; *animadvertō* is a compound of *animum* and *advertō*, *turn attention to*, which easily comes to mean *punish*; here the passive infinitive is used impersonally. Even when active, *animadvertō* in the sense of *punish* takes *in* with the accusative.

57. ecquid, *whether anything*, introducing an indirect question.

44. nātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [nāscor], race, nation, people.

46. dē-terreō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, *tr.*, frighten away, deter.

51. nāvicula, -ae, *f.* [*dim.* of nāvis], boat, skiff.

52. sōlitārius, -a, -um, *adj.* [sōlus], lonely, solitary.

53. praetor, -ōris, *m.* [*for* praeitor, *from* praeō, *go before*], (a leader);

praetor, *title of a Roman magistrate charged with judicial duties.*

54. laedō, laedere, laesi, laesum, *tr.*, injure, offend.

hūmānitās, -ātis, *f.* [hūmānus], culture; kindness.

56. torvē, *adv.* [torvus, stern], sternly, fiercely.

57. ecquis, ecquid, *pron., interrog.*, anyone? anything? whether anyone, whether anything.

Cum Sulla ad bellum Mithridaticum profectus esset, Marius 60  
revocatus a Cinnā in Italiam rediit, calamitāte incensus  
magis quam fractus. Cum exercitū Rōmam ingressus eam  
caedibus et rapinis vāstavit; omnes adversae factiōnis nōbilēs  
variis suppliciorum generibus affecit. Quinque diēs continu-  
os totidemque noctēs illa licentia scelerum omnium dūravit. 65  
Tandem Marius, senectūte et laboribus cōfectus in morbum  
incidit et ingenti omnium laetitiā mortuus est. Cujus viri si  
comparentur cum virtutibus vitia, haud facile sit dictū utrum  
bellō melior an pāce perniciosior fuerit.

Marius dūrior ad hūmānitātis studia erat et liberālium 70  
artium contemptor. Cum aedem Honōris dē manubiis hos-  
tium vōvisset, sprētā peregrinōrum marmorum nōbilitāte  
artificumque Graecōrum arte, eam vulgārī lapide per artifi-  
cem Rōmānum aedificārī jussit. Graecās litterās contempsit  
quod doctōribus suis parum ad virtutem prōfuisset. 75

61. Cinnā: a leader of the anti-aristocratic faction.

67. si . . . comparentur: a future less vivid condition, App. 119.

68. dictū: ablative of the supine.

utrum . . . an, whether . . . or, introducing a double indirect question;  
utrum is in origin the neuter of *uter*, which of two things.

74. litterās: the singular of this word means a letter of the alphabet;  
the plural, a letter, i.e., an epistle, or literature; here, the latter.

75. doctōribus . . . parum . . . prōfuisset, had been of too little profit to  
its teachers.

63. rapīna, -ae, f. [rapīō], robbery,  
plunder, rapine.

65. totidem, indecl. adj. [tot], just  
as many, the same number of.

66. morbus, -ī, m., sickness, disease.

68. vitium, -ī, n., fault, vice.

utrum, adv. [neut. of *uter*], whether,  
used in double indirect questions.

69. an, conj., or, used in double  
questions.

perniciōsus, -a, -um, adj. [perniciēs],  
destructive, ruinous.

71. contemptor, -ōris, m. [contem-  
nō], despiser, scorner.

manubiae, -ārum, f. pl., booty,  
prize-money.

72. marmor, -oris, n., marble.

nōbilitās, -ātis, f. [nōbilis], high  
birth; collect., the nobility, the  
nobles.

73. artifex, -icis, m., artificer, arti-  
san.

vulgāris, -e, adj. [vulgus], ordinary,  
common.

75. doctor, -ōris, m. [doceō], teacher.

## 24. LUCIUS CORNELIUS SULLA

L. Cornēlius Sulla, qui bellō Jugurthīnō quaestor Marii cōsul fuit, usque ad quaestūrā vītā lūxuriōsā ēgerat. Marius molestē tulisse trāditur, quod sibi gravissimum bellum gerentī quaestor voluptātī dēditus sorte obvēnisset. Ejusdem virtūs tamen, postquam in Āfricā vēnit, ēnituit. Bellō Cimbricō lēgātus cōsulis fuit et bonā operā ēdidit. Cōsul ipse deinde factus, pulsō in exilium Mariō, adversus Mithridatē profectus est. Mithridatēs enim, Ponticus rēx, vir bellō ācerimus, virtūte ēgregiā, odiō in Rōmānōs nōn inferior Hannibale fuit. Effēcerat igitur ut omnēs in Asiā civēs Rōmānī eādē diē atque hōrā interficerentur. Ac primō Sulla illius praefectōs duōbus proeliis in Graeciā superāvit; deinde in Asiā Mithridatē ipsum fūdit; oppressisset quoque nisi in Italiā ad bellum cīvile adversus factiōnem populārem

3. molestē tulisse: *molestē ferō* has nearly the same meaning as *aegrē ferō*, *be vexed, annoyed, grieved*, etc.

sibi: dative with *obvēnisset*.

4. sorte: the quaestors cast lots to determine the posts to which they should be assigned in the city or provinces.

6. bonā operā ēdidit, *did good service*.

Cōsul ipse factus, etc.: as told in the story of Marius, l. 34 ff.

9. odiō: ablative of respect.

10. Hannibale: ablative of comparison.

ut omnēs . . . interficerentur: a noun clause of fact, object of *effēcerat*, *had caused all Roman citizens to be put to death*.

13. oppressisset, . . . nisi . . . māluisset: conclusion and condition contrary to fact, App. 120.

2. quaestūra, -ae, *f.* [quaestor], the office of quaestor, quaestorship.

lūxuriōsus, -a, -um, *adj.* [lūxuria, luxury], luxurious, voluptuous.

3. molestē, *adv.* [molestus], with difficulty, with vexation; molestē ferre, to be annoyed.

4. ob-veniō, -venire, -vēnī, -ventum, *intr.*, come to, befall; fall to the lot of.

5. ē-niteō, -nitēre, -nitui, —, *intr.*, shine forth, gleam; be displayed.

9. odium, -ī, *n.* [ōdī], hatred.

inferior, -ius, *compar. adj.*, lower; inferior.

10. efficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum, *tr.* [ex + faciō], accomplish, bring about, cause.

13. fundō, -ere, fūdī, fūsum, *tr.*, pour, pour out; rout, defeat.

redire properāns quālemcumque pācem facere mālisset. 15  
Mithridātem tamen pecūniā multāvit; Asiā aliisque prōvin-  
ciis quās occupāverat dēcēdere paternisque finibus contentum  
esse coēgit.

Sulla propter mōtūs urbānōs cum victōre exercitū Rōmam  
properāvit; eōs qui Mariō favēbant omnēs superāvit. Nihil  
autem eā victōriā fuit crūdēlius. Sulla, urbem ingressus et 20  
dictātor creātus, vel in eōs qui sē sponte dēdiderant jussit  
animadverti. Quattuor milia dēditorum inermium civium  
in circō interfici jussit. Quis autem illōs potest ēnumerāre  
quōs in urbe passim quisquis voluit occidit? Dēnique admonuit 25  
eum Fūfidiū quidam vivere aliquōs dēbēre, ut essent quibus  
imperāret. Novō et inaudītō exemplō tabulām prōscriptiō-  
nis prōposuit, quā nōmina eōrum qui occidendi essent con-  
tinēbantur; cumque omnium orta esset indignātiō, postridīe  
plūra etiam nōmina adjēcit. Ingēns caesōrum fuit multitū- 30

16. pecūniā multāvit, *exacted an indemnity from.*

22. vel: this word alone means *even*, while *vel . . . vel* mean *either . . . or*.

in eōs animadverti: for the translation consult the note on 23, 56.

25. quisquis voluit occidit, *any one killed who wanted to.*

26. ut essent quibus imperāret, *in order that there might be people to rule; an idea of possibility is involved in the subjunctive imperāret, whom he could rule.*

27. tabulam prōscriptiōnis, *a proscription list.*

28. qui occidendi essent: subjunctive in implied indirect discourse; with eōrum, *such as were to be killed*, App. 109.

15. quālemcumque, quālecumque, *indef. pron., of any kind whatever.*

16. multō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.* [multa, a fine], *punish, fine.*

17. paternus, -a, -um, *adj.* [pater], *of a father, paternal.*

19. mōtus, -ūs, *m.* [moveō], *movement; disturbance, tumult.*

23. inermis, -e, *adj.* [in-+arma], *unarmed, defenseless.*

24. ē-numerō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.*, *reckon up, recount.*

25. passim, *adv.* [pandō], *scattered,*

here and there, in every direction.

quisquis, quicquid, *indef. pron., who- ever, whatever, everyone who, everything that.*

ad-moneō, -monēre, -monui, -moni- tum, *tr.*, *remind, admonish.*

27. in-auditus, -a, -um, *adj.*, *un- heard of, unusual.*

tabula, -ae, *f.*, *board, plank; tablet, list, record.*

prōscriptiō, -ōnis, *f.* [prōscribō], *pro- scription, outlawry.*

dō. Nec solum in eōs saevivit quī armīs contrā sē dimicāverant, sed etiam quiētōs civēs propter pecūniae māgnitudinem prōscriptōrum numerō adjēcit. Cīvis quīdam innoxius, cui fundus in agrō Albānō erat, legēns prōscriptōrum  
 35 nōmīna sē quoque vidit adscriptum. "Vae," inquit, "miserō mihi! mē fundus Albānus persequitur." Neque longē prōgressus ā quōdam quī eum agnōverat interfectus est.

Sulla, oppressis inimicōrum partibus, Fēlicem sē ēdictō appellāvit; cumque ejus uxor geminōs eōdem partū ēdidisset,  
 40 puerum Faustum puellamque Faustam nōminārī voluit. Sed paucis post annis repente contrā omnium expectātiōnem dictātūrā dēposuit. Dīmissis licitōribus, diū in forō cum amicis deambulāvit. Stupēbat populus eum prīvātum vidēns, cujus potestās modo tam metuenda fuerat. Quamquam jam  
 45 prīvātus erat, nōn solum salūs, sed etiam dignitās manēbat, quī tot civēs occiderat. Ūnus adulēscēns fuit quī auderet querī et Sullam redeuntem usque ad forēs domūs execrārī. Atque ille, cujus iram potentissimī virī maximaeque civitātēs nec effugere nec plācāre potuerant, ūnus adulēscēntulī con-

35. *Vae miserō mihi, woe to me, unhappy man!* Compare *vae victis*, 17, 47.

46. *quī auderet*: a relative clause of description.

31. *saevio*, -ire, -iī, -itum, *intr.* [saevus, savage], be furious, rage.

33. *prō-scribō*, -scribere, -scripsi, -scriptum, *tr.*, publish; outlaw, proscribe.

*in-noxius*, -a, -um, *adj.*, harmless, innocent.

34. *fundus*, -i, *m.*, farm, estate.

35. *ad-scribō*, -scribere, -scripsi, -scriptum, *tr.*, write in addition, add.

36. *per-sequor*, -sequi, -secutus sum, *tr.*, follow after, pursue.

38. *ēdictum*, -i, *n.* [*γ. part.* of *ēdicō*], edict.

39. *partus*, -ūs, *m.* [pariō], a bearing, birth.

41. *expectatiō*, -ōnis, *f.* [expectō], awaiting, expectation.

43. *de-ambulō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *intr.*, walk, stroll.

45. *dignitās*, -ātis, *f.* [dignus], worth; authority, prestige.

47. *foris*, -is, *f.*, door; frequently *pl.* (with reference to the two leaves of a double door).

49. *plācō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.*, soothe, appease, placate.

*adulēscēntulus*, -i, *m.* [*dim. of adulēscēns*], a very young man.

*contumēlia*, -ae, *f.*, insult, abuse.

tumēliās aequō animō tulit, id tantum in limine jam dicēns: 50  
 "Hic adulēscēns efficiet nē quis posthāc tāle imperium dē-  
 pōnat."

Sulla in villā voluptātibus dēditus reliquam vītā ēgit.  
 Ibi morbo correptus mortuus est, vir ingentis animī, cupidus  
 voluptātum, sed glōriāe cupidior; litterīs Graecīs atque 55  
 Latinīs ēruditus fuit et virōrum litterātōrum adeō amāns ut  
 diligentiam etiam malī cuiusdam poētae aliquō praemiō  
 dignam existimāret; nam cum ille epigramma in Sullam  
 fecisset eiue misisset, Sulla statim praemium ei dari iussit,  
 sed eā lēge, nē quid postea scriberet. Ante victōriam lau- 60  
 dandus erat, sed in iis quae secūta sunt numquam satis  
 reprehēnsus; urbem enim et Italiam cīvilis sanguinis flūmini-  
 bus inundāvit. Nōn solum in vivōs saeviit, sed nē mortuis  
 quidem pepercit. Nam Gaii Marii, cuius aliquandō quaestor  
 fuerat, ērutōs cinerēs in flūmen prōjecit. Quā crudēlitate 65  
 factōrum ēgregiōrum glōriam corrūpit.

50. aequō animō, *with composure.*

tantum, *only; literally, so much (and no more).*

51. efficiet nē quis . . . dēpōnat: *literally, will cause that no one, etc.; better, will prevent anyone from laying down, etc.*

56. adeō, *to such a degree; a synonym for ita.*

57. praemiō: the ablative with *dignam*, as in 23, 6.

58. in Sullam, *in Sulla's honor.*

60. eā lēge, *on this condition; explained by the appositive noun clause, nē quid . . . scriberet.*

laudandus, *deserving of praise.*

63. mortuis: account for the dative.

64. cuius: with *quaestor*.

65. ērutōs: past passive participle to be translated by a coördinate verb, *unearthed and threw into the river.*

50. limen, -inis, *n.*, threshold, door.

51. post-hāc, *adv.*, hereafter, in the future.

56. litterātus, -a, -um, *adj.* [littera], of letters, learned, educated.

58. ex-istimō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.* [ex+aeestimō, estimate], estimate;

judge, think.

epigramma, -atis, *n.*, epigram.

63. in-undō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.*, overflow, inundate.

65. ē-ruō, -ruere, -ruī, -rutum, *tr.*, dig out, cast forth.

cinis, cineris, *m.*, ashes.

## 25. GNAEUS POMPEIUS MAGNUS

Gnaeus Pompeius bellō cīvīlī annōs vīgintī trēs nātus partēs Sullae secūtus est. brevique tempore sē ducem peritum praeuit. Imprimis militibus cārus erat, quod nūllum labōrem vitābat atque cum omnibus saltū, cursū, lūctandō certābat.

5 Coāctis reliquiis ejus exercitūs cui pater praefuerat ad Sullam ex Asiā advenientem contendit, et in itinere trēs hostium exercitūs aut superāvit aut sibi adjūxit. Sulla imperātorem eum salūtāvit semperque maximō honōre habuit.

Posteā Pompeius Siciliam recipērāvit atque Carbōnem, Sullae inimicum, quī eam insulam occupāverat, ad supplicium dūcī jussit. Multō clēmētiōr fuit in Sthenium, principem cīvitatīs cujusdam quae sibi adversāta erat. Cum enim dē omnibus cīvibus supplicium sūmere cōstituisset, Sthenius clāmāvit iniquum esse ob ūnūs culpam in omnēs

15 animadvertere. Interrogantī Pompeiō quis ille ūnus esset, Sthenius respondit: "Ego, quī cīvibus ut resisterent persūasī." Hāc audācī vōce mōtus Pompeius omnibus et Stheniō ipsī pepercit.

Paulō post cum Numidiam intrā diēs quadrāgintā dēvicis-

20 set, ā Sullā jussus est exercitum dīmittere atque cum ūnā legiōne successorē expectāre. Quamquam aegrē id ferēbat,

2. partēs, party, faction.

3. habuit, held, treated.

9. Carbōnem: like Cinna, 23, 61, a political leader prominent in the troubled period of Marius and Sulla.

12. sibi: as to the case of sibi, observe that *adversor* is a verb of resisting.

13. dē . . . sūmere: as if punishment were something "taken from" the victim; the English idiom is *inflict upon*.

15. ille ūnus, that one person of whom he spoke.

4. saltus, -ūs, *m.* [salīō, leap], leaping, a leap.

lūctor, -āri, -ātus sum, *intr.*, wrestle, contend, struggle.

5. reliquiae, -ārum, *f. pl.* [compare

relinquō], remains, remnants.

11. clēmēns, -entis, *adj.*, merciful.

12. adversor, -āri, -ātus sum, *intr.* [adversus] (*takes dative*), resist, oppose.



pāruit tamen et Rōmam rediit. Ei advenientī incredibilis hominum multitudō obviam iit; Sulla quoque laetus eum excēpit et Magnī cognōmine salūtāvit. Nihilō minus Pompeiō triumphum petentī restitit; neque vērō Pompeius eā rē 25 ā prōpositō dēterritus est aususque dicere plūrēs adōrāre sōlem orientem quam occidentem; quae vōx significābat Sullae potentiam minui, Pompeiī crēscere. Eā vōce auditā Sulla audāciā adulēscēntis percussus "Triumphet! Triumphet! Triumphet!" clāmāvit.

30

Dum in Hispāniā militat adversus Sertōrium, quī Sullae adversābātur, in proeliō quōdam maximum periculum subiit; cum enim mīles ingentī corporis magnitudīne impetum in eum fēcisset, Pompeius ejus manum abscidit; sed multis in eum concurrentibus vulnus in femore accēpit et ā suis 35 fugientibus dēsertus in hostium potestāte erat. At praeter spem ēvāsit; barbarī enim equum ejus aurō phalerisque

22. Ei: *obviam ire, go to meet*, takes a dative somewhat in the manner of verbs compounded with *ob*.

24. Magnī: an explanatory genitive instead of an appositive, as in 11, 76.

26. prōpositō, *purpose*; a past participle as a noun; how is the meaning "purpose" developed from the literal meaning of the verb *prōpōnō*?

28. Pompeiī: *potentiam* is understood; we may say *that of Pompeius*. Latin, however, does not use a demonstrative pronoun with a genitive in dependence upon it.

29. Triumphet: a volitive subjunctive, App. 92.

31. Sertōrium: a follower of Marius. Afterwards as governor of Spain he set up a government of his own and for a number of years maintained his independence of Rome.

23. *ob-viam, adv.*, in the way, to meet.

26. *prōpositum, -ī, n.* [*p. part. of prōpōnō*], plan, intention, purpose.

*ad-ōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr.*, worship.

27. *orior, -orīrī, ortus sum, intr.*, rise, arise; break out; *oriēns, -entis, pres. part. as adj.*, rising.

*occidō, -cidere, -cidī, intr.* [*ob+*

*cadō*], fall, set (*referring to the sun*); *occidēns, -entis, pres. part. as adj.*, setting.

*significō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr.* [*signum+faciō*], point out; signify.

31. *militō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, intr.* [*mīles*], serve as a soldier, wage war.

35. *femur, femoris, n.*, thigh.

37. *phalerae, -ārum, f. pl.*, decorations of metal (*for the breast*).

eximiis instructum cēperant. Dum dē praedā inter sē certant, Pompeius effūgit.

40 Paucis post annis imperium extraordinarium Pompeio delatum est, ut opprimeret praedones, qui omnia maria infesta reddēbant et quasdam etiam Italiae urbēs diripuerant. Hoc bellum tantā celeritate cōfēcit ut intrā quadrāgintā diēs omnēs praedones aut interficerentur aut sē dederent.

45 Statim in Asiam magnō exercitū missus est contrā Mithridatē, Ponticum rēgem, quōcum Rōmāni aliquot annos contendēbant. Rēx diū castris sē continuit neque pugnandi facultatem dedit. Cum autem frumentum deficere coepisset, fugere cōnātus est. At Pompeius secutus hostem tertiā nocte  
50 in saltū quōdam intercēpit lūnaeque adjuvante fudit. Nam cum Rōmāni lūnam ā tergō habērent, hostēs longis umbris corporum Rōmānōrum dēcepti in umbrās tēla conjēcērunt. Victus Mithridatēs in Pontum profūgit. Postea dēspērātis  
55 enim venēna multis antea medicamentis corpus firmāverat. Impetrāvit inde ā milite Gallō ut sē gladiō interficeret.

Cum Tigranēs, rēx Armeniae, celeriter sē dēdidisset atque ad genua victoris prōcubisset, Pompeius eum benignis

46. aliquot annos: this phrase, like *jam diū* and *jam dudum*, is used with an imperfect where we employ a past perfect; with *contendēbant*, had been contending for some years. See note on Per. 24.

47. castris, in camp; with *contineō*, a camp is regarded merely as the means of confinement; hence no preposition is used.

50. lūnā adjuvante, by the favoring light of the moon.

51. ā tergō, at their back.

56. Impetrāvit . . . ā, prevailed upon; the verb has for object the noun clause *ut . . . interficeret*.

38. eximius, -a, -um, *adj.*, unusual, distinguished.

40. extra-ordinarius, -a, -um, *adj.*, extraordinary, uncommon.

41. praedō, -ōnis, *m.* [praeda], pirate.

50. saltus, -ūs, *m.*, ravine, mountain pass, mountain valley.

intercipiō, -cipere, -cēpi, -ceptum, *tr.* [inter+capiō], intercept.

55. medicamentum, -i, *n.* [medeor, heal], drug, antidote.

58. genū, -ūs, *n.*, knee.

prōcumbō, -cumbere, -cubui, -cubitum, *intr.* [prō-+cumbō, recline], fall forwards, fall prostrate.

verbis allocutus est et diadēma, quod abjecerat, capiti repōnere jussit. Inde Rōmānōrum primus Jūdāeōs vicit 60 Hierosolymaque, caput gentis, cepit sanctissimamque partem templi jūre victōris ingressus est.

Regressus in Italiam triumphum ex Asiā ēgit, cum antea ex Africā et ex Hispāniā triumphāvisset. Triumphus illū-  
trior fuit grātiorque populō, quod Pompeius nōn armātus, 65  
sicut Sulla, ad Rōmam subigendam, sed dimissō exercitū redisset.

Postea, ortā inter Pompeium et Caesarem gravi dissēsiōne, quod hic superiorem, ille parem ferre nōn poterat, bellum civile exarsit. Caesar infestō exercitū in Italiam vēnit. 70  
Pompeius, relictā urbe ac deinde Italiā ipsā, Thessaliam petivit et cum eō cōsulēs senātusque magna pars; quem insecutus Caesar apud Pharsalum aciē fudit. Victus Pompeius ad Ptolemaeum, Aegypti rēgem, cui tūtor ā senātū  
datus erat, profūgit; ille Pompeium interficī jussit. Ita 75  
Pompeius sub oculis uxōris et liberōrum interfectus est,

**63. triumphum ēgit** = *triumphavit*. **ex**, over; literally, from. The country over which the victory is won is thought of as the source from which the triumph is derived.

**cum . . . triumphāvisset**: a descriptive *cum* clause where English would employ a participle, *having already celebrated a triumph*.

**68. dissēsiōne**: Pompeius, Caesar, and Marcus Crassus had in the year 60 B.C. formed a political combination known as The First Triumvirate. Caesar spent the years 58-50 B.C. in the subjugation of Gaul. The great military reputation won thereby, coupled with the widespread belief that he was planning the overthrow of the home government, aroused Pompeius's jealousy and distrust. The break in friendship between the two men was rendered easier through the death of Crassus and of Julia, Caesar's daughter and the wife of Pompeius.

**19. diadēma, -atis, n.**, diadem.

**13. regredior, -gredi, -gressus sum**,  
*intr.* [re-+gradior, step], go back,  
return.

**64. illūstris, -e, adj.**, bright; distinguished, illustrious.

**66. sic-ut, adv.**, just as, as.

**subigō, -igere, -ēgi, -āctum, tr.** [sub  
+agō], drive under, reduce, sub-  
due.

**76. oculus, -i, m.**, eye.

caput praecisum, truncus in Nilum coniectus. Deinde caput ad Caesarem delatum est, qui eo viso lacrimas non continuit.

Is fuit Pompeii vitae exitus post tres consulatus et totidem triumphos.

---

77. praecisum, coniectus: *est* is to be supplied.

---

77. praecido, -cidere, -cidi, -cisum,  
tr. [prae, in front, +caedo], cut  
off.

trunk, body.

truncus, -i, m., trunk (of a tree);

79. exitus, -us, m. [exeo], outcome,  
end, close.

---

## 26. GAIUS JULIUS CAESAR

C. Julius Caesar, nobilissimam Juliorum familiam natus, agens annum sextum et decimum patrem amisit. A puero videtur popularem factionem in re publica secutus esse, eo magis quod Marius Juliam, Caesaris amitam, in matrimonium duxisset. Ipse Corneliam duxit uxorem, filiam Cinnae, qui Sullae inimicissimus erat. Cum Sulla victor Caesarem, sicut multos alios, jussisset uxorem repudiare, ille recusavit. Bonis deinde spoliatus cum etiam ad necem quaereretur, mutata veste nocte urbe elapsus est. Quamquam tum quartanae morbo laborabat, prope per singulas noctes latebras commutare cogebatur et denique a Sullae liberto comprehensus est. Ei vix, data pecunia, persuasit ut se dimitteret. Postremo

---

1. agens annum, etc., in his sixteen years. Caesar was born 100 B.C.

3. in re publica: with the same meaning as in 23, 34.

4. duxisset: the subjunctive is due to the indirect discourse implied in *videtur*.

7. alios: i.e., men of the "popular" or "radical" faction.

9. morbo: ablative of cause; *morbo* is explained by the genitive *quartanae*.

12. data pecunia, by a bribe.

---

1. familia, -ae, f. [famulus, servant], household, establishment, slaves in a household; family.

4. amita, -ae, f., a (paternal) aunt.

9. quartanus, -a, -um, adj. [quartus],

occurring every fourth day, quartan; subst., quartana, -ae, f. (supply febris, fever), quartan ague.

10. latebrae, -arum, f. pl. [lateo], hiding-place.

per propinquos et affines suos veniam impetravit. Satis tamen constat Sullam monuisse eos qui adulescenti veniam petebant eum aliquando nobilium partibus exitio futurum 15 esse; nam Caesarī multos Marios inesse.

Stipendia prima in Asiā fecit, ubi in expugnatiōne Mytilenarum coronā civicā donatus est. Mortuō Sullā, Rhodum secēdere statuit, ut per otium Apolloniō Molōnī, tum clārisimō dicendī magistrō, operam daret. Hūc dum trānsit, ā 20 praedonibus captus est mansitque apud eos prope quadragintā diēs. Per omne autem illud spatium ita sē gessit ut praedonibus pariter terrōri veneratiōnīque esset. Redēptus inde ab amicis classem contrāxit captōsque praedonēs cruce affecit, quod supplicium saepe inter jocum minātus erat. 25

Quaestorī ulterior Hispania obvēnit. Dum pauperem vicum Alpīnum trānsit, comitēs per jocum inter sē dis-

13. Satis cōstat, *it is well known.*

15. exitiō: a dative of purpose, to be translated as if a predicate nominative.

16. Caesarī . . . inesse, *in Caesar there was many a Marius; Caesarī* is a dative with the compound *inesse*.

18. coronā civicā: the civic wreath was bestowed upon one who had saved the life of a fellow-countryman in battle.

20. dicendī, *of oratory.*

23. terrōri: the same dative as *exitiō*, l. 15.

26. Quaestorī . . . obvēnit, *fell to his lot as quaestor.* A quaestor, whose duties were connected with state finances, was assigned to the staff of each provincial governor. Spain was divided into two provinces, Hispania citerior and Hispania ulterior.

13. propinquus, -a, -um, *adj.* [prope], near; *subst.*, propinqui, -orum, *m. pl.*, relatives, kinsmen.

affinis, -e, *adj.* [ad+finis], related by marriage; *subst.*, affinis, affinis, -ium, *m. and f.*, a relative by marriage.

15. exitium, -i, *n.*, destruction, ruin.

17. expugnatiō, -ōnis, *f.* [expugnō], a taking by storm, capture.

18. coronā, -ae, *f.*, garland, wreath, crown.

civicus, -a, -um, *adj.* [civis], of citizen; civic.

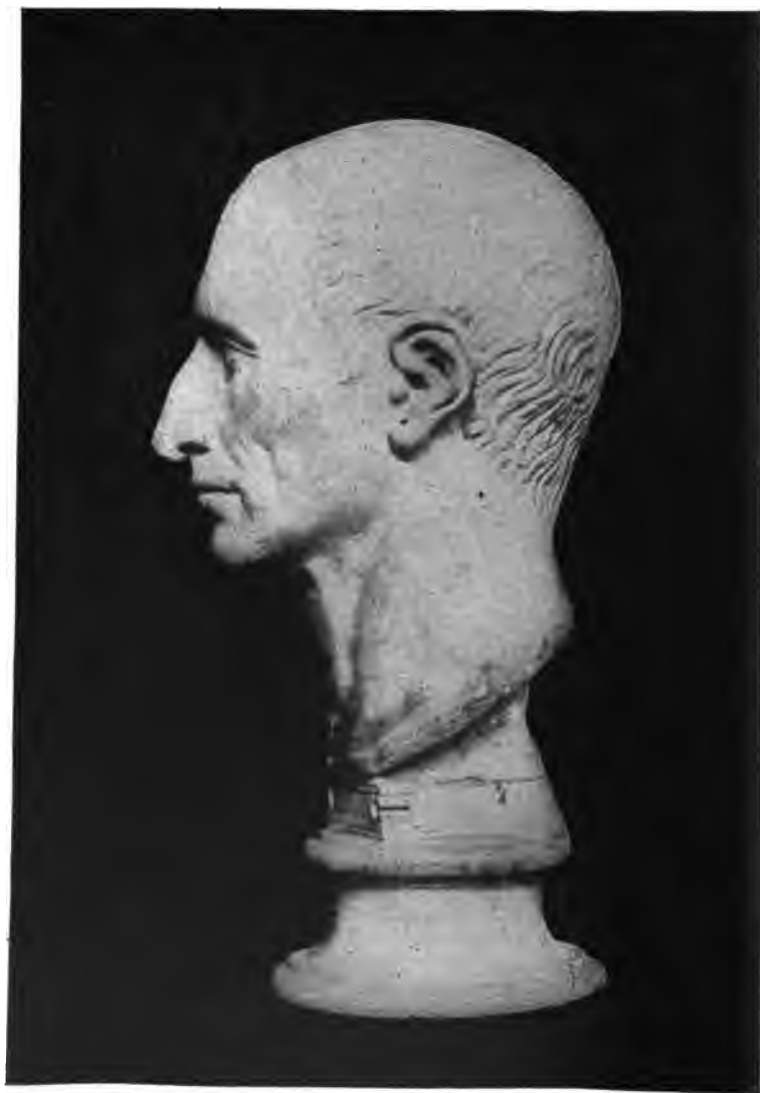
19. sē-cēdō, -cēdere, -cessi, -cessum, *intr.*, go apart, retire, withdraw.

23. pariter, *adv.* [pār], equally, in like manner, as much.

veneratiō, -ōnis, *f.* [veneror, reverence], deep respect, reverence, veneration.

24. crux, crucis, *f.*, gallows, cross.

25. jocus, -i, *m.*, jest, joke.



CAIUS JULIUS CAESAR

putābant, num illic etiam esset ambiōnī locus; tum Caesar sēriō dixit sē malle ibi primum esse quam Rōmae secundum. Dominatiōnis cupidus ā primā aetate fuisse existimātur; 30 dictus autem est semper hōs versūs Euripidis, Graeci poētae, in ore habuisse:

“Nam si violandum est jūs, rēgnandī grātiā

Violandum est, aliīs rēbus pietātem colās.”

Aedilis praeter comitium ac forum etiam Capitōlium ōrnā- 35 vit porticibus. Vēnatiōnēs autem lūdōsque apparātissimōs et cum collēgā M. Bibulō et sēparātīm ēdidit. His rēbus patri- mōnium effūdīt tantumque aes aliēnum cōnflāvit ut ipse diceret sibi opus esse milliēs sēstertium, ut habēret nihil.

30. ā primā aetate: compare ā puerō, l. 2.

33. grātiā: has the same meaning as *causā*, for the sake of, and is accompanied by a genitive, which always precedes.

34. aliīs rēbus, in other circumstances.

colās: a volitive subjunctive in a direct command.

35. Aedilis, as *aedile*. The Roman aediles had supervision of police regulations, of certain public games, of markets, and of the maintenance of streets and public buildings.

39. sibi opus esse milliēs sēstertium, that he needed a hundred million sesterces; with *opus* the thing needed may be expressed by an ablative, or, as here, it may be the subject of *est*, *opus* then being used in the predicate; in either case the dative is used of the person who needs the thing named.

sēstertium: a genitive plural; *centēna milia* is to be understood; with *milliēs* the full phrase means literally, a thousand times a hundred thousand sesterces.

28. ambiō, -ōnis, *f.* [ambiō, go around], ambition.

29. sēriō, *adv.* [sērius, serious], seriously, in earnest.

30. dominatiō, -ōnis, *f.* [dominor], rule, supremacy.

31. versus, -ūs, *m.* [vertō], line; verse.

34. pietās, -ātis, *f.* [pius, pious], devotion, piety.

36. porticus, -ūs, *f.* [porta], colonnade, portico.

apparātus, -a, -um, *adj.* [apparō,

prepare], prepared, splendid.

37. sēparātīm, *adv.* [sēparātus, separate], separately, severally.

patri-mōnium, -i, *n.* [pater], paternal estate, patrimony.

38. cōn-flō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.*, blow together, kindle; aes aliēnum cōnflāre, to contract a debt.

39. milliēs, *adv.* [mille], a thousand times.

sēstertius, -i, *gen. pl.*, sēstertium, sesterce, a small silver coin worth four and one-tenth cents.

- 40 Postea societatem cum Gnaeo Pompeio et Marco Crasso  
iunxit, ne quid ageretur in re publica, quod displiceret ulli  
ex tribus. Consul deinde creatus cum M. Bibulo primus  
omnium consulum instituit ut diurna acta et senatus et  
populi perscriberentur atque ederentur. Aliquot leges pro  
45 Pompeio et Crasso sociis pertulit, praecipueque effecit ut  
ipse provinciam Galliam obtineret. Bibulus, cum frustra  
legibus obstitisset, per reliquum anni tempus domo abditus  
curiam abstinuit. Nonnulli igitur, cum tabulas signarent, per  
jocum addiderunt non Caesare et Bibulo, sed Iulio et Caesare  
50 consulibus.

Caesar, consulatu peracto, novem annis Galliam in potestatem populi Romani redexit. Germanos quoque aggressus est atque primus imperatorum Romanorum in Britanniam

40. *societatem*: the triumvirate, described in the note on 25, 68.

41. *ulli*: adjective used as pronoun, with *ex tribus* dependent, any of the three.

43. *diurna*: from this word the English word "journal" is indirectly derived.

44. *ederentur*, be published. Despite the lack of printing, copies of a document were multiplied at a comparatively small cost, owing to the use of slaves as copyists. The reference here, however, is merely to the act of posting as a bulletin, from which anyone might have copies made.

47. *domo*: with *abdo* the ablative with or without *in* may be used of the place where.

49. *Caesar et Bibulo consulibus*, in the consulship of Caesar and Bibulus; an ablative absolute, the form of expression regularly employed in designating the Roman year. Caesar and Bibulus were consuls in the year 59 B.C.

41. *displiceo*, -ere, -ui, -itum, *intr.* [dis+placeo], displease.

43. *diurnus*, -a, -um, *adj.* [compare *diēs*], of the day, daily.

*actum*, -i, *n.* [p. part. of *ago*], deed, transaction.

47. *ob-sisto*, -sistere, -stiti, -stitum, *intr.*, resist, oppose.

*ab-do*, -dere, -didi, -ditum, *tr.*, put away, hide, conceal.

48. *abstineo*, -tinere, -tinui, —, *intr.* [abs+teneo], keep or remain away.

*non-nullus*, -a, -um, *adj.*, some, several.

*signo*, -are, -avi, -atum, *tr.* [signum], affix a seal to, seal.

51. *per-ago*, -agere, -egi, -actum, *tr.* (drive through); finish, complete.



trāsiit. Ipse commentāriōs rērum gestārum cōnfēcit, quibus aliōs ūtī in scribendā historiā voluit. Sed, ut ait Cicerō, 55  
 “sānōs quidem hominēs ā scribendō dēterruit; nihil est enim in historiā pūrā et illūstrī brevitatē dulcius.”

Cum intereā Crassus apud Parthōs interfectus esset, et mortua Jūlia, Caesaris filia, quae nūpta Pompeiō generi socerique concordiam tenēbat, statim aemulātiō ērūpit. Jam 60  
 pridem Pompeiō suspectae Caesaris opēs erant, et Caesarī Pompeiāna dignitās gravis. Dēnique Caesar, ut sē tueretur,

54. quibus aliōs ūtī . . . voluit: *i.e.*, Caesar did not regard his commentaries as finished history, but merely as material from which historians might draw.

55. ait: for the forms of the defective verb *aiō*, see App. 37 (1).

57. pūrā et illūstrī brevitatē, *an unembellished and luminous brevity*; ablative of comparison.

58. apud Parthōs: Crassus, who was envious of the military reputation of Caesar and Pompeius, conducted an expedition against the Parthians, but was defeated and killed by them in 53 B.C.

59. generi socerique, *between the father-in-law and the son-in-law*. What is it literally?

60. Jam pridem . . . erant: the use of tenses with *jam pridem* is the same as with *jam dudum*, explained in the note on Per. 24.

61. Pompeiō, Caesarī: these words are datives of reference after *suspectae* and *gravis*.

54. commentārius, -i, *m.*, note-book, memorandum; *pl.*, memoirs, records.

55. historia, -ae, *f.*, narrative, history.

aiō, *defective verb*, say, affirm.

56. sānus, -a, -um, *adj.*, sound, healthy; sane, sensible.

57. pūrus, -a, -um, *adj.*, clean, pure; unadorned.

brevitās, -ātis, *f.* [brevis], shortness, brevity.

dulcis, -e, *adj.*, sweet, agreeable.

59. nūbō, -ere, nūpsī, nūptum, *intr.*,

cover, veil; *of a bride*, veil oneself, marry, be married.

gener, -erī, *m.*, son-in-law.

60. socer, -erī, *m.*, father-in-law.

aemulātiō, -ōnis, *f.*, [aemulor, to rival], rivalry.

ē-rumpō, -rumpere, -rūpī, -ruptum, *intr.*, break out, burst forth.

61. pridem, *adv.*, long ago.

suspectus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*p. part. of suspiciō, suspect*], mistrusted, suspected.

62. tueor, -eri, tūtus sum, *tr.*, gaze upon; watch over, protect.

postulāvit ut ex lēge ante lātā sibi absentī alterum cōsulātum petere liceret. Hoc inimicī, Pompeiō probante, negāvērunt atque jussērunt Caesarem ante certam diem exercitum prōvinciamque trādere.

Injūriā incēnsus ad Rubicōnem flūmen, quī prōvinciae fīnis erat, cum exercitū prōcessit. Ibi paulum morātus, ut fāma fert, "etiam nunc," inquit, "regredi possumus; quod si hoc flūmen trānsierimus, omnia armīs agenda erunt." Postrēmō exclāmāvit: "Jacta est ālea." Tum, exercitū flūmen trāductō bellōque cīvili inceptō, Brundisium profectus est, quō Pompeius cum magnā parte senātūs profūgerat. Pompeium trānsire in Ēpīrum prohibēre frūstrā cōnātus iter in Hispāniam fēcit, ubi validissimās Pompeiū cōpiās vicit.

Deinde in Ēpīrum profectus Pompeium Pharsalicō proeliō superāvit et fugientem ad Aegyptum persecūtus est. Ptolemaeum rēgem, quī Pompeium interfici jusserat insidiāsque Caesarī tendēbat, vicit atque rēgnum Cleopātrae frātrique minōri permisit. Pharnacem, Mithridātis filium, quī occāsi-

---

63. *ex lēge ante lātā, in accordance with a law previously enacted.* This was a law of the year 52 B.C., by which Caesar was to be allowed to be a candidate for a second consulship without coming to Rome or surrendering his provinces and army. These he hoped also to hold, in the event of his election, until the time to enter upon office. In this way he would step directly from a provincial office to office in Rome and so avoid a period of private life, in which his opponents might prosecute him on trumped-up charges and perhaps send him into exile. Their refusal to abide by this law resulted in civil war and the overthrow of the republic. The crossing of the Rubicon, l. 67 ff., occurred in January, 49 B.C.

70. *agenda erunt, will have to be decided.*

71. *flūmen:* a transitive verb compounded with *trāns* may take an accusative governed by the preposition in the compound; in the active, this passage would read, *exercitum flūmen trādūxī*.

73. *quō:* adverb.

Pompeium trānsire: object of *prohibēre*, to prevent Pompeius from crossing.

80. *occāsiōne temporum, the favorable opportunity.*

---

71. *ālea, -ae, f., a game with dice; a die.*

ambuscade, ambush; plot.

78. *insidiae, -arum, f. pl., snare;*

79. *tendō, -ere, tetendī, tentum, tr., stretch, aim, direct.*

one temporum ad rebellandum ütēbatur, tam citō fūdīt ut celeritatem victōriæ postea tribus verbis significāret, "vēnī, vidī, vici." Deinde Scīpiōnem et Jubam, Numidiæ rēgem, quī reliquias Pompeiānarum partium in Āfricā coēgerat, dēvicit. Postrēmō Pompeiī filiōs in Hispāniā superāvit; quod 85 proelium tam acre tamque dubium fuit ut Caesar equō dēscenderet cōsistēnsque ante suōs cēdentēs fortūnam increpāret, quod sē in eum exitum servāset, dēnūtiāretque militibus vestigiō sē nōn recessūrum. Verēcundiā magis quam virtūte aciēs restitūta est. Rōmam inde rediit, ubi 90 quater triumphāvit.

Bellis civilibus cōfectis conversus jam ad administrandam rem publicam fāstōs corrēxit annumque ad cursum sōlis accommodāvit. Senātum supplēvit, comitiisque cum populō divisis sibi sūmpsit jūs nōminandae dimidiæ partis candi- 95 dātōrum. Eōs quī lēge Pompeiī dē ambitū damnāti erant

87. suōs cēdentēs, *his men who were giving way.*

93. fāstōs corrēxit, etc.: the Roman year prior to Caesar's reform of the calendar consisted of 355 days. The discrepancy between this number and the true solar year was made up by inserting extra days every other year. For a decade, however, this intercalation, as it was called, had been almost entirely neglected. Caesar corrected the calendar, *fāstōs*, by inserting three extra months in the year 46 B.C., and further decreed that the year henceforth should count 365 days, with one day added to February every fourth year.

96. ambitū: the word means literally *a going around* (to ask for votes); since money would often be used, the word came to mean *bribery*.

81. citō, *adv.* [citus, swift], quickly, speedily.

87. in-crepō, -crepāre, -crepui, -crepitum, *tr.*, resound; upbraid.

89. re-cēdō, -cēdere, -cessi, -cessum, *intr.*, retire, withdraw.

verēcundia, -ae, *f.* [compare vereor], shame, sense of shame.

91. quater, *adv.* [quattuor], four times.

93. fāsti, -ōrum, *m. pl.*, calendar.

corrīgō, -rigere, -rēxi, -rēctum, *tr.* [com-+regō], correct, reform.

94. accommodō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* [ad+commōdō, lend], fit to, adapt.

supplēō, -ēre, -ēvi, -ētum, *tr.* [sub+plēō, fill], fill up, fill out; recruit.

95. dimidius, -a, -um, *adj.* [dis+medius], half.

candidātus, -ī, *m.* [candidus, white], candidate.

96. ambitus, -ūs, *m.* [ambiō, go around], canvassing for votes, bribery.

damnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* [damnum, loss], condemn, convict.

restituit atque admisit ad honōrēs etiam prōscriptōrum liberōs. Sānxit nē eī quī pecuāriam facerent minus tertiā parte pūberum ingenuōrum inter pāstōrēs habērent. Omnis  
 100 medicinam Rōmae professōs et liberālium artium doctōrēs civitāte dōnāvit. Jūs labōriōsissimē ac sevērissimē dixit. Dē repetundis damnātōs etiam ē senātū mōvit. Peregrinārum mercium portōria instituit. Lēgem praecipuē sūmptuāriam exercuit, dispositis circā macellum custōdibus qui  
 105 obsōnia vetita retinērent.

Dē ōrnandā instruendāque urbe multa cōgitābat, imprimis ingēns Mārtis templum extruere theātrumque summae magnitudinis sub Tarpeiō monte. Habēbat in animō etiam haec: jūis civile ad certum modum redigere atque ex ingentī cōpiā

97. honōrēs, *political offices.*

98. pecuāriam facerent, *engaged in stock raising.*

tertiā parte: ablative of comparison after *minus*. The conversion of farming land into ranches with slaves as cattle-herders had long been a serious evil, inasmuch as slaves displaced the free farmers of old.

102. Dē repetundis, *for extortion; with especial reference to provincial governors, who often oppressed their subjects; the full phrase is dē pecūniis repetundis and means literally concerning the recovery of money.*

103. Lēgem sūmptuāriam: a law regulating the amount that might be spent upon the table.

97. ad-mittō, -mittere, -misi, -mis-sum, *tr.*, send to, let go; admit.

98. sancio, -ire, sānxi, sānctum, *tr.*, make sacred; decree, enact.

pecuārius, -a, -um, *adj.* [pecū, cattle], of cattle; *subst.*, pecuāria, -ae, *f.* (rēs, understood), cattle-breeding.

99. pūbēs, *gen.* -eris, *adj.*, grown up, adult; *subst.*, pūberēs, -um, *m. pl.*, adults, men.

ingenuus, -a, -um, *adj.*, free-born.

101. labōriōsē, *adv.* [labōriōsus, toilsome], laboriously.

sevērē, *adv.* [sevērus, serious], seriously, severely, strictly.

102. re-petō, -petere, -petivi, -peti-

tum, *tr.*, demand back; rēs repetere, to demand reparation.

103. merx, mercis, *f.*, goods, merchandise.

portōrium, -i, *n.* [portus], tax, duty, toll.

sūmptuārius, -a, -um, *adj.* [sūmptus], sumptuary.

104. dis-pōnō, -pōnere, -posui, -positum, *tr.*, place here and there, distribute.

macellum, -i, *n.*, a meat-market.

105. obsōnium, -i, *n.*, victuals, viands.

106. cōgitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* [com-+agitō], ponder; plan.

107. theātrum, -i, *n.*, theater.

lĕgum optima quaeque in paucissimōs librōs cōferre; bib- 110  
liothēcās Graecās Latīnāsque quās maximās posset insti-  
tuere; siccāre Pomptīnās palūdēs; ēmittere Fūcinum lacum;  
viam mūnīre ā marī Superō per Appennīni dorsum ad Ti-  
berim; perfodere Isthmum Corinthium; Dācōs, qui sē in  
Pontum et Thrāciam effūderant, coērcēre; mox Parthīs in- 115  
ferre bellum per Armeniam.

Eum talia agentem et meditantem mors praevēnit. Dictā-  
tor enim in perpetuum creātus agere insolentius coepit:  
senātum ad sē venientem sedēns excēpit et quendam ut  
assurgeret monentem Irātō vultū respexit. Cum Antōnius, 120  
comes Caesaris in omnibus bellis et tum cōsulātus collēga,  
capitī ejus in sellā aureā sedentis prō rōstris diadēma, insigne  
rēgium, imposuisset, id ita ab eō est repulsum ut nōn of-  
fēnsus vidērētur. Quārē amplius sexāgintā virī, Cassiō et

110. *optima quaeque*, all the best things; when masculine or feminine, *quisque* with a superlative is usually singular; e.g., *optimus quisque*, all the best men.

112. *Pomptīnās palūdēs*: a marshy region on the western coast of Italy, about forty miles south of Rome.

113. *marī Superō*: the upper sea was the Adriatic; *marē Inferum* was the Etruscan sea, that part of the Mediterranean to the west of Italy.

119. *ut assurgeret*: a noun clause, object of *monentem*.

124. *amplius sexāgintā virī*: *amplius*, *minus*, and *plūs* may either have an ablative of comparison, as *minus* in l, 98, or may be used as equivalent to *amplius quam*, *minus quam*, *plūs quam*, and so have no effect on the case, as here.

110. *bibliothēca*, -ae, f., library.

113. *dorsum*, -i, n., back; ridge.

114. *perfodiō*, -fodere, -fōdī, -fossum, tr., dig through; transfix.

*isthmus*, -i, m., an isthmus; the Isthmus of Corinth.

115. *coērcēō*, -ercēre, -ercuī, -ercitum, tr. [com-+arceō, enclose], restrain, curb.

117. *meditor*, -ārī, -ātus sum, intr. and tr., reflect; meditate, plan.

*prae-veniō*, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventum, intr. and tr., come before, precede; anticipate.

118. *insolenter*, adv. [insolēns, insolent], haughtily, insolently.

120. *assurgō*, -surgere, -surrēxī, -surrēctum, intr. [ad+surgō, rise], rise up.

124. *amplē*, adv. [amplus, ample], abundantly, liberally; compar., *amplius*, more.

*sexāgintā*, indecl. num., sixty.

- 125 Brūtō ducibus, in eum conjūrāvērunt atque cōstituērunt eum Idibus Mārtiis in senātū interficere.

Quamquam prōdigia eum dēterrēbant, et harūspx Spūrinna monēbat ut cavēret periculum, quod nōn ultrā Mārtiās Idūs prōferrētur, statuit tamen eō diē senātum habēre. Dum  
 130 cūriam intrat, Spūrinna irrīsīt, quod sine ūllā suā noxā Idūs Mārtiae adessent. "Vēnērunt quidem," inquit Spūrinna, "sed nōn praeteriērunt." Caesarem assidentem conjūrātī speciē officiī circumstetērunt; ūnus deinde quasi aliquid rogātūrus propius accessit et, cum Caesar renueret, ab utrōque  
 135 humerō togam apprehendit. Dum Caesar clāmat "ista quidem vīs est," Casca eum adversum vulnerat paulum infā jugulum. Caesar Cascae brachium arreptum graphiō trājēcit cōnātusque prōsilire aliō vulnere tardātus est. Deinde ut animadvertit undique sē strictis pūgiōnibus petī, togā caput

126. Idibus: the Ides were the 15th of March, May, July, October, the 13th of the other months.

128. quod: a relative pronoun.

129. prōferrētur: why subjunctive? Observe that its clause is part of the warning.

134. rogātūrus: the future participle expressing intention.

ab: occasionally, as here, to be translated *on* or *at*.

136. adversum, *in front*, an adjective in agreement with (*cum*) clāmantem.

126. Idūs, Iduum, *f. pl.*, the Ides, the middle of the month.

127. harūspx, -icis, *m.*, soothsayer.

130. noxa, -ae, *f.* [noceō], harm, injury.

132. praetereō, -īre, -īi, -itum, *tr. and intr.*, go by, go past, pass; praeteritus, -a, -um, *p. part. as adj.*, gone by, past.

assidō, -sīdere, -sēdī, —, *intr.* [ad + sidō, sit], take a seat, sit down.

134. re-nuō, -nuere, -nuī, —, *intr.*, shake the head, refuse.

135. apprehendō, -hendere, -hendī,

-hēnsūm, *tr.* [ad +prehendō], take hold of, seize.

136. infā, *prep. with acc.*, below, underneath.

137. jugulum, -ī, *n.* [jugum], throat, neck.

graphium, -ī, *n.*, stylus, pen.

138. prōsiliō, -silire, -silui, —, *intr.* [prō + saliō, leap], leap forward, spring up.

tardō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.* [tardus, slow], hinder, retard.

139. pūgiō, -ōnis, *m.*, dagger, poniard.

obvolvīt et tribus et vīgintī plāgis cōfossus est. Cum 140  
Mārcum Brūtum, quem filiū locō habēbat, in sē irruentem  
vidisset, dixisse fertur: "Tū quoque, mī fili!"

Percussōrum autem nēmō ferē trienniō amplius supervixit.  
Damnātī omnēs variis cāsibus periērunt, pars naufragiō, pārs  
proeliō; nōnnūllī sēmet interfēcērunt eōdem illō pūgiōne, quō 145  
Caesarem cōnföderant.

Quō rārīor in rēgibus et prīncipibus viris moderātiō, hōc  
laudanda magis est. Caesar victōriā cīvili clēmentissimē  
ūsus est; cum enim scrīnia dēprehendisset epistulārum ad  
Pompeium missārum ab iis quī vidēbantur aut in diversis 150  
aut in neutris fuisse partibus, legere nōluit, sed combussit,  
nē forte in multōs gravius cōsulendī locum darent. Cicerō  
hanc laudem eximiam Caesarī tribuit, quod nihil oblīvīsci  
solēret nisi injūriās.

141. filiū locō, as a son; literally in the place of a son.

143. trienniō: for the case with *amplius* see the note on l. 124.

147. Quō, hōc: ablatives of degree of difference with *rārīor* and *laudanda magis*; they correspond to English "the . . . the" with comparatives, *the more rare . . . the more deserving of praise*.

152. gravius cōsulendī locum, occasion for harsher measures (than he desired).

153. quod . . . solēret: *quod, that* (conjunction), sometimes introduces a substantive clause, here explanatory to *laudem*. Why the subjunctive *solēret*? It is of course part of what Cicero said.

140. ob-volvō, -volvere, -volvī, -vo-lūtum, *tr.*, wrap round, enfold.

plāga, -ae, *f.*, blow, wound.

cōnfodiō, -fodere, -fōdī, -fossūm, *tr.*, stab, pierce.

141. irruō, -ruere, -ruī, —, *intr.*, rush in, rush upon.

143. percussor, -ōris, *m.* [percutiō], assassin.

triennium, -ī, *n.* [trēs+annus], a period of three years, three years' time.

super-vivō, -vivere, -vixī, —, *intr.*, outlive, survive.

144. naufragium, -ī, *n.* [compare

*nāvis* and *frangō*], shipwreck.

145. -met, an enclitic suffix, self, own.

147. rārus, -a, -um, *adj.*, rare, scarce.

moderātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [moderor, to control], moderation, self-control.

148. clēmenter, *adv.* [clēmēns], mercifully.

149. scrīnium, -ī, *n.*, book-box, letter-case.

dē-prehendō, -hendere, -hendi, -hēnsūm, *tr.*, seize upon; discover.

151. combūrō, -ūrere, -ussi, -ustum, *tr.* [com-+ūrō], burn up, consume.

- 155 Fuisse trāditur excelsā statūrā, ōre paulō lēniōre, nigris  
 vegetisque oculis, capite calvō; quam dēfōrmitātem, quod  
 saepe obtrectātōrum jocis obnoxia erat, aegrē ferēbat. Ideō  
 ex omnibus honōribus sibi ā senātū populōque dēcrētis nōn  
 alium aut recēpit aut ūsūrpāvit libentius quam jūs laure-  
 160 ae perpetuō gestandae. Vinī parcissimum eum fuisse nē ini-  
 mīcī quidem negāvērunt. Verbum Catōnis est, ūnum ex om-  
 nibus Caesarem ad ēvertendam rem pūblicā sōbrium acces-  
 sisse. Armōrum et equitandī peritissimus, labōris ultrā  
 fidem patiēns/in agmine nōnnumquam equō, saepius pedibus  
 165 antebat, capite dētēctō, seu sōl, seu imber erat. Longissi-

155. ōre paulō lēniōre, with a rather kindly expression.

158. dēcrētis: a participle, with honōribus.

159. laurea: the victor's laurel crown served partly to hide Caesar's baldness.

164. fidem, belief.

in agmine, on the march.

equō, on horseback.

155. excelsus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*p. part.* of excellō], lofty, tall; distinguished.

statūra, -ae, *f.* [status, a standing], height, stature.

lēnis, -e, *adj.*, mild, gentle.

156. vegetus, -a, -um, *adj.*, lively, animated.

calvus, -a, -um, *adj.*, bald.

dēfōrmitās, -ātis, *f.* [dēfōrmis, misshapen], deformity, disfigurement, unsightliness.

157. obtrectātōr, -ōris, *m.* [obtrectō, disparage], traducer, disparager.

ob-noxius, -a, -um, *adj.*, liable, exposed.

ideō, *adv.*, for that reason, therefore.

158. dē-cernō, -cernere, -crēvī, -crētum, *tr.*, decide, decree.

159. ūsūrpō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.*, make use of, use.

laurea, -ae, *f.*, laurel-tree; laurel wreath.

160. perpetuō, *adv.* [perpetuus], continually.

gestō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* [freq. of gerō], bear, carry, wear.

parcus, -a, -um, *adj.* [parcō], sparing, frugal.

162. ē-vertō, -vertere, -vertī, -versum, *tr.*, overturn, overthrow.

sōbrius, -a, -um, *adj.* [sē-+ēbrius, drunk], sober.

163. equitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *intr.* [eques], ride.

164. patiēns, -entis, *adj.* [*pres. part.* of patior], enduring, tolerant, patient.

agmen, -inis, *n.* [agō], a marching army, a column.

nōn-numquam, *adv.*, sometimes, a few times.

165. ante-eō, -ire, -iī, or -iī, *intr.*, go before or ahead.

dētēctus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*p. part.* of dētēgō, uncover], uncovered, bare.



mās viās incredibili celeritāte cōficiēbat, ut persaepe nūti-  
ōs dē sē praeveniret; neque eum morābantur flūmina, quae  
vel nandō vel innixus inflātis ūtribus trānsibāt.

168. nandō: gerund, ablative of means.

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 166. per-saepe, <i>adv.</i> , very often.                                   | in-flō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, <i>tr.</i> , blow into, inflate. |
| 168. in-nitor, -niti, -nīxum, <i>intr.</i> , lean upon, support oneself by. | ūter, ūtris, <i>m.</i> , a vessel of skin, leather bottle.  |

## 27. MARCUS TULLIUS CICERO

Mārcus Tullius Cicerō, equestri genere, Arpinī, quod est  
Volscōrum oppidum, nātus est. Nōndum adultus ā patre  
Rōmam missus est, ut celeberrimōrum magistrōrum scholīs  
interesset atque eās artēs disceret, quibus aetās puerilis ad  
hūmānitatem solet infōrmārī; quod magnō successū magnā-  
que admiratiōne et praeceptorum et cēterōrum discipulōrum  
fēcit; cum enim fāma dē Cicerōnis ingeniō et doctrinā ad aliōs  
perlāta esset, multī repertī esse dicuntur quī ejus videndi et  
audiendi grātiā scholās adirent.

Cum nullā rē magis ad summōs in rē pūblicā honōrēs viam  
mūniri posse intellexeret quam arte dicendi et eloquentiā,  
tōtō animō in ejus studium incubuit; in quō quidem ita ver-

2. nātus est: in 106 B.C.

5. quod, *and this*; referring to the purpose in the sentence preceding.

8. quī . . . adirent: a relative clause of description.

9. grātiā: what case do *grātiā* and *causā* meaning *for the sake of* take, and what is their position?

11. mūniri: *mūnīre* with *viam* as object means *construct*; this passage may be translated freely, *entrance into public life was made possible*.

1. equester, -tris, -tre, *adj.* [eques], of a horseman, equestrian, cavalry (*as adj.*).

5. in-fōrmō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.*, shape, mold; instruct, educate.

6. praeceptor, -ōris, *m.* [praecipio], teacher, instructor.

discipulus, -lī, *m.* [discō], learner, pupil.

7. doctrīna, -ae, *f.* [doceō], teaching, learning, erudition.

12. incumbō, -cumbere, -cubui, -cubitum, *intr.* lean upon; bend to, apply oneself to.

versor, -ārī, -ātus sum, *intr.* [dep. and freq. of vertō], occupy oneself, engage, conduct oneself.



MARCUS TULLIUS CICERO

sātus est ut nōn solum eōs quī in forō et iūdiis causās dicerent studiōsē sectārētur, sed privātīm quoque diligētissimē sē exercēret. Prīmum eloquentiam et libertātem adversus Sullānōs ostendit. Erat enim Rōscius quīdam, dē parricidiō accūsātus, quem ob potentiam Chrēsogonī, Sullae libērti, quī in ejus adversāriis erat, nēmō alius dēfendere audēbat; Cicerō tamen tantā eloquentiae vī eum dēfendit ut jam tum in arte dicendī nēmō ei pār esse vidērētur. Postēā Athēnās studiōrum grātiā petiit, ubi Antiochum philosophum studiōsē audīvit. Inde eloquentiae causā Rhodum sē contulit, ubi Molōnem, Graecum rhētorem tum disertissimum, magistrum habuit. Quī cum Cicerōnem dicentem audīvisset, flēvisse dicitur, quod per hunc Graecia eloquentiae laude privārētur.

Rōmam reversus quaestor Siciliam habuit. Nullius vērō quaestūra aut grātor aut clārior fuit; cum enim magna tum esset annōnae difficultās, initiō molestus erat Siculis, quōs cōgeret frūmenta in urbem mittere; postēā vērō, diligentiam

13. in forō: *i.e.*, in political discussions.

14. sectārētur: attendance upon the law courts and upon political debates was a common method of studying law and the art of public speaking in Cicero's time.

20. jam tum, *even then*; Cicero was only 26 years old.

26. privārētur: account for the subjunctive.

27. Siciliam habuit: *i.e.*, as a province; see note on 26, 26.

29. initiō, *at first*.

quōs cōgeret, *since he forced them*; a relative clause of reason or cause, as explained in the note on 23, 54.

14. studiōsē, *adv.* [studiōsus], eagerly, devotedly.

sector, -ārī, -ātus sum, *tr.* [freq. of sequor], follow after, attend.

privātīm, *adv.* [privātus], in a private capacity, privately.

17. parricidium, -ī, *n.* [compare pater and caedō], parricide, murder of a father.

18. adversārius, -a, -um, *adj.* [adversor], opposed, hostile; *subst.*,

adversārius, -ī, *m.*, an opponent, adversary.

23. rhētōr, -oris, *m.*, a teacher of oratory, rhetorician.

disertus, -a, -um, *adj.* [from *p. part.* of disserō], fluent, eloquent.

25. fleō, -ēre, -ēvi, -ētum, *intr.*, weep, cry.

29. annōna, -ae, *f.* [annus], the year's produce; supplies, provisions.

et iustitiam et comitatem ejus experti, honores quaestori suo majores quam ulli umquam praetori detulerunt. E Siciliā reversus Rōmam in causis dicendis ita floruit ut inter omnes causarum patronos et esset et haberetur princeps.

- 35 Cōsul deinde factus L. Sergii Catilinae conjuratiōnem egregiā virtūte, cōstantiā, cūrā compressit. Catilina rei familiāris, quam profuderat, inopiā et dominandi cupiditāte incensus erat indignatusque quod in petitiōne cōsulātus repulsam passus esset; conjuratiōne igitur factā senātum  
40 interemere, cōsulēs trucidāre, urbem incendere, dripere aerarium cōstituerat. Cicerō autem in senātū, praesente Catilinā, vehementem oratiōnem habuit et cōsilia ejus patefecit; tum ille, incendium suum ruīnā sē restinctūrum

34. *habēretur, was regarded.*

35. *Catilinae*: Catiline was of an aristocratic family, but of a depraved character. He was ambitious to gain political power, and succeeded in attaching to himself the discontented and unprincipled of all classes. Cicero through a sort of secret service of friends and political associates kept informed of his plans and finally aroused the senate to the adoption of energetic measures.

42. *habuit, delivered.*

43. *ruīnā*: an allusion to the practice of demolishing houses in order to prevent the spread of a fire.

31. *experior, -periri, -pertus sum, tr., prove, test.*

33. *flōrēō, -ēre, -ui, —, intr. [flōs], blossom; flourish, be eminent.*

34. *patrōnus, -i, m. [pater], protector, patron; defender, advocate.*

35. *conjūratiō, -ōnis, f. [conjūrō], conspiracy.*

37. *familiāris, -e, adj. [familia], of a household; rēs familiāris, private property, estate; subst. familiāris, -is, m., a friend, an intimate acquaintance.*

*pro-fundō, -fundere, -fūdī, -fūsūm, tr., pour out; spend freely, squander.*

*inopia, -ae, f. [inops], want, lack; poverty.*

*dominor, -ārī, -ātus sum, intr., rule.*

38. *petitiō, -ōnis, f. [compare petō], (a seeking), candidacy, canvass.*

39. *repulsa, -ae, f. [p. part. of repellō], repulse, defeat.*

40. *interimō, -imere, -ēmī, -ēptum, tr. [inter+emō, take out], destroy, slay, kill.*

41. *praesēns, gen. -entis, adj. [pr. part. of praesum], at hand, present, in person.*

43. *incendium, -i, n. [incendō], fire, conflagration.*

esse minitāns, Rōmā profūgit et ad exercitum, quem parāverat, profectus est signa illātūrus urbī. Sed socii ejus, qui 45 in urbe remānserant, comprehēnsi in carcere necātī sunt.

Neque eō magis ab inceptō Catilīna dēstitit, sed infestis signis Rōmam petēns exercitū Antōnii, Cicerōnis collēgae, opprimitur. Quam ātrōciter dīmīcātum sit exitus docuit: nemō hostium bellō superfuit; nam quem locum quisque in 50 pugnandō cēperat, eum mortuus tegēbat. Catilīna longē ā suis inter hostium cadāvera repertus est — pulcherrima mors, sī prō patriā sic concidisset! Senātus populusque Rōmānus Cicerōnem patrem patriae appellāvit.

Paucis post annis Cicerōnī diem dixit Clōdīus, tribūnus 55 plēbis, quod civēs Rōmānōs indictā causā necāvisset. Senātus maestus, tamquam in publicō lūctū, veste mūtātā, prō eō dēprecābatur. Cicerō, cum posset armis salūtem suam dēfendere, māluit ex urbe cēdere quam suā causā caedem fieri.

44. Rōmā: ablative of the place from which, App. 65.

45. signa: with *illātūrus*; literally *intending to advance the standards*, i.e., *to attack*.

46. carcere: the prison said to have been built by Ancus Marcius; compare 8, 7 and note.

47. eō magis, *the more*; eō is an ablative of degree of difference.

49. Quam ātrōciter dīmīcātum sit, *how desperate the decisive battle was*; dīmīcātum sit is an impersonal passive. Why the subjunctive?

50. quem . . . locum, eum: in English order this should be, *eum locum quem*.

53. sī . . . concidisset: but he did not so fall; what sort of condition?

55. diem dixit: a legal expression, literally, *appointed a day* (for appearance in court), equivalent to *preferred a charge*. The accomplices of Catiline who were strangled in prison had no trial, but were put to death by the order of the consul at the advice of the senate.

57. veste mūtātā, *having put on mourning*.

59. suā causā: the genitive with *causā*, *for the sake of*, may be replaced by a possessive adjective.

44. minitor, -ārī, -ātus sum, *tr.* [freq. of minor, threaten], threaten, menace.

46. re-maneō, -manēre, -mānsī, -mānsum, *intr.*, remain.

47. inceptum, -ī, *n.* [p. part. of incipio], beginning; attempt, un-

dertaking.

49. ātrōciter, *adv.* [ātrōx, savage], fiercely.

53. concidō, -cidere, -cidi, —, *intr.* [com-+cadō], fall, be slain.

57. lūctus, -ūs, *m.* [lugeō, mourn], sorrow, mourning, affliction.

- 60 Proficiscentem omnēs bonī flentēs prōsecūtī sunt. Deinde Clōdīus ēdictum prōposuit, ut Mārco Tullīo ignī et aquā interdicerētur; illūs domum et villās incendit. Sed vis illa nōn diūturna fuit; mox enim tōtus ferē populus Rōmānus ingentī dēsideriō Cicerōnis reditum flāgitāre coepit, et māk-
- 65 imō omnium ōrdinum studiō Cicerō in patriam revocatū est. Nihil per tōtam vitam Cicerōnī itinere, quō in patriam rediit, accidit iūcundius. Obviam ei redeuntī ūiversī iērunť; domus ejus pūblicā pecūniā restitūta est.

- Gravissimae inimicitiae illā tempestāte inter Caesarem et
- 70 Pompeium ortae sunt, ut rēs nisi bellō compōnī nōn posse vidērētur. Cicerō quidem summō studiō ēnitēbatur ut eōs inter sē reconciliāret et ā bellī civilis calamitātibus dēterrēret; sed cum neutrum ad pācem ineundam movēre posset, Pompeium secūtus est. Tamen ā Caesare victōre veniam
- 75 accēpit. Cum Caesar occisus esset, Octāviānō, Caesaris hērēdī, fāvit Antōniōque adversātus est, atque effēcit ut ille ā senātū hostis iūdicārētur.

61. ignī et aquā: ablatives of separation with *interdicerētur*; literally, *should be interdicted (the use of) fire and water*; since fire and water are absolute necessities of life, the phrase is equivalent to *should go into exile*. The name of the person so interdicted is put in the dative, here *Mārco Tullīo*; *interdicerētur* is an impersonal passive.

66. itinere: ablativē of comparison with *iūcundius*.

67. ei: the dative with *obviam iērunť*, as in 25, 22, explained in the note there.

75. Octāviānō: Octavianus was a grandnephew of Julius Caesar. He is best known under his later title Augustus, first Roman emperor.

76. Antōniō . . . adversātus est: Marcus Antonius after Caesar's death endeavored to seize the power which Caesar had held. Cicero showed favor to Octavian, in the hope, however, that the free republic might be restored. The course of events brought him into sharp conflict with Antonius.

62. inter-dicō, -dicere, -dixi, -dictum, *tr.*, forbid, interdict.

63. diūturnus, -a, -um, *adj.* [diū], lasting, long.

69. inimicitia, -ae, *f.* [inimicus], enmity, hostility.

70. com-pōnō, -pōnere, -posui, -positum, *tr.*, place together; compose, settle.

71. ē-nitor, -niti, -nixus or -nisus, *intr.*, struggle out; struggle, strive.

Sed Antōnius, initā cum Octāviānō societāte, Cicerōnem jam diū sibi inimicum prōscripsit. Quā rē audītā, Cicerō transversis itineribus in villam, quae ā mari nōn longē aberat, fugit indeque nāvem cōnscendit, in Macedoniam transitūrus. Cum aliquotiēns in altum prōvectus ventis adversis relātus esset, neque jactātiōnem maris patī posset, taedium tandem eum et fugae et vitae cēpit; aliquandō regressus ad villam "moriar," inquit, "in patriā saepe servātā." Adventantibus percussōribus, servī parātī ad dīmican- dum erant; sed ipse eōs dēpōnere lecticam et quietōs patī quod sors inīqua cōgeret jussit. Prōminentī ex lecticā et immōtam cervicem praebentī caput praecisum est. Manūs quoque praecisae sunt; caput relātum est ad Antōnium jussūque ejus inter duās manūs in rōstris positum.

Quamdiū rēs pūblica libera stābat, Cicerō in eam cūrās cōgitātiōnesque ferē omnēs suās cōnferēbat et plūs operae pōnēbat in agendō quam in scribendō. Cum autem omnia potestāte ūnius C. Jūliī Caesaris tenērentur, nōn sē angōri-

80. villam; this was situated not far from the little city of Formiae, on the Gulf of Gaeta. Cicero possessed several country houses, of which this was probably his favorite.

82. transitūrus: the participle has the same force as *illātūrus*, l. 45.

87. ipse = Cicero: subject of *jussit*.

88. Prōminentī, praebentī: supply *ei*; the dative of reference (App. 54) is not infrequently employed where we should expect a possessive genitive; here, e.g. (*Cicerōnis*) *prōminentis* . . . *et cervicem praebentis caput praecisum est*. Translate with a clause, *when he leaned out . . . his head was cut off*.

93. plūs operae pōnēbat in agendō, *he devoted more attention to action*.

80. transversus, -a, -um, *adj.*, lying across, cross (*as an adjective*).

82. aliquotiēns, *adv.* [aliquot], several times.

83. jactātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [jactō], tossing, motion.

84. taedium, -ī, *n.* [taedet, it wears], weariness, loathing.

86. adventō, -ventāre, —, —, *intr.* [*intens. of adveniō*], advance, approach.

87. lectica, -ae, *f.* [lectus], a litter, sedan.

88. prōmineō, -minēre, -minui, *intr.*, stand out; project, lean out.

immōtus, -a, -um, *adj.* [in-+mōtus], unmoved, unaffected.

89. cervix, -icis, *f.*, neck, throat.

93. cōgitātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [cōgitō], reflection, meditation.

95. angor, -ōris, *m.*, anguish, torment; *pl.* melancholy.

bus dēdidit nec indignis homine doctō voluptātibus. Vitāns cōnspectum forī urbisque rūra peragrābat abdēbatque sē, quantum licēbat, et sōlus erat. Cum animus autem nihil agere nōn posset, sē ad philosophiam referre cōstituit atque  
 100 ita honestissimē molestiās dēpōnere. Huic studiō Cicerō adulēscēns multum temporis tribuerat, et jam senex omnem cūram ad scribendum convertit. Volēbat quoque etiam ōtiōsus aliquid cīvibus prōdesse eōsque doctiōrēs et sapien-  
 tiōrēs facere. Eō modō plūra brevī tempore ēversā rē publicā  
 105 scripsit, quam multis annis eā stante scripserat. Sic pārui virōrum sapientium praeceptō, quī docent hominēs nōn solum ex malis eligere minima oportēre, sed etiam excerpere ex his ipsīs, sī quid insit bonī.

Multa extant facētē ab eō dicta. Cum Lentulum, gene-  
 110 rum suum, exiguae statūrae hominem, vidisset longō gladiō accinctum, "quis," inquit, "generum meum ad gladium alligāvit?" — Mātrōna quaedam jūniōrem sē quam erat simu-

98. nihil agere nōn posset: the two negatives are to be taken closely with the two verbs (not a case of two negatives making an affirmative), *was unable to be idle*.

103. aliquid prōdesse, *to benefit, to be of some use*; *aliquid* is an accusative of extent.

106. hominēs . . . eligere: an infinitive clause, subject of *oportēre*, App. 114.

108. sī quid insit bonī, *whatever good there is in them*.

96. in-dignus, -a, -um, *adj.*, unworthy, undeserving.

97. rūs, rūris, *n.*, the country; *pl.*, the fields, the country.

peragrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.* [per+ager], wander through, traverse.

99. philosophia, -ae, *f.*, philosophy.

100. honestē, *adv.* [honestus], honorably, properly.

103. ōtiōsus, -a, -um, *adj.* [ōtium], at leisure, unoccupied.

106. praeceptum, -ī, *n.* [*p. part.* of praecipio], maxim, precept, order.

107. eligō, -ligere, -lēgi, -lēctum, *tr.*

[ē+legō], choose, select.

excerpō, -cerpere, -cerpsī, -cerptum, *tr.* [carpō], pick out, select.

109. facētē, *adv.* [facētus, witty], wittily, humorously.

110. exiguus, -a, -um, *adj.*, scanty, small.

111. accingō, -cingere, -cīnxi -cinctum, *tr.* [ad+cingō], gird to, gird.

112. mātrōna, -ae, *f.* [māter], married woman, wife, matron.

jūnior, *adj.* [*compar.* of juvenis], younger.



lāns dictitābat sē trīgintā tantum annōs habēre; cui Cicerō  
 “vērum est,” inquit, “nam hoc vīginti annōs audiō.” —  
 Caesar, alterō cōsule mortuō diē Decembris ultimā, Canīni- 115  
 um cōsulem hōrā septimā in reliquam diēi partem renū-  
 tiāverat; quem cum plērique irent salūtātum dē mōre,  
 “festinēmus,” inquit Cicerō, “priusquam abeat magistrātū.”  
 Dē eōdem Canīniō scripsit Cicerō: “Fuit mirā vīgiliā  
 Canīnius, quī tōtō suō cōsulātū somnum nōn viderit.” 126

115. alterō cōsule, *one of the consuls*; the consuls went out of office the last day of December.

117. salūtātum: the accusative of the supine expressing purpose, App. 130.

118. abeat: what name is given to the subjunctive with words meaning *before, until*?

120. quī . . . viderit: a relative clause of cause or reason; another occurred in I, 29.

113. dictitō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.*  
 and *intr.* [*intens.* of dictō, dic-  
 tate], say often, maintain.

116. septimus, -a, -um, *adj.* [septem],  
 seventh.

117. plērique, plēraque, plēraque,

*adj.*, a very great part, very  
 many, the greater part of, most of.

118. festinō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *intr.*  
 [festinus, hasty], hasten.

119. vīgilia, -ae, *f.* [vīgilāns,  
 watchful], watchfulness, vigilance.

## GAIUS JULIUS CAESAR

Gaius Julius Caesar, the conqueror of Gaul, was born at Rome in the year 100 (some authorities give 102), B.C. He held the office of quaestor in 68, aedile in 65, praetor in 62, and consul in 59. At the end of his consulship he was made governor of Gaul for a period of five years, his term of office being afterward extended for five years longer.

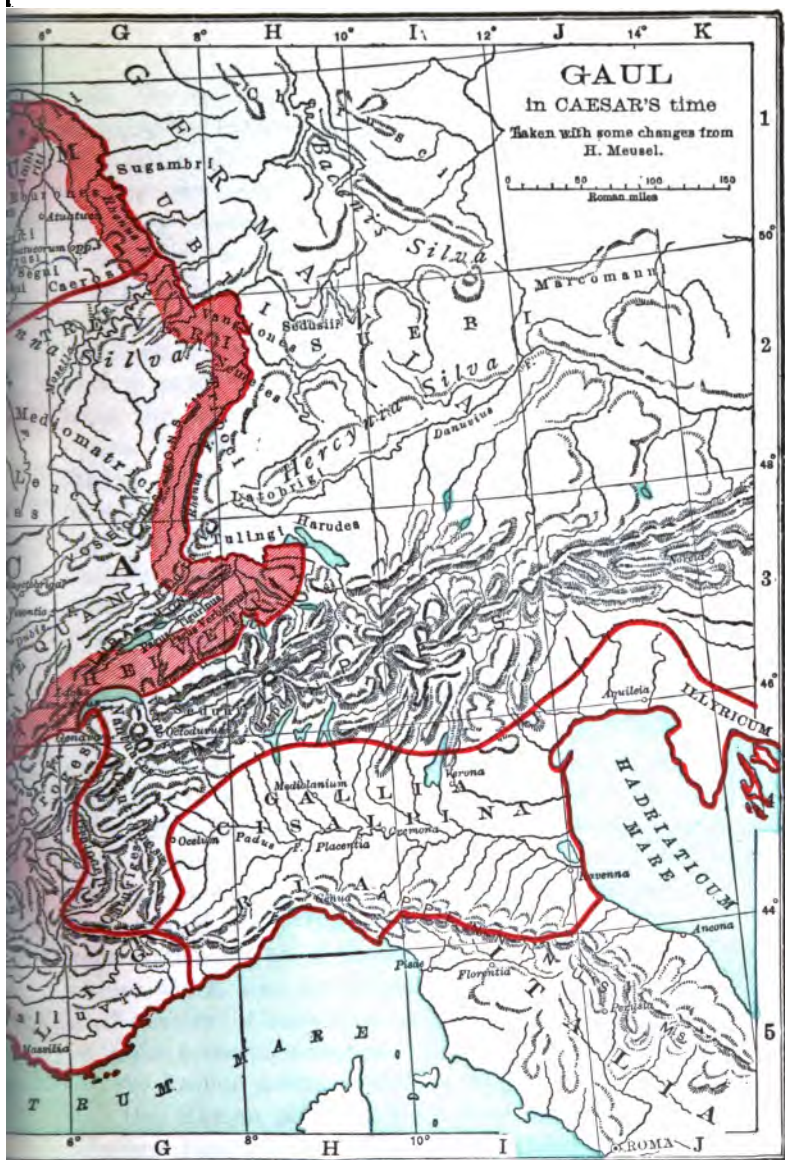
About the time of his arrival in Gaul, the Helvetians, a warlike tribe of the Gauls occupying a region roughly corresponding to modern Switzerland, began a migration from their homes with the intention of settling in a more desirable location. As a result of their attempt to cross territory which was under Roman protection Caesar made war upon them and thoroughly defeated them. Following this he came into conflict with the German king Ariovistus, who with his people had taken possession of a part of Gaul. He inflicted a crushing defeat upon the Germans and drove them back across the Rhine. This was the beginning of a series of campaigns which lasted through the greater part of nine years, and which resulted in the whole of Gaul being brought under Roman control.

During Caesar's absence from Rome his political enemies succeeded in organizing strongly the opposition to him, and his return to Rome was followed by civil war, in which his enemies were defeated. Caesar was made dictator for life, and the foundation for the Roman imperial government was laid. But a conspiracy was formed against him and he was assassinated in the year 44 B.C.

He wrote a history of his campaigns in Gaul in seven Books. The first, which is here given (with some changes), describes the campaign against the Helvetians and the Germans under Ariovistus.









## CAESAR'S ARMY

In the earlier periods of Roman history a Roman army consisted of citizens serving without pay. They were therefore not professional soldiers, and like the soldiers who made up our own army in the World War, they went back to their ordinary occupations when relieved of their military duties.

Late in the second century B. C. the well-to-do citizens began to look upon service in the army as something to be avoided. As a result the army came to be recruited from the lower classes, although only citizens were enrolled in the legions, and a professional class of soldiers developed. In Caesar's time the period of service of the legionary soldier was twenty years. These soldiers might be enlisted from all parts of Italy. Caesar's troops, however, were doubtless composed of inhabitants of the valley of the Po, in northern Italy, which was one of the provinces he was given to govern at the end of his consulship in 58 B. C. The military age was from seventeen to forty-five.

1. *The Legion:* The most important division of the army was the legion. It corresponded more nearly to the regiment than to any other division in modern armies, but legions were not grouped into larger units of the nature of brigades. The exact number of men in one of Caesar's legions is not known but it was somewhere between 3400 and 6000.

A legion was divided into ten cohorts (*cohortēs*), each cohort was divided into three maniples (*manipuli*), and each maniple was again divided into two centuries (*centuriae*).

2. *Auxiliaries:* Besides the legions, which as we have seen were made up of Roman citizens, the army included other forces which were not citizens. These included both infantry and cavalry. Caesar's cavalry, in fact, was made up entirely of these non-citizen troops. Infantry auxiliaries were supplied by the Roman provinces and by peoples allied with, or friendly to, the Roman people. They were light-armed troops, e.g., slingers (*funditorēs*) and archers (*sagittarii*). Caesar's cavalry

was of Gallic, Spanish, and German origin, and numbered from 4000 to 5000 men.

3. *Officers:* The officers of the army were the commander-in-chief (*dux, imperātor*), lieutenants (*lēgātī*), military tribunes (*tribūnī militum*), centurions (*centuriōnēs*), and prefects (*praefectī*). Of the subordinate officers, the lieutenants were the most important. They commanded divisions of the army or single legions, at the will of the commander-in-chief. Each legion had six tribunes, who were assigned duties of various kinds by the commander-in-chief, and commanded smaller bodies of troops than a legion. The officers most closely in touch with the rank and file were the centurions, who had risen from the ranks themselves. There were sixty in each legion. Caesar set great store by his centurions and he often mentions their faithful and important services. The prefects commanded auxiliary troops.

4. *Engineers and Musicians:* A Roman army had a body of engineers (*fabrī*), commanded by a prefect. There were also musicians, who gave signals with various instruments, such as the trumpet (*tuba*), the horn (*cornū*), and the clarion (*lituus*).

5. *The Quaestor:* The army was accompanied by an officer known as quaestor, who attended to the pay of the troops, to the sale of booty and prisoners, and had charge of provisions.

6. *Dress and Arms:* A Roman legionary soldier wore a short-sleeved woolen tunic (*tunica*), something like a long sweater, fastened at the waist by a belt, and extending to a point midway between the hips and knees. For protection in bad weather he wore in addition a woolen cloak (*sagum*). His shoes (*caligae*) were of thick leather soles, hob-nailed, with uppers of open-work leather strips.

The soldier's defensive armor comprised a metal helmet (*galea*), a coat-of-mail (*lōrica*) composed of metal plates on a leather backing, and a concave shield (*scūtum*) consisting



of wooden boards covered with cloth and leather. The dimensions of the shield were about two feet by four.

Offensive weapons were a heavy javelin (*pīlum*) and a sword (*gladius*). The former was approximately six and one-half feet long, consisting of a wooden shaft ending in an iron head. The sword, which was about two feet long, was straight and pointed, Roman tactics calling for the use of the sword as a dagger rather than for slashing. It was a deadly weapon in the hands of trained legionaries.

7. *The Soldier's Pack*: On the march the legionary carried, in addition to arms and armor, a certain amount of provisions, a cooking utensil, and tools for entrenching. All but arms and armor were held together in a pack (*sarcinae*) fastened to a forked pole, which was carried over the shoulder.

8. *Cavalry Equipment*: The cavalryman was protected by a round shield (*parma*) and by a metal helmet. He carried a sword, longer than that of the legionary, and a spear (*trāgula*).

9. *The Baggage Train*: Extra arms, clothing, provisions, and all tents were carried by pack-animals (*jūmenta*) and in wagons. The baggage train was appropriately called *impedimenta* (compare *impedire*, to *impede*).

10. *Artillery*: We are apt to think of artillery as depending exclusively on the use of explosives. The Romans employed instead of explosives twisted strands of rope or hair attached to a frame-work in such a way as to propel stones of considerable size or large arrows. The name for artillery, *tormenta* (compare *torquēre*, to *twist*), suggests the form of the propelling power used in these machines. The names of the machines were *ballista*, employed in hurling stones, *catapulta*, and *scorpiō*, employed to shoot arrows.

11. *Standards*: The large flags of modern times were not in use in Caesar's time. The standard of the Roman legion was a silver eagle (*aquila*), held up at the top of a pole. There were also standards for the maniples, consisting of streamers attached to a cross-bar on a pole, with silver ornaments of

various sorts below. A small, square, banner-like flag (*vexillum*) served as a standard for the cavalry, and also as a signal for battle when raised above the commanding general's tent.

12. *A Roman Camp*: When in an enemy's country, a Roman army built a fortified camp (*castra*) after each day's march, a work in which the Roman legionary was an adept. A rampart (*vallum*) was thrown up enclosing a square space large enough to quarter the whole army. The excavation of course left a trench (*fossa*) outside, which afforded additional protection. On the rampart, in addition, was planted a row of heavy wooden stakes. On each of the four sides of the camp was a gateway (*porta*) through an elbow-shaped turn in the rampart, which exposed to attack the right side of an enemy who attempted to enter.

13. *The Army on the March*: On the march the army was divided into a vanguard (*primum agmen*), then the legions in column, followed each by its heavy baggage, and a rear guard (*novissimum agmen*). In case there was danger of an attack, all the heavy baggage might be placed together in the center of the column, amply protected front and rear, and sometimes by detachments at the sides. Occasionally it was necessary to have the troops march even without their packs, ready for speedy formation in battle array.

14. *The Battle Line*: Caesar placed his chief reliance in battle on the legions. To the auxiliaries he seems to have given no very definite part, using them as circumstances dictated. The legions in battle array were formed in three lines (*triplex aciēs*) usually, the third line constituting a reserve. Each line was several, perhaps eight, ranks deep. Upon charging the enemy, javelin volleys were first delivered by the soldiers in the first line. The ranks back of the first two lines may have had to hurl their javelins over the heads of those in front. Then followed the hardest and most effective fighting, that with the deadly short swords. The battle

from that point on consisted of individual combats, man to man. The men in the second line mixed in the fray as those in the first line fell out from the casualties of battle. The third line, acting as reserves, performed whatever duties became necessary, and were of course especially entrusted with repelling flanking movements of the enemy.

15. *Attacks on Fortified Places:* The Gallic towns which Caesar attacked were often fairly well fortified by walls and trenches. The army was sometimes able, however, to take a town by quick assault (*oppugnātiō repentīna*). In such cases the trench would be filled with earth and other materials, after which the wall or gates would be broken down, or the wall scaled with the help of ladders (*scālae*). Here the light-armed troops came into play in driving defenders from the wall with arrows and sling-shots.

Towns with stronger fortifications were taken by siege (*oppugnātiō*) or by blockade (*obsidiō*). In siege operations the devices employed were: the battering-ram (*ariēs*), used to demolish a wall; movable sheds of various sorts, which enabled attacking parties to come close to the wall in order to breach it; wheeled towers filled with soldiers, which could be pushed close to the wall, thus making it easier to strip the wall of defenders; and finally, where the ground was broken, the siege-mound (*agger*), a broad causeway run up to the foot of the wall and affording a smooth road on which to operate the various devices mentioned above.

The blockade was employed where the two methods of attack already described were impossible or inadvisable. Its purpose was to cut off the defenders from supplies and thus force a surrender. Strong lines of entrenchments (*circumvallātiō*) were constructed around the town, with redoubts (*castella*) at intervals. In one case Caesar had to construct double lines of entrenchments, the outer one to ward off outside forces of the enemy who sought to raise the blockade.

**16. *The World War and Caesar:*** The World War, so recently concluded, was fought, along its western front, over ground traversed by Caesar's legions. If the great Roman general could have come to life, he would have needed no guide to find his way over the terrain which he had so often traveled. He would have been surprised by the novel instruments of destruction devised by modern ingenuity. Yet with his versatility and adaptability he would doubtless have been able quickly to play a large part in the defense of the Gallic land which he won for Italy; for the larger elements of strategy remain what they have always been.

In more than a few details Caesar would have found resemblances between the methods of war of his own time and of the present. He would have found, for example, the helmet once more come into its own. The highly developed technique of bayonet fighting would have reminded him of the skill which his own legionaries displayed with the sword, a weapon with which he himself was very proficient. Defenses below the level of the ground would not have confused him, for they were in relation to modern weapons of offense what his own ramparts were to the short-range weapons of his day.

While Caesar would not have been able to understand the languages of the allied armies immediately, a great multitude of the printed words would have looked familiar, since French is only a modernized Latin, while our English vocabulary is indebted for its important words to Latin more than to any other language. Doubtless it would have afforded him no little satisfaction to find preserved in the name Rheims a reminiscence of the Remi, the Gallic tribe that made friends with him at an opportune moment and whom he frequently mentions; while Paris would have recalled to him another Gallic tribe, the Parisii, and Soissons the Suessiones.

## PART IV

### CAESAR'S GALLIC WAR

#### BOOK I

##### GEOGRAPHY AND PEOPLES OF GAUL

1. Gallia est omnis divisa in partēs trēs; ūnam partem incolunt Belgae, aliam Aquitāni, tertiam quī ipsōrum linguā Celtāe, nostrā Galli appellantur. Hi omnēs linguā, Institūtis, lēgibus inter sē differunt. Gallōs ab Aquitānis Garunna flūmen, ā Belgis Matrona et Sēquana dividit. Hōrum omnium fortissimī sunt Belgae, proptereā quod ā cultū atque hūmānitāte prōvinciae longissimē absunt, minimēque ad eōs mercātōrēs saepe commeant atque ea quae ad effēminandōs animōs pertinent important, proximīque sunt Germānis, quī

---

1. est divisa, is divided; an instance of the perfect participle to be taken as a predicate adjective with *est*.

omnis, as a whole; including the three parts mentioned immediately after.

2. quī = *īi quī*, those who. ipsōrum, their own.

linguā: ablative of means.

3. nostrā: supply *linguā*. linguā: ablative of respect; also *institūtis* and *lēgibus*.

4. inter sē, from one another.

Gallōs: object of *dividit*. Latin order may often be retained by translating an active verb by a passive; the object then becomes subject.

5. dividit: singular, because the two rivers are conceived of as constituting one boundary.

7. prōvinciae: Rome's province of Transalpine Gaul (in southern France) is meant. It had been brought under Roman authority and organized about sixty years before Caesar's invasion of northern Gaul.

minimē: with *saepe*.

8. effēminandōs: the gerundive in a prepositional phrase; translate *ad . . . pertinent, tend to break down character*.

9. Germānis: dative with *proximī*.

- 10 trāns Rhēnum incolunt, quibuscum continenter bellum gerunt. Quā dē causā Helvētīi quoque reliquōs Gallōs virtūte praecēdunt, quod ferē cotīdiānis proeliis cum Germānis contendunt, cum aut suis finibus eōs prohibent, aut ipsī in eōrum finibus bellum gerunt. Eōrum ūna pars, quam Galli obtinent,  
 15 initium capit ā flūmine Rhodanō; continētur Garunnā flūmine, Ōceanō, finibus Belgārum; attingit etiam ab Sēquanis et Helvētiis flūmen Rhēnī; spectant in septentrionēs et orientem  
 20 sōlem. Aquitānia ā Garunnā flūmine ad Pyrēnaeōs montēs et eam partem Ōceanī quae est ad Hispaniam pertinet; spectat inter occāsum sōlis et septentrionēs.

### THE CONSPIRACY OF ORGETORIX

2. Apud Helvētiōs longē nōbilissimus fuit et ditissimus Orgetorix. Is, M. Messālā M. Pisōne cōsulibus, rēgnī cupiditāte inductus conjūratiōnem nōbilitātis fēcit et cīvibus persuāsit ut dē finibus suis cum omnibus cōpiis exirent: "Per-  
 5 facile est," inquit, cum virtūte omnibus praestēmus, tōtīus Galliae imperiō potīrī." Id hōc facilius iis persuāsit, quod

13. *suis finibus*: ablative of separation. *eōrum* = *Germānōrum*.

14. *Eōrum*: we should expect the name of the country, *Galliae*, rather than a pronoun referring to the people.

Galli: those who in the Gallic language were called Celts; see l. 3.

16. *ab, on the side of*.

18. *Galliae*: central, or Celtic, Gaul is meant, as described in ll. 14-17.

21. *est ad, is next to*.

2. *M. Messālā M. Pisōne cōsulibus*, in the consulship of, etc.; ablative absolute. The year was 61 B.C.

4. *ut . . . exirent*: a noun clause, object of *persuāsit*, to be translated by an infinitive.

5. *est*: the subject of this verb is the infinitive *potīrī*.

6. *Id iis persuāsit, he persuaded them to this*. Here the object of *persuāsit* is the pronoun *Id*; in l. 4 it was a clause.

*hōc facilius, the more easily*; *hōc* is ablative of degree of difference, and at the same time ablative of cause in anticipation of the causal clause, *quod . . . continentur*.

undique loci nātūrā Helvētīi continentur: ūnā ex parte flūmine Rhēnō lātissimō atque altissimō, quī agrum Helvētīum ā Germānis dividit, alterā ex parte monte Jūrā altissimō, quī est inter Sēquanōs et Helvētiōs, tertiā ex parte lacū Lemannō 10 et flūmine Rhodanō, quī prōvinciam nostram ab Helvētiis dividit. Itaque et minus lātē vagābantur et minus facile finitimis bellum inferre poterant; quā dē causā hominēs bellandī cupidī magnō dolōre afficiēbantur. Prō multitudīne autem hominum et prō glōriā bellī atque fortitudinis angustōs sē finēs habēre arbitrābantur, quī in longitudinem milia 15 passuum CCXL, in lātitudinem CLXXX patēbant.

### THE HELVETIANS PREPARE TO MIGRATE

3. His rēbus adductī et auctōritāte Orgetorigis permōtī cōstituērunt ea quae ad proficiēdum pertinērent comparāre, jūmentōrum et carrōrum quam maximum numerum coēmere, sēmentēs quam maximās facere, ut in itinere cōpia frūmentī suppeteret, cum proximīs cīvitatibus pācem et amicitiam 5 cōnfirmāre. Ad eās rēs cōnficiendās biennium sibi satis esse dūxērunt; in tertium annum profectiōnem lēge cōnfirmant. Orgetorix dux dēligitur. Is lēgatiōnem ad cīvitatēs suscipit. In eō itinere persuādet Casticō, Sēquanō, ut rēgnum in cīvitatē suā occupāret; pater enim ejus rēgnum in 10 Sēquanīs multōs annōs obtinuerat et ā senātū populī Rōmānī amicus appellātus erat; itemque Dumnorigī Haeduō, quī eō

7. ūnā ex parte, on one side.

13. finitimis, on their neighbors; dative with the compound verb *inferre*, which as a transitive verb takes also the direct object *bellum*; contrast the intransitive *praestemus*, l. 5, which has only the dative *omnibus*.

14. Prō, in proportion to.

2. ea, those things, explained in the following lines, *jūmentōrum . . . cōnfirmāre*.

3. quam maximum numerum, the greatest number possible.

6. Ad eās rēs cōnficiendās, for the accomplishment of these things; the gerundive in a prepositional phrase expressing purpose.

7. dūxērunt: here in the sense of *regarded, thought*.

tempore principātum in cīvitāte obtinēbat ac maximē plēbī acceptus erat, ut idem cōnārētur persuādet, eīque filiam suam  
 15 in mātīmōnium dat. "Perfacile factū est," inquit, "cōnāta perficere, propterea quod ipse meae cīvitātis imperium obtentūrus sum; nōn est dubium quā tōtius Galliae plūrimum Helvētīi possint; meis cōpiis meoque exercitū vōbīs rēgna conciliābō." Hāc ōrātiōne adductī inter sē fidem et jū  
 20 jūrāndum dant et, rēgnō occupātō, per trēs potentissimōs ac firmissimōs populōs tōtius Galliae sēsē potīrī posse spērānt.

### THE DEATH OF ORGETORIX

4. Ea rēs est Helvētīis per indicium ēnūntiāta. Mōribus suis Orgetorigem ex vinculis causam dicere coēgērunt; sī damnārētur, ignī eum cremātūrī erant. Diē cōstitutā causae dictiōnis Orgetorix ad jūdicium omnem suam familiam, ad ho  
 5 minum mīlia decem, undique coēgit et omnēs clientēs obāerātōsque suōs, quōrum magnum numerum habēbat, eōdem cōducit; per eōs, nē causam diceret, sē ēripuit. Cum cīvitās ob eam rem incitāta armīs jūis suum exequī cōnārētur multi-

13. plēbī: dative with *acceptus*, *acceptable*.

15. factū, *to do*; the supine, ablative of respect.

17. quā, *that*, with the subjunctive, is regularly employed after expressions of doubt, when these are accompanied by a negative.

plūrimum possint, *are the strongest (people)*.

19. inter sē dant, *they exchange*; the phrase *inter sē* denotes mutual or reciprocal action, as in 1, 4.

21. Galliae: with *potīrī*, which sometimes governs the genitive instead of the ablative.

1. indicium: translate as if *indices*, *informers*.

2. ex vinculis, *in chains*; how, literally?

sī damnārētur, *if he should be convicted*.

3. causae: objective genitive after *dictiōnis*.

4. ad (*hominum*): used adverbially, *about*.

5. coēgit: here and in 1. 9 with the meaning *collected*, while in 1. 2 it meant *compelled*.

7. per eōs, *through their help*.

sē ēripuit, *he escaped*.



tūdinemque hominum ex agris magistrātūs cōgerent, Orgetorix mortuus est; Helvētīi arbitrantur ipsum sibi mortem 10 cōscīvisse.

### THE HELVETIANS COMPLETE THEIR PREPARATIONS

5. Post ejus mortem nihilō minus Helvētīi ē finibus suis exire cōnantur. Ubi jam sē ad eam rem parātōs esse arbitrātī sunt, oppida sua omnia numerō ad duodecim, vicōs ad quadringentōs, reliqua prīvāta aedificiā incendunt, frūmentum omne, praeter quod sēcum portātūrī erant, combūrun; haec 5 fēcērunt, ut, domum reditiōnis spē sublātā, parātiōrēs ad omnia pericula subeunda essent; trium mēnsūm molita cibāria sibi quemque domō efferre jubent. Persuādent Rauracīs et Tulingīs et Latobrigīs, finitimīs, ut, oppidis suis vicisque exustīs, unā cum iis proficiscantur; Boiōs, qui trāns Rhēnum 10 incoluerant et in agrum Nōricum trānsierant Nōreiamque oppugnābant, ad sē sociōs recipiunt.

### TWO ROUTES OPEN TO THE HELVETIANS

6. Erant omnīnō itinera duo, quibus itineribus domō exire possent; unum per Sēquanōs, angustum et difficile, inter montem Jūram et flūmen Rhodanum, vix quā singulī carrī

2. Ubi jam, *when at last*.

3. numerō: ablative of respect. . ad: see the note on *ad*, 4, 4.

4. prīvāta aedificiā: scattered dwellings not in towns and villages.

6. spē sublātā, *by destroying the hope*; ablative absolute, expressing means.

ad . . . subeunda, *to undergo all dangers*.

7. trium mēnsūm, *for three months*; genitive of measure.

10. Boiōs: the word Boii survives in the modern name Bohemia.

12. ad sē sociōs recipiunt, *they admit to their numbers as allies*.

1. quibus . . . possent: a relative clause of description, hence the subjunctive.

itineribus: the antecedent in Latin is occasionally repeated in the relative clause; it may be omitted in translation.

dūcerentur; mōns autem altissimus impendēbat, ut facile per-  
 5 pauci prohibēre possent; alterum per prōvinciam nostram,  
 multō facilius atque expeditius, proptereā quod inter finēs  
 Helvētiōrum et Allobrogum Rhodanus fluit, isque nōn nullis  
 locis vadō trānsitur. Extrēmum oppidum Allobrogum est  
 proximumque Helvētiōrum finibus Genava. Ex eō oppidō  
 10 pōns ad Helvētiōs pertinet. Cōnsilium erat Helvētiōrum vel  
 persuādere Allobrogibus, quī nūper pācātī erant et nōndum  
 bonō animō in populum Rōmānum vidēbantur, vel vī cōgere  
 ut per suōs finēs iter darent. Omnibus rēbus ad profectiōnem  
 comparātis, diem dicunt, quā diē ad ripam Rhodanī omnēs  
 15 conveniant. Is diēs erat a. d. v. Kal. Apr., L. Pisōne, A.  
 Gabiniō cōsulis.

#### CAESAR DETERMINES TO STOP THE HELVETIANS

7. Caesarī cum id nūntiātum esset, eōs per prōvinciam nos-  
 tram iter facere cōnārī, mātūrat ab urbe proficisci et quam  
 maximis potest itineribus in Galliam ulteriōrem contendit et

4. *dūcerentur*, could be drawn; the clause *vix quā . . . dūcerentur* is somewhat different from the one in ll. 1-2, in that the idea of possibility enters into the subjunctive itself.

*altissimus*, very high.

*ut . . . possent*: a clause of result.

5. *prohibēre*: supply *eōs* as object.

8. *vadō trānsitur*, is crossed by fording.

9. *finibus*: dative with *proximum*.

12. *bonō animō*, kindly disposed; ablative of description in the predicate after *vidēbantur*.

13. *ut . . . darent*: a noun clause, object of *persuādere* and *cōgere*.

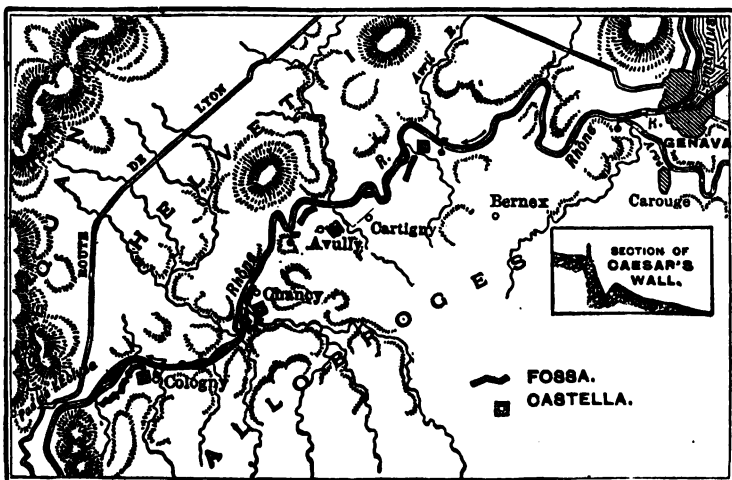
14. *quā diē . . . conveniant*, on which (day) they are to assemble; a relative clause of purpose; *diē* may be omitted in translation, as *itineribus*, l. 1.

15. *a. d. v. Kal. Apr.*, = *ante diem quintum Kalendas Aprilēs*, five days before the Kalends of April, i.e., Mar. 28th.

1. *id, it*, explained by the indirect discourse following, *eōs . . . cōnārī*.

2. *quam maximis potest itineribus*, by the longest journeys possible; the plural *itineribus* is employed with reference to the daily distance; *potest* might have been omitted, since *quam* and a superlative alone express the highest degree possible, as in 3, 3.

3. *Galliam ulteriōrem*: the Roman province north of the Alps.



MAP SHOWING FORTIFICATIONS ON THE RHONE

ad Genavam pervenit. Ā prōvinciā tōtā quam maximum potest militum numerum postulat (erat omnīnō in Galliā 5 ulteriōre legiō ūna), pontem quī erat ad Genavam jubet rescindi. Ubi dē ejus adventū Helvētīi certiōrēs factī sunt, lēgātōs ad eum mittunt nōbilissimōs civitātis. Hī dixerunt Helvētiōs habēre in animō sine ūllō maleficiō iter per prōvinciam facere, proptereā quod aliud iter habērent nūllum; 10 rogāvērunt ut ejus voluntāte id sibi facere liceret. Caesar memoriā tenēbat L. Cassium cōsulem occīsum exercitumque ejus ab Helvētiīs pulsum et sub jugum missum; concēdendum

4. ad, into the neighborhood of. No preposition would be employed if the meaning were "to Geneva."

6. ad, near, at.

10. habērent: subjunctive in a subordinate clause in indirect discourse.

11. ejus voluntāte, with his approval.

12. L. Cassium . . . occīsum: in 107 B.C.

13. concēdendum (esse), the privilege should be granted; the verb is used impersonally, i.e., its subject is the fundamental idea in the verb itself, to be represented in English by a noun; in like manner *pugnātum est* means a battle was fought.

igitur nōn putābat; neque hominēs inimicō animō temperā-  
 15 tūrōs ab injuriā et maleficiō existimābat. Tamen, quod  
 militēs quōs imperāverat nōndum convēnerant, lēgātis re-  
 spondit diem sē ad dēliberandum sūmptūrum; sī quid vellent,  
 ad Id. Apr. reverterentur.

CAESAR DENIES THE HELVETIANS RIGHT OF WAY  
 THROUGH THE ROMAN PROVINCE

8. Intereā ā lacū Lemannō ad montem Jūram milia pas-  
 suum XVIII mūrum secundum flūmen in altitūdinem pedum  
 sēdecim fossamque perdūcit. Eō opere perfectō, praesidia  
 dispōnit, castella commūnit, quō facilius, sī sē invitō trānsire  
 5 cōnārentur, prohibēre posset. Ubi lēgātī ad eum diē cōn-  
 stitūtō revertērunt, negat sē mōre et exemplō populī Rōmānī  
 posse iter ūllī per prōvinciam dare et, sī vim facere cōnentur,  
 prohibētūrum ostendit. Helvētīī eā spē dējectī nōn numquam  
 interdiū, saepius noctū, perrumpere cōnātī sunt. Eōrum aliī  
 10 nāvēs jūnxerant ratēsque complūrēs fēcerant; aliī vadis  
 Rhodanī, quā minima altitūdō flūminis erat, trānsire cō-  
 nābantur. Sed operis mūnitiōne et militum concursū et tēlis  
 repulsī hōc cōnātū dēstitērunt.

17. diem, time.

18. ad, by.

reverterentur, *let them return*; a subjunctive of indirect discourse, representing an imperative of the direct.

2. mūrum: not a stone wall, but an earthwork made in greater part by cutting down the banks of the river steeply. The trench is shown in the sectional view on the accompanying map (p. 249).

4. quō: this word, it is to be remembered, is employed to introduce a clause of purpose in connection with a comparative; it is in reality an ablative of degree of difference.

6. negat: the usual Latin for "say not," as has before been pointed out; in translating take the negative with *posse*.

8. prohibētūrum: the full expression would be *sē eōs prohibētūrum esse. eā spē dējectī, disappointed in that hope*; *spē* is ablative of separation, as also *cōnātū*, l. 13.

THE HELVETIANS ARRANGE TO MARCH THROUGH  
THE COUNTRY OF THE SEQUANI

9. Relinquēbātur ūna per Sēquanōs via, quā Sēquanīs invītīs propter angustias ire nōn poterant. Hīs cum suā sponte persuādere nōn possent, lēgātōs ad Dumnorīgē Hædūm mittunt, ut eō dēprecātōre ā Sēquanīs impetrārent. Dumnorīx grātiā et largitiōne apud Sēquanōs plūrimū poterat et Helvētiīs erat amīcus, quod ex eā civitatē Orgetorigis filiā in mātīmōnium dūxerat, et cupiditatē rēgnī adductus novīs rēbus studēbat et quam plūrimās civitatēs suō beneficiō habere obstrictās volēbat. Itaque rem suscipit et ā Sēquanīs impetrat ut per finēs suōs Helvētiōs ire patiantur, obsidēsque utī inter sēsē dent perficit: Sēquanī, nē itinere Helvētiōs prohibeant; Helvētiī, ut sine maleficiō et injuriā trāseant.

CAESAR SECURES REINFORCEMENTS AND  
PURSUES THE HELVETIANS

10. Caesarī nūntiātur Helvētiōs habere in animō per agrum Sēquanōrum et Hæduōrum iter in Santonum finēs facere; hī nōn longē ā Tolōsātium finibus absunt, quae civitas est in

1. Relinquēbātur, *there was left.*

ūna via, *only the road.*

Sēquanīs invītīs, *against the wish of the Sequani*, an ablative absolute.

2. angustias: the narrow passage along the bank of the Rhone described in 6, 2-5.

cum, *since.*

5. plūrimū poterat, *had the greatest influence*; the adverb *plūrimū* is in reality the accusative neuter of *plūrimus* expressing degree.

6. novīs rēbus, *revolution*; dative with *studēbat*.

9. habere obstrictās, *to have bound (to him).*

10. ā Sēquanīs impetrat ut . . . patiantur, *prevails upon the Sequani to allow*; ut . . . patiantur is a noun clause, object of *impetrat*.

11-13. nē . . . prohibeant, ut . . . trāseant: these clauses contain the purpose of the exchange of hostages; translate freely, *the Sequani agree not to prevent etc., the Helvetii agree to pass through, etc.*

prōvinciā. Id sī fieret, hominēs bellicōsī, populū Rōmāni  
 5 inimicī, partī prōvinciae patentī maximēque frūmentāriae  
 finitimī futūrī erant. Ob eās causās ei mūnitiōnī quam  
 fēcerat T. Labiēnum lēgātum praeficit; ipse in Italiam magnīs  
 itineribus contendit duāsque ibi legiōnēs cōnscribit et trēs,  
 10 quae circum Aquileiam hiemābant, ex hibernīs ēdūcit et prox-  
 imō itinere in ulteriōrem Galliam per Alpēs cum hīs quinque  
 legiōnibus ire contendit. Ibi Ceutronēs et Graioceli et Ca-  
 turīgēs, locis superiōribus occupātis, itinere exercitum pro-  
 hibēre cōnantur. Complūribus hīs proeliis pulsīs, ab Ocelō,  
 quod est oppidum citeriōris prōvinciae extrēmum, in finēs  
 15 Vocontiōrum ulteriōris prōvinciae diē septimō pervenit; inde  
 in Allobrogum finēs, ab Allobrogibus in Segusiāvōs exercitum  
 dūcit. Hī sunt extrā prōvinciam trāns Rhodanum primī.

#### SEVERAL GALLIC TRIBES APPEAL TO CAESAR FOR PROTECTION

11. Helvētīi jam per angustias et finēs Sēquanōrum suās  
 cōpiās trādūxerant et in Haeduōrum finēs pervēnerant eōrum-  
 que agrōs populābantur. Haeduī, cum sē suaque ab iis dē-  
 fendere nōn possent, lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittunt rogātum  
 5 auxilium: "Ita nōs," inquiunt, "omni tempore dē populō  
 Rōmānō meritī sumus, ut paene in cōspectū exercitūs vestri  
 agrī vāstārī, liberī in servitūtem abdūcī, oppida expugnārī

4. Id sī fieret, if this should be done.

6. ei mūnitiōnī: dative with the compound verb *praeficit*, with *Labi-  
 num* as direct object.

12. itinere: ablative of separation, with *prohibere*.

13. Complūribus: with *proeliis*, while *hīs* and *pulsīs* go together and  
 form an ablative absolute.

14. citeriōris prōvinciae: the Roman province in northern Italy, also  
 called *Gallia Cisalpina*.

4. rogātum, to beg; the accusative of the supine expressing purpose;  
 it governs the object, *auxilium*.

5. Ita nōs . . . meritī sumus, we have always so deserved of the Roman  
 people.

6. ut . . . nōn dēbuerint: a negative clause of result.

nōn dēbuerint." Eōdem tempore Ambarri, necessarij et cōn-  
 sanguinei Haeduōrum, Caesarem certiorem faciunt sēsē, dē-  
 populātis agris, nōn facile ab oppidis vim hostium prohibēre. 10  
 Item Allobrogēs, qui trāns Rhodanum vicōs possessionēsque  
 habēbant, fugā sē ad Caesarem recipiunt et dēmōstrant sē  
 praeter agrī solum nihil habēre reliquum. Quibus rēbus  
 adductus Caesar nōn expectāre statuit dum, omnibus fortūnis  
 sociōrum cōsumptis, in Santonōs Helvētiī pervenirent. 15

### CAESAR DEFEATS A PORTION OF THE HELVETIANS

12. Flūmen est Arar, quod per finēs Haeduōrum et Sēqua-  
 nōrum in Rhodanum Influit, incredibili lēnitāte, ita ut oculis in  
 utram partem fluat jūdicārī nōn possit. Id Helvētiī ratibus  
 ac lintribus jūctis trānsibant, trēsque jam partēs cōpiārum  
 trādūxerant. Caesar dē tertiā vigiliā cum legiōnibus tribus ē 5  
 castris profectus ad eam partem pervēnit quae nōndum flū-  
 men trānsierat. Eōs impeditōs et inopinantēs aggressus mag-  
 nam partem eōrum concidit; reliquī sēsē fugae mandarunt  
 atque in proximās silvās abdidērunt. Is pāgus appellābatur  
 Tigurinus; nam omnis civitās Helvētia in quattuor pāgōs 10  
 divisa est. Hic pāgus ūnus, cum domō exisset patrum nos-  
 trōrum memoriā, L. Cassium cōnsulem interfēcerat et ejus

9. *dēpopulātis*: although deponent verbs are regularly active in mean-  
 ing, the perfect participles are sometimes used as passives.

15. *pervenirent*, *should come*; an anticipatory subjunctive with *dum*,  
*until*.

2. *lēnitāte*: ablative of description.

in *utram partem fluat*: an indirect question.

5. *dē tertiā vigiliā*, *in the third watch*; literally, *dē* would mean *out of*.

7. *aggressus*: the perfect participle of a deponent verb is regularly  
 active; it can therefore be used in agreement with the subject to denote  
 an act of the subject. With the perfect participle of a non-deponent  
 verb, the ablative absolute is the construction necessary to denote an  
 act of the subject.

8. *mandarunt*: a form contracted from *mandāvērunt*.

9. *abdidērunt* (*sēsē*), *hid in*; the accusative *silvās* with *in* is used in-  
 stead of the ablative owing to the motion implied in *abdidērunt*.

12. *memoriā*: ablative denoting the time when.

exercitum sub jugum miserat. Ita sive cāsū sive cōnsiliō deōrum immortalium, quae pars cīvitātis Helvētiaē Insignem  
 15 calamitatem populō Rōmānō intulerat, ea princeps poenās persolvit. Quā in rē Caesar nōn solum publicās, sed etiam privātās injūriās ultus est; nam Tigurini interfecerant L. Pisōnem lēgātum, avum L. Pisōnis, socerī Caesaris, eōdem proeliō quō Cassium.

#### NEGOTIATIONS BETWEEN CAESAR AND THE HELVETIANS

13. Hōc proeliō factō, reliquās cōpiās Helvētiōrum ut cōnsequi posset, pontem in Ararī faciendum cūrat atque ita exercitum trādūcit. Helvētiī repentinō ejus adventū com-  
 5 mōtī sunt; ille enim ūnō diē flūmen trānsierat, id quod ipsi diēbus xx aegerrimē cōnfecerant. Lēgātōs igitur ad eum mittunt, cujus lēgātiōnis Divicō princeps fuit, quī bellō Cassiānō dux Helvētiōrum fuerat. Is ita cum Caesare ēgit: "Si pācem populus Rōmānus cum Helvētiis faciet, in eam partem ibunt Helvētiī atque ibi erunt ubi eōs cōstitueris atque esse  
 10 volueris; sin bellō persequi perseverābis, reminiscere et vete-

14. quae pars . . . ea: translate as if *ea pars quae*.

15. intulerat: with *bellum* as object this verb means *make (war) on*; with such a word as *calamitās* or *injūria* as object it means *inflict . . . on*. Why the dative *populō*?

princeps, first, (was the) first.

1. ut: introducing a clause of purpose, and to be translated before *cōpiās*.

2. pontem faciendum cūrat, he causes a bridge to be built; the gerundive in agreement with an object noun is employed after *dō*, *cūrō*, and similar verbs, to express purpose.

in Ararī: observe that "over" a river, with reference to a bridge, is expressed by *in* and the ablative; "across" and "over," in the sense of "to," or "on, the other side of," are expressed by *trāns* and the accusative.

Ararī: several *i*-stem nouns of the third declension have an ablative ending in *-ī* and an accusative in *-im*. *Tiberim* has previously occurred, R. 3, 4.

6. bellō Cassiānō: the campaign of 107 B.C., in which Cassius was defeated by the Tigurini. It is plain that Divico was an old man when he met Caesar.

7. cum Caesare ēgit, he addressed Caesar; literally, *ēgit* would mean *treated, dealt*.

10. reminiscere: imperative.



ris incommodi populi Rōmāni et pristinae virtūtis Helvēti-  
 ōrum. Quod imprōvisō ūnum pāgum adortus es, cum ī quī  
 flūmen trānsierant suis auxilium ferre nōn possent, nōlī ob  
 eam rem aut tuae magnopere virtūti tribuere aut nōs  
 dēspicere. Nōs ita ā patribus majōribusque nostris didicimus, 15  
 ut magis virtūte contendāmus quam dolō aut insidiis nitāmur.  
 Quārē nōlī committere ut is locus ubi cōnstitērimus ex calami-  
 tāte populi Rōmāni et interneciōne exercitūs nōmen capiat  
 aut memoriam prōdat.

### THE HELVETIANS REFUSE CAESAR'S TERMS

14. His Caesar ita respondit: "Eō mihi minus dubitātiōnis  
 datur, quod eās rēs quās commemorāvistis memoriā teneō,  
 atque eō gravius ferō quō minus meritō populi Rōmāni acci-  
 dērunt; quī sī alicujus injūriae sibi cōnsciū fuisset, nōn fuit  
 difficile cavēre; sed eō dēceptus est, quod sē causam timendī 5  
 habēre nōn intellegēbat. Quod sī veteris contumēliae obli-

11. *incommodi*: the genitive, depending upon a verb of remembering.

12. *Quod, as to the fact that.*

13. *nōlī . . . tribuere, do not on that account attribute much to your own valor. Nōlī, imperative of nōlō, with an infinitive, is the common and polite form of expressing a negative command in Latin.*

16. *virtūte*: ablative of means.

*dolō, insidiis: nītor* takes an ablative of the thing relied upon.

17. *ut is locus . . . prōdat*: a noun clause, object of *committere*, bring about, cause.

1. *Eō minus, the less*; *eō* is a combination of ablative of degree of difference and ablative of cause.

3. *eō gravius, quō minus, the more seriously, the less*; *eō* and *quō* are ablatives of degree of difference.

*meritō*: ablative of accordance.

4. *sī fuisset, if they had been*; a condition contrary to fact.

*sibi*: with *cōnsciū*, but to be omitted in translation.

5. *eō, quod, by the fact that*; *quod* here introduces a noun clause of fact.

6. *Quod sī vellem, but if I were willing*; another condition contrary to fact.

*contumēliae*: for the genitive with verbs of remembering and forgetting, compare *incommodi*, 13, 11.

- vīsci vellem, num etiam recentium injūriarum, quod mē invītō iter per prōvinciam per vim temptāvistis, quod Haeduōs, quod Ambarrōs, quod Allobrogas vexāvistis, memoriam
- 10 dēpōnere possum? Quod vestrā victōriā tam insolenter glōriāmini quodque tam diū vōs impūnē injūriās tulisse admīrāmini eōdem pertinent. Cōnsuēverunt enim dēi immortalēs, quō gravius scelerātī hominēs ex commūtātiōne rērum doleant, hīs secundiōrēs interdum rēs et diūturniorem im-
- 15 pūnitātem concēdere. Cum ea ita sint, tamen, sī obsidēs mihi dabitis, et sī Haeduīs sociisq̄ue eōrum, item sī Allobrogibus, dē injūriis satisfaciētis, vōbiscum pācem faciam." Divicō respondit: "Ita Helvētīi ā majōribus suis institūti sunt ut obsidēs accipere, nōn dare, cōnsuērint; ejus rei
- 20 populus Rōmānus est testis." Hōc respōnsō datō discessit.

#### DEFEAT OF CAESAR'S CAVALRY

15. Posterō diē castra ex eō locō movent. Idem facit Caesar equitātumque omnem ad numerum quattuor milium, quem ex omni prōvinciā et Haeduīs atque eōrum sociis coāc-

7. *quod . . . temptāvistis*, *that you attempted*; this and the following *quod* clauses are noun clauses of fact in apposition with *injūriarum*; the latter word depends on *memoriam*. The *quod* clauses in ll. 10-12 are also noun clauses, subjects of *pertinent*.

9. *Allobrogas*: the ending *-as* is a Greek accusative plural ending sometimes found in nouns of the third declension, particularly in names of peoples.

11. *vōs . . . tulisse admīrāmini*, *are surprised to have inflicted*.

13. *quō*, *in order that*; see the note on 8, 4.

14. *secundiōrēs rēs*, *extraordinary prosperity*.

15. *concēdere*: depending on *cōnsuēverunt*.

19. *cōnsuērint*: contracted from *cōnsuēverint*, perfect subjunctive.

3. *coāctum habēbat*, *had collected*; the participle *coāctum* agrees with *quem*; the combination of the participle with the imperfect *habēbat* is to be translated in the same way as *coēgerat*, past perfect of *cōgō*; it makes of *habēbat*, however, almost an auxiliary corresponding to English "had" as an auxiliary. The present of *habeō* can be used with a participle in the same way as the imperfect.

tum habēbat, praemittit, quī videant quās in partēs hostēs iter faciant. Quī cupidius novissimum agmen insecūtī aliēnō locō 5 cum equitātū Helvētiōrum proelium committunt; et paucī dē nostris cadunt. Quō proeliō sublātī Helvētī, quod quīngentis equitibus tantam multitudinem equitum prōpulerant, audācius subsistere nōn numquam et novissimō agmine proeliō nostrōs lacessere coepērunt. Caesar suōs ā proeliō continēbat 10 ac satis habēbat in praesentiā hostem rapīnis populātiōnibusque prohibēre. Ita diēs circiter xv iter fēcērunt, ut inter novissimum hostium agmen et nostrum primum nōn amplius quīnis aut sēnis milibus passuum interesset.

CAESAR CENSURES THE HAEDUANS FOR FAILING TO  
FURNISH SUPPLIES

16. Interim cotīdiē Caesar frūmentum quod Haedui essent publicē polliciti flāgitābat. Nam propter frīgora, quod Gallia sub septentrionibus posita est, nōn modo frūmenta in agris mātūra nōn erant, sed nē pābuli quidem satis magna cōpia suppetēbat; eō autem frūmentō quod flūmine Ararī nāvibus 5 subvexerat, propterea ūtī minus poterat, quod iter ab Ararī Helvētī āverterant, ā quibus discēdere nōlēbat. Diem ex diē dūcunt Haedui; cōferri, comportārī, adesse dicunt. Ubi sē

4. quī videant: relative clause of purpose.

quās in partēs, etc.: indirect question.

9. novissimō agmine, from their rear line; agmine is ablative of means.

11. satis habēbat prohibēre, regarded it as sufficient to prevent.

13. primum: supply agmen.

nōn amplius . . . interesset, there was a distance of not more than five or six miles (a day).

1. essent polliciti: subjunctive of informal indirect discourse.

3. posita, situated; see the note on *divisa*, 1, 1.

5. frūmentō: object of *ūtī*, l. 6.

flūmine Ararī: ablative of the way or route.

6. propterea: take with *quod*, for the reason that.

7. Diem ex diē, day after day.

8. dūcunt, put off; *eum* is to be understood as object.

cōferri, comportārī, adesse: supply frūmentum as subject.

diūtius dūci intellēxit et diem instāre, quō diē frūmentum  
 10 militibus mētīri oportēret, convocāvit eōrum principēs, quō-  
 rum magnam cōpiam in castris habēbat. In his erant Divi-  
 ciācus et Liscus, quī summō magistrātui praeerat, quem ver-  
 gobretum appellant Haedui, quī creātur annuus et vitāe  
 necisque in suōs habet potestātem. Tum Caesar graviter eōs  
 15 accūsāt, quod, cum frūmentum neque emī neque ex agris  
 sūmī possit, hostibus tam propinquis, ab iīs nōn sublevētur,  
 praesertim cum magnā ex parte eōrum precibus adductus  
 bellum suscēperit.

#### TWO FACTIONS AMONG THE HAEDUANS PRO-ROMAN AND ANTI-ROMAN

17. Tum dēnum Liscus ōrātiōne Caesaris adductus quod  
 antea tacuerat prōponit: "Sunt nōn nulli, quōrum auctōritās  
 apud plēbem plūrimum valeat, quī privātīm plūs possint  
 quam ipsi magistrātūs. Propter hōrum sēdiōssam atque im-  
 5 probam ōrātiōnem multitūdō frūmentum nōn cōferunt quod  
 dēbent: 'Praestat,' inquiunt, 'si jam principātum Galliae  
 obtinēre nōn possumus, Gallōrum quam Rōmānōrum imperia  
 perferre; si Helvētiōs superāverint Rōmāni, unā cum reliquā  
 Galliā Haeduis libertātem sine dubiō ēripiēnt.' Ab isdem  
 10 tua cōnsilia quaeque in castris geruntur hostibus ēnūntiantur;

9. diūtius, too long.

12. magistrātui: dative with the compound verb *praeerat*.

14. in suōs, over his fellow-citizens.

15. quod . . . nōn sublevētur: the same explanation applies to the sub-  
 junctive here as in l. 1.

16. hostibus tam propinquis, with the enemy so near.

17. magnā ex parte, to a great extent.

1. quod: for *id quod*.

3. plūs possint, have more influence.

6. Praestat: the subject is the infinitive *perferre*, l. 8.

inquit: the subject is "they," referring to the trouble-makers of the  
 preceding lines.

9. Haeduis, from the Haedui; dative of separation with *ēripiēnt*.

hōs coercere nōn possum. Quin etiam intellegō quantō cum periculō hanc necessariam rem tibi enūntiāverim, et ob eam causam quam diū potui tacui."

### DUMNORIX THE LEADER OF THE ANTI-ROMAN FACTION

18. Caesar hāc oratione Lisci Dumnorigem, Diviciaci fratrem, designari sentiebat, sed quod pluribus praesentibus eas res jactari nolebat, celeriter concilium dimittit, Liscum retinet. Quaerit ex solo ea quae in conventu dixerat. Dicit liberius atque audacius. Eadem secreto ab aliis quaerit, qui ita respondunt: "Ipse est Dumnorix, summā audaciā, magnā apud plebem propter liberalitatem gratiā, cupidus rerum novarum. Complures annos portoria reliquaque omnia Haeduorum vectigalia parvo pretio redempta habet, propterea quod, illo licente, contra liceri audet nemō. His rebus et suam rem familiarem auxit et facultates ad largiendum magnas comparavit; magnum numerum equitatus suo sumptu semper alit et circum se habet, neque solum domi, sed etiam apud finitimas civitates largiter potest, atque hujus potentiae causā matrem in Biturigibus homini illic nobilissimo ac potentissimo collocavit; ipse ex Helvetiis uxorem habet, sororem ex matre et propinquas suas nuptum in alias civitates collocavit. Favet et cupit Helvetiis propter eam affinitatem;

11. *Quin etiam*, *nay more, more than that*; this phrase has a corrective force.

13. *quam diu potui*, *as long as I could*.

2. *pluribus praesentibus*, *in the presence of too many*, ablative absolute.

4. *solo*: supply *eo*, referring to Liscus.

Dicit: supply Liscus as subject.

6. *magna*: with *gratia*.

9. *redempta habet*, *has bought in*; see the note on *coactum habebat*, 15, 3. Allusion is made here to the ancient practice of letting out on contract to private individuals the collection of taxes. Dumnorix's prestige in his state was so great that none dared compete with him even though he offered low bids to the state officials.

14. *largiter potest*, *is very influential*.

16. *uxorem*: the daughter of Orgetorix, as told in 3, 14.

- ōdit etiam suō nōmine Caesarem et Rōmānōs, quod eōrum  
 20 adventū potentia ejus dēminūta et Diviciācus frāter in anti-  
 quum locum grātiaē atque honōris sit restitūtus. Sī quid  
 accidat Rōmānis, summam spem per Helvētiōs rēgnī obtinendi  
 habet; imperiō populi Rōmāni nōn modo dē rēgnō, sed etiam  
 dē eā quam habet grātiā dēspērat.” Initium fugae equitātū  
 25 paucīs ante diēbus, ut Caesar in quaerendō repperit, factum  
 erat ā Dumnorīge atque ejus equitibus (nam equitātū quem  
 auxiliō Caesarī Haedui mīserant Dumnorix praeerat); eōrum  
 fugā reliquus erat equitātus perterritus.

### CAESAR PLANS TO PUNISH DUMNORIX

19. Ad hās suspiciōnēs certissimae rēs accēdēbant, quod  
 per finēs Sēquanōrum Helvētiōs trādūxerat, quod obsidēs in-  
 ter eōs dandōs cūrāverat, quod ea omnia nōn modo injussū  
 Caesaris et cīvitatīs, sed etiam inscientibus ipsīs fēcerat, quod  
 5 ā magistrātū Haeduōrum accūsābātur. Statuit igitur Caesar  
 in eum aut ipse animadvertere aut cīvitatē animadvertere  
 jubere. His omnibus rēbus unum repugnābat, quod Divi-

19. suō nōmine, *on his own account*; a book-keeping term.

quod, etc.: this clause contains a reason attributed to Dumnorix by the speaker, and so on the principle of informal indirect discourse has its verbs, *dēminūta sit* and *restitūta sit*, in the subjunctive.

22. accidat, *should befall*.

23. imperiō, *under the sovereignty*; ablative of attendant circumstance.

24. eā: with *grātiā*.

25. in quaerendō, *upon investigation*.

27. auxiliō Caesarī, *to the aid of Caesar*; *auxiliō* is dative of purpose, *Caesarī* dative of reference.

1. quod trādūxerat, *that*, etc.; a noun clause in apposition with *rēs*, as in 14, 7.

2. obsidēs dandōs cūrāverat: the use of the gerundive with *cūrō* is explained in the note on 13, 2.

4. inscientibus ipsīs, *without their knowledge*; ablative absolute.

6. in eum animadvertere, *inflict punishment upon*; literally, *turn the attention to*.

7. rēbus: dative with *repugnābat*, which as a verb of opposing belongs to the list of special verbs governing the dative.

ciāci frātris summum in populum Rōmānum studium, summam in sē voluntātem, ēgregiam fidem, jūstitiam, temperantiam cognōverat; nam nē ejus suppliciō Diviciāci animum offenderet verēbātur. Itaque priusquam quicquam cōnārētur, Diviciācum ad sē vocārī jubet et, cotidiānis interpretibus remōtis, per C. Valerium Troucillum, principem Galliae provinciae, familiārem suum, cui summam omnium rērum fidem habēbat, cum eō colloquitur; simul commonefacit quae ipsō praesente in conciliō dē Dumnorige sint dicta, et ostendit quae sēparatim quisque dē eō apud sē dixerit. Petit atque hortātur ut sine ejus offēnsiōne animi vel ipse dē eō, causā cognitā, statuāt, vel civitātem statuere jubeat.

CAESAR YIELDS TO THE PLEAS OF DIVICIACUS, BROTHER  
OF DUMNORIX

20. Diviciācus multis cum lacrimis Caesarem complexus obsecrāre coepit nē quid gravius in frātre statueret: "Sciō," inquit, "illa esse vērā, neque quisquam ex eō plūs quam ego dōlōris capit, proptereā quod, cum ipse grātiā plūrimum possem domi atque in reliquā Galliā, illē minimum propter adulescentiam posset, per mē crēvit; quibus opibus ac nervis nōn solum ad minuendam grātiā, sed paene ad perniciem meam ūtitur. Commoveor tamen et amōre frāternō et ex-

9. *in, towards.*

10. *nē, that; how is ut to be translated after a verb of fearing?*

11. *cōnārētur, should attempt; the anticipatory subjunctive with priusquam.*

14. *cui, in whom; dative with fidem habēbat.*

15. *ipsō praesente, in his own presence; ipsō refers to Diviciacus.*

18. *ipse: refers to Caesar; translate, that either he himself (be allowed to) decide, or to order the state to decide.*

2. *nē, not to; the clause is a noun clause, object of obsecrāre.*

*gravius, too severe.*

4. *dōlōris: genitive of the whole after plūs.*

*plūrimum possem, I was very influential.*

6. *quibus: to be translated not by a relative, but by a demonstrative.*

Istimātiōne vulgī. Quod sī quid ei ā tē gravius accidet, cum  
 10 ipse eum locum amicitiae apud tē teneō, nēmō existimābit  
 nōn meā voluntāte factum; quā ex rē tōtius Galliae animi ā  
 me āvertentur." Haec cum plūribus verbis flēns ā Caesare  
 peteret, Caesar ejus dextram prēndit; cōnsōlātus rogat finem  
 15 orandi faciat; tantī ejus apud sē grātiā esse ostendit ut et  
 rei pūblīcae injūriam et suum dolōrem ejus voluntātī ac  
 precibus condōnet. Dumnorīgem ad sē vocat, frātre ad-  
 hibet; quae in eō reprehendat ostendit; quae ipse intellegat,  
 quae cīvitas querātur prōpōnit; monet ut in reliquum tempus  
 omnēs suspiciōnēs vitet; praeterita sē Diviciācō frātrī con-  
 20 dōnāre dicit. Dumnorīgī custōdēs pōnit, ut quae agat,  
 quibuscum loquātur scīre possit.

#### CAESAR PLANS TO SURPRISE THE HELVETIANS

21. Eōdem diē ab explorātōribus certior factus hostēs sub  
 monte cōnsēdisse mīlia passuum ab ipsius castris octō, quālis  
 esset nātūra montis et quālis in circuitū ascēnsus quī cog-  
 nōscerent misit. Renūtiātum est facilem esse. Dē tertiā

9. Quod sī quid, but if anything.

ā tē, from you, at your hands.

13. rogat . . . faciat: translate as if *rogat ut faciat*; *ut* is sometimes missing in noun clauses after verbs of requesting and commanding.

14. tantī: of so much value, worth so much; the genitive of this word (in the neuter) as well as *parvī, magnī, quantī, plūris*, is employed to express indefinite value.

15. voluntātī ac precibus, to meet his wish and prayers; the datives are dependent upon *condōnet*. Explain the mood of this last word.

18. in reliquum tempus, for the future.

19. frātrī, for the sake of his brother.

20-21. agat, loquātur: subjunctives in indirect questions, while *possit* is subjunctive in a clause of purpose.

1. certior factus: remember that this phrase takes the construction of indirect discourse, *hostēs cōnsēdisse*.

3. in circuitū, on all sides.

quī cognōscerent: relative clause of purpose; supply *explorātōrēs* as antecedent of *quī*; the verb has for object the indirect question *quālis esset nātūra*.



vigiliā T. Labiēnum, lēgātum prō praetōre, cum duābus 5  
legiōnibus et iis ducibus quī iter cognōverant summum jugum  
montis ascendere jubet; quid suī cōsiliī sit ostendit. Ipse dē  
quārtā vigiliā eōdem itinere quō hostēs ierant, ad eōs con-  
tendit equitātumque omnem ante sē mittit. P. Cōnsidius,  
quī rei militāris peritissimus habēbātur et in exercitū L. 10  
Sullae et posteā in M. Crassī fuerat, cum explōrātōribus prae-  
mittitur.

THE SURPRISE FAILS, OWING TO THE MISTAKE  
OF AN OFFICER

22. Primā lūce summus mōns ā Labiēnō tenēbātur; ipse ab  
hostium castris nōn longius mīlle et quīngentis passibus  
aberat, neque, ut posteā ex captivīs comperit, aut ipsius  
adventus aut Labiēni cognitus erat; sed Cōnsidius equō ad-  
missō ad eum accurrit, dicit montem quem ā Labiēnō 5  
occupārī voluerit ab hostibus tenērī; id sē ā Gallicīs armīs  
atque insignibus cognōvisse. Caesar suās cōpiās in proxi-  
mum collem subducit, aciem instruit. Labiēnus monte occu-  
pātō nostrōs expectābat proeliōque abstinēbat. Caesar enim

5. prō praetōre, with *praetorian rank*. Labienus was Caesar's most  
trusted lieutenant. He had been assigned to Caesar's staff with the  
honorary designation *prō praetōre*, as if he had held the office of praetor  
in Rome.

6. iis ducibus, those men as guides.

7. quid suī cōsiliī sit, what his plan is; cōsiliū is genitive of the whole  
with *quid*.

10. rei militāris, in military affairs; the genitive is dependent on the  
adjective *peritissimus*.

11. M. Crassī: supply *exercitū*.

1. summus mōns, the top of the mountain; "the highest mountain"  
would be *mōns altissimus*.

3. neque: take with *aut . . . aut*, and neither . . . nor.  
*ut, as*.

4. equō admissō, with his horse at a gallop.

5. accurrit: connect this verb with *dicit* by supplying *et*. Look for  
another instance below of an omitted conjunction.

6. id, this fact; object of *cognōvisse*.

9. proeliō: what kind of ablative?

10 eum adventum suum expectāre jusserat, ut undique unō tempore in hostēs impetus fieret. Multō dēnique diē per explorātōrēs Caesar cognōvit et montem ā suis tenēri et Helvētiōs castra mōvisse et Cōnsidium timōre perterritum quod nōn vīdisset prō vīsō sibi renūntiāsse. Eō diē quō cōnsuērat  
15 intervāllō hostēs sequitur et mīlia passuum tria ab eōrum castris castra pōnit.

CAESAR TURNS ASIDE TOWARD BIBRACTE, PURSUED  
BY THE HELVETIANS

23. Postrīdiē ejus diē, quod omnīnō bīdū frūmentum supererat, rei frūmentāriae prōspiciendum existimāns, iter ab Helvētiis āvertit ac Bibracte, oppidum Haeduōrum, ire contendit. Nam hoc oppidum longē maximum et cōpiōsissimum  
5 erat atque nōn amplius mīlibus passuum xviii aberat. Ea rēs per fugitivōs L. Aemiliī, decuriōnis equitum Gallōrum, hostibus nūntiātur. Helvētiī, commūtātō cōnsiliō atque itinere conversō, nostrōs ā novissimō agmine Insequi ac lacessere coepērunt.

BOTH SIDES PREPARE FOR BATTLE

24. Postquam id animum advertit, cōpiās suās Caesar in proximum collem subdūxit equitātumque quī sustinēret hos-

11. Multō diē, *well on in the day*; this need not imply anything more than "well on into the morning."

13. quod: for *id quod*.

14. prō vīsō, *as seen*.

quō cōnsuērat intervāllō, *at the customary interval*.

1. ejus diē: this phrase may be omitted in translation.

bīdū frūmentum, *a two days' supply of grain*.

2. rei frūmentāriae: dative with *prōspiciendum (esse)*, must look out for; the verb is used impersonally.

8. ā novissimō agmine, *on the rear line*; the positions were now reversed, with the Helvetians following the Roman army.

1. animum advertit: this phrase is equivalent to *animadvertit* and takes *id* as a direct object.

2. quī sustinēret: relative clause of purpose.

tium impetum misit. Ipse interim in colle mediō triplicem aciem instrūxit legiōnum quattuor veterānārum; in summō jugō duās legiōnēs quās in Galliā citeriōre proximē cōnscrīpserat et omnia auxilia collocāvit; impedimenta sarcināsque in unum locum cōnferri, et eum ab his qui in superiōre aciē cōstitērant mūniri jussit. Helvētiī cum omnibus suis carris secūti impedimenta in unum locum contulērunt; ipsi cōfertissimā aciē, rejectō nostrō equitātū, phalange factā, sub primam nostram aciem successērunt.

### THE BATTLE BEGINS

25. Caesar primum suum, deinde omnium ex cōspectū remōvit equōs, ut aequātō omnium periculō spem fugae tolleret; cohortātus inde suos proelium commisit. Milites, ē locō superiōre pilis missis, facile hostium phalangem perfrēgērunt. Eā disiectā, gladiis dēstrictis, in eos impetum fecērunt. Gallis magnō ad pugnam erat impedimentō quod plūra eōrum scūta unō ictū pilōrum trānsfixa et colligāta erant; nam cum

3. in colle mediō, *half way up the hill*; *medius*, like *summus*, is one of the adjectives denoting a part.

triplicem aciem: these lines were arranged one behind another; each line consisted of about eight ranks.

7. eum: supply *locum*.

9. cōfertissimā aciē, *in closest array*.

10. phalange: a close formation, in which the mass was protected by the shields of the front rank held out before them and by the shields of the ranks behind held overhead.

1. suum: supply *equum*.

omnium: the officers only are meant.

2. aequātō . . . periculō, *by making the danger of all equal*.

5. gladiis: the most effective part of a Roman attack was with the sword, which was short and necessitated close fighting.

Gallis . . . erat impedimentō, *it was a great hindrance to the Gauls in the battle*; *impedimentō* is a dative of purpose or end; the subject of *erat* is the noun clause following, *quod . . . colligāta erant*, *that*, etc.

6. plūra, *in many cases*; the word limits *scūta*. In the phalanx formation the shields overlapped, thus making it possible for a javelin to pierce two shields at one time.

ferrum sē inflexisset, neque id ēvellere neque sinistrā impeditā  
 satis commodē pugnāre poterant; multī igitur, diū jactātō  
 10 brachiō, praeoptāvērunt scūtum manū ēmittere et nūdō cor-  
 pore pugnāre. Tandem vulneribus dēfessī et pedem referre  
 et, quod mōns suberat circiter mille passuum spatiō, eō sē  
 recipere coepērunt. Captō monte et succēdentibus nostris,  
 Bōi et Tulingī, quī hominum milibus circiter xv agmen  
 15 hostium claudēbant et novissimis praesidiō erant, ex itinere  
 nostrōs ab latere apertō aggressī circumveniēbant; id cōn-  
 spicātī Helvētiī, quī in montem sēsē recēperant, rūsus  
 instāre et proelium redintegrāre coepērunt. Rōmānī signa  
 bipertitō intulērunt; prima et secunda aciēs, ut victis ac sum-  
 20 mōtis resisteret, tertia, ut venientēs sustinēret.

#### DEFEAT AND FLIGHT OF THE HELVETIANS — CAESAR PURSUES

26. Ita ancipitī proeliō diū atque ācrit̄er pugnātum est.  
 Diūtius cum sustinēre nostrōrum impetūs nōn possent, alterī

8. *ferrum*: this refers to the iron head of the javelin, the neck of which was of softer metal than the tip.

*sinistrā impeditā*, with the left hand encumbered, ablative absolute; the shield was carried on the left arm.

9. *jactātō brachiō*, after tossing their arms about; ablative absolute.

10. *nūdō corpore*, with unprotected bodies.

12. *eō*: an adverb.

13. *Captō*: the verb is here used in the sense of reach, gain.

14. *agmen claudēbant*, brought up the rear.

15. *novissimis praesidiō erant*, served as a rear guard; two datives, one of reference, the other of purpose.

*ex itinere*, forthwith, at once; literally, from their march, i.e., without waiting to effect the usual battle formation.

16. *ab*, on.

18. *signa bipertitō intulērunt*, advanced in two divisions; how is it literally?

19. *victis ac summōtis*: referring to the Helvetians, while *venientēs* refers to the Boii and Tulingi.

1. *pugnātum est*: translate as if *pugnāvērunt*, they fought; or combine with *proeliō* and translate, a long and stubborn double battle was waged.

2. *alterī . . . alterī*, the one party . . . the other, referring respectively to the Helvetians and to the Boii and Tulingi.

sē, ut coeperant, in montem recēpērunt, alteri ad impedimenta et carrōs suōs sē contulērunt. Nam hōc tōtō proeliō, cum ab hōrā septimā ad vesperum pugnātum sit, āversum 5 hostem vidēre nēmō potuit. Ad multam noctem etiam ad impedimenta pugnātum est, proptereā quod prō vāllō carrōs objēcērant et ē locō superiōre in nostrōs venientēs tēla conjiciēbant, et nōn nūlli inter carrōs raedāsque matarās ac trāgulās subjiēbant nostrōsque vulnerābant. Diū cum esset 10 pugnātum, impedimentis castrisque nostrī potitī sunt. Ibi Orgetorigis filia atque ūnus ē filiis captus est. Ex eō proeliō circiter hominum milia cxxx superfuērunt eāque tōtā nocte continenter iērunt; in finēs Lingonum diē quārtō pervēnērunt, cum et propter vulnera militum et propter sepultūram oc- 15 cisōrum nostrī eōs sequi nōn potuissent. Caesar ad Lingonas litterās nūntiōsque mīsit, nē eōs frūmentō nēve aliā rē juvārent; aliter sē eōs eōdem locō quō Helvētiōs habitūrum. Ipse, trīduō intermissō, cum omnibus cōpiis eōs sequi coepit.

## SURRENDER OF THE HELVETIANS

27. Helvētiī omnium rērum inopiā adductī lēgātōs dē dēditionē ad eum mīsērunt. Quī cum eum in itinēre con-

5. cum, *although*.

āversum hostem, *an enemy in flight, the back of an enemy*.

6. Ad multam noctem, *till the night was well advanced*.

ad impedimenta, *at the baggage*.

7. prō vāllō, *as a rampart*.

15. occisōrum, *of the slain*; perfect participle as a noun.

17. nē . . . juvārent, *not to assist*; a noun clause depending on the idea of command in *litterās nūntiōsque mīsit*.

nēve: the regular word for *and not* between subjunctives in clauses of purpose, noun clauses of will, or indirect commands.

18. sē . . . habitūrum (esse): indirect discourse depending on the idea of saying suggested by *litterās . . . mīsit*.

eōdem locō quō, *in the same position as*.

2. Quī cum: translate as if *cum ū*.

convēnissent: usually an intransitive verb, but transitive here with *eum* as direct object.

vēnissent, sē ad pedēs prōjēcērunt suppliciterque locūtī flentēs  
 pācem petiērunt. Caesar eōs in eō locō quō tum essent suum  
 5 adventum expectāre jussit. Eō postquam pervēnit, obsidēs,  
 arma, servōs, quī ad eōs perfūgissent, poposeit. Dum ea  
 conquīruntur et cōferuntur, circiter hominum mīlia vi ejus  
 pāgī quī Verbigenus appellātur primā nocte ē castrīs Hel-  
 vētiōrum ēgressī ad Rhēnum finēsque Germānōrum conten-  
 10 dērunt.

### TERMS GRANTED THE HELVETIANS

28. Quod ubi Caesar rescīit, quōrum per finēs ierant, hīs  
 ut conquīrerent et redūcerent, sī sibi pūrgātī esse vellent,  
 imperāvit; reductōs in hostium numerō habuit; reliquōs  
 omnēs, obsidibus armīs perfugīs trāditīs, in dēditionem ac-  
 5 cēpit. Helvētiōs, Tulingōs, Latobrigōs in finēs suōs, unde  
 erant profectī, revertī jussit et, quod omnibus frūgibus āmissis  
 domī nihil erat quō famem tolerārent, Allobrogibus imperā-  
 vit ut iīs frūmentī cōpiam facerent; ipsōs oppida vicōsque

3. flentēs, *with tears.*

5. Eō: an adverb.

6. Dum ea conquīruntur, *while these were being hunted up*; remember that *dum* denoting a situation takes the present indicative, whatever the tense of the principal verb.

ea: neuter, because its antecedents are of mixed gender, one of them, *arma*, being neuter.

8. primā nocte, *at nightfall.*

1. Quod, *this*, referring to the fact related at the end of the preceding chapter.

quōrum . . . hīs: translate in the order *hīs per finēs quōrum*.

2. conquīrerent, redūcerent: supply as object *eōs*.

sī . . . vellent, *if they wished to be free from guilt before him*; *sibi* is dative of reference.

3. reductōs: agreeing with *eōs* to be supplied.

in hostium numerō habuit, *treated them as enemies*; i.e., he either put them to death or sold them as slaves.

6. omnibus frūgibus āmissis: they had burned all the grain except what they were going to take with them, 5, 5.

7. quō famem tolerārent, *with which they could prevent starvation*; the clause is descriptive, with an added idea of possibility.

8. facerent, *furnish.*

quōs incenderant restituere jussit. Id eā maximē ratiōne fēcit, quod nōluit eum locum unde Helvētiī discesserant 10 vacāre, nē propter bonitatem agrōrum Germānī, quī trāns Rhēnum incolunt, ex suis finibus in Helvētiōrum finēs trānsirent et finitimī Galliae prōvinciae Allobrogibusque essent. Boiōs in finibus Haeduōrum collocāvit; id enim petēbant Haeduī, quī Boiōs ēgregiā virtūte cognōverant; postea eōs in 15 parem jūris libertātisque condiciōnem atque ipsī erant recēpērunt.

### THE NUMBERS OF THE HELVETIANS AND ALLIES

29. In castris Helvētiōrum tabulae repertae sunt litteris Graecis cōfectae et ad Caesarem relatae, quibus in tabulis nōminatim ratiō cōfecta erat, quī numerus domō exisset eōrum quī arma ferre possent, et item sēparatim quot puerī, senēs, mulierēsque. Quārum omnium ratiōnum summa erat 5 capitum Helvētiōrum mīlium cclxiii, Tulingōrum mīlium xxxvi, Latobrigōrum .xiii, Rauracōrum xxiii, Boiōrum xxxii; ex his, quī arma ferre possent, ad mīlia nōnāgintā duo.

9. eā ratiōne, for this reason; explained by the noun clause *quod nōluit*, that he did not wish, etc.

11. nē, for fear that; introducing a clause of purpose.

13. Galliae prōvinciae: the two words are in apposition.

15. ēgregiā virtūte: ablative of description, in the predicate after *cognōverant*.

16. parem atque, the same as; atque and ac after words of likeness may be employed to mean as.

1. litteris Graecis, in the Greek alphabet; the Gauls had devised no alphabet of their own. The language of the records was of course Gallic. Familiarity with the Greek alphabet was due to intercourse with traders and with the city of Massilia, modern Marseilles, a Greek settlement in origin.

3. ratiō, list, record.

quī numerus exisset: an indirect question depending on *ratiō*.

4. possent: subjunctive in a relative descriptive clause.

6. capitum, of persons; but the word may be omitted in translation. Compare our use of "head" in speaking of cattle.

8. ad, about; used adverbially here and in 9.

Summa omnium fuērunt ad milia CCCLXVIII. Eōrum qui  
 10 domum rediērunt cēnsū habitō, ut Caesar imperāverat, reper-  
 tus est numerus milium c et x.

#### ENVOYS FROM GALLIC STATES CONGRATULATE CAESAR

30. Bellō Helvētiōrum cōfectō, tōtius ferē Galliae lēgātī,  
 principēs civitātum, ad Caesarem grātulātum convēnērunt et  
 ita locūtī sunt: "Tametsī prō veteribus Helvētiōrum injūris  
 populus Rōmānus ab his poenās bellō repetiit, tamen ea rēs  
 5 nōn minus ex ūsū Galliae quam populi Rōmānī accidit; eō  
 enim cōnsiliō flōrentissimīs rēbus domōs suās Helvētīi re-  
 liquērunt, ut tōtī Galliae bellum inferrent imperiōque poti-  
 rentur locumque domiciliō opportūnissimum ac fructuosissi-  
 mum dēligerent reliquāsque civitatēs stipendiāriās habērent.  
 10 Petimus ut tuā voluntāte nobis concilium tōtius Galliae in  
 diem certam indicere liceat: habēmus quāsdam rēs, quās ex  
 commūnī cōnsēnsū ā tē petere volumus." Eā rē permissā,  
 diem conciliō cōstituērunt et jūre jūrāndō, nē quis ēnūn-  
 tiāret, nisi quibus commūnī cōnsiliō mandātum esset, inter  
 15 sē sānxērunt.

10. cēnsū habitō, *when a count was made.*

2. grātulātum: supine, expressing purpose. What limitations are there with regard to the use of this construction? See app. 130.

3. prō, *in retaliation for.*

5. ex ūsū, *to the advantage.*

eō cōnsiliō, *with the purpose; cōnsiliō is explained by the clause, ut . . . habērent.*

6. flōrentissimīs rēbus: ablative absolute, which may be translated by a concessive clause, *although*, etc.

8. domiciliō, *for a home*, dative of purpose.

10. ut nobis liceat, *that it be permitted us*; a noun clause, object of *petimus*. The subject of *liceat* is the infinitive *indicere*.

11. ex, *by*; *ex* means *from*, (*starting*) *from*, and so easily comes to mean *in accordance with*, or *as here, by*; compare *ex ūsū*, l. 5.

13. jūre jūrāndō . . . inter sē sānxērunt, *bouna each other by an oath*; the substance of the oath is given in the clauses *nē quis ēnūntiāret, nisi quibus . . . mandātum esset, that none should announce their conclusions but those commissioned to do so by common consent.*



GALLIC ENVOYS APPEAL TO CAESAR FOR AID  
AGAINST THE GERMANS

31. Eō conciliō dīmissō, idem principēs civitātum quī ante fuerant ad Caesarem revertērunt colloquiumque sēcrētum petiērunt. Eā rē impetrātā, sēsē omnēs flentēs Caesarī ad pedēs prōjēcērunt: “Nōn minus volumus,” inquit, “ea quae dixerimus cēlāre quam ea quae petimus impetrāre, 5 propterea quod, sī ēnūtiātum erit, summum in cruciātum veniēmus.” Locūtus est prō his Dīviciācus Haeduus: “Galliae tōtius factiōnēs sunt duae; hārum alterius principātum tenent Haeduī, alterius Arvernī. Hī cum tantopere dē potentātū inter sē multōs annōs contenderent, ab Arvernīs 10 Sēquanisque Germānī mercēde arcessitī sunt. Hōrum primō circiter mīlia xv Rhēnum trānsiērunt; posteaquam agrōs et cultum et cōpiās Gallōrum hominēs ferī ac barbarī adamāvērunt, trāductī plūrēs; nunc est in Galliā ad c et xx mīlium numerus. Cum his Haeduī eōrumque clientēs semel atque 15 iterum armīs contendērunt; magnam calamitātem pulsī accēpērunt; omnem enim nōbilitātem, omnem senātum, omnem equitātum amīsērunt. Quibus proeliis calamitātibusque frāctī, quī et suā virtūte et populī Rōmānī hospitio atque amicitia plūrimum ante in Galliā potuerant, coāctī sunt Sēquanīs 20 obsidēs dare nōbilissimōs civitātis; jūre jūrandō autem civitātem obstrinxērunt sēsē neque obsidēs repetitūrōs neque auxilium

3. Caesarī ad pedēs, at Caesar's feet; Caesarī is a dative of reference, where we should expect a possessive genitive.

6. sī ēnūtiātum erit, if (what we say) is reported.

10. contenderent, had contended; multōs annōs has the same value as jam pridem and jam diū in giving the present and the imperfect tenses the meanings of perfects and past perfects.

11. mercēde, for hire.

14. ad, about; an adverb.

19. virtūte, hospitio, amicitia: ablatives of cause.

20. ante, before; an adverb.

21. obsidēs, as hostages.

22. sēsē, etc.: the substance of the oath is given in indirect discourse, that they would not ask back their hostages, etc.

ā populō Rōmānō implōrātūrōs, sed perpetuō sub illōrum di-  
 cione atque imperiō futūrōs esse. Ūnus ego sum ex omni  
 25 civitatē Haeduōrum quī addūcī nōn potuerim, ut jūrārem  
 aut liberōs meōs obsidēs darem. Ob eam rem ex civitatē  
 prōfūgī et Rōmam ad senātum vēnī auxilium postulātum,  
 quod sōlus neque jūre jūrāndō neque obsidibus tenēbar. Sed  
 pejus victōribus Sēquanīs quam Haeduīs victīs accidit, prop-  
 30 terea quod Ariovistus, rēx Germānōrum, in eōrum finibus  
 cōnsēdit tertiamque partem agrī Sēquanī, quī est optimus  
 tōtīus Galliae, occupāvit, et nunc dē alterā parte tertiā Sē-  
 quanōs dēcēdere jubet, propterea quod paucīs mēnsibus ante  
 Harūdum mīlia hominum xxiiii ad eum vēnērunt, quibus  
 35 locus ac sēdēs parantur. Futūrum est paucīs annīs ut  
 omnēs Galli ē finibus pellantur atque omnēs Germānī Rhē-  
 num trāseant; neque enim cōferendus est Gallicus cum  
 Germānōrum agrō, neque haec cōsuētūdō victūs cum illā  
 comparanda. Ariovistus autem, ut semel Gallōrum cōpiās  
 40 proeliō vicit, superbē et crūdēliter imperat, obsidēs nōbilissimī  
 cujusque liberōs poscit et in eōs omnia exempla cruciātūsque

23. illōrum = *Sēquanōrum*.

25. quī addūcī nōn potuerim: a relative descriptive clause.

ut jūrārem, *to take oath*; dependent on *addūcī*.

27. auxilium postulātum: for the supine with a direct object see the note on 11, 4.

29. pejus, *a worse fortune*; an adjective used as a noun.

31. tertiam partem agrī Sēquanī: this was a part of Alsace.

35. Futūrum est, *the result will be*; the subject is the noun clause ut . . . trāseant.

37. cōferendus: with the same meaning as *comparanda*, l. 39.

38. haec = *Gallica*.

39. ut semel vicit, *having once defeated*; this was probably in 60 B.C. Gallōrum: it is possible that this word is intended to include the Sequani. If so, it would mean that the Sequani had regretted their alliance with Ariovistus and had combined with the Haedui in an attempt to drive him back across the Rhine.

41. in eōs ēdit, *inflicts upon them*.

omnia exempla cruciātūsque, *cruelties of every kind*; literally, *all examples and cruelties*.

ēdit, sī qua rēs nōn ad nūtum aut ad voluntātem ejus facta est. Homō est barbarus, irācundus, temerārius; nōn possunt ejus imperia diūtius sustinerī. Nisi quid in tē populōque Rōmānō erit auxiliī, omnēs Gallī cōgentur, ut Helvētīi ante, 45 domō ēmigrāre, aliud domicilium, aliās sēdēs, remōtās ā Germānis, petere fortūnamque, quaecumque accidet, experīrī. Haec sī ēnūntiāta Ariovistō erunt, nōn dubitō quīn dē omnibus obsidibus quī apud eum sunt gravissimum supplicium sūmat. Tū vel auctōritāte tuā atque exercitūs vel recentī victōriā vel 50 nōmine populī Rōmānī cēterōs Germānōs Galliā prohibēre potes Gallōsque omnēs ab Ariovistī injūriā dēfendere."

### THE SAD PLIGHT OF THE SEQUANI

32. Hāc ōrātiōne ab Dīviciācō habitā, omnēs quī aderant magnō flētū auxiliū ā Caesare petere coepērunt. Animadvertit Caesar ūnōs ex omnibus Sēquanōs nihil eārum rērum facere quās cēterī facerent, sed tristēs, capite dēmissō, terram intuerī. Ejus rei quae causa esset mīrātus ex ipsīs quaesiit. 5 Nihil Sēquanī respondērunt sed in eādē tristitiā tacitī permānsērunt. Cum ab his saepius quaereret neque ūllam

42. ad nūtum aut ad voluntātem, at his nod or in accordance with his wish.

45. auxiliī: genitive of the whole; with *quid*, some assistance.

48. quīn, that; this is the regular meaning after a word of doubting with a negative.

dē, on; with *supplicium sūmat*; what is the literal translation?

50. recentī victōriā: the victory over the Helvetians.

51. Galliā: ablative of separation, with *prohibēre*.

1. habitā, having been delivered.

2. animadvertit: like some other verbs meaning "see," "notice," this verb may take indirect discourse, *ūnōs Sēquanōs facere*.

3. ūnōs, alone.

4. capite dēmissō: ablative absolute.

5. quae causa esset: indirect question, depending on *mīrātus*. Remember that the perfect participles of several deponent verbs are to be translated as present; so *mīrātus*, wondering.

7. saepius, again and again.

omnīnō vōcem exprimere posset, idem Diviciācus Haeduus respondit: "Hōc est miserior et gravior fortūna Sēquanōrum  
 10 quam reliquōrum, quod sōlī nē in occultō quidem querī neque  
 auxilium implōrāre audent absentisque Ariovistī crūdēlītātem  
 sicut praesentis horrent; reliquīs enim Gallīs fugae facultās  
 datur, Sēquanīs vērō, quī intrā finēs suōs Ariovistum recē-  
 pērunt, quōrum oppida omnia in potestāte ejus sunt, omnēs  
 15 cruciātūs sunt perferendī."

CAESAR RESOLVES TO STOP GERMAN ENCROACHMENTS  
UPON GAUL

33. His rēbus cognitīs, Caesar Gallōrum animōs verbis  
 cōfirmāvit pollicitusque est sibi eam rem cūrae futūram:  
 magnam sē habēre spem et beneficiō suō et auctōritāte adduc-  
 tum Ariovistum finem injūriīs factūrum. Hāc orātiōne  
 5 habitā, concilium dīmisit. Secundum ea multae rēs eum  
 hortābantur ad eam rem cōgitandam et suscipiendam: im-  
 primis, quod Haeduī, frātrēs cōsanguineīque saepenumberō  
 ā senātū appellātī, in servitūte atque in diciōne Germānōrum  
 tenēbantur, eōrumque obsidēs apud Ariovistum ac Sēquanōs  
 10 erant; quod in tantō imperiō populī Rōmānī turpissimum sibi

8. idem, *again*; literally, *the same (person)*.

9. Hōc: for the case see the note on hōc, 2, 6.

10. reliquōrum, *that of the remainder*.

12. sicut praesentis, *as if (he were) present*.

13. Sēquanīs omnēs cruciātūs sunt perferendī, *the Sequani have to submit to all cruelties*. Sēquanīs is a dative of agent, the regular construction used to express agency with the second periphrastic conjugation.

2. sibi eam rem cūrae futūram (esse), *that he would give attention to their case*; sibi and cūrae are datives of reference and purpose respectively.

3. sē habēre: indirect discourse, depending on a verb of saying implied in pollicitus est.

5. Secundum ea, *in addition to these things, i.e., the facts alleged by Diviciacus*.

7. quod, *the fact that*.

10. quod, *a thing which*; relative pronoun, neuter because referring to the fact contained in the preceding sentence.

et rei publicae esse arbitrābātur. Paulātim autem Germānōs cōnsuēscere Rhēnum trānsire et in Galliam magnam eōrum multitudinem venīre populō Rōmānō periculōsum vidēbat; existimābat autem hominēs ferōs ac barbarōs, omni Gallia occupātā, ut ante Cimbrī Teutonīque fēcissent, in prōvinciam 15 atque inde in Italiam exitūrōs esse, praesertim cum Sēquanōs ā prōvincia nostrā Rhodanus dīvideret; quibus rēbus quam mātūrrimē occurrendum putābat. Ipse autem Ariovistus tantōs sibi spīritūs, tantam arrogantiam sūmpserat ut ferdus nōn vidērētur. 20

### CAESAR IS REFUSED A CONFERENCE WITH THE GERMAN KING ARIOVISTUS

34. Quam ob rem, lēgātīs ad Ariovistum missīs, ab eō postulāvit ut aliquem locum medium utrīusque colloquiō dēligeret: velle sēsē dē rē publicā et summīs utrīusque rēbus cum eō agere. Et lēgātiōnī Ariovistus respondit: "Si quid

11. Germānōs trānsire: elsewhere in his commentaries Caesar says that at an earlier time the Gauls had made war on the Germans and had taken possession of territory on the German side of the Rhine.

13. periculōsum: predicate adjective after *esse* (to be supplied); the subject of *esse* is the infinitives with subject accusative preceding, *Germānōs cōnsuēscere et multitudinem venīre*; translate, *he saw that it was dangerous to the Roman people for the Germans gradually to form the habit of crossing the Rhine and for a large number of them to come into Gaul.*

15. ut, as; fēcissent is subjunctive in a subordinate clause in indirect discourse.

Cimbrī Teutonīque: these were the German tribes that Marius conquered. See his life, page 208, l. 15 ff.

17. Rhodanus, the Rhone (alone).

quibus rēbus quam mātūrrimē occurrendum putābat, *this state of affairs he thought must be met as soon as possible*; rēbus is dative with the compound verb *occurrendum* (*esse*), which is itself used impersonally.

20. nōn: take with *ferendus* and translate, *unbearable.*

2. medium utrīusque, *midway between them.*

3. velle sēsē, *he wished (he said).*

rē publicā, *affairs of state.*

summīs utrīusque rēbus, *questions of the greatest interest to both.*

- 5 mihi ā Caesare opus esset, ad eum vēnissem; sī quid ille  
mē vult, illum ad mē venīre oportet. Praetereā neque sine  
exercitū in eās partēs Galliae venīre audeō quās Caesar pos-  
sidet, neque exercitum sine magnō commeātū atque mōli-  
mentō in ūnum locum contrahere possum. Mihi autem mi-  
10 rum vidētur quid in meā Galliā, quam bellō vicī, aut Caesarī  
aut omnīnō populō Rōmānō negōtīi sit."

#### CAESAR SENDS ENVOYS TO ARIOVISTUS WITH DEMANDS

35. Hīs respōnsīs ad Caesarem relātīs, iterum ad eum  
Caesar lēgātōs cum hīs mandātīs mittit: "Quoniam in cōn-  
sulātū Caesaris rēx atque amicus ā senātū appellātus nunc in  
colloquium venīre invitātus gravāris atque dē commūnī rē  
5 dicere et cognōscere nōn vīs, haec sunt quae ā tē postulat:  
prīmum, nē quam multitudinem hominum amplius trāns  
Rhēnum in Galliam trādūcās; deinde ut obsidēs quōs habēs  
ab Haeduīs reddās Sēquanīsque permittās ut idem faciant;  
nēve Haeduōs injūriā lacessās nēve hīs sociīsque eōrum bel-  
10 lum Inferās. Sī id ita fēceris Caesarī populōque Rōmānō  
perpetua grātia atque amīcitia tēcum erit; sī Caesar nōn  
impetrāverit, Haeduōrum injūriās nōn negleget. Nam ex

---

5. *esset*: *quid* is the subject, *opus* is predicate nominative; translate, *if I needed anything of Caesar, I should have come to him.*

*sī quid ille mē vult*, *if he wishes anything of me*; *volō*, like some verbs of asking, may take two accusatives, one of the person, the other of the thing, provided the latter is the accusative of a neuter pronoun or adjective.

10. *quid Caesarī . . . negōtīi sit*, *what business Caesar has*; the clause is an indirect question depending on *mīrum*; *Caesarī* is dative of possession, and *negōtīi* a genitive of the whole with *quid*.

3. *rēx atque amicus appellātus*, *after receiving the title of king and friend.*

4. *invitātus*, *when invited.*

6. *nē . . . trādūcās*, *that you shall not lead*, etc.; this and the clauses following are noun clauses defining *haec*.

10. *Caesarī, populō*: datives of possession.

12. *impetrāverit*: *impetrāre* is often used without an object, *gain one's request.*

senātūs cōsultō, quod paucis ante annis factum est, quicumque Galliam prōvinciam obtinet Haeduōs cēterōsque amīcōs populī Rōmānī dēfendere dēbet.”

15

### ARIOVISTUS' DEFIANT REPLY

36. Ad haec Ariovistus respondit: “Jūs est bellī ut victōrēs victis quem ad modum velint imperent. Item populus Rōmānus victis nōn ad alterius praescriptum, sed ad suum arbitrium imperāre cōsuēvit. Si ego populum Rōmānum in ejus jūre nōn impediō, nōn oportet mē ā populō Rōmānō in 5 meō jūre impediri. Haeduī, bellī fortūnā temptātā, superātī sunt mihiq̄ stipendiārī sunt factī. Magnam Caesar injūriam facit, quī suō adventū vectīgālia mihi dēteriōra facit. Haeduīs obsidēs nōn reddam, neque iis neque eōrum sociis injuriā bellum inferam, si in eō manēbunt quod convēnit 10 stipendiumque quotannis pendent; si id nōn fēcerint, longē iis frāternum nōmen populī Rōmānī aberit. Quod mihi Caesar dēnūtiat sē Haeduōrum injuriās nōn neglētūrum, nēmō mēcum sine suā perniciē contendit. Cum volet, congregiātur; intellet quid invictī Germānī, exercitātissimī in armīs, quī 15 inter annōs XIII tēctum nōn subierint, virtūte possint.”

2. quem ad modum, in what manner.

velint: subjunctive by attraction, since its clause depends upon another clause in the subjunctive.

3. ad, according to.

8. quī dēteriōra facit, in decreasing; how, literally?

10. injuriā, without reason, unjustly; the ablative of some nouns may be used without a preposition to express manner; cāsū, by accident, is another.

si in eō manēbunt quod convēnit, if they abide by our compact.

11. longē iis frāternum nōmen populī Rōmānī aberit, the title of brothers of the Roman people will be of little value to them; literally, will be far away for them; frāternum = frātrum.

12. Quod, as to the fact that; with dēnūtiat, as for Caesar's threat that, etc.

14. congregiātur, let him come on, volitive subjunctive.

15. quid virtūte possint, how strong they are in valor.

COMPLAINTS BY THE HAEDUANS AND THE TREVERI  
OF GERMAN AGGRESSIONS

37. Haec eodem tempore Caesarī mandata referēbantur, et  
lēgātī ab Haeduis et ā Trēverīs veniēbant; Haedui querē-  
bantur, quod Harūdēs, qui nūper in Galliam transportāti  
essent, finēs eōrum\* populārentur: sēsē nē obsidibus quidem  
5 datīs pācem Ariovistī redimere potuisse; Trēverī autem dicē-  
bant pāgōs centum Suēbōrum ad ripās Rhēnī cōnsēdisse, qui  
Rhēnum trānsire cōnārentur; his praeesse Nasuam et Cim-  
berium frātrēs. Quibus rēbus Caesar vehementer commōtus  
mātūrandum sibi existimāvit, nē, si nova manus Suēbōrum  
10 cum veteribus cōpiīs Ariovistī sēsē conjūnxisset, minus facile  
resistī posset. Itaque rē frūmentāriā quam celerrimē potuit  
comparātā, magnīs itineribus ad Ariovistum contendit.

CAESAR SEIZES THE STRONGHOLD OF VESONTIO

38. Cum trīdūi viam prōcessisset, nūntiātum est ei Ari-  
ovistum cum suis omnibus cōpiīs ad occupandum Vesontio-  
nem, quod est oppidum maximum Sēquanōrum, contendere.  
Id magnopere sibi praecavendum Caesar existimābat. Nam-  
15 que omnium rērum quae ad bellum ūsuī erant summa erat in  
eō oppidō facultās, idemque nātūrā locī sic mūniēbātur, ut  
magnam ad dūcendum bellum daret facultātem, propterea

---

4. sēsē . . . potuisse: indirect discourse depending on a verb of saying implied in *querēbantur*.

obsidibus datīs, *by giving hostages*; ablative absolute.

9. mātūrandum (esse) sibi, *that he must make haste*; for the dative of agent compare 32, 13, and note.

10. minus facile resistī posset, *resistance could be made less easily*; *resistī* is an impersonal use of the passive.

1. viam: accusative of extent, further defined by the genitive of measure, *trīdūi*.

4. praecavendum (esse), *must be forestalled*.

5. ūsuī, *of use*; dative of purpose.

7. dūcendum: the verb *dūcere* is sometimes used with the meaning *prolong*.



quod flūmen Dūbis, ut circinō circumductum, paene tōtum oppidum cingit; reliquum spatium, quod est nōn amplius pedum DC, quā flūmen intermittit, mōns continet magnā 10 altitudīne, ita ut rādīcēs montis ex utrāque parte ripae flūminis contingant. Hunc mūrus circumdatus arcem efficit et cum oppidō conjungit. Hūc Caesar magnīs nocturnīs diurnīsque itineribus contendit occupātōque oppidō ibi praesidium collocat. 15

CAESAR'S ARMY PANIC-STRICKEN FROM STORIES  
OF GERMAN PROWESS

39. Dum paucōs diēs ad Vesontiōnem rei frūmentāriae commeātūsque causā morātur, nostrī Gallōs ac mercātōrēs dē Germānīs interrogant; illī ingentī magnitudīne corporum Germānōs, incredibīlī virtūte atque exercitātiōne in armīs esse praedicābant (saepenumērō sēsē cum hīs congressōs nē vul- 5 tum quidem atque aciem oculōrum dicēbant ferre potuisse); quibus ex vōcibus tantus subitō timor omnem exercitum occupāvit ut nōn mediocriter omnium mentēs animōsque perturbāret. Hic prīmum ortus est ā tribūnīs militum, praefec-

8. ut, as *if*.

9. spatium: object of *continet*.

10. pedum DC: genitive of measure in the predicate; it is to be noted that the comparative *amplius* is here used as an adverb and so without the ablative of comparison.

12. mūrus circumdatus, an *encircling wall*. A modern French fort is located at about this point.

1. ad, in the vicinity of.

3. magnitudīne, virtūte, exercitātiōne: ablatives of description, in the predicate.

6. aciem, *flash*.

9. tribūnīs militum: the military tribunes were officers in the army alone, and not to be confused with the tribunes of the people. They were men of less experience than the *legātī*.

praefectis: the prefects were officers of auxiliary forces, some of them Romans, some of the same nationality as their troops. The Roman prefects are meant in this instance.

- 10 tīs, reliquisque quī ex urbe amicitiae causā Caesarem secūtī  
nōn magnum in rē militārī ūsum habēbant; hī, variis causis  
domum proficiscendī illātīs, petēbant ut ejus voluntāte dis-  
cēdere liceret; nōnnūllī pudōre adductī, ut timōris suspi-  
ciōnem vitārent, remanēbant. Hī neque vultum fingere  
15 neque interdum lacrimās tenēre poterant; abditī in taber-  
nāculis aut suum fātum querēbantur aut cum familiāribus  
suīs commūne periculum miserābantur. Vulgō tōtis castris  
testāmenta obsignābantur. Hōrum vōcibus ac timōre paulā-  
tim etiam ī quī magnum in castris ūsum habēbant, militēs  
20 centuriōēsque quīque equitātū praecerant, perturbābantur.  
Quī sē ex hīs minus timidōs existimārī volēbant, dicēbant:  
“Nōn hostem verēmur, sed angustias itineris et magnitudi-  
nem silvārum quae intercēdunt inter nōs atque Ariovistum;  
timēmus etiam ut rēs frūmentāria satis commodē supportārī  
25 possit.” Nōnnūllī etiam Caesarī nūntiābant militēs propter  
timōrem neque castra mōtūrōs neque signa lātūrōs.

#### CAESAR HOLDS A COUNCIL OF OFFICERS AND ALLAYS THEIR FEARS

40. Haec cum animadvertisset, convocātō cōnsiliō omni-  
umque ordinum ad id cōnsilium adhibitīs centuriōnibus, vehe-

10. reliquīs: sons of good families who accompanied Caesar without performing military service.

12. illātīs, *alleging*.

13. ut . . . vitārent, a clause of purpose.

17. tōtis castris, *all through the camp*; some words in very common use may be employed as locative ablatives without a preposition to express the place where.

20. centuriōēs: the centurions were seasoned veterans who had been promoted from the ranks.

quique: for *et ī quī*.

21. Quī ex hīs, *such of them as*.

24. ut rēs frūmentāria . . . possit, *that grain supplies can not be brought up to sufficiently good advantage*; what is the meaning of *nē* after verbs of fearing?

1. omnium ordinum: it is evident that grades were recognized among the centurions; what the basis of distinction was is not known.

menter eos incūsāvit: "Vestrum nōn est," inquit, "aut quam in partem aut quō cōnsiliō dūcāminī quaerere aut cōgitāre. Ariovistus mē cōnsule cupidissimē populī Rōmānī amicitiam 5 appetiit; cūr hunc tam temere quisquam ab officiō disces-sūrum iūdicat? Equidem existimō, cognitīs meis postulātīs atque aequitāte condiciōnum perspectā, eum neque meam neque populī Rōmānī grātiā repudiātūrum. Quod sī furōre atque āmentīā impulsus bellum intulerit, quid tandem verē- 10 minī aut cūr dē vestrā virtūte aut dē meā diligentīā dēspērātis? Factum est ejus hostis periculum patrum nostrōrum memoriā, Cimbris et Teutonīs ā C. Mariō pulsīs; factum etiam nūper in Italiā servīlī tumultū, quī tamen aliquid ūsūs ac disciplīnae ā nobīs accēperant. Ex quō iūdicārī potest 15 quantum habeat in sē bonī cōstantia, proptereā quod quī aliquamdiū inermēs sine causā timēbantur, hī postea armātī ac victōrēs ā militibus Rōmānīs superātī sunt. Dēnique hī sunt eidem quōs saepenumerō Helvētīi nōn solum in suis sed etiam in illōrum finibus superāvērunt; quī tamen parēs esse 20 nostrō exercitū nōn potuerunt. Nēmō adversō proeliō et fugā Gallōrum commoveātur. Ariovistus enim multōs mēn-

3. *Vestrum nōn est, it is not for you; literally, it is not yours.* The subject of *est* is *quaerere* and *cōgitāre*.

7. *Equidem, for my part.*

12. *periculum, trial; with ejus hostis as dependent objective genitive.*

13. *Cimbris . . . pulsīs, in the defeat of the Cimbri and Teutons by Marius; the ablative absolute defines the occasion.*

*factum: supply est periculum.*

14. *servīlī tumultū, in the uprising of slaves.* This was a war in 73-71 carried on by an army of runaway slaves led by the gladiator Spartacus. The slaves in many cases were German prisoners of war or their descendants.

*quī: the antecedent is servōrum, implied in servīlī.*

*ūsūs, disciplīnae: genitives of the whole, depending on aliquid.*

16. *quantum bonī, how much good; bonī is genitive of the whole.*

*quī . . . hī: translate in the order hī, quī.*

20. *quī: the Helvetii; the sentence is a reference to the recent successful campaign against the Helvetii.*

21. *Nēmō commoveātur, let no one be disturbed.*

sēs castris sē ac palūdibus tenuerat neque suī potestātem  
 fecerat; deinde cum Galli dēspērārent jam dē pugnā et dis-  
 25 persi essent, subitō eōs adortus magis ratiōne et cōsiliō  
 quam virtūte vicit. Hāc ratiōne nē ipse quidem spērāt nos-  
 trōs exercitūs capī posse. Quī suum timōrem in rei frūmen-  
 tariae simulatiōnem angustiasque itineris cōferunt faciunt  
 arroganter, cum aut dē officiō imperātōris dēspērāre vide-  
 30 antur aut praescribere audeant. Haec mihi sunt cūrae; frū-  
 mentum Sēquanī, Leuci, Lingonēs subministrant, jamque  
 sunt in agris frūmenta mātūra; dē itinere ipsi brevī tempore  
 iudicābitis. Quod vōs signa nōn lātūrōs dicitur, nihil eā rē com-  
 moveor; quibuscumque enim exercitus nōn pārui, aut male  
 35 rē gestā fortūna dēfuit aut aliquō facinore compertō avāritia  
 est convicta; mea innocentia perpetuā vitā, fēlicitās Helvē-  
 tiōrum bellō est perspecta. Itaque quod in longiōrem diem  
 collātūrus fui repraesentābō, et proximā nocte dē quārtā  
 vigiliā castra mōvēbō, ut quam primum intellegere possim  
 40 utrum apud vōs pudor atque officium an timor plūs valeat.  
 Quod si praetereā nēmō sequētur, tamen cum solā decimā  
 legiōne ibō, dē quā nōn dubitō, mihique ea praetoria cohors  
 erit." Huic legiōnī Caesar et indulserat praecipuē et propter  
 virtūtem cōfidēbat maximē.

23. suī potestātem, a chance at him.

27. Quī: for ū quī.

in rei frūmentariae simulatiōnem, to a pretended concern about the sup-  
 ply of grain.

29. cum, since, in that.

33. Quod, as to the fact that.

nihil, not at all.

35. dēfuit: supply ūs, dative, has failed them.

aliquō facinore compertō avāritia est convicta, through the disclosure of  
 some misdeed avarice has been proved (against them).

36. fēlicitās: a Roman general set great store by his "good fortune."

37. in longiōrem diem collātūrus fui, what I was going to postpone.

43. legiōnī: dative with indulserat and cōfidēbat, both belonging to the  
 class of special verbs that govern the dative.

THE CONFIDENCE OF THE ARMY IS RESTORED —  
CAESAR MARCHES AGAINST ARIOVISTUS

41. Hāc ōrātiōne habitā, mīrum in modum conversae sunt omnium mentēs summaque alacritās et cupiditās bellī gerendī innāta est, princepsque decima legiō per tribūnōs militum eī grātiās ēgit, quod dē sē optimum iūdicium fēcisset, sēque esse ad bellum gerendum parātissimam cōfirmāvit. Deinde reliquae legiōnēs cum tribūnīs militum et primōrum ōrdinum centuriōnibus ēgērunt, ut Caesarī satisfacerent: sē neque umquam dubitāsse neque timuisse neque dē summā bellī suum iūdicium, sed imperātōris esse existimāvisse. Caesar, eōrum satisfactiōne acceptā et itinere exquisitō per Diviciācum, quod ex Gallīs eī maximam fidem habēbat, dē quārtā vigiliā, ut dixerat, profectus est. Septimō diē, cum iter nōn intermitteret, ab explorātōribus certior factus est Ariovistī cōpiās ā nostrīs milibus passuum IIII et XX abesse.

ARRANGEMENTS FOR AN INTERVIEW BETWEEN CAESAR  
AND ARIOVISTUS

42. Cognitō Caesaris adventū, Ariovistus per lēgātōs eī nūntiāvit sē jam in colloquium venīre velle; quoniam Caesar propius accessisset, sē id sine periculō facere posse existimāre. Nōn respuit condiōnem Caesar jamque eum ad sānitātem revertī pertināciāque dēsistere arbitrābātur. Diēs colloquiō

1. mīrum in modum, in a marvelous manner.

3. princeps, first; an adjective for an adverb.

6. cum tribūnīs ēgērunt, urged the tribunes.

7. sē . . . existimāvisse: indirect discourse, (saying that) they, etc.

8. suum, imperātōris: in the predicate after esse, was their own, but the commander's.

11. ex Gallīs: dependent upon eī; translate, of the Gauls, Caesar had most confidence in him.

12. cum iter nōn intermitteret, after an unbroken march; i.e., without taking the day of rest that would ordinarily fall within a period of seven or eight days.

14. milibus: ablative of measure of difference.

dictus est ex eō diē quintus. Interim saepe cum lēgātī ultrō citrōque inter eōs mitterentur, Ariovistus dixit sē insidiās verēri postulāvitque ut uterque cum sōlō equitātū ad colloquium venīret; aliā ratiōne sēsē nōn esse ventūrum. Caesar hāc condiciōne acceptā, salūtem suam tamen Gallōrum equitātū committere nōn audēbat; itaque legiōnāriōs militēs legiōnis decimae in equōs Gallōrum equitum imposuit, ut praesidium quam amīcissimum habēret. Quod cum fieret, nōn irrīdiculē quīdam ex militibus decimae legiōnis dixit:  
 15 "Plūs quam pollicitus est Caesar facit; pollicitus sē in cohortis praetōriae locō decimam legiōnem habitūrum, ad equum rescribit."

#### THE INTERVIEW—CAESAR'S ADDRESS TO ARIOVISTUS

43. Plānitiēs erat magna et in eā tumulus terrēnus satis grandis. Hic locus aequum ferē spatium ā castris utriusque aberat. Eō, ut erat dictum, ad colloquium vērērunt. Legiōnem Caesar quam equīs dēvexerat passibus cc ab eō tumulō  
 5 cōstituit. Item equitēs Ariovisti parī intervāllō cōstitērunt. Ariovistus ex equīs ut colloquerentur et praeter sē dēnōs ut ad colloquium addūcerent postulāvit. Ubi eō ventum est,

6. *saepe cum*: translate as if *cum saepe*.

9. *aliā ratiōne*, *otherwise*; literally, *on other terms*.

10. *Gallōrum equitātū*: Caesar's cavalry was composed, at various times, of Gauls, Germans, Spaniards. His infantry legions only were Romans.

16. *ad equum rescribit*: the words are capable of two meanings, *is enrolling us among the knights*, or *is enrolling us in the cavalry*. The knights, *equitēs*, were a social and semi-political order at Rome drawn from the well-to-do middle class that at an earlier period furnished the Roman cavalry. Admission to their ranks would be an honor. Now, however, as observed above, the cavalry was furnished by non-Romans, so that transfer to that branch of the service was no mark of distinction.

4. *equis*, *on horseback*.

6. *ut*: twice in this line *ut* is crowded out of its normal place at the head of its clause in order to emphasize other words, *ex equis* in one case and *praeter sē dēnōs* in the other.

7. *ventum est*: *they had come*; impersonal passive.

Caesar initiō orātiōnis sua senātūsque in eum beneficia commemorāvit, quod rēx appellātus esset ā senātū, quod amicus, quod mūnera amplissimē missa; "haec rēs," inquit, "et paucis 10 contigit et prō magnis hominum officiis cōsuēvit tribui; tū, cum neque aditum neque causam postulandi iustam habērēs, beneficiō ac liberālitate meā ac senātūs ea praemia cōsecūtus es. Veterēs iustāsque causās necessitudinis Rōmāni cum Haeduīs habent; multa senātūs cōsulta honōrifica in eōs facta 15 sunt; omni tempore tōtius Galliae principātum Haedui tenuerunt, prius etiam quam nostram amicitiam appetierunt. Populi Rōmāni haec est cōsuētūdō, ut sociōs atque amicōs nōn modo sui nihil dēperdere, sed grātiā, dignitāte, honōre auctiōrēs velit esse; quod vērō ad amicitiam populi Rōmāni 20 attulērunt, id iis ēripi quis pati potest?" Postulāvit deinde eadem quae lēgātis in mandātis dederat: nē aut Haeduīs aut eōrum sociis bellum inferret; obsidēs redderet; si nullam partem Germānōrum domum remittere posset, at nē quōs 25 amplius Rhēnum trānsire paterētur.

25

#### ARIOVISTUS CLAIMS THE RIGHTS OF A CONQUEROR

44. Ariovistus ad postulāta Caesaris pauca respondit, dē suis virtūtibus multa praedicāvit: "Trānsi Rhēnum," inquit, "nōn meā sponte, sed rogātus et arcessitus ā Gallis; nōn sine magnā spē magnisque praemiis domum propinquosque reliqui; sēdēs habeo in Galliā ab ipsis concessās, obsidēs ipsōrum 5 voluntāte datōs; stipendium capio jūre belli, quod victōrēs

9. *quod*, etc.: the *quod* clauses define *beneficia*.

18. *cōsuētūdō*: explained by the clause *ut . . . velit*, to wish, etc.

19. *sui nihil*, nothing that belongs to them; *sui* is a genitive of the whole; literally, of theirs.

20. *quod . . . attulērunt*, as for what they brought (with them) when they became friends of the Roman people. The antecedent of *quod* is the following *id*.

22. *nē . . . inferret*, that he should not make war, etc. This clause and the following explain *eadem*, l. 22

5. *ipsis*: i. e., the Gauls.

- victis impōnere cōsuērunt. Nōn ego Gallis sed Galli mihi bellum intulērunt; omnēs Galliae civitatēs ad mē oppugnandum vērunt ac contrā mē castra habuērunt; eae omnēs
- 10 cōpiae ā mē ūnō proeliō pulsae ac superatae sunt. Sī iterum experiri volunt, iterum parātus sum dēcertāre; sī pāce ūti volunt, inīquum est dē stipendiō recūsāre, quod suā voluntāte ad hoc tempus pendērunt. Amicitiam populī Rōmānī mihi
- 15 ōrnamētō et praesidiō, nōn dētrimentō esse oportet, idque hāc spē petiī. Sī per populum Rōmānum stipendium remittitur et dediticiī subtrahentur, nōn minus libenter recūsābō populī Rōmānī amicitiam quam appetiī. Quod multitudinem Germānōrum in Galliam trādūcō, id meī mūniendī, nōn Galliae oppugnandae causā faciō; ejus rei testimoniō est quod nisi
- 20 rogātus nōn vēnī et quod bellum nōn intulī sed dēfendī. Ego prius in Galliam vēnī quam populus Rōmānus. Numquam ante hoc tempus exercitus populī Rōmānī Galliae prōvinciae finibus ēgressus est. Quid tibi vis? Cūr in meās possesiōnēs venis? Prōvincia mea haec est Gallia, sicut illa
- 25 vestra. Ut mihi concēdī nōn oportēret, sī in vestrōs finēs impetum facerem, sic item vōs estis inīquī, quod in meō jure mē interpellātis. Quod frātrēs ā senātū Haeduōs appellātōs

7. ego: supply *bellum intulī*.

12. dē stipendiō recūsāre, to refuse to pay the tribute.

14. ōrnamētō et praesidiō, an honor and a safeguard; datives of purpose.

17. Quod: not because.

18. meī mūniendī: with the genitives of the pronouns *meī, tuī, suī, nostrī, vestrī*, the gerundive takes only the form in *-endī* without attempt to show actual gender; i.e., a woman speaking would say also *meī mūniendī causā*.

19. est: the subject is the following clause, *quod . . . vēnī . . . dēfendī*; *testimoniō* is a predicate dative of purpose or end served. Translate, *the proof of this is, that, etc.*

24. haec Gallia, this part of Gaul.

25. vestra: used instead of *tua* to include the Roman nation, not merely Caesar alone.

concēdī nōn oportēret, no concession should be made (me); *concēdī* is an impersonal passive.



dicis, neque bellō Allobrogum proximō Haedui Rōmānis auxilium  
tulērunt neque ipsi in his contentiōnibus quās Haedui mēcum  
et cum Sēquanis habuērunt auxiliō populī Rōmāni ūsi sunt. 30  
Neque tam barbarus neque tam imperitus sum rērum ut haec  
nōn sciam. Dēbeō suspicārī tē, simulatā amicitia, exercitum in  
Galliā mei opprimendī causā habēre. Nisi dēcēdēs atque  
exercitum dēdūcēs ex his regiōnibus, tē nōn prō amicō sed  
prō hoste habēbō. Quod si tē interfēcērō, multis nōbilibus 35  
principibusque populī Rōmāni grātum fēcērō; id ab ipsis per  
eōrum nūntiōs compertum habēō, quōrum omnium grātiā  
atque amicitiam tuā morte redimere possum. Quod si dēces-  
seris et liberam possessiōnem Galliae mihi trādidēris, magnō  
tē praemiō remūnērābor et quaecumque bella gerī volēs sine 40  
ullō tuō labōre et periculō cōnficiam."

#### CAESAR DEFENDS ROMAN AGAINST GERMAN CLAIMS

45. Multa ā Caesare in eam sententiam dicta sunt, quārē  
negōtiō dēsistere nōn posset: "Neque mea," inquit, "neque  
populī Rōmāni cōsuetūdō patitur ut optimē meritōs sociōs  
dēseram, neque iudicō Galliam potius esse tuam quam populī  
Rōmāni. Bellō superātī sunt Arvernī et Rutēni ā Q. Fabiō 5  
Maximō, quibus populus Rōmānus ignōvit neque in prōvin-  
ciam redēgit neque stipendium imposuit. Quod si antiquis-

28. bellō Allobrogum proximō: this war occurred in 62-61 B.C.

32. simulatā amicitia, while pretending friendship.

35. habēbō, I shall treat.

36. grātum, a welcome thing, a favor; an adjective used as a noun.

37. compertum habēō: translate as if *comperi*, and see the note on 15, 3.

1. in eam sententiam, quārē, to show why; quārē . . . posset is an indirect question; in eam sententiam means literally, in the direction of the opinion.

3. ut . . . dēseram: *patior* may take either an infinitive with subject accusative or a noun clause; translate as if *mē . . . dēserere*.

5. Bellō: in 121 B.C.

6. quibus: dative with a verb meaning "pardon"; from this dative an accusative is to be supplied as the object of *redēgit*.

7. antiquissimum quodque tempus, mere priority; literally, the time furthest back in each case. Since the Roman conquest in this region went back as far as 121 B.C., Caesar argues that Roman claims were better founded than German.

simum quodque tempus spectārī oportet, populī Rōmānī iūstissimum est in Galliā imperium; sī iudiciū senātūs observārī oportet, libera debet esse Gallia, quam bellō victam suis lēgibus ūtī voluit."

#### A TREACHEROUS ATTACK BY THE GERMANS ENDS THE INTERVIEW

46. Dum haec in colloquiō geruntur, Caesarī nūntiātum est equitēs Ariovistī propius tumultum accēdere et ad nostrōs adequitāre et lapidēs tēlaque in nostrōs conijcere. Caesar loquendī finem fēcit sēque ad suōs recēpit suisque imperāvit nē quod omnīnō tēlum in hostēs rejicerent. Nam etsī sine ūllō periculō legiōnis dēlēctae cum equitātū proelium fore vidēbat, tamen nōlēbat hostēs dicere posse, sī pulsī essent, sē ā Rōmānīs per fidem in colloquiō circumventōs. Ita colloquium dirēptum est. Postquam milītēs dē hīs rēbus certiorēs factī sunt, multō major alacritās studiumque pugnandi majus exercitui injectum est.

#### ARIOVISTUS ASKS FOR ANOTHER CONFERENCE — CAESAR SENDS ENVOYS INSTEAD — ARIOVISTUS THROWS THEM INTO CHAINS

47. Biduō post Ariovistus, ad Caesarem lēgātīs missis, nūntiāvit sē velle dē iis rēbus quae inter eōs agī coeptae neque perfectae essent agere cum eō; petīvit ut aut iterum colloquiō diem cōstitueret aut, sī id minus vellet, ē suis lēgātīs aliquem ad sē mitteret. Colloquendī Caesarī causa

10. victam, *although vanquished.*

2. tumultum: accusative; the adverb *propius* may govern an accusative.

8. per fidem, *through their faith in him; i.e., treacherously.*

11. exercitui injectum est, *was inspired in the army.*

2. agī coeptae essent, *had begun to be discussed; with a passive infinitive, coepti itself is most often put in the passive.*

4. sī id minus vellet, *if he were not quite willing for that.*

ē suis lēgātīs aliquem, *some one of his lieutenants; lēgātōrum, genitive of the whole, might have been employed.*

visa nōn est, et eō magis quod Germānī in colloquiō tēla in nostrōs conjēcerant. Lēgātum sēsē magnō cum periculō ad eum missūrum et hominibus feris objectūrum existimābat. Misit igitur Gallum quendam, C. Valerium Procillum, et propter fidem et propter linguae Gallicae scientiam, quā 10 multā jam Ariovistus longinquā cōnsuetūdine ūtēbātur, et quod in eō peccandī Germānis causa nōn erat, et ūnā M. Mētium, quī hospitio Ariovisti ūtēbātur. His mandāvit ut quae diceret Ariovistus cognōscerent et ad sē referrent. Quōs cum apud sē in castris Ariovistus cōspexisset, exercitū 15 suō praesente conclāmāvit: "Quid ad mē venītis? an speculandī causā?" Cōnantis dicere prohibuit et in catēnas conjecit.

#### CAESAR OFFERS BATTLE — ARIOVISTUS REFUSES — GERMAN CAVALRY TACTICS

48. Eōdem diē castra prōmōvit et milibus passuum vi ā Caesaris castris sub monte cōnsēdit. Postridiē ejus diēi praeter castra Caesaris suās cōpiās trādūxit et milibus passuum duobus ultrā eum castra fēcit eō cōnsilio, ut frūmentō commeātūque quī ex Sēquanis et Haeduis supportārētur 5 Caesarem interclūderet. Ex eō diē continuōs v Caesar prō castris suās cōpiās prōdūxit et aciem instrūctam habuit, ut, si vellet Ariovistus proeliō contendere, ei potestās nōn dees-

10. quā multā Ariovistus ūtēbātur, *which Ariovistus spoke fluently.*

12. in eō peccandī Germānis causa nōn erat, *in his case the Germans had no reason for doing wrong; Germānis is dative of possession.*

ūnā, *along with him; an adverb, in origin perhaps from ūnā viā.*

13. ūtēbātur, *enjoyed.*

14. diceret: *subjunctive in an indirect question.*

16. an speculandī causā, *is it for the sake of spying?*

17. Cōnantis dicere, *when they attempted to speak.*

4. eō cōnsilio, *with this purpose; cōnsilio is explained by the following clause, ut . . . interclūderet.*

7. ut ei potestās nōn deesset, *that he might not lack the opportunity; just as the dative is used with the verb sum to express possession, so it may be employed with the negative or opposite of sum.*

set. Ariovistus his omnibus diebus exercitum castris continuit, equestris proelio cotidie contendit. Genus hoc erat pugnae quod se Germani exercuerant. Equitum milia erant vi, totidem numero pedites velocissimi ac fortissimi, quos ex omni copia singuli singulos suae salutis causa delegerant; cum his in proeliis versabantur, ad eos se equites recipiebant; hi, si quid erat durius, concurrabant; si qui graviore vulnere accepto equo deciderat, circumstabant; si quod erat longius praeueundum aut celerius recipiendum, tanta erat horum exercitatio celeritas ut iube sublevati equorum cursum adaequarent.

#### CAESAR FORTIFIES A SECOND CAMP

49. Ubi eum castris se tenere Caesar intellexit, ne diutius commotum prohiberetur, ultra eum locum, quod in loco Germani considerant, circiter passus dc ab his, castris idoneum locum delegit acieque triplici instructa ad eum locum venit. 5 Primam et secundam aciem in armis esse, tertiam castra munire iussit. Hic locus ab hoste circiter passus dc, ut dictum est, aberat. Eo circiter hominum xvi milia expedita cum omni equitatu Ariovistus misit, quae copiae nostros perterrent et munitione prohiberent. Nihilominus seditius Caesar, ut

11. quod, to which, in which; ablative.

12. quos singuli singulos delegerant, whom they had chosen, one for each of them; singuli agrees with the subject of delegerant, i.e., equites understood, while singulos agrees with quos referring to the pedites.

14. versabantur, would engage; this and the following imperfects denote habitual action.

15. durius, more dangerous than usual; the comparatives in this passage are employed without any definite standard of comparison expressed; they are to be translated by "too," "more than usual."

16. si quod erat praeueundum, if it was necessary to advance to any place.

1. ne . . . prohiberetur: the clause states the purpose of delegit and venit.

3. castris: dative, dependent on idoneum.

7. expedita: the adjective limits milia, but should be translated as if expeditorum, in agreement with hominum.

8. quae copiae . . . perterrent: relative clause of purpose.

ante cōstituerat, duās aciēs hostem prōpulsāre, tertiam opus 10  
 perficere jussit. Mūnītis castrīs, duās ibi legiōnēs reliquit et  
 partem auxiliōrum, quattuor reliquās in castra majōra redūxit.

#### ARIOVISTUS CONTINUES TO REFUSE BATTLE

50. Proximō diē Institūtō suō Caesar ē castrīs utrisque  
 cōpiās suās ēdūxit paulumque ā majōribus castrīs prōgressus  
 aciem Instrūxit, hostibus pugnandi potestātem fēcit. Ubi nē  
 tum quidem eōs prōdire intellēxit, circiter meridiem exercitum  
 in castra redūxit. Tum dēmum Ariovistus partem suārum 5  
 cōpiārum quae castra minōra oppugnāret misit. Ācriter  
 utrimque usque ad vesperum pugnātum est. Sōlis occāsū  
 suās cōpiās Ariovistus, multīs et illātīs et acceptīs vulneribus,  
 in castra redūxit. Cum ex captīvīs quaereret Caesar quam  
 ob rem Ariovistus proeliō non dēcertāret, illi respondērunt: 10  
 "Apud Germānōs ea cōnsuētūdō est, ut mātres familiae  
 eōrum sortibus et vāticinātiōnibus dēclārent utrum proelium  
 committi ex ūsū sit necne; eae ita dīcunt: 'nōn est fās Ger-  
 mānōs superāre, sī ante novam lūnam proeliō contenderint.'"

#### CAESAR BY MARCHING ON THE GERMAN CAMP

##### PROVOKES ARIOVISTUS TO BATTLE

51. Postridiē ejus diē Caesar praesidiō utrisque castrīs  
 quod satis esse vīsum est reliquit; omnīs ālāriōs in cōnspectū  
 hostium prō castrīs minōribus cōstituit, quod minus multitu-

6. Ācriter . . . pugnātum est, both sides fought fiercely till evening; *pugnātum est* is an impersonal passive.

9. *quam ob rem*, why, introducing an indirect question.

11. *ut . . . dēclārent*: a noun clause explaining *cōnsuētūdō*, while *utrum . . . sit* is an indirect question.

13. *ex ūsū*, of advantage.

15. *superāre*: here used without an object.

1. *praesidiō utrisque castrīs*, as a guard to both camps; two datives, one of purpose, the other of reference.

2. *quod satis esse vīsum est*, what seemed a large enough force.

3. *multitudīne*: ablative of respect.

dine militum legionariorum pro hostium numero valēbat, ut  
 5 ad speciem alariis uteretur; ipse, triplici instructa acie, usque  
 ad castra hostium accessit. Tum demum necessariō Ger-  
 mani suās cōpiās castris eduxerunt generatimque constitu-  
 runt paribus intervallis, Harudēs, Marcomanōs, Tribocōs,  
 Vangionēs, Nemetēs, Sedusiōs, Suēbōs, omnemque aciem suam  
 10 raedis et carris circumdederunt, nē qua spēs in fugā relin-  
 queretur. Eō mulierēs imposuerunt, quae ad proelium pro-  
 ficiscentēs militēs passis manibus flentēs implorābant nē sē in  
 servitūtem Rōmānis trāderent.

#### PROGRESS OF THE BATTLE

52. Caesar singulis legionibus singulōs lēgātōs et quaestō-  
 rem praefecit, ut eōs testēs suae quisque virtutis haberet;  
 ipse ā dextrō cornū, quod eam partem minimē firmam hosti-  
 um esse animadverterat, proelium commisit; et ita nostri  
 5 acriter in hostēs signō datō impetum fecerunt, itaque hostēs  
 repente celeriterque prōcurrerunt ut spatium pila in hostēs  
 conjiciendī nōn darētur. Prōjectis pilis, comminus gladiis  
 pugnātum est. At Germānī, celeriter ex cōnsuetūdine suā  
 phalange factā, impetūs gladiōrum excēperunt. Repertī sunt  
 10 complūrēs nostri quī in phalangem insilirent et scūta manibus

4. *pro*, in proportion to, in comparison with.

5. *ad speciem*: the phrase expresses purpose.

10. *raedis, carris*: ablatives of means.

11. *Eō* = in raedās et carrōs.

*proficiscentēs*: with militēs.

1. *singulōs lēgātōs et quaestōrem*: Caesar had six legions and one quaestor; five legions were therefore commanded by lieutenants:

2. *eōs testēs*, these men as witnesses.

3. *ā dextrō cornū*, on the right wing.

5. *itaque* = et ita.

6. *pila*: object of the gerund *conjiciendī*, which depends on *spatium*.

7. *comminus gladiis pugnātum est*, they fought hand to hand with swords.

8. *ex*, according to.

10. *quī . . . vulnerārent*: a relative descriptive clause.

revellerent et dēsuper vulnerārent. Cum hostium aciēs ā sinistrō cornū pulsa atque in fugam coniecta esset, ā dextrō cornū vehementer multitudīne suōrum nostram aciem premēbant. Id cum animadvertisset P. Crassus adulēscēns, quī equitātū praeerat, quod expeditior erat quam il quī inter 15 aciem versābantur, tertiam aciem labōrantibus nostris subsidio mīsit.

### GERMAN DEFEAT AND FLIGHT—RECOVERY OF CAESAR'S ENVOYS

53. Ita proelium restitutum est, atque omnēs hostēs terga vertērunt neque prius fugere dēstitērunt quam ad flūmen Rhēnum milia passuum ex eō locō circiter v pervēnērunt. Ibi perpauci aut vīribus cōfisi trānāre contendērunt aut lintribus inventīs sibi salutem repperērunt; in hīs fuit Ariovis- 5 tus, quī nāviculam dēligātam ad ripam nactus eā profūgit; reliquōs omnēs cōsecūtī equitēs nostrī interfēcērunt. Duae fuērunt Ariovistī uxōrēs, ūna Suēba nātiōne, quam domo sēcum dūxerat, altera Nōrica, rēgis Vocciōnis soror, quam in Galliā dūxerat, ā fratre missam; utraque in eā fugā periit. 10 Fuērunt duae filiae; hārum altera occisa, altera capta est. C. Valerius Proculus, cum ā custōdibus in fugā trīnīs catēnīs vinctus traherētur, in ipsum Caesarem hostēs equitātū insequentem incidit. Quae quidem rēs Caesarī nōn minōrem

11. ā: with the same meaning as in l. 3.

14. P. Crassus: son of the M. Crassus who with Caesar and Pompeius formed the first triumvirate. Publius lost his life in 53 B.C. at the battle of Carrhae, in which the army commanded by his father was defeated by the Parthians.

16. labōrantibus nostris subsidio, *to the relief of our men in distress.*

2. prius: with *quam*; the two are commonly written as one word.

4. vīribus: ablative with *cōfisi*, *trusting in*; the same verb in the sense of *trust*, with a person as indirect object, takes the dative.

6. eā, *in it*; ablative of means.

7. Duae fuērunt uxōrēs: polygamy was not common among the Germans, being restricted to the chiefs.

13. in Caesarem incidit, *fell in with Caesar.*

- 15 quam ipsa victōria voluptātem attulit, quod hominem honestissimum prōvinciae Galliae, suum familiārem et hospitem, ēreptum ē manibus hostium sibi restitūtum vidēbat, neque ejus calamitāte dē tantā voluptāte et grātulātiōne quicquam fortūna dēminuerat. Is sē praesente dē sē ter  
 20 sortibus cōsultum dicēbat utrum igni statim necārētur an in aliud tempus reservārētur; sortium beneficiō sē esse incolu- mem. Item M. Mētius repertus et ad eum reductus est.

CAESAR PLACES HIS ARMY IN WINTER QUARTERS  
 AND GOES TO ITALY

54. Hōc proeliō trāns Rhēnum nūtiātō, Suēbī, quī ad ripās Rhēnī vēnerant, domum revertī coepērunt; ubi īī quī proximī Rhēnum incolunt eōs perterritōs sēnsērunt, īsecūtī magnum ex īīs numerum occidērunt. Caesar, ūnā aestāte  
 5 duōbus maximīs bellīs cōfectīs, mātūrius paulō quam tempus annī postulābat in hiberna in Sēquanōs exercitum dēdūxit; hibernīs Labiēnum praeposuit; ipse in citeriōrem Galliam ad cōventūs agendōs profectus est.

18. neque quicquam fortūna dēminuerat, *and fortune had not subtracted anything.*

19. dē sē ter sortibus cōsultum dicēbat, *said that the lots had been cast three times with regard to him.*

20. utrum . . . necārētur an . . . reservārētur, *as to whether he should be put to death with fire or reserved, etc.*

3. Rhēnum: the accusative of a place name may be governed by the adjective *proximus*; in 46, 2, the accusative with the comparative adverb *propius* occurred.

7. ad cōventūs agendōs, *to hold the (provincial) courts.* A governor of a province was also supreme judge in the provincial courts.



# REVIEW OUTLINE FOR FIRST YEAR WORK

## FIRST REVIEW LESSON

### VOCABULARY REVIEW

ager	equus	rosa	magnus	stō
amicus	fēmina	servus	meus	sum
aurum	filia	silva	multus	nōn
avāritia	innocentia	templum	ambulō	saepe
bellum	insula	verbum	amō	semper
cōnsilium	liber	via	dō	quod
dominus	nauta	victōria	habitō	ē, ab
ēloquentia	periculum	vir	laudō	cum
epistula	puer	bonus	portō	in

### REVIEW OF FORMS AND SYNTAX

- (1) First declension of nouns. App. 1.
- (2) Second declension of nouns. App. 2.
- (3) Adjectives of the first and second declensions.  
App. 6.
- (4) Present, imperfect, and future indicative active of the  
first and second conjugations. App. 26, 28.
- (5) Present, imperfect, and future indicative of **sum**.  
App. 31.
- (6) Agreement of the verb, App. 40.
- (7) Agreement of adjectives. App. 38 (1).
- (8) Nominative as subject or predicate. App. 41.
- (9) Genitive of possession. App. 42.
- (10) Dative with adjectives. App. 50.
- (11) Dative of indirect object. App. 49.
- (12) Accusative as direct object. App. 57.
- (13) Ablative of place where. App. 68.

## EXERCISES

1. Librōs bonōs laudāmus. 2. Ēloquentia dominī ab amicis meis saepe laudātur. 3. Fīlia servī in magnā insulā habitat. 4. Puer amīcō nautae epistulās dat. 5. Saepe in silvā cum puerō ambulō. 6. Verba mea ab amicis meis laudantur. 7. Bellum magnum est, et in periculō sumus. 8. Templum in magnā silvā stat. 9. Equōs dominī laudō, quod bonī sunt. 10. Fīlia dominī magnam rosam portat. 11. In agrīs et silvis cum amicis saepe ambulāmus. 12. Vir bonus nōn semper cōnsilium (*advice*) bonum dat. 13. Nautae nōn multum aurum portant. 14. Multī virī bella et pericula amant. 15. Vir aurum amat, sed avāritiam nōn laudat.

1. My friend loves good books. 2. The master gives a letter to the sailor. 3. The boy often walks in the street with the slave. 4. The woman praises [the large roses. 5. The master's daughter is in great danger. 6. The woman lives in the forest with the sailor's daughter. 7. Good men praise the words of my friend. 8. The slaves carry letters and gold. 9. The boy's horse stands in the street. 10. The woman gives much gold to the slaves.

## SECOND REVIEW LESSON

## VOCABULARY REVIEW

agricola	nāsus	hic	tuus	pugnō
aquila	numerus	ille	vester	videō
arma	oppidānī	ipse	accūsō	volō
barbarus	oppidum	lātus	aedificō	ē, ex
campus	patria	liber	dēmōnstrō	prō
carrus	poēta	longus	errō	sine
castra	puella	miser	habeō	et
causa	vīcus	noster	labōrō	sed
culpa	aequus	parvus	moneō	
filius	benignus	pulcher	mūtō	
folium	grātus	sacer	properō	

## REVIEW OF FORMS AND SYNTAX

- (1) Declension of *hic*. App. 20, a.
- (2) Declension of *ille* and *ipse*. App. 20 b, 22.
- (3) Present, imperfect, and future indicative passive of the first and second conjugations. App. 27, 29.
- (4) Possessive adjectives of the first and second persons. App. 19.
- (5) Apposition. App. 39.
- (6) Present active infinitive of the first and second conjugations. App. 26, 28.
- (7) Ablative of accompaniment. App. 70.
- (8) Ablative of agent. App. 66.
- (9) Ablative of place from which. App. 65.

## EXERCISES

1. Barbari saepe magna templa aedificant. 2. Agricola benignus puerō equum bonum dat. 3. Ab amicis accūsāmur, sed culpa nōn est nostra. 4. Oppidānī in agrīs nōn labōrant. 5. Filia huius servī est libera. 6. Poetae hōs campōs lātōs saepe laudant. 7. Oppidānī saepe monentur, quod barbari in silvīs errant. 8. Filius agricolae miser est et nōn labōrat. 9. Amicus meus multōs equōs pulchrōs habet. 10. Poeta in parvō vicō habitat. 11. Carrus puerō parvō grātus est. 12. Nōn sine causā patriam nostram amāmus. 13. Pueri properant, quod oppidum vident. 14. Magnam aquilam in silvā vidēmus. 15. Servus magnum numerum equōrum in agrō dēmōnstrat.

1. This farmer always has a large number of good horses.
2. Your son does not often work in the fields. 3. The boys are warned by the woman because they are in danger.
4. The man points out many beautiful villages. 5. That town has many broad streets. 6. The townspeople themselves often fight with the barbarians. 7. The men change their plans because they see the danger. 8. The poet's

daughter does not work, and she is censured. 9. Many boys and men are hastening from the villages and towns. 10. We are building a sacred temple in this forest.

### THIRD REVIEW LESSON

#### VOCABULARY REVIEW

aqua	nātūra	angustus	compleō	magnopere
barba	nihil	cārus	explōrō	numquam
bēstia	nūntius	clārus	invitō	nunc
dōnum	pecūnia	ferus	juvō	primō
fābula	pictūra	irātus	maneō	rūrsus
fossa	poena	is	moveō	tamen
Gallia	populus	parātus	nārrō	tum
Gallus	potentia	quattuor	occupō	ad
Germāni	pugna	Rōmānus	superō	ante
gladius	saxum	suus	terreō	circum
hortus	socius	vērus	timeō	per
inimicus	statua	quis	fortiter	post
locus	villa	clāmō	hodiē	aut

#### REVIEW OF FORMS AND SYNTAX

- (1) Declension of *is*. App. 20 c.
- (2) Declension of the interrogative pronoun and adjective. App. 24.
- (3) Perfect indicative active. App. 26, 28.
- (4) Possessives of the third person. App. 19.

#### EXERCISES

1. Multa dōna eī puerō dedī. 2. Ea fābula nōn vērā est, et periculum in silvā nōn timeō. 3. Hortus meus est pulcher, quod labōrō. 4. Inimicus meus poenam nōn sine causā timet. 5. Tum Gallī erant sociī populī Rōmānī. 6. Puerī nihil timent, et hunc locum explōrābunt. 7. Ferae bēstiae

saepe in hāc silvā videntur. 8. Socii nostri Irātī sunt, quod ad (for) bellum nōn parātī sumus. 9. Potentia patriae nostrae numquam timētur, quod bellum nōn amāmus. 10. Pictūram pulchram in villā poētae hodiē vīdī. 11. Quis hoc magnum saxum ex agrīs portāvit? 12. Illum puerum nōn invitāvi, quod amicus meus nōn est. 13. Eum iuvābō, sed numquam laudābō. 14. Multī virī clārī in hōc oppidō habitābant. 15. Puer epistolam ad poētā portābat.

1. This man has great power, but we do not fear him.  
 2. These barbarians are fierce, and they have seized our towns.  
 3. I was exploring the forest with your son.  
 4. There are many beautiful villas in our native country.  
 5. By whom (*singular*) has your daughter been invited?  
 6. We shall help our allies, because their danger is great.  
 7. This famous poet will not remain in our town.  
 8. The messenger was carrying money and a letter.  
 9. There are many large rocks in this place.  
 10. I shall see the statue and the pictures in the temple.

## FOURTH REVIEW LESSON

## VOCABULARY REVIEW

annus	Italia	stīpendium	augeō	rogō
auxilium	lēgātus	vīta	cēlō	vītō
beneficium	mora	adversus	convocō	vulnerō
Britannia	mūrus	aeternus	dūcō	anteā
concilium	porta	altus	expectō	cūr
cōpia	praemium	firmus	mittō	diū
domicilium	praesidium	honestus	necō	ibi
fortūna	proelium	novus	nūntiō	item
fuga	rota	periculōsus	postulō	longē
glōria	scālae	quīnque	probō	ubi
hōra	schola	septem	relinquō	vix
initium	scūtum	sex	renovō	ultrā
injūria	signum	tantus	repudiō	sī

## REVIEW OF FORMS AND SYNTAX

- (1) Past perfect and future perfect indicative active of regular verbs. App. 26, 28.
- (2) Perfect system of *sum*. App. 31.
- (3) Perfect system of regular verbs in the passive. App. 27, 29.
- (4) Present, imperfect, and future indicative, active and passive, of third conjugation *-ō* verbs. App. 28, 29.
- (5) Use of participles. App. 122-126.
- (6) Accusative of duration. App. 58.

## EXERCISES

1. Cōsiliū tuū ā lēgātō nūntiātum laudābitur. 2. Cōpiae nostrae nōn multōs annōs in Galliā manēbunt. 3. Cūr beneficia ab (*from*) hōc inimicō expectās? 4. Hic clārus poēta domicilium in Britannīā multōs annōs habuerat. 5. Post initium pugnae fuga erat periculōsa. 6. In eā scholā erant filiī multōrum virōrum clārōrum. 7. Sociīs auxilium dabimus et ab (*from*) sociīs auxilium postulābimus. 8. Multi hoc bellum nōn probant, quod nōn sunt amīci patriae nostrae. 9. Glōria Italiae et populī Rōmānī erit aeterna. 10. Propter moram sociōrum, Galli in proeliō superātī sunt. 11. Injūriās barbarōrum timēmus, et auxilium vestrum postulāmus. 12. Mūrōs et portās oppidī ex illō locō vidēbimus. 13. Mūrī sunt altī, et portae sunt lātae. 14. Praemia hīs puellis dabuntur, et multi eas laudābunt.

1. Shields are not carried in this war by our allies. 2. On account of your flight, the lieutenant was in great danger. 3. Why do you ask my help, if you do not fear? 4. We were awaiting our friends in the village. 5. We waited for five hours, but we did not see the signal. 6. I shall not demand so great a reward. 7. We shall reject the money, and we shall not send help. 8. A strong garrison has been left in the town, and the townspeople do not fear. 9. The sailor's son was in the battle and was wounded.

## FIFTH REVIEW LESSON

## VOCABULARY REVIEW

angulus	sagitta	dēfessus	excēdō	veniō
animus	sonus	Idem	faciō	bis
biennium	terminus	incognitus	fugiō	celeriter
captivus	flūmen	novem	gerō	interdum
caput	frāter	octō	interficiō	iterum
castellum	frūmentum	primus	jaciō	mox
corpus	Hibernia	āmittō	mūniō	nōndum
factum	Hispānia	audiō	oppugnō	postea
jūstitia	homō	capiō	pervenīō	statim
lāx	impedimentum	cingō	petō	inter
miles	iter	cōnficiō	pōnō	propter
nēmō	terra	condemnō	reperiō	trāns
rēgnum	tuba	contendō	scribō	-que
rēx	vāllum	dēfendō	tegō	

## REVIEW OF FORMS AND SYNTAX

- (1) Present, imperfect, and future indicative, active and passive, of verbs of the fourth conjugation. App. 28, 29.
- (2) Present, imperfect, and future indicative, active and passive, of -iō verbs of the third conjugation. App. 28, 29.
- (3) Declension of *Idem*. App. 21.
- (4) Third declension nouns with genitive plural in -um. App. 3 (1), (2).
- (5) Ablative of means. App. 72.

## EXERCISES

1. Is rēx cum populō Rōmānō bellum saepe gesserat.
2. Lēgēs patriae nostrae ā multis laudantur.
3. Frāter hujus hominis domicilium in Hiberniā habet, sed nunc in Britannia

est. 4. In eō itinere multa et pulchra oppida vīdī. 5. Eundem sonum iterum audiō. 6. Helvētīī impedimenta in castris reliquērunt, et haec ā Rōmānīs capta sunt. 7. Sī honestus es, lēgem nōn timēs. 8. Captīvī barbarī sunt, sed iustitiam patriae nostrae laudant. 9. In eō flūmine multī vītā amiserunt. 10. Factum ejus militis semper probābitur. 11. Nēmō castra dēfendit, et omnēs fūgērunt. 12. Lēgātus cum militibus mox in Galliam perveniet. 13. Saxa et tēla ab oppidānīs jacta sunt, sed militēs oppidum cēpērunt. 14. Terminum silvae mox vidēbimus et iter nostrum cōficiētur. 15. Militēs dēfessī ex proeliō excēdent.

1. On account of the nature of this place, we shall not remain long. 2. These men praise justice, but they themselves are not honorable. 3. The soldiers were leading the prisoners through the streets of the town. 4. The small villages will not be fortified, and they will be seized by the forces of the barbarians. 5. We heard the sound of the trumpet and we came quickly. 6. The camp is fortified by a high rampart and a wide ditch. 7. We saw the river from the rampart of the camp. 8. Our allies are waging war again with these barbarians. 9. The king led his forces across the river and attacked our camp. 10. My brother and your son were wounded by arrows in the same battle.

## SIXTH REVIEW LESSON

### VOCABULARY REVIEW

ancora	centuriō	legiō	multitūdō	stella
animal	collis	lūna	nāvis	tēctum
arbor	finis	lūx	nox	tempestās
avis	gēns	mare	nūbēs	timor
caedēs	hostis	māter	pars	urbs
caelum	ignis	mōns	pater	ācer
calcar	insigne	mors	pāx	celer



fēlix	tūtus	caedō	incendō	teneō
fortis	ego	canō	incipiō	trādō
laetus	sui	claudō	incolō	vincō
omnis	tū	cupiō	jubeō	ōlim
pauci	aperiō	dēleō	parō	quoque
potēns	appropinquō	dīvidō	retineō	juxtā
sapiēns	arō	expugnō	rīdeō	

## REVIEW OF FORMS AND SYNTAX

- (1) Third declension nouns with genitive in **-ium**. App. 3 (3), (4).
- (2) Declension of **vīs**. App. 3 (5).
- (3) Third declension adjectives. App. 7.
- (4) Declension of **ego** and **tū**. App. 17.
- (5) Reflexive pronouns. App. 18.
- (6) Ablative of time. App. 69.
- (7) Genitive of the whole. App. 43.
- (8) Complementary infinitive. 113.

## EXERCISES

1. Multa animālia inter arborēs silvae vīdi. 2. Haec avis pulchra est, sed nōn canit. 3. Frāter meus et pater tuus in Italiā eōdem annō erant. 4. Tē nōn dēfendam, quod hostis patriae es. 5. Propter tempestātem ancora nāvem nostram nōn tenēbat. 6. In patriā nostrā sunt magna flūmina et urbēs pulchrae. 7. Haec gēns tum Rōmānis incognita erat. 8. Ex eō colle ignēs vidēbantur. 9. Nōs pācem semper habēre cupivimus, sed vōbīs bellum grātum fuit. 10. Mare patriam nostram ab omnibus partibus cingit et dēfendit. 11. Multī in montibus et silvīs errāre cupiunt. 12. Hī fortēs agricolae agrōs suōs ab hostibus dēfendērunt. 13. Nūbēs in caelō erant, et lūnam nōn vidēbāmus. 14. Ōlim laetus erās, nunc miser es. 15. Propter timōrem mortis ex castris excessimus.

1. My house is on an island, among large trees. 2. From this hill we saw the sea and the ships. 3. We have come to the end of our journey, and we shall soon see our friends. 4. A multitude of barbarians came into Gaul and seized the lands (fields) of the Gauls. 5. We saw a great fire in the forest, and we sent a messenger to the village. 6. The boy is brave, and he will defend himself. 7. The legions have defeated part of the forces of the king. 8. The boy's mother fears the sea, because her father lost his life in a storm. 9. Who ordered you to give me this letter? 10. This river is swift and dangerous.

## SEVENTH REVIEW LESSON

## VOCABULARY REVIEW

altitūdō	mōs	facilis	mille	praeceđō
amicitia	nōmen	humilis	quī	prehendō
auctōritās	passus	malus	accipiō	prōceđō
civis	pēs	neuter	ascendō	rēgnō
cornū	pīlum	nūllus	circumveniō	repellō
dux	piscis	reliquus	commemorō	vāstō
exercitus	prōvincia	similis	condūcō	facile
flūctus	tempus	sinister	dēpellō	jam
hasta	virtūs	sōlus	dīcō	lātē
impetus	alius	tōtus	efficiō	quam
lacus	alter	ūllus	emō	satis
lātītūdō	dexter	ūnus	impediō	subitō
libertās	difficilis	uter	legō	contrā
manus	dissimilis	validus	pateō	dē
modus				

## REVIEW OF FORMS AND SYNTAX

- (1) Fourth declension of nouns. App. 4.
- (2) Declension of the relative pronoun. App. 23.
- (3) Comparison of adjectives. App. 10, 11.
- (4) Declension of comparatives. App. 12.

- (5) Adjectives with genitive in -ius. App. 9.
- (6) Ablative of respect. App. 76.
- (7) Ablative of degree of difference. App. 74.
- (8) Ablative of description. App. 77.
- (9) Accusative of extent. App. 59.
- (10) Genitive of description. App. 44.
- (11) Agreement of the relative pronoun. App. 38 (2).

### EXERCISES

1. Propter amicitiam quae semper fuit inter patrēs nostrōs, tē juvābō. 2. Hunc librum lēgī, et novum librum emere cupiō. 3. Auctōritās ejus virī clārī in urbe nostrā semper magna fuit. 4. Cīvis Rōmānus sum, et praesidium lēgum postulō. 5. In hōc parvō lacū sunt multī piscēs. 6. Hic puer nōn multa mīlia passuum ambulābit, quod parvus est. 7. In aliō locō, ubi mūrus humilior est, oppidum oppugnābimus. 8. Nōmen ejus ducis saepe audīvī, sed numquam eum vidī. 9. Propter lātitudinem fossae quae castra cingit, hostēs impetum nōn facient. 10. Mōrēs hōrum hominum ā nullō cīve honestō laudantur. 11. Quid in manū tenēs? Pilum Rōmānum in manū teneō. 12. Mōrēs nostrī et (mōrēs) barbarōrum dissimillimī sunt. 13. Propter vīrtutem mīlitum nostrōrum, hostēs mox fugient. 14. Reliquī cīvēs patriam amant, et (eam) dēfendent. 15. Eō tempore exercitum parvum habēbāmus, sed nunc ad (*for*) bellum parātī sumus.

1. On account of the height of the wall, the town was safe. 2. The legion which was in the province had often fought with these barbarians. 3. From that hill we heard the sound of the waves, and we saw the ships. 4. We love liberty, and we will fight for (*prō*) liberty. 5. Between these high mountains there is a beautiful lake. 6. The enemy fear the leader whom we have sent. 7. My friend ascended the mountain which you see across the river. 8. I have said this because I love my country. 9. I have received the letter which you sent. 10. We shall easily ward off all attacks in this place.

## EIGHTH REVIEW LESSON

## VOCABULARY REVIEW

cāsus	respōnsum	varius	dēligō	servō
cīvitās	ripa	decem	ēgredior	ūtor
cohors	Rōma	absum	implōrō	vereor
colloquium	uxor	agō	inveniō	vīvō
cōnsul	vulnus	arbitror	lūdō	ācriter
diēs	vōx	cognōscō	migrō	bene
equitātus	armātus	condō	polliceor	hīc
imperātor	brevis	cōnor	potior	igitur
liberī	gravis	cōstituō	praemittō	itaque
lingua	idōneus	crēdō	reddō	male
praeda	invītus	currō	sequor	postquam
rēs	tot			

## REVIEW OF FORMS AND SYNTAX

- (1) Comparison of adverbs. App. 13, 14.
- (2) Present participle. App. 26, 28.
- (3) Fifth declension of nouns. App. 5.
- (4) Deponent verbs. App. 30.
- (5) Infinitives of the four conjugations. App. 26, 27, 28, 29.
- (6) Ablative absolute. App. 75.
- (7) Ablative with *ūtor*, *fruor*, etc. App. 79.
- (8) Indirect discourse. App. 121.

## EXERCISES

1. Puer in ripā flūminis cum patre stābat. 2. Hāc novā urbe conditā, multī ex omnibus partibus vērērunt. 3. Paucōs diēs in oppidō tuō mānsī, et multōs amicōs ibi vidī. 4. Liberī ejus rēgis quī hostēs dūxerat in castris captī sunt. 5. Epistulam tuam accēpī, et respōnsum mox reddam. 6. Rōmānī brevibus gladiīs et parvis scūtīs in proeliō ūsī sunt. 7. Oppidānī gravia saxa in mūrō posuerant, et impetum nostrum

expectābant. 8. In legiōne Rōmānā erant decem cohortēs. 9. Cohortēs et legiōnēs ā centuriōnibus et lēgātīs ductae sunt. 10. Aurum in eis montibus inventum est qui nōn longē ab illā urbe absunt. 11. Equitātus noster equōs idōneōs nōn habet. 12. Lingua nostra et lingua eōrum barbarōrum dissimillimae sunt. 13. Imperātor fortis est, sed imperātor sine exercitū parātō nihil efficiet. 14. Hostēs crēdidērunt nōs bellum verēri. 15. Lēgātus cum equitātū hostēs fugientēs secūtus est.

1. The general's wife came to (in) the camp with her son. 2. We found much booty in these towns which we captured. 3. When the centurion was killed (the centurion having been killed), the cohort fled. 4. We followed these animals through the forest for many hours. 5. The men who promised their help at this time are true friends. 6. I was not in the army, and I did not receive this wound in war. 7. The lieutenant saw armed forces on the mountain, and he thought that they were Gauls. 8. Many wished to migrate from their native country, but others were unwilling. 9. We have gained possession of the letters which were sent by these men. 10. This answer having been given, the general at once withdrew.

## NINTH REVIEW LESSON

## VOCABULARY REVIEW

aciēs	mēnsis	victor	plānus	coepī
adventus	obses	acūtus	profundus	eō
aestās	pōns	avārus	proximus	ēripiō
arcus	rēgina	commūnis	quīdam	exeō
ars	salūs	duplex	quisque	faveō
calamitās	situs	ferōx	addō	instruō
canis	soror	fertilis	aggredior	jungō
dēns	vallēs	frigidus	cadō	metuō
hiems	ventus	ingēns	concurrō	morior

noceō	praeficiō	sciō	herī	ūnā
pāreō	praesum	spērō	inde	nam
persuādeō	queror	trānseō	libenter	neque
placeō	redeō	deinde	sic	
possum	resistō	dēnique	simul	

## REVIEW OF FORMS AND SYNTAX

- (1) Conjugation of **possum**. App. 32.
- (2) Conjugation of **eō**. App. 35.
- (3) Declension of **quidam**. App. 25 c.
- (4) Declension of **quisque**. App. 25 a.
- (5) Present imperative. App. 26, 28.
- (6) Dative with special verbs. App. 51.
- (7) Dative with compounds. App. 55.
- (8) Vocative. App. 80.
- (9) Ablative of separation. App. 64.

## EXERCISES

1. In terrā Helvētiōrum sunt altī montēs et fertilēs vallēs.  
 2. Situs ejus vicī est in ripā parvī flūminis. 3. Hī hominēs  
 nōn habent amīcōs, quod avārī sunt. 4. Hieme in hīs monti-  
 bus sunt magnī ventī. 5. Ante adventum patrum nostrōrum  
 erant nullae urbēs magnae in hāc terrā. 6. Omnēs in oppida  
 et vicōs concurrerunt, quod periculum commūne vidērunt.  
 7. Arcus quem puer habet ā patre suō datus est. 8. Val-  
 lem trānsiimus et collem ascendimus. 9. Mare profundum  
 terram nostram ab Āfricā dividit. 10. Hae artēs quās laudās  
 nōn bonae sunt. 11. Propter bellum mare eō annō trānsire  
 nōn poterāmus. 12. Cōsul quī exercitū eō diē praeerat  
 numquam in proeliō superātus est. 13. Haec magna saxa dē  
 monte ceciderunt quem vidēs.

1. The bridge has been burned, and no one can cross the river.
2. We could hear the sound of the wind in the trees.
3. I have begun to read the book which your sister gave me.
4. The army was defeated because the soldiers did not obey

the general. 5. Each sought the first place and hastened to depart from the camp. 6. The soldier has never used a sword, but he will try to defend himself. 7. A certain man left this letter in the village yesterday. 8. The hostages were killed by the barbarians without cause. 9. The messenger remains in the street because he fears your dog. 10. The Romans made an attack on that part of the Helvetians which had not yet crossed the river.

## TENTH REVIEW LESSON

## VOCABULARY REVIEW

bōs	majōrēs	cupidus	cōnfiteor	loquor
celeritās	opus	externus	conveniō	pereō
cibus	ōrātiō	fidēlis	creō	quaerō
corōna	ōrātor	finitimus	dēbeō	rebellō
cūra	portus	necessārius	dēscendō	soleō
crūdēlitās	senātus	vacuus	dīmittō	volō
deus	sōl	aliquis	discēdō	clam
dictātor	spēs	accēdō	expellō	cotidiē
diligentia	stultitia	appellō	ferō	etiam
dolor	tyrannus	audeō	fiō	quotannis
flōs	vīnum	bellō	fugō	intrā
gaudium	voluntās	committō	gaudeō	nisi
juvenis	civīlis	cōnferō	ingredior	quamquam
lacrima	contentus	cōnfidō	inferō	ut

## REVIEW OF FORMS AND SYNTAX

- (1) Semi-deponent verbs. App. 30 a.
- (2) Conjugation of *ferō*. App. 34.
- (3) Conjugation of *fiō*. App. 36.
- (4) Conjugation of *volō*. App. 37.
- (5) Declension of *aliquis*. App. 25 d.
- (6) Cardinal numerals. App. 15.
- (7) Ordinal numerals. App. 15.

- (8) The gerund. 127.
- (9) Ablative of cause. 78.
- (10) Ablative of manner. 71.

### EXERCISES

1. Canis meus fidēlis est, et mē in periculō dēfendēt.  
2. In urbe diūtius manēre nōn audēs, quod omnēs arbitran-  
tur tē esse tyrannum. 3. Juvenis quem vidēs est filius frā-  
tris mei. 4. Militēs in exercitū nostrō vinō nōn ūtuntur.  
5. Pācem habēre volumus, sed hōc tempore spēs pācis nōn  
magna est. 6. In eā valle quae inter illōs collēs est, flōrēs  
pulchrī saepe inveniuntur. 7. Ōrātor bonus nōn semper cīvis  
bonus est. 8. Vir fortis et sapiēns creātus est dictātor, et is  
mox cōpiās hostium fugābit. 9. Quod templa deōrum et  
tēcta cīvium dēfendī, pater patriae appellātus sum. 10.  
Bovēs quī in colle errant frātris mei sunt. 11. Oppidānī ē  
tēctis fūgērunt, et oppidum vacuum erat. 12. Hās ōrātiōnēs  
magnā (cum) cūrā lēgī, et iterum legam. 13. Exercitus in  
his locis cibum reperire poterit, et militēs castra mūnient.  
14. Gallī dīxērunt sē frūmentum cōnferre. 15. Exercitus ex  
periculō eō diē ab imperātōre sapiente ēreptus est.

1. We heard the sound of the trumpet, and we returned to  
(in) camp with great speed. 2. On account of the great  
storm our ship remained in harbor two days. 3. You have  
money and friends, but you are not satisfied. 4. We shall  
elect two consuls yearly, and we shall have no king. 5. I  
have always been faithful, but I confess that I have not  
been wise. 6. The folly of certain men in the senate was the  
cause of this danger. 7. I have often talked with your  
brother who lives in this city. 8. In the winter these animals  
descend from the mountains into the valleys. 9. You are an  
enemy of the country (*patria*), and you will be driven out.  
10. I do not trust the man (*dative*) to whom you have given  
this letter.



## LISTS OF ENGLISH DERIVATIVES FROM LATIN

**NOTE.**— The following lists do not include all the words of Latin origin which are to be found among the terms employed in textbooks of the subjects named. They do, however, contain the greater number of those in common use. The Latin word which is given to explain the derivation is not always the word from which the English word is directly derived. For example, *capacity* is derived from *capiō* through the adjective *capāx* and the noun *capācītās*. So far as possible the derivation is given by indicating the connection with a word which is likely to be familiar to the pupil or which shows the fundamental idea appearing in the English word. Definitions are given only for those Latin words with which the pupil is not likely to be familiar from first-year work.

A number of grammatical terms of Latin derivation are omitted for the reason that the pupil will not easily trace the connection between the meaning of the original Latin and the derived English word.

### WORDS OF LATIN DERIVATION USED IN GEOGRAPHY

adaptation, <i>ad: aptō</i> , fit, adjust	aqueous, <i>aqua</i>
aggradation, <i>ad: gradior</i> , step, go. (An area goes to a higher level by continual additions to its surface)	area, <i>ārea</i> , an open space
agriculture, <i>ager: cultūra</i> , cultivation	artificial, <i>ars: faciō</i>
alluvial, <i>ad: luō</i> , wash	axis, <i>axis</i> , axle
animal, <i>animal</i>	canal, <i>canālis</i> , pipe (for conveying water); channel
annual, <i>annus</i>	capacity, <i>capiō</i>
	carnivorous, <i>carō</i> (genitive <i>carnis</i> ), flesh; <i>vorō</i> , devour
	cave, <i>cavus</i> , hollow

central, <i>centrum</i> , center	derive, <i>dērivō</i> ( <i>rīvus</i> , stream),
cereal, <i>Cerēs</i> (goddess of harvests and of grain)	draw off
chart, <i>charta</i> , paper	desert, <i>dēserō</i> (past participle, <i>dēsertum</i> ), abandon
circulation, <i>circulus</i> , circle	disintegration, <i>dis-</i> , apart, not:
cirrus, <i>cirrus</i> , a curl	<i>integrō</i> , make whole
colluvial, <i>con-</i> , together: <i>luō</i> , wash	dissect, <i>dis-</i> : <i>secō</i> , cut
coloration, <i>colōrō</i> , give color to	domestic, <i>domus</i> , home
commerce, <i>commercium</i> , traffic	equator, <i>aequus</i> <sup>1</sup> , level, even,
concrete, <i>concrētum</i> , solid matter	equal
condensation, <i>con-</i> , with, together: <i>dēnsō</i> , make thick	estuary, <i>aestus</i> <sup>1</sup> , tide
conglomerate, <i>con-</i> , with, together: <i>glomerō</i> , roll together, collect	fertilize, <i>fertilis</i> , fertile
coniferous, <i>cōnus</i> , cone: <i>ferō</i>	glacier, <i>glaciēs</i> , ice
conservation, <i>cōnservō</i> , preserve	globular, <i>globus</i> , ball
continent, <i>contineō</i> , hold together	gradation, <i>gradior</i> , step
crater, <i>crāter</i> , bowl	gravity, <i>gravitās</i> , weight
culture, <i>cultūra</i> , cultivation	herbivorous, <i>herba</i> , herb: <i>vorō</i> , devour
cumulus, <i>cumulus</i> , a heap	humus, <i>humus</i> , earth
current, <i>currō</i> , run	igneous, <i>ignis</i> , fire
	industry, <i>industria</i>
	interior, <i>interior</i> , inner, inner part of
	intermediate, <i>inter</i> : <i>medius</i> , middle
	international, <i>inter</i> : <i>nātiō</i> , nation
date, <i>datum</i> (participle of <i>dō</i> , give)	irrigation, <i>in</i> : <i>rigō</i> , moisten
deposition, <i>dē</i> , down from, down: <i>pōnō</i> , place	latitude, <i>lātitudō</i> , width, breadth <sup>2</sup>

<sup>1</sup> The Latin diphthong *ae* is commonly represented by *e* in English derivatives.

<sup>2</sup> In the ancient maps the earth is represented as of greater extent from east to west than from north to south. That is, it had length east and west and breadth north and south. Hence the location of a place east or west of a standard meridian is *longitude* and its location north or south of the equator is *latitude*.

lignite, *lignum*, wood  
 line, *līnea*, linen thread; line  
 longitude, *longitūdō*, length  
 marine, *marīnus*, of the sea  
 mature, *mātūrus*, ripe  
 Mediterranean, *medius*, middle: *terra*  
 migration, *migrō*, move  
 native, *nātivus*, produced by nature, native  
 natural, *nātūra*  
 navigation, *nāvigō*, sail  
 nimbus, *nimbus*, rain-storm, cloud  
 ocean, *Ōceanus*, ocean  
 palm, *palma*, palm, palm tree  
 port, *portus*, harbor  
 pressure, *pressō* (past participle, *pressum*), press  
 procession, *prōcēdō* (past participle, *prōcessum*), go forward  
 projection, *prōjiciō* (past participle, *prōjectum*), throw forward, extend  
 protection, *protegō* (past participle, *prōtēctum*), cover before, protect

province, *prōvincia*, province  
 region, *regiō*, region  
 relation, *relātiō*, bringing back; relation  
 residual, *resideō*, remain behind  
 revolution, *revolvō* (past participle, *revolūtum*), roll back, return  
 rodent, *rōdō*, gnaw  
 rotation, *rola*, wheel  
 sedentary, *sedeō*, sit  
 sediment, *sedeō*, sit  
 solar, *sōl*  
 species, *speciēs*, kind  
 structure, *struō* (past participle, *strūctum*), heap up  
 strata, *strātum*, layer  
 substratum, *sub*, under: *strātum*, layer  
 superior, *superior*, higher, upper  
 temperature, *temperō*, be moderate, be restrained  
 terminal, *terminus*, end  
 transportation, *trānsportō*, convey across  
 utilization, *ūtilis*, useful

#### WORDS OF LATIN DERIVATION USED IN ELEMENTARY SCIENCE

absolute, *absolvō* (past participle, *absolūtum*), set free  
 absorption, *absorbeō* (past participle, *absorptum*), swallow

down  
 action, *agō* (past participle, *āctum*), do  
 altitude, *altitūdō*, height

ascent, *ascendō*, go up  
 assimilation, *ad: similis*  
 association, *ad: socius*

calcium, *calx* (genitive, *calcis*),  
 lime

capillary, *capillus*, hair

carbon, *carbō*, charcoal

cell, *cella*, storeroom, cell

centigrade, *centum: gradus*,  
 step, degree

city, *civitas*, state, city

combustion, *combūrō* (past  
 participle, *combustum*), burn  
 up

commercial, *commercium*, traf-  
 fic

compare, *comparō*, compare

composition, *compōnō* (past  
 participle, *compositum*), put  
 together, arrange

compress, *comprimō* (past par-  
 ticiple, *compressum*), press  
 together

connection, *con-*, with, to-  
 gether: *nectō*, bind

contamination, *contāminō*,  
 mingle, corrupt

decomposition, *dē: compōnō*,  
 put together

density, *dēnsus*, thick

dependent, *dē: pendēō*, hang

deposit, *dēpōnō* (past parti-  
 ciple, *dēpositum*), lay down

destruction, *dēstruō* (past par-  
 ticiple, *dēstrūctum*), tear  
 down

diffusion, *diffundō* (past par-  
 ticiple, *diffūsum*), pour out,  
 scatter

dissolve, *dissolvō*, take apart

distillation, *distillō*, drip,  
 trickle

distribution, *distribuō* (past  
 participle, *distribūtum*), dis-  
 tribute

efficient, *efficiō*, accomplish

erosion, *ē, ex: rōdō* (past par-  
 ticiple, *rōsum*), gnaw

evaporation, *ē, ex: vapor*, va-  
 por, steam

extinguish, *extinguō*, put out

factory, *faciō*

fermentation, *fermentum*,  
 yeast

flame, *flamma*, flame

fluid, *fluō*, flow

formation, *fōrma*, form

heredity, *hērēs*, heir

humidity, *humidus*, damp

inclination, *inclīnō*, bend

influence, *in: fluō*, flow

liquid, *liquidus*, flowing, fluid  
 (as adjective)

location, *locus*

material, <i>materia</i> (or <i>materiēs</i> ), material	respiration, <i>respīrō</i> , breathe out, breathe
mercury, <i>Mercurius</i> , Mercury, (the messenger and herald of the gods)	sanitary, <i>sānitās</i> , health
mixture, <i>misceō</i> (past parti- ciple, <i>mixtum</i> ), mingle	saturation, <i>saturō</i> , fill
motor, <i>moveō</i>	selection, <i>sē</i> , apart from: <i>legō</i> (past participle, <i>lēctum</i> ), choose
nutrition, <i>nūtriō</i> , nourish	simple, <i>simplex</i> , single
origin, <i>origō</i> (genitive, <i>origi- nis</i> ), origin	solid, <i>solidus</i> , firm
particle, <i>particula</i> , a small part	station, <i>stō</i> (future active par- ticiple, <i>stātūrus</i> ), stand
pollution, <i>polluō</i> (past parti- ciple, <i>pollūtum</i> ), defile	submarine, <i>sub: marīnus</i> , of the sea
potential, <i>potēns</i> , powerful	transformation, <i>trāns: fōrmō</i> , shape, form
progressive, <i>prōgređior</i> (past participle, <i>prōgressus</i> ), go forward	transmission, <i>trāns: mittō</i>
refrigerator, <i>refrīgerō</i> , make cool again, chill	transplant, <i>trāns: plantō</i> , plant, set
relative, <i>referō</i> (past participle, <i>relātum</i> ), bring back	transpiration, <i>trāns: spīrō</i> , breathe
residence, <i>resideō</i> , remain	turbine, <i>turbō</i> , a top, a whirl- wind
	useful, <i>ūtor</i>
	variety, <i>varius</i> , varied

## WORDS OF LATIN DERIVATION USED IN GRAMMAR

ablative, <i>auferō</i> (past parti- ciple, <i>ablātum</i> ), take from	active, <i>agō</i> (past participle, <i>āctum</i> ), do
absolute, <i>absolvō</i> (past parti- ciple, <i>absolūtum</i> ), set free	adherent, <i>adhaereō</i> , cling to
abstract, <i>abstrahō</i> (past parti- ciple, <i>abstrāctum</i> ), draw from	adjective, <i>adjiciō</i> (past parti- ciple, <i>adjectum</i> ), place near

adjunct, *adjungō* (past participle, *adjūctum*), join to  
adverb, *ad: verbum*

adversative, *adversus*, against  
alternative, *aller*, the other  
antecedent, *antecēdō*, go before  
apposition, *ad* (= *ap*-): *pōnō*  
assimilate, *ad* (= *as*-): *similis*  
assume, *ad* (= *as*-): *sūmō*  
attribute, *attribuō*, assign  
auxiliary, *auxilium*

causal, *causa*

clause, *claudō* (past participle, *clausum*)

cognate, *cognātus*, connected by birth

collective, *colligō* (past participle, *collēctum*), collect

colloquial, *colloquor*, talk

comparative, *comparō*, compare

complement, *compleō*, fill, fill out

complex, *com*-, with, together:  
*plectō* (past participle, *plexum*), braid, interweave

concessive, *concēdō* (past participle, *concessum*), yield

condition, *conditiō* (earlier, *condiciō*), condition

conjunction, *conjungō* (past participle, *conjūctum*), join together

consequence, *cōnsequor*, follow

construction, *cōnstruō* (past participle, *cōnstrūctum*), put together

contraction, *contrahō* (past participle, *contractum*), draw together

coördinate, *co-* (*com*-), with, together; *ordinō*, arrange

copula, *cōpula*, a fastening

declarative, *dēclārō*, declare

definition, *dēfīniō*, set bounds to

demonstrative, *dēmōnstrō*, point out

dental, *dēns*

dependent, *dēpendeō*, hang from

descriptive, *dēscribō*, describe

determination, *dēterminō*, mark off, limit

equivalent, *aequus*

exclamation, *exclāmō*, cry out

exercise, *exerceō*, train

expletive, *expleō*, fill out

feminine, *fēmina*

finite, *fīniō* (past participle, *fīnītum*), limit

future, *futūrus*, about to be

illiterate, *in*-, not: *līterātus*, educated (from *littera*, also spelled *lītera*)

- imperative, *imperō* (past participle, *imperātum*), command
- imperfect, *in-*, not: *perficiō* (past participle, *perfectum*), accomplish
- indefinite, *in-*, not; *dēfīniō*, mark off
- independent, *in-*, not; *dēpendeō*, hang from, be dependent on
- infinitive, *in-*, not; *fīniō* (past participle, *fīnitum*), limit
- inflection, *īnflectō*, bend
- instrumental, *īnstrūmentum*, instrument
- interjection, *interjiciō* (past participle, *interjectum*), throw in
- interrogative, *interrogō*, ask
- intransitive, *in-*, not: *trānseō*
- introduce, *intrōdūcō*, lead or bring in
- inversion, *invertō*, turn upside down
- irregular, *in-* (= *ir-*), not: *rēgula*, rule
- limiting, *līmes* (genitive, *līmītis*), path, boundary
- locative, *locus*
- masculine, *masculīnus*, male, masculīne
- negative, *negō*, deny
- neuter, *neuter*, neither
- nominative, *nōmen*, name
- numeral, *numerus*, number
- omission, *omittō*, pass by, omit
- ordinal, *ōrdō*, rank, order
- participle, *pars*: *capīō*
- partitive, *pars*
- passive, *patior* (past participle, *passus*), endure
- perfect, *perficiō* (past participle, *perfectum*), accomplish
- personal, *persōna*, person
- plural, *plūs* (genitive *plūris*), more
- position, *pōnō* (past participle, *positum*)
- possession, *possideō* (past participle, *possessum*), possess
- predicate, *praedicō*, proclaim, declare
- preposition, *praepōnō* (past participle, *praepositum*), place before
- present, *praesēns* (genitive, *praesentis*), present
- progressive, *prōgredior* (past participle, *prōgressus*), go forward
- recipient, *recipiō*, receive
- regular, *rēgula*, rule
- restrictive, *restringō* (past participle, *restrictum*), restrain

sentence, <i>sententia</i> , opinion,	terminology, <i>terminus</i> , bound-
thought	ary, limit
sequence, <i>sequor</i> , follow	
simile, <i>similis</i>	translation, <i>trānsferō</i> (past
subordinate, <i>sub</i> , under: <i>ōrdō</i> ,	participle, <i>trānslātum</i> , carry
rank	across)
substantive, <i>sub</i> , under: <i>stō</i>	
superlative, <i>super</i> , above	verb, <i>verbum</i> , word
temporal, <i>tempus</i> (genitive,	vocative, <i>vocō</i> , call
<i>temporis</i> )	

#### WORDS OF LATIN DERIVATION IN ELEMENTARY MATHEMATICS

acute, <i>acūtus</i> , sharp	complementary, <i>compleō</i> , fill
addition, <i>addō</i> (past participle,	out
<i>additum</i> ), add	cone, <i>cōnus</i> , a cone
adjacent, <i>ad</i> : <i>jaceō</i> , lie	congruence, <i>congruō</i> , agree, be
alternate, <i>alter</i>	in harmony
angle, <i>angulus</i> , corner	constant, <i>cōnstō</i> , stand firm
arc, <i>arcus</i> , a bow	construct, <i>cōnstruō</i> , heap to-
ascending, <i>ascendō</i> , go up	gether, make
associative, <i>ad</i> : <i>socius</i>	contact, <i>contingō</i> (past parti-
bisect, <i>bis</i> , <sup>1</sup> twice: <i>secō</i> (past	ciple, <i>contāctum</i> ), touch
participle, <i>sectum</i> ) cut	coördinate, <i>co-</i> ( <i>con-</i> ) with,
	together: <i>ōrdō</i> , rank
center, <i>centrum</i> , center	
circle, <i>circulus</i> , circle	data, <i>dō</i> (past participle, <i>datum</i> )
circumscribe, <i>circum</i> : <i>scribō</i> ,	decimal, <i>decimus</i> , tenth
write, draw	difference, <i>differō</i> , differ
coefficient, <i>co-</i> ( <i>con-</i> ), with, to-	digit, <i>digitus</i> , finger
gether: <i>efficiō</i> , bring about	dissimilar, <i>dissimilis</i> , unlike
coincide, <i>co-</i> ( <i>con-</i> ) with, to-	distance, <i>distō</i> , stand apart, be
gether: <i>incidō</i> , fall	separated
commutative, <i>commūtō</i> , change	dividend, <i>dividō</i> (future pas-
	sive participle <i>dividendus</i> )

<sup>1</sup> In derivatives *bi-* or *bis-* as a prefix sometimes means *two*. Hence "*bisect*" means to cut into two parts.



- divisor, *dīvidō* (past passive participle, *dīvīsum*)
- elevate, *ē*, *ex*: *levō*, lift up, raise
- eliminate, *ē*, *ex*: *līmen*, threshold
- equal, *aequus*
- equiangular, *aequus*: *angulus*
- equidistant, *aequus*: *distō*, stand apart
- equilateral, *aequus*: *latus* (genitive *lateris*), side
- exponent, *expōnō*, set forth
- exterior, *extrā*, outside of
- extreme, *extrēmus*, farthest, last
- factor, *faciō*
- formula, *fōrmula*, form, regulation, rule
- fraction, *frangō* (past participle, *frāctum*), break
- function, *fungor* (past participle, *fūctus*), perform
- fundamental, *fundāmentum*, foundation
- inscribe, *in*: *scrībō*
- intercept, *intercipiō*, interrupt
- intersection, *inter*: *secō* (past participle, *sectum*)
- inverse, *invertō* (past participle, *inversum*), turn upside down
- lever, *levō*, lift up
- literal, *littera* (also spelled *littera*), a letter
- locus, *locus*, place
- mariner, *marīnus*, of the sea
- member, *mēbrum*, limb
- minute, *minūtus*, very small
- motion, *moveō*
- multiplication, *multus*: *plicāre*, fold
- negative, *negō*, deny
- normal, *nōrma*, rule
- notation, *notō*, mark, indicate
- oblique, *oblīquus*, slanting
- obtuse, *obtundō* (past participle *obtūsum*), make blunt, make dull
- operation, *opus* (genitive *operis*), work
- opposite, *ob*, towards, before: *pōnō*
- partial, *pars*
- percent, *per*: *centum*
- perpendicular, *perpendicularum*, plumb-line
- plane, *plānus*, level, flat
- prime, *prīmus*
- product, *prōdūcō*, bring forth
- protractor, *prōtrahō* (past participle, *prōtractum*), draw out, lengthen

quadrant, <i>quadrāns</i> , a fourth part	subtraction, <i>subtrahō</i> (past participle, <i>subtractum</i> ), with-
quadrilateral, <i>quattuor</i> <sup>1</sup> : <i>latus</i> (genitive, <i>lateris</i> )	draw, take away
quotient, <i>quotiēns</i> , how often	superposition, <i>super</i> , upon: <i>pōnō</i>
radius, <i>radius</i> , spoke of a wheel	table, <i>tabula</i> , board
ratio, <i>ratio</i> , relation	tangent, <i>tangō</i> , touch
rectangle, <i>rēctus</i> , straight: <i>angulus</i>	transit, <i>trānseō</i> (past participle, <i>trānsitum</i> )
regular, <i>rēgula</i> , rule	triangle, <i>trēs</i> : <i>angulus</i>
reduction, <i>redūcō</i> , bring back	trisect, <i>trēs</i> (represented in compounds by <i>tri</i> ), <i>secō</i> , cut
scale, <i>scālae</i> , stairway	unit, <i>ūnus</i>
segment, <i>segmentum</i> , a cutting	use, <i>ūtor</i>
semicircle, <i>sēmi</i> - <sup>2</sup> , half: <i>circulus</i>	variation, <i>varius</i> , different
sign, <i>signum</i> , sign	vertex, <i>vertex</i> , highest point
similar, <i>similis</i>	vinculum, <i>vinculum</i> , chain
simultaneous, <i>simul</i> , at the same time	velocity, <i>vēlōx</i> (genitive <i>vēlōcis</i> ), swift
solve, <i>solvō</i> , loosen, dissolve	

<sup>1</sup> *Quattuor* is regularly represented in compounds by the initial syllable *quad-*. There was an adjective *quadrus*, square, which came into use a little later than the time of Caesar.

<sup>2</sup> Used as a prefix in Latin.

# GRAMMATICAL APPENDIX

## SUMMARY OF DECLENSIONS AND CONJUGATIONS

### NOUNS

#### 1. FIRST DECLENSION, ā-stems

	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	rosa	rosae
<i>Gen.</i>	rosae	rosārum
<i>Dat.</i>	rosae	rosīs
<i>Acc.</i>	rosam	rosās
<i>Abl.</i>	rosā	rosīs

#### 2. SECOND DECLENSION, o-stems

##### *Singular*

<i>N.</i>	dominus	puer	ager	vir	templum
<i>G.</i>	dominī	puerī	agrī	virī	templī
<i>D.</i>	dominō	puerō	agrō	virō	templō
<i>Ac.</i>	dominum	puerum	agrum	virum	templum
<i>Ab.</i>	dominō	puerō	agrō	virō	templō

##### *Plural*

<i>N.</i>	dominī	puerī	agrī	virī	templa
<i>G.</i>	dominōrum	puerōrum	agrōrum	virōrum	templōrum
<i>D.</i>	dominīs	puerīs	agrīs	virīs	templīs
<i>Ac.</i>	dominōs	puerōs	agrōs	virōs	templa
<i>Ab.</i>	dominīs	puerīs	agrīs	virīs	templīs

NOTE.—The vocative singular of **-us** nouns ends in **-e**: **domine**. The vocative singular (and sometimes the genitive singular) of **filius** and of proper nouns in **-ius** ends in **-ī**: **fili**.

## 3.

## THIRD DECLENSION

## (1) CONSONANT STEMS (Masculine and Feminine)

*Singular*

<i>N.</i>	<i>lēx</i>	<i>mīles</i>	<i>frāter</i>	<i>homō</i>
<i>G.</i>	<i>lēgis</i>	<i>militis</i>	<i>frātris</i>	<i>hominis</i>
<i>D.</i>	<i>lēgī</i>	<i>militi</i>	<i>frātri</i>	<i>hominī</i>
<i>Ac.</i>	<i>lēgem</i>	<i>militem</i>	<i>frātre</i>	<i>hominem</i>
<i>Ab.</i>	<i>lēge</i>	<i>militē</i>	<i>frātre</i>	<i>homine</i>

*Plural*

<i>N.</i>	<i>lēgēs</i>	<i>militēs</i>	<i>frātrēs</i>	<i>hominēs</i>
<i>G.</i>	<i>lēgum</i>	<i>militum</i>	<i>frātrum</i>	<i>hominum</i>
<i>D.</i>	<i>lēgibus</i>	<i>militibus</i>	<i>frātribus</i>	<i>hominibus</i>
<i>Ac.</i>	<i>lēgēs</i>	<i>militēs</i>	<i>frātrēs</i>	<i>hominēs</i>
<i>Ab.</i>	<i>lēgibus</i>	<i>militibus</i>	<i>frātribus</i>	<i>hominibus</i>

NOTE.—Some masculine and feminine nouns have a nominative ending **-s**. If the stem ends in **-c** or **-g**, the combination of the final **-c** or **-g** of the stem with **-s** gives **-x**: **dux**, nominative from the stem **duc-**; **lēx**, nominative from the stem **lēg-**. If the stem ends in **-d** or **-t**, the final consonant is dropped before **-s**: **laus**, nominative from the stem **laud-**. If the vowel **i** stands before the final consonant of the stem it is frequently changed to **e** in the nominative: **princeps**, nominative from the stem **princip-**; **mīles**, nominative from the stem **milit-**.

Nouns with stems ending in **-tr** have the nominative ending in **-ter**: **frāter** from the stem **frātr-**; **māter** from the stem **mātr-**.

Nouns with stems ending in **-din** and **-gin** replace **-in** of the stem by **-ō** in the nominative: **virgō** from the stem **virgin-**; **multitūdō** from the stem **multitūdīn-**. The nominative **homō** is formed by replacing **-in** of the stem in the same manner.

## (2) CONSONANT STEMS (Neuter)

*Singular*

N. flūmen	caput	corpus	iter
G. flūminis	capitis	corporis	itineris
D. flūminī	capitī	corporī	itinerī
Ac. flūmen	caput	corpus	iter
Ab. flūmine	capite	corpore	itinere

*Plural*

N. flūmina	capita	corpora	itinerā
G. flūminum	capitum	corporum	itinerum
D. flūminibus	capitibus	corporibus	itineribus
Ac. flūmina	capita	corpora	itinerā
Ab. flūminibus	capitibus	corporibus	itineribus

NOTE.—Nouns with **-in** as the stem ending change **i** of the stem to **e** in the nominative: **flūmen** from the stem **flūmin-**. A few other nouns likewise change the vowel before the final consonant of the stem in forming the nominative: **caput** from the stem **capit-**.

Neuter nouns with stems ending in **-er** or **-or** regularly have the nominative in **-us**: **corpus** from the stem **corpor-**. The nominative **iter** has the stem **itiner-**.

## (3) I-STEMS AND MIXED STEMS (Masculine and Feminine)

These include two classes. (1) Nouns having the same number of syllables in the genitive as in the nominative. (2) Nouns having two consonants before the ending of the genitive singular.

*Singular*

N. hostis	caedēs	gēs
G. hostis	caedis	gentis
D. hostī	caedī	gentī
Ac. hostem	caedem	gentem
Ab. hoste	caede	gente

*Plural*

<i>N.</i>	hostēs	caedēs	gentēs
<i>G.</i>	hostium	caedium	gentium
<i>D.</i>	hostibus	caedibus	gentibus
<i>Ac.</i>	hostis or -ēs	caedis or -ēs	gentis or -ēs
<i>Ab.</i>	hostibus	caedibus	gentibus

NOTE.—The ablative singular of *turris* and sometimes of *ignis* and a few other words ends in *-ī* instead of *-e*. The accusative singular of *turris* is *turrim*.

(4) I-STEMS (*Neuter*)

These end in *-e*, *-al*, or *-ar*.

*Singular*

<i>N.</i>	insigne	calcar	animal
<i>G.</i>	insignis	calcāris	animālis
<i>D.</i>	insigni	calcārī	animālī
<i>Ac.</i>	insigne	calcar	animal
<i>Ab.</i>	insigni	calcārī	animālī

*Plural*

<i>N.</i>	insignia	calcāria	animālia
<i>G.</i>	insignium	calcārium	animālium
<i>D.</i>	insignibus	calcāribus	animālibus
<i>Ac.</i>	insignia	calcāria	animālia
<i>Ab.</i>	insignibus	calcāribus	animālibus

## (5) IRREGULAR NOUNS

<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
<i>N.</i> vīs	vīrēs	bōs	bovēs
<i>G.</i> —	vīrium	bovis	boum
<i>D.</i> —	vīribus	bovī	būbus or bōbus
<i>Ac.</i> vim	vīris or -ēs	bovem	bovēs
<i>Ab.</i> vī	vīribus	bove	būbus or bōbus

4. FOURTH DECLENSION, *u*-stems

	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
N.	exercitus	exercitūs	cornū	cornua
G.	exercitūs	exercituum	cornūs	cornuum
D.	exercitui or -ū	exercitibus	cornū	cornibus
Ac.	exercitum	exercitūs	cornū	cornua
Ab.	exercitū	exercitibus	cornū	cornibus

	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
N.	domus	domūs
G.	domūs	domuum or domōrum
D.	domui or domō	domibus
Ac.	domum	domūs or domōs
Ab.	domū or domō	domibus
Loc.	domī	

5. FIFTH DECLENSION, *e*-stems

	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
N.	diēs	diēs	rēs	rēs
G.	diēi	diērum	rei	rērum
D.	diēi	diēbus	rei	rēbus
Ac.	diem	diēs	rem	rēs
Ab.	diē	diēbus	rē	rēbus

## ADJECTIVES

## 6. FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS

a. *bonus, good*

	<i>Singular</i>			<i>Plural</i>		
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
N.	bonus	bona	bonum	bonī	bonae	bona
G.	bonī	bonae	bonī	bonōrum	bonārum	bonōrum
D.	bonō	bonae	bonō	bonīs	bonīs	bonīs
Ac.	bonum	bonam	bonum	bonōs	bonās	bona
Ab.	bonō	bonā	bonō	bonīs	bonīs	bonīs

## b. miser, unhappy

*Singular*

N.	miser	miserā	miserum
G.	miserī	miserāe	miserī
D.	miserō	miserāe	miserō
Ac.	miserum	miseram	miserum
Ab.	miserō	miserā	miserō

*Plural*

N.	miserī	miserāe	miserā
G.	miserōrum	miserārum	miserōrum
D.	miserīs	miserīs	miserīs
Ac.	miserōs	miserās	miserā
Ab.	miserīs	miserīs	miserīs

## c. pulcher, beautiful

*Singular*

N.	pulcher	pulchra	pulchrum
G.	pulchrī	pulchrae	pulchrī
D.	pulchrō	pulchrae	pulchrō
Ac.	pulchrum	pulchram	pulchrum
Ab.	pulchrō	pulchrā	pulchrō

*Plural*

N.	pulchrī	pulchrae	pulchra
G.	pulchrōrum	pulchrārum	pulchrōrum
D.	pulchrīs	pulchrīs	pulchrīs
Ac.	pulchrōs	pulchrās	pulchra
Ab.	pulchrīs	pulchrīs	pulchrīs



## 7.

## THIRD DECLENSION

## (1) THREE TERMINATIONS—(I-STEMS)

**acer, sharp**

	<i>Singular</i>				<i>Plural</i>		
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>		<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
N.	ācer	ācris	ācre		ācrēs	ācrēs	ācria
G.	ācris	ācris	ācris		ācrium	ācrium	ācrium
D.	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī		ācribus	ācribus	ācribus
Ac.	ācrem	ācrem	ācre		ācris, -ēs	ācris, -ēs	ācria
Ab.	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī		ācribus	ācribus	ācribus

## (2) TWO TERMINATIONS—(I-STEMS)

**omnis, all**

	<i>Singular</i>			<i>Plural</i>	
	<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>		<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
N.	omnis	omne		omnēs	omnia
G.	omnis	omnis		omnium	omnium
D.	omnī	omnī		omnibus	omnibus
Ac.	omnem	omne		omnis or -ēs	omnia
Ab.	omnī	omnī		omnibus	omnibus

## (3) ONE TERMINATION (I-STEMS)

**fēlix, fortunate****potēns, powerful**

	<i>Singular</i>			<i>Plural</i>	
	<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>		<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
N.	fēlix	fēlix		potēns	potēns
G.	fēlicis	fēlicis		potentis	potentis
D.	fēlicī	fēlicī		potentī	potentī
Ac.	fēlicem	fēlix		potentem	potēns
Ab.	fēlicī	fēlicī		potentī, -e	potentī, -e
	<i>Singular</i>			<i>Plural</i>	
	<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>		<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
N.	fēlicēs	fēlicia		potentēs	potentia
G.	fēlicium	fēlicium		potentium	potentium
D.	fēlicibus	fēlicibus		potentibus	potentibus
Ac.	fēlicis, -ēs	fēlicia		potentis, -ēs	potentia
Ab.	fēlicibus	fēlicibus		potentibus	potentibus

(4) **vetus, old**  
(a consonant stem)

<i>Singular</i>		<i>Plural</i>	
<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
N. vetus	vetus	veterēs	vetera
G. veteris	veteris	veterum	veterum
D. veterī	veterī	veteribus	veteribus
Ac. veterem	vetus	veterēs	vetera
Ab. vetere	vetere	veteribus	veteribus

8. PRESENT PARTICIPLES

<i>Singular</i>		<i>Plural</i>	
<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
N. portāns	portāns	portantēs	portantia
G. portantis	portantis	portantium	portantium
D. portanti	portanti	portantibus	portantibus
Ac. portantem	portāns	portantis, -ēs	portantia
Ab. portante (-i)	portante (-i)	portantibus	portantibus

9. IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES

	<b>alius</b>	<b>ūnus</b>	<b>alter</b>		
	<b>sōlus</b>	<b>tōtus</b>	<b>neuter</b>		
	<b>ūllus</b>	<b>nūllus</b>	<b>uter</b>		
N. sōlus	sōla	sōlum	alter	altera	alterum
G. sōlius	sōlius	sōlius	alterius	alterius	alterius
D. sōlī	sōlī	sōlī	alterī	alterī	alterī
Ac. sōlum	sōlam	sōlum	alterum	alteram	alterum
Ab. sōlō	sōlā	sōlō	alterō	alterā	alterō

(The plurals are like those of **bonus** and **miser**.)

10. REGULAR COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

<i>Positive</i>	<i>Comparative</i>	<i>Superlative</i>
lātus	lātior, lātius	lātissimus, -a, -um
fortis	fortior, fortius	fortissimus, -a, -um
fēlix	fēlicior, fēlicius	fēlicissimus, -a, -um
miser	miserior, miserius	miserrimus, -a, -um
facilis	facilior, facilius	facillimus, -a, -um

## 11. IRREGULAR COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

<i>Positive</i>	<i>Comparative</i>	<i>Superlative</i>
bonus	melior, melius	optimus, -a, -um
malus	pejor, pejus	pessimus, -a, -um
magnus	major, majus	maximus, -a, -um
parvus	minor, minus	minimus, -a, -um
multus	—, plūs	plūrimus, -a, -um

## 12. DECLENSION OF COMPARATIVES

*lātior, broader*

<i>Singular</i>		<i>Plural</i>	
<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
N. lātior	lātius	lātiōrēs	lātiōra
G. lātiōris	lātiōris	lātiōrum	lātiōrum
D. lātiōrī	lātiōrī	lātiōribus	lātiōribus
Ac. lātiōrem	lātius	lātiōrēs	lātiōra
Ab. lātiōre	lātiōre	lātiōribus	lātiōribus

*plūs, more*

<i>Singular</i>		<i>Plural</i>	
<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
N. ———	plūs	plūrēs	plūra
G. ———	plūris	plūrium	plūrium
D. ———	———	plūribus	plūribus
Ac. ———	plūs	plūris or -ēs	plūra
Ab. ———	———	plūribus	plūribus

## 13. REGULAR COMPARISON OF ADVERBS

<i>Positive</i>	<i>Comparative</i>	<i>Superlative</i>
lātē	lātius	lātissimē
fortiter	fortius	fortissimē
ācritēr	ācrius	ācerrimē
facile	facilius	facillimē

## 14. IRREGULAR COMPARISON OF ADVERBS

bene	melius	optimē
male	pejus	pessimē
magnopere	plūs	maximē
multum	magis	plūrimum
parum	minus	minimē
prope	propius	proximē
saepe	saepius	saepissimē
diū	diūtius	diūtissimē

## 15. NUMERALS

*Roman Numerals Cardinal*

I.	ūnus, -a, -um
II.	duo, -ae, -o
III.	trēs, tria
IV.	quattuor
V.	quīnque
VI.	sex
VII.	septem
VIII.	octō
IX.	novem
X.	decem
XI.	ūndecim
XII.	duodecim
XIII.	tredecim
XIV.	quattuordecim
XV.	quīndecim
XVI.	sēdecim
XVII.	septendecim
XVIII.	duodēvigintī
XIX.	ūndēvigintī
XX.	vīgintī
XXI.	ūnus et vīgintī (vīgintī ūnus)

*Ordinal*

prīmus, -a, -um
secundus or alter
tertius
quārtus
quīntus
sextus
septimus
octāvus
nōnus
decimus
ūndecimus
duodecimus
tertius decimus
quārtus decimus
quīntus decimus
sextus decimus
septimus decimus
duodēvīcēsīmus
ūndēvīcēsīmus
vīcēsīmus
vīcēsīmus prīmus

XXVIII.	duodētrīgintā	duodētricēsīmus
XXIX.	ūndētrīgintā	ūndētricēsīmus
XXX.	trīgintā	tricēsīmus
XL.	quadrāgintā	quadrāgēsīmus
L.	quīnquāgintā	quīnquāgēsīmus
LX.	sexāgintā	sexāgēsīmus
LXX.	septuāgintā	septuāgēsīmus
LXXX.	octōgintā	octōgēsīmus
XC.	nōnāgintā	nōnāgēsīmus
C.	centum	centēsīmus
CI.	centum (et) ūnus	centēsīmus (et) prīmus
CC.	ducentī, -ae, -a	ducentēsīmus
CCC.	trecentī	trecentēsīmus
CCCC.	quadringentī	quadringentēsīmus
D.	quīngentī	quīngentēsīmus
DC.	sescentī	sescentēsīmus
DCC.	septingentī	septingentēsīmus
DCCC.	octingentī	octingentēsīmus
DCCCC.	nōngentī	nōngentēsīmus
M.	mille	millēsīmus
MM.	duo mīlia	bis millēsīmus

## 16

## DECLENSION OF DUO, TRĒS, and MĪLIA

## duo, two

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
N.	duo	duae	duo
G.	duōrum	duārum	duōrum
D.	duōbus	duābus	duōbus
Ac.	duōs, duo	duās	duo
Ab.	duōbus	duābus	duōbus

<b>trēs, three</b>		<b>mīlia, N., thousands</b>
<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>N.</i> trēs	tria	mīlia
<i>G.</i> trium	trium	mīlium
<i>D.</i> tribus	tribus	mīlibus
<i>Ac.</i> trēs, trīs	tria	mīlia
<i>Ab.</i> tribus	tribus	mīlibus

*a.* In the singular, **mīle, thousand**, is an indeclinable adjective. In the plural it is a neuter noun, and the noun denoting the persons or things which are numbered is put in the genitive of the whole.

### PRONOUNS

#### 17.

#### PERSONAL PRONOUNS

First person, <b>ego, I</b>		Second person, <b>tū, you (thou)</b>	
<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
<i>N.</i> ego	nōs	tū	vōs
<i>G.</i> meī	{ nostrum nostrī	tuī	{ vestrum vestrī
<i>D.</i> mihi	nōbīs	tibi	vōbīs
<i>Ac.</i> mē	nōs	tē	vōs
<i>Ab.</i> mē	nōbīs	tē	vōbīs

*a.* There is no personal pronoun of the third person. Its place is taken either by a demonstrative pronoun (usually **is, he, ea, she, id, it**), or, if the antecedent is the subject of the sentence or clause, by the reflexive.

#### 18.

#### REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS

First person, <b>meī,</b> <i>of myself</i>		Second person, <b>tuī,</b> <i>of yourself</i>		Third person, <b>sui,</b> <i>of himself, etc.</i>	
<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
<i>G.</i> meī	nostrī	tuī	vestrī	sui	sui
<i>D.</i> mihi	nōbīs	tibi	vōbīs	sibi	sibi
<i>Ac.</i> mē	nōs	tē	vōs	sē (sēsē)	sē (sēsē)
<i>Ab.</i> mē	nōbīs	tē	vōbīs	sē (sēsē)	sē (sēsē)

## 19.

## POSSESSIVES

*Singular*1st pers. meus, -a, -um, *my*2d pers. tuus, -a, -um, *your* (of one person)3d pers. { suus, -a, -um, *his, her, its* (reflexive)  
ejus (gen. sing. of is) *his, etc.* (not reflexive)*Plural*1st pers. noster, -tra, -trum, *our*2d pers. vester, -tra, -trum, *your* (of more than one person)3d pers. { suus, -a, -um, *their* (reflexive)  
eōrum, eārum, eōrum (gen. plur. of is) *their* (not reflexive)a. The vocative singular masculine of *meus* is *mī*.

## 20.

## DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS

a. *hic, this*

<i>Singular</i>			<i>Plural</i>		
<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
N. hic	haec	hoc	hī	hae	haec
G. hujus	hujus	hujus	hōrum	hārum	hōrum
D. huic	huic	huic	hīs	hīs	hīs
Ac. hunc	hanc	hoc	hōs	hās	haec
Ab. hōc	hāc	hōc	hīs	hīs	hīs

b. *ille, that*

<i>Singular</i>			<i>Plural</i>		
<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
N. ille	illa	illud	illī	illae	illa
G. illius	illius	illius	illōrum	illārum	illōrum
D. illi	illi	illi	illis	illis	illis
Ac. illum	illam	illud	illōs	illās	illa
Ab. illō	illā	illō	illis	illis	illis

c. *is, this, that, he, she, it*

	<i>Singular</i>			<i>Plural</i>		
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>N.</i>	<i>is</i>	<i>ea</i>	<i>id</i>	<i>ii, ei</i>	<i>eae</i>	<i>ea</i>
<i>G.</i>	<i>ejus</i>	<i>ejus</i>	<i>ejus</i>	<i>eōrum</i>	<i>eārum</i>	<i>eōrum</i>
<i>D.</i>	<i>eī</i>	<i>eī</i>	<i>eī</i>	<i>iīs, eiīs</i>	<i>iīs, eiīs</i>	<i>iīs, eiīs</i>
<i>Ac.</i>	<i>eum</i>	<i>eam</i>	<i>id</i>	<i>eōs</i>	<i>eās</i>	<i>ea</i>
<i>Ab.</i>	<i>eō</i>	<i>eā</i>	<i>eō</i>	<i>iīs, eiīs</i>	<i>iīs, eiīs</i>	<i>iīs, eiīs</i>

(1) *iste* is declined like *ille*.

## 21.

## THE IDENTIFYING PRONOUN

*idem, the same*

	<i>Singular</i>		<i>Neut.</i>
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	
<i>N.</i>	<i>idem</i>	<i>eadem</i>	<i>idem</i>
<i>G.</i>	<i>ejusdem</i>	<i>ejusdem</i>	<i>ejusdem</i>
<i>D.</i>	<i>eīdem</i>	<i>eīdem</i>	<i>eīdem</i>
<i>Ac.</i>	<i>eundem</i>	<i>eandem</i>	<i>idem</i>
<i>Ab.</i>	<i>eōdem</i>	<i>eādem</i>	<i>eōdem</i>

*Plural*

<i>N.</i>	<i>idem or eīdem</i>	<i>eadem</i>	<i>eadem</i>
<i>G.</i>	<i>eōrundem</i>	<i>eārundem</i>	<i>eōrundem</i>
<i>D.</i>	<i>īsdem or eiīdem</i>	<i>īsdem or eiīdem</i>	<i>īsdem or eiīdem</i>
<i>Ac.</i>	<i>eōsdem</i>	<i>eāsdem</i>	<i>eadem</i>
<i>Ab.</i>	<i>īsdem or eiīdem</i>	<i>īsdem or eiīdem</i>	<i>īsdem or eiīdem</i>

## 22.

## THE INTENSIVE PRONOUN

*ipse, self*

	<i>Singular</i>			<i>Plural</i>		
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>N.</i>	<i>ipse</i>	<i>ipsa</i>	<i>ipsum</i>	<i>ipsī</i>	<i>ipsae</i>	<i>ipsa</i>
<i>G.</i>	<i>ipsīus</i>	<i>ipsīus</i>	<i>ipsīus</i>	<i>ipsōrum</i>	<i>ipsārum</i>	<i>ipsōrum</i>
<i>D.</i>	<i>ipsī</i>	<i>ipsī</i>	<i>ipsī</i>	<i>ipsīs</i>	<i>ipsīs</i>	<i>ipsīs</i>
<i>Ac.</i>	<i>ipsum</i>	<i>ipsam</i>	<i>ipsum</i>	<i>ipsōs</i>	<i>ipsās</i>	<i>ipsa</i>
<i>Ab.</i>	<i>ipsō</i>	<i>ipsā</i>	<i>ipsō</i>	<i>ipsīs</i>	<i>ipsīs</i>	<i>ipsīs</i>



## 23.

## THE RELATIVE PRONOUN

*qui, who*

<i>Singular</i>			<i>Plural</i>		
<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>N.</i> qui	quae	quod	qui	quae	quae
<i>G.</i> cuius	cujus	cujus	quorum	quarum	quorum
<i>D.</i> cui	cui	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus
<i>Ac.</i> quem	quam	quod	quos	quas	quae
<i>Ab.</i> quod	quae	quod	quibus	quibus	quibus

## 24. THE INTERROGATIVE PRONOUN AND ADJECTIVE

<i>Singular</i>			<i>Plural</i>		
<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>N.</i> quis	quae	quid or quod	qui	quae	quae
<i>G.</i> cuius	cujus	cujus	quorum	quarum	quorum
<i>D.</i> cui	cui	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus
<i>Ac.</i> quem	quam	quid or quod	quos	quas	quae
<i>Ab.</i> quod	quae	quod	quibus	quibus	quibus

*a.* In the nominative singular masculine the adjective form is sometimes *qui*. In the nominative and accusative singular neuter it is always *quod*. As a pronoun, *quis* may be either masculine or feminine.

## 25.

## INDEFINITE PRONOUNS

*a. quisque, each*

<i>Singular</i>		
<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>N.</i> quisque	quaeque	quidque, quodque
<i>G.</i> cuiusque	cujusque	cuiusque
<i>D.</i> cuique	cuique	cuique
<i>Ac.</i> quemque	quamque	quidque, quodque
<i>Ab.</i> quodque	quaeque	quodque

*(The plural is rare)*

b. **quisquam**, *anyone**Singular**Masc. and Fem.**Neut.*

N.	quisquam	quicquam (quidquam)
G.	cujusquam	cujusquam
D.	cuiquam	cuiquam
Ac.	quemquam	quicquam (quidquam)
Ab.	quodquam	quodquam

*(Plural lacking)*c. **quidam**, *a certain**Singular**Masc.**Fem.**Neut.*

N.	quidam	quaedam	quiddam (quoddam)
G.	cujusdam	cujusdam	cujusdam
D.	cuidam	cuidam	cuidam
Ac.	quendam	quandam	quiddam (quoddam)
Ab.	quodam	quādam	quōdam

*Plural*

N.	quidam	quaedam	quaedam
G.	quorundam	quārundam	quōrundam
D.	quibusdam	quibusdam	quibusdam
Ac.	quōsdam	quāsdam	quaedam
Ab.	quibusdam	quibusdam	quibusdam

d. **aliquis**, *some**Singular**Masc.**Fem.**Neut.*

N.	aliquis (aliqui)	aliqua	aliquid (aliquod)
G.	alicujus	alicujus	alicujus
D.	alicui	alicui	alicui
Ac.	aliquem	aliquam	aliquid (aliquod)
Ab.	aliquo	aliquā	aliquo

*Plural*

N. aliqui	aliquae	aliqua
G. aliquōrum	aliquārum	aliquōrum
D. aliquibus	aliquibus	aliquibus
Ac. aliquōs	aliquās	aliqua
Ab. aliquibus	aliquibus	aliquibus

## REGULAR VERBS

26.

## FIRST CONJUGATION

## ACTIVE VOICE

Principal parts: **portō, portāre, portāvī, portātum**

## INDICATIVE

## PRESENT

## SUBJUNCTIVE

*Singular*

portō, *I carry*  
 portās, *you carry*  
 portat, *he carries*

portem  
 portēs  
 portet

*Plural*

portāmus, *we carry*  
 portātis, *you carry*  
 portant, *they carry*

portēmus  
 portētis  
 portent

## IMPERFECT

*Singular*

portābam, *I was carrying*  
 portābās, *you were carrying*  
 portābat, *he was carrying*

portārem  
 portārēs  
 portāret

*Plural*

portābāmus, *we were carrying*  
 portābātis, *you were carrying*  
 portābant, *they were carrying*

portārēmus  
 portārētis  
 portārent

## FUTURE

*Singular*

portābō, *I shall carry*  
 portābis, *you will carry*  
 portābit, *he will carry*

*Plural*

portābimus, *we shall carry*  
 portābitis, *you will carry*  
 portābunt, *they will carry*

## PERFECT

*Singular*

portāvi, <i>I have carried, I carried</i>	portāverim
portāvistī, <i>you have carried, etc.</i>	portāveris
portāvit, <i>he has carried, etc.</i>	portāverit

*Plural*

portāvimus, <i>we have carried, etc.</i>	portāverimus
portāvistis, <i>you have carried, etc.</i>	portāveritis
portāvērunt, -ēre, <i>they have carried, etc.</i>	portāverint

## PAST PERFECT

*Singular*

portāveram, <i>I had carried</i>	portāvissem
portāverās, <i>you had carried</i>	portāvissēs
portāverat, <i>he had carried</i>	portāvisset

*Plural*

portāverāmus, <i>we had carried</i>	portāvissēmus
portāverātis, <i>you had carried</i>	portāvissētis
portāverant, <i>they had carried</i>	portāvissent

## FUTURE PERFECT

*Singular*

portāverō, *I shall have carried*  
 portāveris, *you will have carried*  
 portāverit, *he will have carried*

*Plural**portāverimus, we shall have carried**portāveritis, you will have carried**portāverint, they will have carried*

## PRESENT

*Sing. portā, carry (thou)**Plur. portāte, carry (ye)*

## IMPERATIVE

*Sing. 2. portātō, thou shalt carry**3. portātō, he shall carry**Plur. 2. portātōte, ye shall carry**3. portantō, they shall carry*

## FUTURE

## INFINITIVES

*Pres. portāre, to carry**Past portāvisse, to have carried**Fut. portātūrus essē, to be going to carry*

## PARTICIPLES

*Pres. portāns, carrying**Fut. portātūrus, going to carry*

## GERUND

*G. portandī, of carrying**D. portandō, to (for) carrying**Ac. portandum, carrying**Ab. portandō, from, by carrying*

## SUPINE

*Ac. portātum, to carry**Ab. portātū, to carry*

## 27.

## PASSIVE VOICE

## PRESENT

## INDICATIVE

*Singular**portor, I am carried**portāris, -re, you are carried**portātur, he is carried*

## SUBJUNCTIVE

*porter**portēris, -re**portētur**Plural**portāmur, we are carried**portāmini, you are carried**portantur, they are carried**portēmur**portēmini**portentur*

## IMPERFECT

*Singular*

portābar, *I was (being) carried*  
 portābāris, *-re, you were (being) carried*  
 portābātur, *he was (being) carried*

portārer  
 portārēris, *-re*  
 portārētur

*Plural*

portābāmur, *we were (being) carried*  
 portābāminī, *you were (being) carried*  
 portābantur, *they were (being) carried*

portārēmur  
 portārēminī  
 portārentur

## FUTURE

*Singular*

portābor, *I shall be carried*  
 portāberis, *-re, you will be carried*  
 portābitur, *he will be carried*

*Plural*

portābimur, *we shall be carried*  
 portābiminī, *you will be carried*  
 portābuntur, *they will be carried*

## PERFECT

*Singular*

portātus sum, *I have been carried*  
 portātus es, *you have been carried*  
 portātus est, *he has been carried*

*Plural*

portāti sumus, *we have been carried*  
 portāti estis, *you have been carried*  
 portāti sunt, *they have been carried*

*Singular*

portātus sim  
 portātus sis  
 portātus sit

*Plural*

portāti simus  
 portāti sitis  
 portāti sint

## PAST PERFECT

*Singular*

portātus eram, *I had been carried*  
 portātus erās, *you had been carried*  
 portātus erat, *he had been carried*

*Singular*

portātus essem  
 portātus essēs  
 portātus esset

*Plural*

**portāti erāmus, we had been carried**  
**portāti erātis, you had been carried**  
**portāti erant, they had been carried**

*Plural*

**portāti essēmus**  
**portāti essētis**  
**portāti essent**

## FUTURE PERFECT

*Singular*

**portātus erō, I shall have been carried**  
**portātus eris, you will have been carried**  
**portātus erit, he will have been carried**

*Plural*

**portāti erimus, we shall have been carried**  
**portāti eritis, you will have been carried**  
**portāti erunt, they will have been carried**

## IMPERATIVE

## PRESENT

*Sing.* portāre, be (thou) carried  
*Plur.* portāmini, be (ye) carried

## FUTURE

*Sing. 2.* portātor, thou shalt be carried  
*3.* portātor, he shall be carried  
*Plur.* —————  
*3.* portantor, they shall be carried

## INFINITIVES

*Pres.* amārī, to be loved  
*Past* amātus esse, to have been loved  
*Fut.* amātum irī, to be about to be loved

## PARTICIPLES

*Past* portātus, having been carried  
*Fut.* portandus, to be carried

## 28. SECOND, THIRD, AND FOURTH CONJUGATIONS

**moneō, monēre, monuī, monitum**  
**dūcō, dūcere, dūxī, ductum**  
**capiō, capere, cēpī, captum**  
**audiō, audire, audīvī, auditum**

*ACTIVE VOICE***INDICATIVE****PRESENT***Singular*

moneō	dūcō	capiō	audiō
monēs	dūcis	capis	audīs
monet	dūcit	capit	audit

*Plural*

monēmus	dūcimus	capimus	audīmus
monētis	dūcitis	capitis	audītis
monent	dūcunt	capiunt	audiunt

**IMPERFECT***Singular*

monēbam	dūcēbam	capiēbam	audiēbam
monēbās	dūcēbās	capiēbās	audiēbās
monēbat	dūcēbat	capiēbat	audiēbat

*Plural*

monēbāmus	dūcēbāmus	capiēbāmus	audiēbāmus
monēbātis	dūcēbātis	capiēbātis	audiēbātis
monēbant	dūcēbant	capiēbant	audiēbant

**FUTURE***Singular*

monēbō	dūcam	capiam	audiam
monēbis	dūcēs	capies	audiēs
monēbit	dūcet	capiet	audiet



*Plural*

monēbimus	dūcēmus	capiēmus	audiēmus
monēbitis	dūcētis	capiētis	audiētis
monēbunt	dūcent	capiant	audient

## PERFECT

monuī	dūxi	cēpī	audiuī
-------	------	------	--------

## PAST PERFECT

monueram	dūxeram	cēperam	audiueram
----------	---------	---------	-----------

## FUTURE PERFECT

monuerō	dūxerō	cēperō	audiuerō
---------	--------	--------	----------

## SUBJUNCTIVE

## PRESENT

*Singular*

moneam	dūcam	capiam	audiam
moneās	dūcās	capiās	audiās
moneat	dūcat	capiat	audiat

*Plural*

moneāmus	dūcāmus	capiāmus	audiāmur
moneātis	dūcātis	capiātis	audiātis
moneant	dūcant	capiant	audiant

## IMPERFECT

*Singular*

monērem	dūcerem	caperem	audīrem
monērēs	dūcerēs	caperēs	audīrēs
monēret	dūceret	caperet	audīret

*Plural*

monērēmus	dūcerēmus	caperēmus	audīrēmus
monērētis	dūcerētis	caperētis	audīrētis
monērent	dūcerent	caperent	audīrent

## PERFECT

monuerim	dūxerim	cēperim	audiuerim
----------	---------	---------	-----------

## PAST PERFECT

monuisssem	dūxissem	cēpisssem	audivisssem
------------	----------	-----------	-------------

## IMPERATIVE

## PRESENT

*Singular*

monē	dūc <sup>1</sup>	cape	audi
------	------------------	------	------

*Plural*

monēte	dūcite	capite	audite
--------	--------	--------	--------

## FUTURE

*Singular*

monētō	dūcitō	capitō	auditō
monētō	dūcitō	capitō	auditō

*Plural*

monētōte	dūcitōte	capitōte	auditōte
monentō	dūcuntō	capiunto	audiuntō

## PARTICIPLES

## PRESENT

monēns	dūcēns	capiēns	audiēns
--------	--------	---------	---------

## FUTURE

monitūrus	ductūrus	captūrus	auditūrus
-----------	----------	----------	-----------

## INFINITIVES

## PRESENT

monēre	dūcere	capere	audire
--------	--------	--------	--------

## PAST

monuisse	dūxisse	cēpisse	audivisse
----------	---------	---------	-----------

## FUTURE

monitūrus esse	ductūrus esse	captūrus esse	auditūrus esse
----------------	---------------	---------------	----------------

---

<sup>1</sup> This is an irregular form. The imperative of *mittō* is *mitte*, *mittite*, etc., which illustrates the regular formation in the 3d conjugation.

## GERUND

monendi	dūcendi	capiendi	audiendi
monendō	dūcendō	capiendō	audiendō
<i>etc.</i>	<i>etc.</i>	<i>etc.</i>	<i>etc.</i>

## SUPINE

monitum	ductum	captum	audītum
monitū	ductū	captū	audītū

29.

## PASSIVE VOICE

## INDICATIVE

## PRESENT

*Singular*

moneor	dūcor	capior	audior
monēris, -re	dūceris, -re	caperis, -re	audīris, -re
monētur	dūcitur	capitur	audītur

*Plural*

monēmur	dūcimur	capimur	audīmur
monēmini	dūcimini	capimini	audīmini
monentur	dūcuntur	capiuntur	audiuntur

## IMPERFECT

*Singular*

monēbar	dūcēbar	capiēbar	audiēbar
monēbāris, -re	dūcēbāris, -re	capiēbāris, -re	audiēbāris, -re
monēbātur	dūcēbātur	capiēbātur	audiēbātur

*Plural*

monēbāmur	dūcēbāmur	capiēbāmur	audiēbāmur
monēbāmini	dūcēbāmini	capiēbāmini	audiēbāmini
monēbantur	dūcēbantur	capiēbantur	audiēbantur

## FUTURE

*Singular*

monēbor	dūcar	capiar	audiar
monēberis, -re	dūcēris, -re	capiēris, -re	audiēris, -re
monēbitur	dūcētur	capiētur	audiētur

*Plural*

monēbimur	dūcēmur	capiēmur	audiēmur
monēbiminī	dūcēminī	capiēminī	audiēminī
monēbuntur	dūcentur	capiuntur	audientur

## PERFECT

monitus sum	ductus sum	captus sum	auditus sum
-------------	------------	------------	-------------

## PAST PERFECT

monitus eram	ductus eram	captus eram	auditus eram
--------------	-------------	-------------	--------------

## FUTURE PERFECT

monitus erō	ductus erō	captus erō	auditus erō
-------------	------------	------------	-------------

## SUBJUNCTIVE

## PRESENT

*Singular*

monear	dūcar	capiar	audiar
moneāris, -re	dūcāris, -re	capiāris, -re	audiāris, -re
moneātur	dūcātur	capiātur	audiātur

*Plural*

moneāmur	dūcāmur	capiāmur	audiāmur
moneāminī	dūcāminī	capiāminī	audiāminī
moneantur	dūcantur	capiantur	audiantur

## IMPERFECT

*Singular*

monērer	dūcerer	caperer	audīrer
monērēris, -re	dūcerēris, -re	caperēris, -re	audīrēris, -re
monērētur	dūcerētur	caperētur	audīrētur

*Plural*

monērēmur	dūcerēmur	caperēmur	audīrēmur
monērēminī	dūcerēminī	caperēminī	audīrēminī
monērentur	dūcerentur	caperentur	audīrentur

## PERFECT

monitus sim	ductus sim	captus sim	auditus sim
-------------	------------	------------	-------------

## PAST PERFECT

monitus essem ductus essem captus essem auditus essem

## IMPERATIVE

## PRESENT

*Singular*

monēre dūcere capere audire

*Plural*

monēminī dūciminī capiminī audiminī

## FUTURE

*Singular*

2. monētor dūcitor capitor auditor

3. monētor dūcitor capitor auditor

*Plural*

2. \_\_\_\_\_  
3. monentor dūcuntor capiuntor audiuntor

## PARTICIPLES

## PAST

monitus ductus captus auditus

## FUTURE

monendus dūcendus capiendus audiendus

## INFINITIVE

## PRESENT

monēri dūci capi audiri

## PAST

monitus esse ductus esse captus esse auditus esse

## FUTURE

monitum iri ductum iri captum iri auditum iri

a. A group of forms representing one person and number of a verb in all the tenses is called a Synopsis. The synopsis of **portō** in the first person singular of the indicative and subjunctive, active and passive, is as follows:

INDICATIVE	ACTIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
<i>Pres.</i>	portō	portem
<i>Imperf.</i>	portābam	portārem
<i>Fut.</i>	portābō	
<i>Perf.</i>	portāvi	portāverim
<i>P. Pf.</i>	portāveram	portāvissem
<i>F. Pf.</i>	portāverō	

	PASSIVE	
<i>Pres.</i>	portor	porter
<i>Imperf.</i>	portābar	portārer
<i>Fut.</i>	portābor	
<i>Perf.</i>	portātus sum	portātus sim
<i>P. Pf.</i>	portātus eram	portātus essem
<i>F. Pf.</i>	portātus erō	

## 30.

## DEPONENT VERBS

- I. cōnor, cōnāri, cōnātus sum  
 II. polliceor, pollicēri, pollicitus sum  
 III. sequor, sequi, secūtus sum  
 IV. potior, potīri, potītus sum

INDICATIVE  
PRESENT

I.	II.	III.	IV.
<i>Singular</i>			
cōnor	polliceor	sequor	potior
cōnāris, -re	pollicēris, -re	sequeris, -re	potīris, -re
cōnātur	pollicētur	sequitur	potītur

*Plural*

cōnāmur	pollicēmur	sequimur	potimur
cōnāminī	pollicēminī	sequiminī	potīminī
cōnantur	pollicentur	sequuntur	potiuntur

## IMPERFECT

cōnābar	pollicēbar	sequēbar	potiēbar
---------	------------	----------	----------

## FUTURE

cōnābor	pollicēbor	sequar	potiar
---------	------------	--------	--------

## PERFECT

cōnātus sum	pollicitus sum	secūtus sum	potītus sum
-------------	----------------	-------------	-------------

## PAST PERFECT

cōnātus eram	pollicitus eram	secūtus eram	potītus eram
--------------	-----------------	--------------	--------------

## FUTURE PERFECT

cōnātus erō	pollicitus erō	secūtus erō	potītus erō
-------------	----------------	-------------	-------------

## SUBJUNCTIVE

## PRESENT

cōner	pollicear	sequar	potiar
-------	-----------	--------	--------

## IMPERFECT

cōnārer	pollicērer	sequerer	potīrer
---------	------------	----------	---------

## PERFECT

cōnātus sim	pollicitus sim	secūtus sim	potītus sim
-------------	----------------	-------------	-------------

## PAST PERFECT

cōnātus essem	pollicitus essem	secūtus essem	potītus essem
---------------	------------------	---------------	---------------

## IMPERATIVE

## PRESENT

cōnāre	pollicēre	sequere	potīre
--------	-----------	---------	--------

## FUTURE

cōnātor	pollicētor	sequitor	potītor
---------	------------	----------	---------

## INFINITIVE

## PRESENT

cōnārī	pollicērī	sequī	potīrī
--------	-----------	-------	--------

## PAST

cōnātus esse	pollicitus esse	secūtus esse	potītus esse
--------------	-----------------	--------------	--------------

## FUTURE

cōnātūrus esse	pollicitūrus esse	secūtūrus esse	potītūrus esse
----------------	-------------------	----------------	----------------

## PARTICIPLE

## PRESENT

cōnāns	pollicēns	sequēns	potiēns
--------	-----------	---------	---------

## PAST

cōnātus	pollicitus	secūtus	potītus
---------	------------	---------	---------

## FUTURE ACTIVE

cōnātūrus	pollicitūrus	secūtūrus	potītūrus
-----------	--------------	-----------	-----------

## FUTURE PASSIVE

cōnandus	pollicendus	sequendus	potiendus
----------	-------------	-----------	-----------

## GERUND

cōnandī, etc.	pollicendī, etc.	sequendī, etc.	potiendī, etc.
---------------	------------------	----------------	----------------

## SUPINE

cōnātum	pollicitum	secūtum	potītum
cōnātū	pollicitū	secūtū	potītū

a. The following verbs are semi-deponent. The present system is active and the perfect system is passive:

audeō, audēre, ausus sum, *dare*  
gaudeō, gaudēre, gavisus sum, *rejoice*  
soleō, solēre, solitus sum, *be accustomed*  
fidō, fidere, fisis sum, *trust*

## IRREGULAR VERBS

## 31.

## CONJUGATION OF SUM

Principal parts: sum, esse, fui, futūrus

## INDICATIVE

## PRESENT

<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
sum, <i>I am</i>	sumus, <i>we are</i>
es, <i>you are</i>	estis, <i>you are</i>
est, <i>he, she, it is</i>	sunt, <i>they are</i>



## IMPERFECT

<i>eram, I was</i>	<i>erāmus, we were</i>
<i>erās, you were</i>	<i>erātis, you were</i>
<i>erat, he, she, it was</i>	<i>erant, they were</i>

## FUTURE

<i>erō, I shall be</i>	<i>erimus, we shall be</i>
<i>eris, you will be</i>	<i>eritis, you will be</i>
<i>erit, he, she, it will be</i>	<i>erunt, they will be</i>

## PERFECT

<i>fui, I have been, I was</i>	<i>fuiinus, we have been, we were</i>
<i>fuiſti, you have been, you were</i>	<i>fuiſtis, you have been, you were</i>
<i>fuit, he, she, it has been, was</i>	<i>fuērunt, or -ēre, they have been, they were.</i>

## PAST PERFECT

<i>fueram, I had been</i>	<i>fuerāmus, we had been</i>
<i>fuerās, you had been</i>	<i>fuerātis, you had been</i>
<i>fuerat, he, she, it had been</i>	<i>fuerant, they had been</i>

## FUTURE PERFECT

<i>fuerō, I shall have been</i>	<i>fuerimus, we shall have been</i>
<i>fueris, you will have been</i>	<i>fueritis, you will have been</i>
<i>fuerit, he, she, it will have been</i>	<i>fuerint, they will have been</i>

## SUBJUNCTIVE

## PRESENT

<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
<i>ſim</i>	<i>ſimus</i>
<i>ſis</i>	<i>ſitis</i>
<i>ſit</i>	<i>ſint</i>

## IMPERFECT

<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
<i>eſſem</i>	<i>eſſēmus</i>
<i>eſſēs</i>	<i>eſſētis</i>
<i>eſſet</i>	<i>eſſent</i>

## PERFECT

<i>fuerim</i>	<i>fuerimus</i>
<i>fueris</i>	<i>fueritis</i>
<i>fuerit</i>	<i>fuerint</i>

## PAST PERFECT

<i>fuiſſem</i>	<i>fuiſſēmus</i>
<i>fuiſſēs</i>	<i>fuiſſētis</i>
<i>fuiſſet</i>	<i>fuiſſent</i>

## IMPERATIVE

**PRESENT**

**2d pers. es, be (thou)                      este, be (ye)**

## FUTURE

*2d pers. estō, be, thou shalt be estōte, be, ye shall be*

3d pers. estō, let him be, he shall be      suntō, let them be, they shall be

## PARTICIPLE

**Fut.** futūrus, *about to be*

### INFINITIVE

*Pres. esse, to be*

*Past*    fuisse, *to have been*

*Fut.* futūrus esse or fore, to be about to be

**32.**

### CONJUGATION OF POSSUM.

**Principal parts: possum, posse, potui**

INDICATIVE		SUBJUNCTIVE	
PRESENT			
<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
possum	possumus	possim	possimus
potes	potestis	possis	possitis
potest	possunt	possit	possint
IMPERFECT			
poteram	poterāmus	possem	possēmus
poterās	poterātis	possēs	possētis
poterat	poterant	posset	possent
FUTURE			
poterō	poterimus		
PERFECT			
potui	potuimus	potuerim	potuerimus
PAST PERFECT			
potueram	potuerāmus	potuissem	potuissēmus

## FUTURE PERFECT

potuerō      potuerimus

## INFINITIVE

*Pres.* posse

*Past* potuisse

## 33. CONJUGATION OF PRŌSUM

Principal parts: prŏsum, prŏdesse, prŏfui

## INDICATIVE

## SUBJUNCTIVE

## PRESENT

<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
prŏsum	prŏsumus	prŏsim	prŏsimus
prŏdes	prŏdestis	prŏsis	prŏsitis
prŏdest	prŏsunt	prŏsit	prŏsint

The remaining forms of the present system are conjugated like *sum*, with the prefix *prŏd-*. The perfect system is regularly formed with the stem *prŏfu-*.

## 34. CONJUGATION OF FERŌ

Principal parts: ferō, ferre, tuli, lātum

## INDICATIVE

## PRESENT

*Active**Passive*

<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
ferō	ferimus	feror	ferimur
fers	fertis	ferris, -re	ferimini
fert	ferunt	fertur	feruntur

## IMPERFECT

ferēbam	ferēbāmus	ferēbar	ferēbāmur
---------	-----------	---------	-----------

## FUTURE

feram	ferēmus	ferar	ferēmur
-------	---------	-------	---------

## PERFECT

tuli	tulimus	lātus sum	lāti sumus
------	---------	-----------	------------

## PAST PERFECT

tuleram	tulerāmus	lātus eram	lāti erāmus
---------	-----------	------------	-------------

## FUTURE PERFECT

tulerō	tulerimus	lātus erō	lāti erimus
--------	-----------	-----------	-------------

## SUBJUNCTIVE

## PRESENT

feram	ferāmus	ferar	ferāmur
-------	---------	-------	---------

## IMPERFECT

ferrem	ferrēmus	ferrer	ferrēmur
--------	----------	--------	----------

## PERFECT

tulerim	tulerīmus	lātus sim	lāti sīmus
---------	-----------	-----------	------------

## PAST PERFECT

tulisse	tulissēmus	lātus essem	lāti essēmus
---------	------------	-------------	--------------

## IMPERATIVE

## PRESENT

2 fer	ferite	ferre	ferimini
-------	--------	-------	----------

## FUTURE

2 fertō	fertōte	fertor	_____
3 fertō	feruntō	fertor	feruntor

## INFINITIVE

## Active

## Passive

## PARTICIPLES

## Active

## Passive

<i>Pres.</i>	ferre	ferri	<i>Pres.</i>	ferēns	<i>Past</i>	lātus
<i>Past</i>	tulisse	lātus esse	<i>Fut.</i>	lāturus	<i>Fut.</i>	ferendus
<i>Fut.</i>	lāturus esse	lātum iri				

## GERUND

ferendī, etc.

## SUPINE

Acc. lātum      Abl. lātū

## 35.

CONJUGATION OF *eō*Principal parts: *eō, ire, iī or iui, itum*

INDICATIVE		PRESENT		SUBJUNCTIVE	
<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>			<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
<i>eō</i>	<i>imus</i>			<i>eam</i>	<i>eāmus</i>
<i>is</i>	<i>itis</i>			<i>eās</i>	<i>eātis</i>
<i>it</i>	<i>eunt</i>			<i>eat</i>	<i>eant</i>
IMPERFECT					
<i>ibam</i>	<i>ibāmus</i>			<i>irem</i>	<i>irēmus</i>
FUTURE					
<i>ibō</i>	<i>ibimus</i>				
PERFECT					
<i>iī or iui</i>	<i>iimus or iivimus</i>			<i>ierim or iiverim</i>	<i>ierimus or iiverimus</i>
PAST PERFECT					
<i>ieram</i> ( <i>iiveram</i> )	<i>ierāmus</i> ( <i>iiverāmus</i> )			<i>issem</i> ( <i>iivissem</i> )	<i>issēmus</i> ( <i>iivissēmus</i> )
FUTURE PERFECT					
<i>ierō or iiverō</i>	<i>ierimus or iiverimus</i>				
IMPERATIVE		INFINITIVE		PARTICIPLE	
<i>Pres. I, ite</i>		<i>Pres. Ire</i>		<i>Pres. iēns (gen. euntis)</i>	
<i>Fut. Itō, Itōte</i>		<i>Past iisse or Isse</i>		<i>Fut. itūrus</i>	
<i>Ito, euntō</i>		<i>Fut. itūrus esse</i>			
GERUND					
<i>eundī, etc.</i>					

## 36.

CONJUGATION OF *fiō*Principal parts: *fiō, fieri, factus sum*

INDICATIVE		PRESENT		SUBJUNCTIVE	
<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>			<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
<i>fiō</i>	—			<i>fiam</i>	<i>fiāmus</i>
<i>fīs</i>	—			<i>fiās</i>	<i>fiātis</i>
<i>fit</i>	<i>fiunt</i>			<i>fiat</i>	<i>fiant</i>

## IMPERFECT

fiēbam	fiēbāmus	fierem	fierēmus
--------	----------	--------	----------

## FUTURE

fiām	fiēmus
------	--------

## PERFECT

factus sum	factus sim
------------	------------

## PAST PERFECT

factus eram	factus essem
-------------	--------------

## FUTURE PERFECT

factus erō

## IMPERATIVE

Pres. fi, fite

## INFINITIVE

Pres. fieri  
 Past. factus esse  
 Fut. factum iri

## PARTICIPLES

Past. factus  
 Fut. faciendus

## 37. CONJUGATION OF VOLŌ, AND ITS COMPOUNDS

*volō, velle, volui, be willing.**nōlo, nōlle, nōlui, be unwilling.**mālō, mālle, mālui. prefer.*

## INDICATIVE

<i>Pres.</i>	volō	nōlō	mālō
	vīs	nōn vīs	māvīs
	vult	nōn vult	māvult
	volumus	nōlumus	mālumus
	vultis	nōn vultis	māvultis
	volunt	nōlunt	mālunt
<i>Imperf.</i>	volēbam	nōlēbam	mālēbam
<i>Fut.</i>	volam	nōlam	mālam
<i>Perf.</i>	volui	nōlui	mālui
<i>Past Perf.</i>	volueram	nōlueram	mālueram
<i>Fut. Perf.</i>	voluerō	nōluerō	māluerō

## SUBJUNCTIVE

<i>Pres.</i>	velim	nōlim	mālim
<i>Imperf.</i>	vellem	nōllem	māllem
<i>Perf.</i>	voluerim	nōluerim	māluerim
<i>Past Perf.</i>	voluissem	nōluissem	māluissem

## IMPERATIVE

<i>Pres.</i>	nōli	nōlite
<i>Fut.</i>	nōlitō	nōlitōte
	nōlitō	nōluntō

## INFINITIVE

<i>Pres.</i>	velle	nōlle	mālle
<i>Past.</i>	voluisse	nōluisse	māluisse

## PARTICIPLE

<i>Pres.</i>	volēns	nōlēns
--------------	--------	--------

NOTE.—A few verbs are defective, that is, they lack some forms which are found in the conjugation of other verbs. The most important are *aiō*, *I say, I assent*, *inquam*, *I say*, *coepi*, *I began*, *memini*, *I remember*, *odi*, *I hate*.

(1) The forms of *aiō* most commonly used are found in the present indicative, and are as follows:

<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
1. <i>aiō</i>	
2. <i>aīs</i>	
3. <i>aīt</i>	<i>aīunt</i>

A few other forms, including the whole of the imperfect indicative and the second and third persons singular of the present subjunctive are sometimes found.

(2) The only forms of *inquam* in common use are found in the present indicative. They are as follows:

<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
<i>inquam</i>	
<i>inquis</i>	
<i>inquit</i>	<i>inquiunt</i>

(3) The three verbs, **coepti**, **memini**, and **ōdi** have no present, imperfect, or future forms. The perfects of **memini** and **ōdi** are used with present meanings, the past perfects with imperfect meanings, and the future perfects with future meanings. The tenses of **coepti** have their regular meanings. The present, imperfect, and future of **coepti** are supplied by the forms of **incipiō**.

### SYNTAX

NOTE.—The statement of grammatical principles which follows is not intended to be in any sense a complete outline of Latin grammar. The topics presented are those which are especially important for the work of the second year. The mood and case uses treated are limited almost entirely to those which are found in the exercises or the connected text of this book.

#### AGREEMENT

38. (1) Adjectives and participles agree with their nouns in gender, number, and case.

**Magna** urbs; **magnae** partis; **magnis** periculis.

(2) A relative pronoun agrees with its antecedent in gender and number, but its case depends on its use in its own clause.

**Homō** *quem vidēs* amicus meus est, *the man whom you see is my friend.*

39. A noun in apposition is put in the same case as the noun which it explains.

**Agricola**, **vir** benignus, **puerōs** laudat, *the farmer, a kind man, praises the boys.*

40. A verb agrees with its subject in person and number.

**Puer** **labōrat**, *the boy works*; **puerī** **labōrant**, *the boys work.*



## NOUNS: CASES

## THE NOMINATIVE

41. The nominative is the case of the subject or predicate of a finite<sup>1</sup> verb.

*Puella canit, the girl sings.*

*Frāter tuus est agricola, your brother is a farmer.*

a. The predicate nominative is used with the verb **sum** and with the passive voice of verbs meaning to *name, call, appoint, choose*, and the like.

*Is rēx tyrannus appellātus est, this king was called a tyrant.*

## THE GENITIVE

## GENITIVE OF POSSESSION

42. The genitive is used to denote the possessor.

*Liber pueri repertus est, the boy's book has been found:*

## GENITIVE OF THE WHOLE (PARTITIVE GENITIVE)

43. With words denoting a part, a dependent genitive is used to name the whole of that to which the part belongs.

*Multi amicōrum meōrum in eā urbe habitant, many of my friends live in that city.*

a. The ablative with **dē** or **ex** is sometimes used in place of the genitive of the whole, regularly so with cardinal numerals and **quidam**. *Ūnus ē filiis tuis, one of your sons.*

## GENITIVE OF DESCRIPTION

44. The genitive, modified by an adjective, may be used to describe a person or thing.

*Homō magnae virtūtis, a man of great courage.*

---

<sup>1</sup> That is, any verb form which denotes person and number.

a. The genitive is often employed in this construction to denote measure.

**Mūrus quattuor pedum, a four-foot wall (a wall of four feet).**

#### OBJECTIVE GENITIVE

45. Nouns and adjectives which denote action sometimes take a dependent genitive in a relation similar to that of a direct object to the verb on which it depends.

**Timor periculi, fear of danger.**

#### SUBJECTIVE GENITIVE

46. Nouns which denote action sometimes take a genitive to indicate the person who does the act.

**Adventus Caesaris, the arrival of Caesar.**

#### GENITIVE OF MATERIAL OR COMPOSITION

47. The genitive may be used to denote the material of which something is composed, or the persons or objects making up a collective noun.

**Exercitus virōrum fortium, an army of brave men.**

#### GENITIVE WITH VERBS

48. The verbs **meminī** and **reminīscor**, *remember*, and **oblīviscor**, *forget*, frequently take a genitive as object. **Virtūtis vestrae nōn oblīviscor, I do not forget your courage.**

a. If the object is a neuter pronoun or a neuter adjective used as a noun, it is always in the accusative.

**Rōmānī haec semper meminerint, the Romans will always remember these things.**

#### THE DATIVE

##### DATIVE OF INDIRECT OBJECT

49. The indirect object is put in the dative.

**Fēmina puerō epistolam dat, the woman gives the boy a letter.**

## DATIVE WITH ADJECTIVES

50. The dative is used in dependence on adjectives meaning *kind, friendly, pleasing, dear, useful, near*, and some others.

**Filius tuus sorōribus benignus est, your son is kind to (his) sisters.**

## DATIVE WITH SPECIAL VERBS

51. Most verbs meaning *to please, displease, trust, distrust, believe, persuade, serve, obey, favor, resist, envy, threaten, pardon*, and *spare* govern the dative.

**Illis barbaris nēmō nunc cōfidit, no one now trusts those barbarians.**

## DATIVE OF POSSESSION

52. The possessor of something may be denoted by a noun or pronoun in the dative, with the word denoting the thing possessed in the nominative as the subject of a form of *sum*.

**Puerō gladius est, the boy has a sword.**

## DATIVE OF PURPOSE

53. A noun in the dative is sometimes used to denote the purpose or end which something serves or is intended to serve.

**Hunc librum dōnō mīsi, I sent this book as a gift (lit. for a gift).**

## DATIVE OF REFERENCE

54. The dative is sometimes used to denote the person with reference to whom an act is said to be done or a situation to exist. This use is especially common in expressions which contain a dative of purpose.

**Legiō equitātui auxiliō missa est, the legion was sent as aid (lit. for aid) to the cavalry.**

## DATIVE WITH COMPOUNDS

**55.** Verbs compounded with **ante**, **ob**, **prae**, and **sub** frequently have a dependent noun or pronoun in the dative case. This construction is sometimes found also with compounds of **ad**, **circum**, **con-**, **in**, **inter**, **post**, **prō**, and **super**.

*Legiōni praeest, he is in command of the legion.*

a. If the simple verb from which the compound is formed is a transitive verb, the compound may take both the accusative and the dative.

*Labiēnum castris praefēcit, he placed Labienus in charge of the camp.*

## DATIVE OF AGENT

**56.** With the future passive participle, the person by whom the act must be done or ought to be done is regularly denoted by the dative.

*Epistula mihi mittenda est, a letter ought to be sent by me.*

NOTE.—With a verb which has a dependent dative of some other kind, the dative of agent is sometimes replaced by the ablative of agent (**66**) to avoid confusion in the meaning of the sentence.

## ACCUSATIVE

## ACCUSATIVE OF DIRECT OBJECT

**57.** The direct object of a verb is put in the accusative.

*Silvam vidēmus, we see the forest.*

## ACCUSATIVE OF DURATION OF TIME

**58.** The accusative without a preposition is used to tell how long an act or situation continues.

*Multās hōrās in insulā mānsī, I remained many hours on the island.*

## ACCUSATIVE OF EXTENT IN SPACE

59. The accusative without a preposition is used to express extent in space.

**Puer quinque milia passuum ambulavit, the boy walked five miles.**

## ACCUSATIVE OF PLACE TO WHICH

60. The accusative of **domus** and of names of cities and towns is used without a preposition to denote place to which. With other words in this construction, a preposition, **ad** or **in**, is used.

**Exercitus Rōmam rediit, the army will return to Rome.**  
**Exercitus in urbem rediit, the army will return to the city.**

## ACCUSATIVE WITH PREPOSITIONS

61. Certain prepositions have their objects in the accusative case. Among the most important of these are **ad**, **ante**, **apud**, **circum**, **contrā**, **inter**, **ob**, **per**, **post**, **praeter**, **propter**, **trans**.

**Is poēta inter barbarōs diū habitavit, this poet lived a long time among barbarians.**

## ACCUSATIVE AS SUBJECT OF INFINITIVES

62. The accusative is used as the subject of the infinitive.

**Explōrātor dixit urbem incēnsam esse, the scout said the city had been burned.**

## TWO ACCUSATIVES

63. Verbs of *naming, calling, appointing, thinking*, and the like, may have in addition to the direct object a second accusative telling what the person or thing denoted by the object is named, called, appointed etc.

**Frātre tuum praetōrem creāvimus, we have elected your brother praetor.**

a. Compounds of **trāns** sometimes take two objects, one governed by the preposition, the other by the simple verb. With the passive of such verbs the object governed by the preposition may be retained.

**Legiōnem flūmen trādūxī**, *I led the legion across the river.*

**Legiō flūmen trāducta est**, *the legion was led across the river.*

#### THE ABLATIVE

##### ABLATIVE OF SEPARATION

64. Verbs meaning to *separate, remove, deprive of, be absent*, and the like, take the ablative of separation, often with **ab** or **ex**.

**Hi montēs Galliam ab Hispāniā dīvidunt**, *these mountains separate Gaul from Spain.*

##### ABLATIVE OF PLACE FROM WHICH

65. The ablative of **domus** and of names of cities and towns is used without a preposition to express the idea of place from which. With other words in this construction a preposition, **ab**, **dē**, or **ex**, is used.

**Lēgātus Genavā profectus est**, *the envoy set out from Geneva.*

**Lēgātus ex oppidō profectus est**, *the lieutenant set out from the town.*

##### ABLATIVE OF AGENT

66. With passive verbs the noun or pronoun which denotes the person by whom the act is done is put in the ablative with **ā** or **ab**.

**Explōrātor ā militibus captus est**, *the scout was captured by the soldiers.*

## ABLATIVE OF COMPARISON

67. With the comparative form of an adjective (occasionally of an adverb), if **quam** is omitted, the noun or pronoun denoting the person or thing with which comparison is made is put in the ablative without a preposition.

**Puella altior puerō est, the girl is taller than the boy.**

a. If **quam** is used, the word denoting the person or thing with which comparison is made stands in the same case as the thing compared.

**Puella est altior quam puer, the girl is taller than the boy.**

## ABLATIVE OF PLACE WHERE

68. The ablative with **in** denotes the place where something is or where some act occurs.

**In eis montibus multa animālia reperiuntur, many animals are found in these mountains.**

## ABLATIVE OF TIME

69. The time at which or within which some act takes place is regularly expressed by a noun or pronoun in the ablative case without a preposition.

**Eō annō pater meus tēctum novum aedificāvit, my father built a new house that year.**

## ABLATIVE OF ACCOMPANIMENT

70. The ablative with the preposition **cum** is used to denote the person with whom one is associated in doing an act.

**Cum amicō ambulō, I walk with a friend.**

a. The ablative of accompaniment also denotes the person with whom one is contending.

*Cum Germānis bellum gessērunt, they waged war with the Germans.*

b. The preposition **cum** may be omitted in military expressions, if the noun in the ablative is modified by an adjective other than a numeral.

*Multis militibus flūmen trānsiī, I crossed the river with many soldiers.*

*Cum tribus legiōnibus flūmen trānsiī, I crossed the river with three legions.*

#### ABLATIVE OF MANNER

71. The ablative, frequently with the preposition **cum**, is used to express manner.

*Magnā cum cūrā (or magnā cūrā) omnia parāvimus, we have prepared everything with great care.*

NOTE.—Some words of frequent occurrence omit the preposition in this construction. Among these are **jūre**, *justly (with justice)*, **injūriā**, *unjustly (with injustice)*, **meritō**, *deservedly (with merit)*, **cāsū**, *accidentally (by chance)*, and some others.

#### ABLATIVE OF MEANS

72. A word which is used to denote the means employed in accomplishing an act is put in the ablative without a preposition.

*Galli gladiis pugnābant, the Gauls fought with swords.*

#### ABLATIVE OF ROUTE

73. The way or route by which one goes may be denoted by the ablative without a preposition.

*Breviōre itinere rediimus, we returned by a shorter route.*



## ABLATIVE OF DEGREE OF DIFFERENCE

74. The ablative without a preposition is used to express the degree or measure of difference between two things.

**Arbor decem pedibus altior mūrō (or quam mūrus) est,**  
*the tree is ten feet higher than the wall.*

## ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE

75. A noun or pronoun in the ablative, together with an adjective, a participle, or another noun in agreement, may be used to denote some circumstance or event loosely connected with the rest of the sentence.

**Duce captō, hostēs fūgerunt,** *the leader having been captured, the enemy fled.*

a. An ablative absolute is frequently translated by a clause introduced by *when, after, if, since, although*, or by a prepositional phrase. Thus, the ablative absolute in the preceding example may be translated *when the leader had been captured* or *after the capture of the leader*.

## ABLATIVE OF RESPECT

76. The ablative without a preposition is used to indicate in what respect a statement is true.

**Helvētīī reliquōs Gallōs virtūte praecēdunt,** *the Helvetians surpass the rest of the Gauls in courage.*

## ABLATIVE OF DESCRIPTION

77. The ablative modified by an adjective may be used to describe a person or thing.

**Homō magnā virtūte,** *a man of great courage.*

NOTE.—In many phrases, such as the example given above, either the ablative or the genitive of description (44) may be used. But physical characteristics are usually expressed by the ablative and measure always by the genitive.

## ABLATIVE OF CAUSE

78. The ablative is sometimes used to express cause.

**Hostēs timōre fugere coepērunt, the enemy began to flee on account of fear.**

a. Sometimes a preposition (**ab, dē** or **ex**) is used with the ablative of cause.

**Ex commūtātiōne rērum dolent, they grieve because of the change of circumstances.**

b. Cause is frequently expressed by **propter** or **ob** with the accusative.

**Propter timōrem, on account of fear.**

## ABLATIVE WITH ŪTOR, ETC.

79. The deponents **ūtor, fruor, fungor, potior, and vēscor** take their objects in the ablative.

**Militēs nostrī hastis nōn ūtuntur, our soldiers do not use spears.**

a. Occasionally the genitive is used with **potior** instead of the ablative.

**Urbis potiri cupiunt, they wish to gain possession of the city.**

## THE VOCATIVE

80. The vocative denotes the person addressed.

**Ubi, Mārce, pater tuus est, Marcus, where is your father?**

NOTE.—The vocative regularly stands after one or more words of the sentence in which it is found.

## THE LOCATIVE

81. With names of cities and towns and with **domus**, place where is denoted by the locative case, which in the singular of nouns of the first and second declensions has the

same form as the genitive singular; in nouns of the third declension and in the plural of nouns of the first and second declensions it regularly has the same form as the ablative.

**Rōmae**, at Rome; **domī**, at home; **Athēnis**, at Athens.

## ADJECTIVES

### ADHERENT AND PREDICATE ADJECTIVES

82. An adjective which is directly connected with the noun which it modifies is called an adherent adjective. Thus, **vir fortis**, a brave man; **arbor alta**, a tall tree.

83. An adjective which is connected with its noun by some form of the verb meaning *to be* is called a predicate adjective. Thus, **vir fortis est**, the man is brave.

### SUBSTANTIVE USE OF ADJECTIVES

84. Adjectives and participles are sometimes used as substantives (nouns or pronouns). Words meaning *many*, *all*, *others*, *few* and the like are especially common in this use. The masculine refers to men, or to persons in general, the feminine to women, and the neuter to things.

**Multi tē laudant**, many praise you.

**Omnia parāta sunt**, all things are prepared.

a. In military expressions **nostrī** is used to mean *our men* or *our soldiers*. Other possessives are sometimes used with a similar meaning. Thus, **tui** or **vestri**, *your men*, *your soldiers*.

### ADJECTIVES DENOTING A PART

85. There are a few adjectives which tell what part of an object is meant instead of telling what kind. Among the most important are **summus**, **medius**, **extrēmus**, and **imū**. Thus, **summus mōns**, the highest part of the mountain, the mountain top; **medius collis**, the middle of the hill, **mediō colle**, half way up the hill (on the middle of the hill).

## ADJECTIVES WITH ADVERBIAL FORCE

86. Sometimes an adjective modifying the subject or object is best translated by an adverb.

*Inviti vēnērunt, they came unwillingly.*

## MEANING OF THE COMPARATIVE AND SUPERLATIVE

87. The comparative and superlative forms of adjectives and adverbs are commonly translated by the corresponding English forms. But sometimes the comparative is translated by a positive form preceded by *too* or *rather*, and the superlative by a positive form preceded by *very*. Thus, *altior* may mean *rather high*, and *altissimus* may mean *very high*.

## VERBS: MOODS

## THE INDICATIVE IN MAIN CLAUSES

88. The indicative is used in statements of fact and in questions which imply that the answer expected is a statement of fact.

*Caesar aciem instrūxit, Caesar drew up a line of battle.*  
*Quid Cōsidius dixit, what did Considius say?*

## THE INDICATIVE AFTER CERTAIN CONJUNCTIONS

89. The indicative is used in subordinate clauses after the conjunctions *quamquam*, *although*, *postquam*, *after*, *ubi*, *when* or *where*, and some others.

## RELATIVE CLAUSES

90. A clause introduced by a relative pronoun commonly takes its verb in the indicative, except in the special uses described later (see especially 94, *a*, and 102).

## SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES WITH QUOD

91. A clause introduced by **quod** meaning *that*, with its verb in the indicative, is sometimes used as the subject or object of a verb, or in apposition with a noun or pronoun.

a. Sometimes **quod** is translated *as to the fact that*, and the clause it introduces then serves as an adverbial modifier, loosely connected with the rest of the sentence.

## SUBJUNCTIVE

## VOLITIVE SUBJUNCTIVE

92. The subjunctive is used to express an act as willed by some person.

**Epistulās statim mittāmus**, *let us send the letters at once.*

a. The negative used with the volitive subjunctive is **nē**.

**Nē diūtius maneāmus**, *let us not remain longer.*

## OPTATIVE SUBJUNCTIVE

93. The subjunctive, commonly with **utinam**, is used to express a wish. The use of tenses is as follows:

(1) A wish that something had been true in the past has the past perfect subjunctive. **Utinam hunc locum numquam vidissem**, *would that I had never seen this place (I wish I had never seen this place).*

(2) A wish that something were true in the present has the imperfect subjunctive. **Utinam meliōrem ducem habērēmus**, *would that we had a better leader (I wish that we had a better leader).*

(3) A wish relating to the future has the present subjunctive. **(Utinam) frāter tuus salvus redeat**, *may your brother return safely (I hope your brother may return safely).*

NOTE 1.—The imperfect and past perfect (and sometimes the present) in wishes are introduced by **utinam**.

NOTE 2.—The negative used with wishes is sometimes **nē** and sometimes **nōn**.

#### CLAUSES OF PURPOSE

94. A subordinate clause which expresses purpose has its verb in the subjunctive. Such a clause is commonly introduced by **ut** or (if negative) by **nē**.

**Vēnī ut tē vidērem**, *I came to see you* (lit. *that I might see you*).

**Militēs missī sunt nē urbs caperētur**, *soldiers were sent that the city might not be captured*.

a. Sometimes a purpose clause is introduced by a relative pronoun. This form of purpose clause is found chiefly after **mittō** and its compounds, and after **relinquō** and a few other verbs.

**Puerum mittam qui tē adjuvet**, *I will send a boy to help you* (lit. *who shall help you*).

b. The clause of purpose may be translated by a simple infinitive, by an infinitive with *in order*, or by a clause with *that* or *in order that*. The following translations are possible for the sentence **Vēnī ut tē vidērem**:

*I came to see you.*

*I came in order to see you.*

*I came that I might see you.*

*I came in order that I might see you.*

95. A purpose clause which contains a comparative form of an adjective or adverb is introduced by **quō** instead of **ut**. **Pontem faciunt quō facilius trānseant**, *they are making a bridge that they may cross more easily*.

## CLAUSES OF RESULT

96. A subordinate clause which expresses result has its verb in the subjunctive. Such a clause is introduced by *ut*, or occasionally by a relative pronoun. The negative is *nōn*.

**Militēs tam fortiter restitērunt ut hostēs repellerentur**, the soldiers resisted so bravely that the enemy were driven back.

**Tempestātēs tantae erant ut ex portū proficisci nōn audērēmus**, the storms were so great that we did not dare to set out from the harbor.

**Est nēmō tam sapiēns qui numquam erret**, there is no one so wise that he never errs.

## NOUN (OR SUBSTANTIVE) CLAUSES OF DESIRE

97. Verbs expressing an idea of desire, such as those meaning *to command*, *urge*, *persuade*, *request*, and the like may take as object (or as subject in the passive) a clause introduced by *ut* or *nē* with its verb in the subjunctive.

**Helvētiis persuāsit ut exirent**, he persuaded the Helvetians to emigrate.

**Militibus imperāvit nē saxa jacerent**, he ordered the soldiers not to throw stones.

NOTE 1.—These clauses are frequently translated by an infinitive with a subject, as in the examples above.

NOTE 2.—Such expressions as *jūs est*, *there is a law*, and *cōsiliū est*, *the plan is*, may be followed by a substantive clause telling what the law or plan is to which reference is made.

a. The verbs *jubeō*, *I order*, and *vetō*, *I forbid*, regularly take an infinitive with subject accusative, instead of a subjunctive clause. Verbs meaning *to wish* sometimes take the infinitive with subject accusative.

**Legiōnem flūmen trānsire jussit**, he ordered the legion to cross the river.

## NOUN (OR SUBSTANTIVE) CLAUSES OF FACT

98. Verbs meaning *to accomplish* and impersonal verbs meaning *it happens, it results, it remains*, and the like, take a dependent clause with the subjunctive, introduced by *ut*. The negative is *nōn*.

**Accidit ut duae cohortēs ante castra essent, it happened that there were two cohorts in front of the camp.**

a. Such expressions as *mōs est, the custom is*, may be followed by a substantive clause with *ut*, telling what the custom is to which reference is made.

## CLAUSES OF FEAR

99. Verbs and other expressions of fear may take a dependent clause with the subjunctive, introduced by *nē* meaning *that* or *ut* meaning *that . . . not*.

**Verēbantur nē exercitus noster in Galliā manēret, they feared that our army would remain in Gaul.**

**Timeō ut sē fortiter dēfendat, I fear that he will not defend himself bravely.**

a. Sometimes *nē . . . nōn* is used instead of *ut* after words of fear.

**Timeō nē sē nōn dēfendat, I fear that he will not defend himself.**

b. Such expressions as *periculum est* may take the same construction as that used with words of fear.

**Periculum est nē cohors capiātur, there is danger that the cohort will be captured.**

c. The present subjunctive in clauses depending on words of fear is often translated by the English future indicative.



## ANTICIPATORY SUBJUNCTIVE

100. The subjunctive may be used in subordinate clauses to denote an act which is anticipated or expected.

**Expectābam dum frāter rediret, I was waiting until my brother should return (or for my brother to return).**

a. The anticipatory subjunctive is used mainly after words meaning *until* or *before* (**dum, antequam, priusquam**).

b. Sometimes the indicative is used after words meaning *before* or *until*, to state a new fact which is of importance in the narrative or to represent an actual event as looked back upon.

## CLAUSES OF PROVISIO

101. The conjunctions **dum, modo, and dummodo**, when meaning *provided, provided that, or if only*, take the subjunctive. **Urbs salva erit, dum tū exeās, the city will be safe, provided you withdraw.**

SUBJUNCTIVE IN RELATIVE CLAUSES OF DESCRIPTION  
(CHARACTERIZING CLAUSES)

102. A relative clause with its verb in the subjunctive is sometimes used to describe the antecedent of the relative.

**Pauci erant qui arma ferre nōn possent, there were a few who could not bear arms.**

NOTE 1.—Such clauses are used with indefinite and negative antecedents, and with expressions of existence and non-existence, such as **sunt qui, there are those who, est nēmō qui, there is no one who.**

NOTE 2.—Clauses of description which are parenthetical in character or which have a personal pronoun as antecedent take the indicative.

## CUM CAUSAL CLAUSES

103. A subordinate clause introduced by **cum** meaning *since* has its verb in the subjunctive.

**Cum nŭlla nāvis in cōspectū sit, domum revertar, since there is no ship in sight, I shall return home.**

a. Sometimes a causal clause with its verb in the subjunctive is introduced by a relative pronoun. **Fēlix es qui tot amīcōs habeās, you are fortunate, since you have so many friends.**

## CUM ADVERSATIVE CLAUSES

104. A subordinate clause introduced by **cum** meaning *although* has its verb in the subjunctive.

**Cum ea urbs parva esset, tamen magnam glōriam habebat, although that city was small, nevertheless it had great fame.**

a. The principal clause with which an adversative clause is connected frequently (but not always) contains the adverb **tamen**.

b. An adversative clause is sometimes introduced by a form of the relative pronoun.

**Tum Cethēgus, qui paulō ante aliquid respondisset, repente conticuit, then Cethegus, although he (lit. who) had made some reply a little before, suddenly became silent.**

## CUM DESCRIPTIVE CLAUSES OF SITUATION (CUM TEMPORAL)

105. The imperfect or past perfect subjunctive is often used in a clause introduced by **cum** meaning *when*. Such a clause describes the situation or makes known the time of the main act.

**Cum pōns factus esset, exercitus trāductus est, when the bridge had been made, the army was led across.**

a. If the clause with **cum** is used to make definite the time denoted by the adverb **tum** or any other word of time, it takes the indicative.

**Tum cum hostēs impetum faciēbant, auxilium nōn missum est, at the time when the enemy were making an attack, help was not sent.**

b. If the verb of the **cum** clause denotes repeated action, it is commonly in the indicative. In such clauses **cum** is sometimes translated *whenever*.

**Cum nāvem hostium viderant, ad eam properābant, whenever they saw a ship of the enemy, they hastened toward it.**

c. The present or future indicative, and occasionally the perfect indicative, may be used with **cum** meaning *when*.

#### CLAUSES WITH **QUĪN** AFTER EXPRESSIONS OF DOUBT

106. Words and phrases of doubt, when accompanied by a negative, are followed by **quīn** and the subjunctive.

**Nōn dubitō quīn Belgae fortēs sint, I do not doubt that the Belgians are brave.**

**Nōn dubium est quīn tūtī simus, there is no doubt that we are safe.**

#### INDIRECT QUESTIONS

107. An indirect question has its verb in the subjunctive.

**Quaesivī quis hoc fēcisset, I asked who had done this.**

## SUBJUNCTIVE BY ATTRACTION

108. Sometimes a subordinate clause which would otherwise have its verb in the indicative takes the subjunctive because it is closely dependent on a subjunctive or an infinitive.

*Ita ācrit̄er pugnāvērunt ut omnēs hostēs quī flūmen trānsissēnt celeriter repellerentur, they fought so fiercely that all the enemy who had crossed the river were quickly driven back.*

## IMPLIED (OR INFORMAL) INDIRECT DISCOURSE

109. The subjunctive may be used in a subordinate clause to indicate that it is a quotation, although no main clause of indirect discourse stands in the context.

*Servōs quī ad eōs perfūgissēnt poposcit, he demanded the slaves who had fled to them (who he said had fled to them).*

The use of the subjunctive in this clause shows that the clause was a part of the utterance of the person who made the demand.

## CAUSAL CLAUSES WITH QUOD, QUIA, AND QUONIAM

110. Clauses of reason introduced by **quod**, **quia**, and **quoniam** take the indicative to denote a reason as given directly by the speaker or writer. These conjunctions, however, take the subjunctive if the reason is given as a quotation from someone else or from the thought or utterance of the writer or speaker at another time.

*Profectus est quod verēbātur, he set out because he was afraid.*

*Grātiās cōsulī ēgērunt quod rem pūblicam servāvisset, they thanked the consul because (as they said) he had saved the state.*

## THE IMPERATIVE

111. The imperative mood is used to express commands.

*Dēsīlīte, commilitōnēs, jump down, comrades.*

NOTE.—The English imperative is used only in the present tense and in the second person. The Latin imperative has a future as well as a present. The future has the second and third persons, the present has only the second person.

## NEGATIVE COMMANDS

112. Negative commands (prohibitions) in the second person are commonly expressed by the imperative of *nōlō* (*nōlī, nōlīte*) with the infinitive of the verb denoting the act forbidden.

*Nōlī hīc manēre, do not remain here.*

a. Sometimes the perfect subjunctive with *nē* is used to express a negative command.

*Nē hīc mānseris, do not remain here.*

## THE INFINITIVE

## THE COMPLEMENTARY INFINITIVE

113. An infinitive is sometimes used to complete the meaning of another verb. When thus used, it denotes another action of the same subject as that of the verb on which it depends.

*Omnēs redire volunt, all wish to return.*

## THE INFINITIVE AS SUBJECT

114. An infinitive, with or without subject accusative, may be used as the subject of many impersonal verbs and also of *est* with a predicate adjective or noun.

*Eum manēre oportet, he ought to stay.*

*Mē ire necesse est, I must go.*

NOTE.—The subjunctive is sometimes used with *necesse est* and with a few other verbs which commonly take the infinitive.

#### THE INFINITIVE WITH SUBJECT ACCUSATIVE

115. The infinitive with subject accusative is used with words of *saying, hearing, knowing, thinking, believing, seeing*, and the like.

(For examples, see 121.)

116. The infinitive with subject accusative is regularly used after *jubeō, I order, vetō, I forbid*, and sometimes after *pator, I permit, cōgō, I compel, volō, I wish, nōlō, I am unwilling, mālō, I prefer*.

*Dux militēs impetum facere jussit, the leader ordered the soldiers to make an attack.*

#### CONDITIONAL SENTENCES

##### NON-COMMITTAL CONDITIONAL SENTENCES

117. A conditional sentence which does not imply that the condition is either true or false has both verbs in the indicative.

*Sī puerī in silvā errant, in periculō sunt, if the boys are wandering in the forest, they are in danger.*

*Sī hostēs tūti effūgērunt, nostrī eōs capere nōn cōnātī sunt, if the enemy have escaped safely (lit. safe), our men did not try to capture them.*

a. Sometimes an imperative or a subjunctive expressing *will* is used in the conclusion of a conditional sentence of this type instead of an indicative.

*Sī pācem cupitis, arma trādite, if you wish peace, surrender your arms.*

## FUTURE MORE VIVID CONDITIONAL SENTENCES

**118.** A future more vivid conditional sentence refers to future time and gives no indication as to the attitude of the speaker or writer toward the fulfillment of the condition. The verbs are in the future (or future perfect) tense.

**Si auxilium mittētur, oppidum dēfendētur, if aid is (lit. shall be) sent, the town will be defended.**

**NOTE 1.**—The verb of the condition in a sentence of this type is commonly translated by the present indicative with future meaning, as in the example above. Sometimes the future with *shall* is used.

**NOTE 2.**—The future perfect may be used in either clause to represent an act as occurring before some expressed or implied future time.

**NOTE 3.**—The future more vivid conditional sentence is merely a non-committal conditional sentence in future time.

## FUTURE LESS VIVID CONDITIONAL SENTENCES

**119.** A future less vivid conditional sentence refers to future time, and also implies doubt on the part of the writer or speaker as to the fulfillment of the condition. The conclusion refers to a future act or situation as conceivable or imaginable without asserting that it will take place or be realized. The verbs are in the present (or perfect) subjunctive.

**Si militēs flūmen trāseant, multi interficiantur, if the soldiers should cross the river, many would be killed.**

**NOTE.**—The perfect may be used in either clause to show that an act, if occurring, would take place before some expressed or implied future time.

## CONDITIONAL SENTENCES CONTRARY TO FACT

**120.** A conditional sentence which implies that the condition is not true has its verbs in the imperfect or past perfect subjunctive, the imperfect to refer to present time and the past perfect to refer to past time.

- (a) *Sī Haedui majōrēs cōpiās habērent, oppida dēfenderent*, if the Haeduans had larger forces, they would defend the towns.
- (b) *Sī Haedui majōrēs cōpiās habuissent, oppida dēfendissent*, if the Haeduans had had larger forces, they would have defended the towns.

**NOTE.**—Commonly the tense of the verbs in the two clauses is the same, but the imperfect may be used in one clause and the past perfect in the other, if the sense requires.

## INDIRECT DISCOURSE

**121.** Indirect discourse is used with words of *saying, hearing, knowing, thinking, believing*, and the like. The use of moods is as follows:

- (1) A main clause expressing a statement has its verb in the infinitive with subject accusative.
- (2) A main clause expressing a command has its verb in the subjunctive.
- (3) All subordinate clauses have their verbs in the subjunctive.

*Eā condiciōne quae ā Caesare ferrētur sē ūsūrōs esse ostendēbant; sibi trīduī spatium daret*, they stated (lit. showed) that they would accept the terms which were offered by Caesar; let him give them the space of three days.

## PARTICIPLES

**122.** The Latin verb has four participles. They are the present active, the past passive, the future active, and the future passive.



a. Deponent verbs have the same number of participles as other verbs. The past participle of a deponent is usually active in meaning, but it is occasionally used as a passive.

#### THE PRESENT PARTICIPLE

123. The present active participle denotes an act taking place at the same time as the main verb. It is less frequently used than the English present participle. Its declension is given in section 8, page 328.

*Nostri in hostēs advenientēs impetum fecerunt, our men made an attack on the enemy coming up (i. e., as they were coming up).*

NOTE.—The English present participle is used with a form of *to be* to make the progressive form of the verb. Thus, *he is marching, we were standing*. The Latin present participle is never so used.

#### THE PAST PARTICIPLE

124. The past passive participle denotes an act taking place before the time of the main verb. It is declined like *bonus*, section 6, page 325.

*Legiō à Caesare praemissa castra muniēbat, the legion, having been sent ahead by Caesar, was fortifying the camp.*

#### THE FUTURE ACTIVE PARTICIPLE

125. The future active participle is used chiefly with forms of *sum* to denote an act which someone intends to do or is about to do.

*Bellum cum Gallis gestūri erant, they intended to (or were about to) wage war with the Germans.*

## THE FUTURE PASSIVE PARTICIPLE

126. The future passive participle is used chiefly with forms of **sum** to denote an act which ought to be done or must be done by someone.

**Epistula mihi mittenda est, a letter ought to be sent by me.**

NOTE.—The future passive participle of a deponent verb is passive in meaning.

## THE GERUND

127. The gerund is a verbal noun of the second declension, used only in four cases and only in the singular number. Its cases are the genitive, dative, accusative, and ablative.

a. The genitive of the gerund is used chiefly as an objective genitive with an adjective or noun. With the ablative **causā** it expresses purpose.

**cupidus bellandi, desirous of engaging in war.**

**resistendi causā, for the purpose (sake) of resisting.**

b. The dative of the gerund is little used.

c. The accusative of the gerund is frequently used as the object of the preposition **ad** to express purpose. It is never used as a direct object.

**ad oppugnandum, for attacking, to attack.**

d. The ablative of the gerund is used to express means or cause, or as object of the prepositions **ab, dē, ex,** or **in.**

**pugnandō, by fighting.**

**in quaerendō, on inquiring.**

NOTE.—The infinitive is used to supply the nominative of the gerund and also the accusative when used as a direct object.

## THE GERUNDIVE

**128.** The gerundive is a future passive participle which is used in agreement with a noun or pronoun in a phrase equivalent in meaning to a gerund with an object.

*spēs urbis capiendae, hope of capturing the city.*

a. The case uses of the gerundive are in general the same as those of the gerund.

*cupidus oppidi expugnandi, desirous of storming the town.*  
*auxilii ferendi causā, for the purpose (sake) of bringing aid.*

*ad eas res conficiendās, for accomplishing these things.*  
*dē auxiliō mittendō, about (concerning) sending aid.*  
*lapidibus portandis, by carrying stones.*

**129.** The following distinctions between the gerund and the gerundive are to be observed:

Gerund	Gerundive
A noun	An adjective
Active in meaning	Passive
Neuter gender	All genders
Used only in the singular	Both numbers

NOTE 1.—The genitive of the gerund and also the ablative, when used without a preposition, sometimes take a direct object. But no form of the gerund standing as the object of a preposition can have a direct object. The gerundive must be used instead.

## THE SUPINE

**130.** The supine is a verbal noun of the fourth declension, used only in the accusative and ablative. The accusative is used to express purpose in clauses in which the finite verb expresses motion.

**Lēgātōs pācem petītum misērunt, they sent envoys to ask peace.**

a. The supine of a transitive verb may take a direct object.

131. The ablative of the supine is used with a few adjectives as an ablative of respect. It is usually translated by the English present infinitive.

**optimum factū, best to do (the best thing to do).**

### TENSES

132. The tenses of the Latin indicative are the present, imperfect, future, perfect, past perfect, and future perfect. In the subjunctive only the present, imperfect, perfect, and past perfect are found.

#### THE PRESENT

133. The present tense, as in English, is used to denote present time.

NOTE 1.—In a narrative of past events the present indicative is sometimes used for the purpose of presenting the situation more vividly before the mind of the reader or the hearer. This is called the Historical Present.

NOTE 2.—The present subjunctive is sometimes used with future force. This is especially common in clauses of fear.

134. A clause introduced by **dum** meaning *while* takes its verb in the present indicative.

**Dum haec geruntur, ex urbe profectus sum, while this was going on, I set out from the city.**

a. **Dum** meaning *as long as* may take any tense of the indicative which the sense requires.

#### THE IMPERFECT

135. The imperfect tense represents a past act as in progress or a past situation as continuing.

NOTE 1.—The imperfect indicative is sometimes used to denote an act as customary or of frequent occurrence in past time.

NOTE 2.—The imperfect indicative is often translated by the progressive form of the English past tense—*was praising, was warning*, etc., but sometimes the simple past tense is used as its equivalent.

NOTE 3.—The imperfect subjunctive is sometimes used to express action which was at a past time thought of as future.

#### THE FUTURE

136. The future tense, as in English, denotes future time.

NOTE.—With conjunctions meaning *if* and *when* the future tense is regularly used in Latin where the English employs the present in translation.

#### THE PERFECT

137. The perfect tense has two uses. (1) It may be equivalent in meaning to an English present perfect (translated with the auxiliary verbs *have* or *has*), or (2) it may be the equivalent of the English past tense, referring to an indefinite past act.

NOTE.—In future less vivid conditional sentences the perfect subjunctive is sometimes used to refer to a future act which, if occurring, would take place before some expressed or implied future time.

#### THE PAST PERFECT

138. The past perfect is used to represent an act as having occurred before some expressed or implied past time.

NOTE 1.—The past perfect subjunctive is sometimes used to refer to an act which was thought of in the past as likely to occur before some expressed or implied future time.

NOTE 2.—The past perfect is sometimes used in subordinate clauses to denote repeated action.

## THE FUTURE PERFECT

**139.** The future perfect is used to show that an act will occur before some expressed or implied future time.

**NOTE.**—The future perfect is used more frequently in Latin than in English.

## THE SEQUENCE OF TENSES

**140.** The tense of the subjunctive in a dependent clause usually bears a definite relation to the tense in the principal clause. This relation is called the Sequence of Tenses.

1. If the main verb is present, future, or future perfect, the dependent subjunctive is present or perfect.

2. If the main verb is imperfect, perfect, or past perfect, the dependent subjunctive is imperfect or past perfect.

**NOTE 1.**—A perfect indicative which is translated by an English present perfect may be followed by a present or perfect subjunctive.

**141.** Exceptions to the rule for the sequence of tenses are sometimes found.

1. In a clause of result a perfect subjunctive is sometimes used where the sequence of tenses would lead us to expect an imperfect.

2. The historical present may be followed either by the tenses which would follow a perfect or by the tenses which would follow a present.

3. Sometimes a strongly marked difference between the time ideas of the subordinate clause and the main clause leads to a seeming disregard of the sequence of tenses.

## PREPOSITIONS

**142.** The following prepositions take their objects in the ablative case :

ā, ab	prae
cum	prō
dē	sine
ē, ex	

a. **Cum** is used as an enclitic with **mē**, **tē**, **sē**, **nōbis**, and **vōbis**, and commonly with **quō**, **quā**, and **quibus**. **Mēcum**, *with me*, **tēcum**, *with you*, **quibuscum**, *with whom*.

143. The prepositions **in** and **sub** are used with the ablative in expressions denoting existence or continuance in a place; they are used with the accusative in expressions denoting motion toward a place.

**In urbe mānsī**, *I remained in the city.*

**In urbem vēnī**, *I came into the city.*

144. All prepositions found in this book except those given above take their objects in the accusative.

145. When the object of a monosyllabic preposition is a noun modified by an adjective, the preposition sometimes stands between the adjective and the noun.

**magnō cum periculō**, *with great danger.*





# EXERCISES IN LATIN COMPOSITION

## LESSON I

1. Predicate Nominative, App. 41, a

2. Ablative of Means, App. 72

### VOCABULARY

brother, frāter, -tris, m.

call, name, appellō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

choose, dēligō, -ligere, -lēgī, -lēctum.

city, urbs, urbis, f.

defend, dēfendō, -fendere, -fendī, -fēnsū.

elect, creō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

his, her, its, their,<sup>1</sup> suus, -a, -um.

kill, interficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum.

king, rēx, rēgis, m.

leader, dux, ducis, m.

my, meus, -a, -um.

soldier, miles, militis, m.

sword, gladius, -ī, m.

weapon, tēlum, -ī, n.

### EXERCISES

1. The city will be called Rome. 2. Romulus had been elected king. 3. The king was killed with his brother's sword. 4. Romulus killed his brother with a weapon. 5. I shall defend the king with my sword. 6. My brother has been chosen leader of the soldiers. 7. Romulus was called the king of Rome. 8. The soldiers killed their leader with their swords. 9. The city will be defended by the weapons of the soldiers.

---

<sup>1</sup> In reflexive use.

## LESSON II

1. Apposition, App. 39
2. Agreement of the Relative Pronoun, App. 38 (2)

## VOCABULARY

<b>ally</b> , socius, -ī, m.	<b>many</b> , multi, -ae, -a.
<b>army</b> , exercitus, -ūs, m.	<b>native country</b> , patria, -ae, f.
<b>beautiful</b> , pulcher, -chra, -chrum.	<b>often</b> , saepe, <i>adv.</i>
<b>brave</b> , fortis, forte.	<b>our</b> , noster, -tra, -trum.
<b>consul</b> , cōsul, cōsulis, m.	<b>send</b> , mittō, -ere, misi, missum.
<b>father</b> , pater, -tris, m.	<b>who, which, what, that</b> , quī, quae, quod.
<b>found</b> , condō, -dere, -didī, -ditum.	
<b>man</b> , vir, viri, m.	

## EXERCISES

1. The brother of Romulus the king had been killed. 2. Many cities which the Greeks founded were beautiful. 3. The consul who was killed was a brave man. 4. Rome is a city of Italy, my native country. 5. The army which we have sent will defend the cities of our allies. 6. Cicero, the consul, was called the father of his country. 7. We have often defended our country with our swords. 8. The brother of the man who was killed will be elected consul.

## LESSON III

1. Ablative of Place, App. 68
2. Ablative of Agent, App. 66

## VOCABULARY

<b>battle</b> , proelium, -ī, n.	<b>town</b> , oppidum, -ī, n.
<b>by</b> , ā, ab, <i>prep. with abl.</i>	<b>wage</b> , gerō, -ere, gessi, gestum.
<b>have</b> , habeo, -ēre, -ui, -itum.	<b>wall</b> , mūrus, -ī m.
<b>in</b> , on, in, <i>prep. with abl.</i>	<b>war</b> , bellum, -ī, n.
<b>into</b> , in, <i>prep. with acc.</i>	<b>wound</b> , vulnerō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum.
<b>stand</b> , stō, stāre, steti, stāturus.	<b>your, of one person</b> , tuus, -a, -um;
<b>stone</b> , lapis, lapidis, m.	<i>of more than one</i> , vester, -tra, -trum.
<b>throw</b> , jaciō, -ere, jeci, jactum.	

## EXERCISES

1. The Greeks founded many cities in Italy. 2. The Romans waged many wars in Gaul and Spain. 3. Many wars were waged in Gaul by the Romans. 4. Weapons were thrown by the soldiers who were standing on the wall. 5. The leader of our allies was wounded in battle by the Germans. 6. The town was defended by the consul, who had a brave army. 7. The towns of the Gauls, our allies, will be defended by Roman soldiers. 8. I have been wounded by a stone which was thrown by your brother. 9. The town was defended by the soldiers who had been sent into Spain.

## LESSON IV

1. Ablative of Accompaniment, App. 70

2. Ablative of Respect (Specification), App. 76

## VOCABULARY

cavalry, equitātus, -ūs, M.

courage, virtūs, -tūtis, F.

cross, trānseō, -īre, -iī, -itum.

destroy, dēlēō, -ēre, -ēvī, -ētum.

differ, differō, -ferre, distuli, dilātum.

drive back, repellō, -ere, reppuli, repulsum.

enemy, hostis, hostis, M.

knowledge, scientia, -ae, F.

nation, gēns, gentis, F.

place, locus, -ī, M. (*pl. usually loca, N.*).

river, flūmen, flūminis, N.

suitable, idōneus, -a, -um.

surpass, praecēdō, -cēdere, -cessi, -cessum.

wisdom, sapientia, -ae, F.

with, cum, *prep. with abl.*

## EXERCISES

1. The consul crossed the river with the cavalry. 3. The enemy will send cavalry into Italy with the army. 3. Many nations surpass us in knowledge of war. 4. Men differ from one another (*inter sē*) in courage and in wisdom. 5. The Gauls waged many wars with the Germans, who often crossed into Gaul. 6. We have chosen a place which is

suitable in many respects (*rēs*). 7. Our soldiers drove back with their weapons the Gauls who had crossed the river. 8. The Gauls who have crossed the river will be driven back by our soldiers. 9. Our army has destroyed many cities of our enemies, the Germans.

---

## LESSON V

1. Ablative with Certain Deponent Verbs, App. 79
2. Ablative of Route, App. 73

### VOCABULARY

bridge, *pōns, pontis, m.*  
 can, am able, *possum, posse, potui.*  
 custom, *mōs, mōris, m.*  
 difficult, *difficilis, -e.*  
 gain possession of, *potior, -iri, potitus sum.*  
 grain, *frūmentum, -i, n.*  
 language, *lingua, -ae, f.*  
 lead across, *trādūcō, -dūcere, -dūxi, -ductum.*

legion, *legiō, -ōnis, f.*  
 lieutenant, *lĕgātus, -i, m.*  
 mountain, *mōns, montis, m.*  
 narrow, *angustus, -a, -um.*  
 road, *iter, itineris, n.*  
 set out, *proficiscor, proficisci, profectus sum.*  
 this, *hic, haec, hoc.*  
 use, *utor, ūti, ūsus sum.*

### EXERCISES

1. The legion will use the grain which is in the town.
2. We gained possession of a town of the enemy, and we killed their leader.
3. The army crossed the mountains by a road which was narrow and difficult.
4. This is the road by which the Roman legions often set out from the city.
5. The Germans could not gain possession of this city of the Gauls.
6. The lieutenant led the army across by a bridge.
7. The legion could not cross the river with the cavalry.
8. The Helvetians differ from the Germans in language and in customs.
9. The consul was wounded by the weapons of the enemy.

## LESSON VI

1. Ablative Absolute, App. 75

2. Ablative of Time, App. 69

## VOCABULARY

another, *alius, alia, aliud*.because, *quod, conj.*burn, *incendō, -ere, incendi, incēsum*.camp, *castra, -ōrum, N. pl.*capture, *capiō, -ere, cēpi, captum*.come, *veniō, -ire, vēni, ventum*.day, *diēs, diēi, M., F.*defeat, *superō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum*.number, *numerus, -i, M.*return, *revertor, reverti, (revertō, revertere), reverti, reversum*.same, *Idem, eadem, idem*.that, is, *ea, id; ille, illa, illud*.twelve, *duodecim, indecl. num.*village, *vīcus, -i, M.*year, *annus, -i, M.*

## EXERCISES

1. After defeating the army of the consul (the army of the consul having been defeated), the enemy crossed the river. 2. When the towns of the Gauls had been burned (*not a clause*), we returned to camp. 3. Many cities of our allies were burned that year. 4. The leader of the enemy and the Roman consul came into the town on the same day. 5. After capturing the camp of the king, the legion returned to the town. 6. Our fathers waged many wars in those years. 7. You cannot defend your country because you cannot use weapons. 8. We shall cross the mountains by another road. 9. They burned their towns, twelve in number, and many villages.

## LESSON VII

## 1. Ablative of Separation, App. 64

## 2. Ablative of Manner, App. 71

## VOCABULARY

absent, be absent, absum, abesse,	guard, custodiō, -ire, -ivi, -itum.
āfui.	separate, dividō, -ere, divisi, divi-
attack, oppugnō, -āre, -avi, -atum.	sum.
but, sed, conj.	several, complūrēs, -ia, gen. com-
care, cūra, -ae, f.	plūrium.
deep, altus, -a, -um.	speed, celeritās, -tātis, f.
forces, cōpiae, -ārum, f. pl.	time, tempus, temporis, n.
great, magnus, -a, -um.	wide, lātus, -a, -um.

## EXERCISES

1. The river Rhine, which separates the Gauls from the Germans, is wide and deep. 2. The mountains which separate Gaul from Spain are called the Pyrenees. 3. Our forces attacked the camp of the enemy with great courage. 4. Our cavalry crossed the river with great speed and drove back the cavalry of the enemy. 5. The lieutenant was absent from the camp at that time. 6. The Britons guard their territory (*finēs*) with great care. 7. When we had driven back the cavalry (*not a clause*), we captured several villages. 8. But we were not able to gain possession of the large towns.

## LESSON VIII

## 1. Dative of Indirect Object, App. 49

## 2. Dative with Adjectives, App. 50

## VOCABULARY

cut off, interclūdō, -clūdere, -clūsī,	flee, fugiō, -ere, fugi, fugitūrus.
-clūsum.	friendly, amicus, -a, -um.
dear, cārus, -a, -um.	give, dō, dare, dedi, datum.

**help**, *juvō, -āre, jūvī, jūtum.*

**live**, *habitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.*

**reward**, *praemium, -ī, N.*

**say**, *dicō, -ere, dīxī, dictum.*

**supplies**, *commeātus, -ūs, M.*

**supreme power**, *imperium, -ī, N.*

**two**, *duo, duae, duo.*

**very near, nearest**, *proximus, -a, -um.*

**why**, *cūr, adv.*

### EXERCISES

1. The Romans gave supreme power to two consuls. 2. I will give you a reward because you have helped my brother. 3. Hannibal attacked a city which was friendly to the Romans. 4. Italy, my native country, is dear to me. 5. Why did you say this to your father? 6. These mountains are very near to the town in which I live. 7. The legion which was in the mountains was cut off from supplies. 8. The soldiers defended the city on that day with the greatest courage. 9. When the king had been captured (*abl. abs.*), the army fled.

### LESSON IX

1. Dative with Special Verbs, App. 51

2. Dative of Possession, App. 52

### VOCABULARY

**always**, *semper, adv.*

**book**, *liber, -brī, M.*

**boy**, *puer, puerī, M.*

**centurion**, *centuriō, -ōnis, M.*

**favor**, *faveō, -ēre, fāvī, fautum.*

**new**, *novus, -a, -um.*

**persuade**, *persuādeō, -suādere,*

*-suāstī, -suāsum.*

**please**, *placeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum.*

**remain**, *maneō, -ēre, mānsī, mānsum.*

**sister**, *soror, sorōris, F.*

**son**, *filius, -ī, M.*

**unwilling, be unwilling**, *nōlō, nolle, nōluī.*

### EXERCISES

1. This place which the centurions have chosen will not please the lieutenant. 2. We favor this man because he was a brave leader. 3. Crassus had two sons, who were brave sol-

diers. 4. The boy has a sword, which his father gave him. 5. This boy is unwilling to remain, and I cannot persuade him. 6. The Helvetians have many towns and villages which we shall burn. 7. I gave your sister two new books. 8. The city in which I live is dear to me. 9. Our allies will always defend their native country with great courage.

---

## LESSON X

1. Dative of Purpose, App. 53
2. Dative of Reference, App. 54

### VOCABULARY

aid, auxilium, -i, N.  
 cohort, cohors, cohortis, F.  
 danger, periculum, -i, N.  
 displease, displiceō, -ēre, -ui, -itum.  
 fear, timeō, -ēre, -ui.  
 fleet, classis, classis, F.  
 guard, praesidium, -i, N.

leave, relinquo, -linquere, -liqui, -lictum.  
 no, nullus, -a, -um, gen. nullius.  
 peace, pax, pacis, F.  
 present, donum, -i, N.  
 reinforcements, subsidium, -i, N.  
 see, video, -ēre, vidi, visum.  
 townspeople, oppidanī, -ōrum, M. pl.

### EXERCISES

1. The boy sent these beautiful books as a present (for a present) to his sister. 2. The legion came to reinforce (as reinforcements to) the cavalry, who were in danger. 3. Caesar left two cohorts as a guard for the bridge. 4. Two legions will be sent to the aid of the townspeople (for aid to the townspeople). 5. The cohorts which were left as a guard for the camp did not see the battle. 6. We do not fear the Romans, because they have no fleet (Lesson IX, 2). 7. This peace displeased the consuls, and they sent another army into Spain. 8. After burning the villages (*abl. abs.*), the cavalry returned to camp.



## LESSON XI

1. Dative of Agent, App. 56

2. Dative with Compound Verbs, App. 55

## VOCABULARY

assemble, conveniō, -venire, -vērī, -ventum.	neighbors, finitimī, -ōrum, m. pl.
build, aedificō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.	place in command of, praeficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum.
envoy, lēgātus, -ī, m.	prison, carcer, carceris, m.
hostage, obses, obsidis, m.	senate, senātus, -ūs, m.
if, si, conj.	slave, servus, -ī, m.
make war on, bellum inferō, -ferre, etc.	wish, volō, velle, volui.

## EXERCISES

1. Gaius Marius ought not to be killed by a slave. 2. Hostages ought to be sent by the enemy, if their king wishes peace. 3. We are brave men, but we do not make war on our neighbors. 4. The lieutenant has placed the centurion in command of the cohort. 5. The village ought to be defended by the soldiers. 6. The lieutenant was placed in command of the legion. 7. The fleet which had assembled was an aid (for an aid) to the army. 9. When the fleet had been built (*abl. abs.*), the army set out to Britain. 8. The envoys will not be able to persuade the senate.

## LESSON XII

1. Genitive of the Whole, App. 43

2. Genitive of Possession, App. 42

## VOCABULARY

arrow, sagitta, -ae, f.	find, reperiō, -ire, repperī, repertum.
ascend, ascendō, -ere, ascendī, ascēsum.	fortification, mūnitō, -ōnis, f.
citizen, cīvis, cīvis, m., f.	god, deus, dei ( <i>nom. pl. di</i> ), m.
	hill, collis, collis, m.

**house**, tēctum, -ī, N.

**make**, faciō, -ere, fēcī, factum.

**part**, pars, partis, F.

**prisoner**, captīvus, -ī, M.

**retain**, dētineō, -tinēre, -tinuī, -tentum.

**temple**, templum, -ī, N.

**try**, cōnor, -ārī, -ātus sum.

### EXERCISES

1. Part of the town was burned by the enemy. 2. The bravest of the Gauls tried to ascend the hill and attack the camp. 3. Many weapons of the Germans were found in the camp. 4. We have defended the temples of the gods and the houses of the citizens. 5. Many of the prisoners were unwilling to return to Africa. 6. The centurion was wounded by the arrows of the Spaniards, and his brother was killed. 7. Peace has been made, and the prisoners ought not to be retained by the Romans. 8. The consul's brother was placed in command of the fortifications (*singular*) which had been made.

### LESSON XIII

1. Objective Genitive, App. 45

2. Genitive of Description, App. 44

### VOCABULARY

**all**, omnis, -e.

**children**, liberī, -ōrum, M. *pl.*

**depth**, altitūdō, -dinis, F.

**desirous**, cupidus, -a, -um.

**foot**, pēs, pedis, M.

**founder**, conditor, -ōris, M.

**horseman**, eques, equitis, M.

**influence**, auctōritās, -tātis, F.

**pirate**, praedō, -ōnis, M.

**praetor**, praetor, -ōris, M.

**sort**, kind, modus, -ī, M.

**state**, civitās, -tātis, F.

**three**, trēs, tria.

### EXERCISES

1. Romulus was called the founder of this city. 2. The leader of the horsemen was wounded by an arrow. 3. This prisoner was a citizen of great influence in his state. 4. The depth of the river which we crossed was (of) three feet. 5.

We are desirous of peace, but we do not fear your army. 6. A man of this sort ought not to have been sent into Asia by the Romans. 7. The Tiber is the largest of all the rivers of Italy. 8. The children of the praetor were captured by the pirates. 9: Caesar made war on the Helvetians and defeated them. 10. The horsemen were sent to the aid of (as aid for) the cohorts which were crossing the river.

### LESSON XIV

1. Ablative with a Preposition in Place of the Genitive of the Whole, App. 43 *a*
2. Construction with *mille*, App. 16 *a*

### VOCABULARY

arrive, perveniō, -venīre, -venī, -ventum.	one, ūnus, -a, -um.
boat, nāvis, nāvis, f.	rest, the rest of, reliquus, -a, -um.
flight, fuga, -ae, f.	senator, senātor, -ōris, m.
hope, spēs, speī, f.	small, parvus, -a, -um.
injure, noceō, -ēre, -ui, -itum.	certain, a certain, quīdam, quaedam, quoddam, or quiddam.
march, iter faciō, facere, etc.	stature, statūra, -ae, f.
mile, millē passūs or passuum, pl. milia passuum.	thousand, mille, pl. milia.

### EXERCISES

1. One of my brothers lives in Ireland. 2. Some of the senators were killed by the Gauls who captured Rome. 3. Three thousand men arrived in the town from (*ex*) the flight. 4. On that day we made a march of twelve miles into the territory of the enemy. 5. Two of the hostages remained in Italy, but the rest returned to Africa. 6. Three thousand horsemen crossed the mountains with the legions. 7. The hope of peace is greater, because the enemy have sent envoys. 8. The Romans were [men] of small stature, but they were brave soldiers. 9. Our boats could not injure the boats (Lesson IX, 1) of the Veneti.

## LESSON XV

1. Accusative of Duration and Extent, App. 58, 59
2. Two Accusatives with Compounds of *trāns*, App. 63 a

## VOCABULARY

**after**, *post*, *prep. with acc.*

**ancestors**, *majōrēs*, -um, M. pl.

**barbarous**, *barbarus*, -a, -um.

**bring back**, *redūcō*, -dūcere, -dūxi, -ductum.

**exile**, *exilium*, -ī, N.

**four**, *quattuor*, *indecl. num.*

**friend**, *amicus*, -ī, M.

**infantry** (*adj.*), *pedester*, -tris, -tre.

**month**, *mēnsis*, *mēnsis*, M.

**tired**, *dēfessus*, -a, -um.

**today**, *hodiē*, *adv.*

**tribune**, *tribūnus*, -ī, M.

**walk**, *ambulō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

## EXERCISES

1. My friends remained in Spain for three months. 2. We have walked four miles today, and we are tired. 3. The lieutenant led the infantry forces across the river and attacked a town of the Gauls. 4. Part of our forces had been led across the Rhine by the tribune of the soldiers. 5. Our ancestors waged war with these barbarous nations for many years. 6. The centurion who had led the cohort across the river Allia was killed in battle. 7. Some of my friends have set out into exile. 8. The Romans brought back many thousand slaves to Italy after this war.

## LESSON XVI

1. Accusative of Place to Which, General Rule, App. 60<sup>1</sup>
2. Expressions of Place to Which Without a Preposition, App. 60<sup>2</sup>

## VOCABULARY

**before**, *ante*, *prep. with acc.*

**bravely**, *fortiter*, *adv.*

**consulship**, *cōsulātus*, -ūs, M.

**death**, *moēs*, *mortis*, F.

**go**, *eō*, *ire*, *ī* (*ivī*), *itum*.

**hasten**, *contendō*, -tendere, -tendi, -tentum.

**home**, *domus*, -ūs, (-ī) F.

<sup>1</sup> See also section 7 (1), page 59

<sup>2</sup> See also section 8 (1), page 59

hour, *hōra*, -ae, *f.*

kingdom, *rēgnum*, -i, *n.*

province, *prōvincia*, -ae, *f.*

resist, *resistō*, -ere, *restiti*.

send back, *remittō*, -mittere, -*misī*,

-*missum*.

summer, *aestās*, -*tātis*, *f.*

there, *ibi*, *adv.*

### EXERCISES

1. Why did not the praetor hasten to Gaul with the army?
2. We shall go to Geneva this summer, and we shall remain there several days.
3. The tribune returned to Rome after the death of his friend.
4. Cicero set out to Asia after his consulship.
5. Our friends returned home before the war.
6. The hostages who are in Italy will be sent back into the province.
7. The legion resisted bravely for four hours, and many were killed.
8. The Helvetians had led a large part of their forces across the river.
9. The king returned into his kingdom with three thousand men.

### LESSON XVII

1. Expressions of Place in Which with Names of Towns, etc., App. 81
2. Expressions of Place from Which, App. 65

### VOCABULARY

delay, moror, -*āri*, -*ātus sum*.

demand, *postulō*, -*āre*, -*āvī*, -*ātum*.

escape, *effugiō*, -*fugerc*, -*fūgi*, -*figitūrus*.

few, *pauci*, -ae, -a.

following, *posterus*, -a, -um.

forest, *silva*, -ae, *f.*

general, *imperātor*, -*ōris*, *m.*

give back, *reddō*, -*dere*, -*didī*, -*dītum*.

prepared, *parātus*, -a, -um.

where, *ubi*, *adv.*

withdraw, *discēdō*, -*cēdere*, -*cessī*, -*cessum*.

### EXERCISES

1. The general is returning from Asia, and he will not delay at Corinth.
2. The Roman citizens who are in Saguntum demand our aid.
3. Cicero set out from Rome with a

few friends. 4. The envoys withdrew from Corinth on the following day. 5. Many citizens were not able to escape from Saguntum. 6. The army is prepared, but the consul is delaying at Rome. 7. I shall set out to Marseilles, where my friends live. 8. The king sent his son to Italy before the war. 9. Two of the boys had been in the forest three hours. 10. Many thousand prisoners who have been captured by the Romans will be given back.

### LESSON XVIII

1. The Gerund, App. 127
2. The Gerundive, App. 128, 129

#### VOCABULARY

<b>accomplish</b> , efficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum.	<b>lose</b> , amittō, -mittere, -misi, -missum.
<b>collect</b> , cōgō, -ere, cōgēī, cōactum.	<b>much</b> , multus, -a, -um.
<b>conquer</b> , vincō, -ere, vici, victum.	<b>nothing</b> , nihil, <i>indecl.</i> , N.
<b>fight</b> , pugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.	<b>still</b> , tamen, <i>adv.</i>
<b>girl</b> , puella, -ae, F.	<b>wife</b> , uxor, -ōris, F.
<b>hurl</b> , conjiciō, -jicere, -jēcī, -jectum.	

#### EXERCISES

1. The enemy have no hope of conquering, but still they fight bravely. 2. We have collected all our forces, and we are prepared for (ad) setting out. 3. The Germans were desirous of capturing the town, because there was much grain in it. 4. In capturing the town we lost many men. 5. Divico accomplished nothing by delaying. 6. The Gauls drove back our men by hurling weapons. 7. Brutus had left his wife and children in Rome. 8. This girl wishes to remain at home with her brothers and sisters. 9. We shall return from Geneva in a few days. 10. We shall send two cohorts to Marseilles.

## LESSON XIX

1. Participles of Deponent Verbs, App. 122 a
2. Position of Monosyllabic Prepositions, App. 145

## VOCABULARY

arrival, adventus, -ūs, m.	perish, pereō, -īre, -īl (-īvi), -ītūrus.
catch sight of, cōspicor, -ārī, -ātus sum.	reason, causa, -ae, f.
eighth, octāvus, -a, -um.	ten, decem, <i>indecl. num.</i>
follow, sequor, -ī, secūtus sum.	trader, mercātor, -ōris, m.
fort, castellum, -ī, n.	undertake, suscipiō, -cipere, -cēpi, -ceptum.
lead back, redūcō, -ducere, -dūxi, -ductum.	wait for, expectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

## EXERCISES

1. The cavalry, having followed the enemy for ten miles, returned to camp. 2. Having caught sight of the Gauls who were in the Roman camp, Labienus sent aid to our men. 3. Caesar feared danger for (*dē with abl.*) many reasons. 4. The Helvetians undertook this war with great hope, but they were conquered. 5. Having gained possession of the fort (Lesson V, 1), we waited for the arrival of the eighth legion. 6. The traders went by this road (Lesson V, 2) with great danger. 7. The lieutenant led back his men into camp because he was not desirous of fighting. 8. The praetor remained to defend Italy (*ad with gerundive constr.*). 9. Many who perished at Messina were Roman citizens.

## LESSON XX

1. Reflexive Pronouns, App. 18
2. Possessive Adjectives, App. 19

## VOCABULARY

barbarians, barbari, -ōrum, <i>m. pl.</i>	promise, polliceor, -ēri, pollicitus sum.
chief, princeps, principis, <i>m.</i>	surrender, dēdō, -dere, -didī, -ditum.
embassy, lēgatiō, -ōnis, <i>f.</i>	swamp, palūs, -ūdis, <i>f.</i>
famous, clārus, -a, -um.	terrify, perterreō, -ēre, -uī, -itum.
field, ager, agri, <i>m.</i>	wealthy, dives, divitis, <i>superl.</i> ditissimus, -a, -um.
grandfather, avus, -ī, <i>m.</i>	
(of) himself, herself, themselves, reflex., sui, etc.	
name, nōmen, nōminis, <i>n.</i>	

## EXERCISES

1. Many in Italy surrendered themselves to Hannibal. 2. The boy to whom the sword has been given will injure himself (Lesson IX, 1). 3. Your name and your father's name are famous in Gaul. 4. The barbarians, terrified by our arrival, fled into the forest and swamps. 5. The chiefs of the embassy brought (*dūcere*) with them several wealthy men as (*prō with abl.*) hostages. 6. My grandfather had been in Africa with the army. 7. The Britons, having promised hostages, returned to (*in*) their fields. 8. Hannibal crossed the Alps with great danger. 9. He was desirous of destroying Rome.

## LESSON XXI

## Indirect Discourse, App. 121

## VOCABULARY

announce, nūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.	hear, audiō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum.
arrest, comprehendō, -hendere, -hendī, -hēsum.	know, sciō, scire, scīvī, scitum.
believe, crēdō, -dere, -didī, -ditum.	lay waste, vāstō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.
	money, pecūnia, -ae, <i>f.</i>



sailor, *nauta*, -ae, *m.*  
 scout, *explorator*, -oris, *m.*  
 ship, *navis*, *navis*, *f.*

sink, *dēprimō*, -primere, -pressi,  
 -pressum.  
 valley, *vallēs*, *vallis*, *f.*

## EXERCISES

1. The scout says that the enemy are crossing the valley.  
 2. We know that many sailors are being sent from (ex) Spain.  
 3. I hear that you have built a new house.  
 4. All believe that the ship was sunk by the pirates.  
 5. The scouts say that the enemy (*plural*) will cross the valley.  
 6. The Romans heard that the Gauls were laying waste the fields of their allies.  
 7. The centurion announced that two men had been arrested.  
 8. I believed that you would send back the money.  
 9. My friend said that the house which his brother had built had been burned.

## LESSON XXII

1. Causal Clauses with *cum*, App. 103
2. Clauses of Result, App. 96

## VOCABULARY

any, *ullus*, -a, -um.

here, *hic*, *adv.*

long, *longus*, -a, -um.

messenger, *nuntius*, -i, *m.*

never, *numquam*, *adv.*

no one, *nēmō*, *dat. nēmīni* (*no gen. or abl.*).

now, *nunc*, *adv.*

seize, *occupō*, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

shore, *litus*, *litoris*, *n.*

since, *cum*, *conj.*

so, *ita*, *tam*.

without, *sine*, *prep. with abl.*

## EXERCISES

1. Why do you remain here, since you have no friends?  
 2. The danger of the Roman citizens was so great that the consul sent an army.  
 3. Since I saw no danger, I set out without any weapons.  
 4. The legion fought so fiercely that the Gauls fled.  
 5. The enemy resisted so bravely that we

lost many men. 6. Since no one has sent aid, we shall not try to defend the camp. 7. The messenger says that our men have driven back the barbarians and seized the bridge. 8. We knew that many who set out to the war would never return. 9. The sailors said they had found this boy on the shore.

## LESSON XXIII

1. Descriptive Clauses of Situation, App. 105

2. Adversative Clauses with *cum*, App. 104

### VOCABULARY

**although**, *cum, conj.*

**animal**, animal, -ālis, *N.*

**at once**, statim, *adv.*

**break down**, rescindō, -scindere,  
-scidi, -scissum.

**delay**, mora, -ae, *F.*

**honor**, honor, -ōris, *M.*

**interpreter**, interpres, -pretis, *M.*

**invite**, invitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

**leap, leap down**, dēsilīō, -silire,  
-silui.

**neighboring**, vicinus, -a, -um.

**not yet**, nōdum, *adv.*

**summon**, arcessō, -ere, -īvi, -itum.

**when**, *cum, conj.*

### EXERCISES

1. The Gauls captured Rome when Camillus was in a neighboring city. 2. Although I summoned the interpreter at once, he has not yet arrived. 3. Although we were tired, still we returned without delay. 4. When his friends had broken down the bridge, Horatius leaped into the river. 5. When we were walking in the forest, we saw a large animal. 6. Although all else (*omnia reliqua*) has been lost, still honor has not been lost. 7. Since you are unwilling to go, I shall invite your brother. 8. No one could cross the river, because the bridge had been broken down. 9. The praetor said that he had arrested the leader of these men.

## LESSON XXIV

1. Purpose Clauses with *ut* and *nē*, App. 94

## 2. Relative Purpose Clauses, App. 94 a

## VOCABULARY

buy, *emō, -ere, ēmi, emptum.*commonwealth, *rēs publica, rei publicae.*conspirators, *conjūrātī, -ōrum, m. pl.*disloyal, *improbū, -a, -um.*harbor, *portus, -ūs, m.*horse, *equus, -i, m.*lead, *dūcō, -ere, dūxi, ductum.*letter, *epistula, -ae, f.*people, *populus, -i, m.*quaestor, *quaestor, -ōris, m.*read, *legō, -ere, lēgi, lectum.*six, *sex, indecl. num.*through, *per, prep. with acc.*villa, *villa, -ae, f.*

## EXERCISES

1. The quaestor set out to a neighboring town to buy grain (that he might buy grain). 2. We arrested the man in order that he might not set out with the conspirators. 3. The lieutenant will send a scout to lead (who shall lead) the horsemen through the forest. 4. The praetor left six cohorts to defend the harbor. 5. I have come to see (that I may see) your new horse. 6. We gave hostages, that our towns might not be burned. 7. When my brother had read the letter, he set out to the villa at once. 8. Although your grandfather was a consul, you wish to destroy the commonwealth. 9. The Roman people know (*singular*) that you are a disloyal citizen.

## LESSON XXV

1. Purpose Clauses with *quō*, App. 95

## 2. Indirect Questions, App. 107

## VOCABULARY

ask, *quaerō, -ere, quaesivi, quaesitum.*baggage, *impedimenta, -ōrum, n. pl.*fortify, *mūniō, -ire, -ivi, -itum.*honorable, *honestus, -a, -um.*island, *insula, -ae, f.*

long, for a long time, diū, *adv.*

queen, rēgina, -ae, *F.*

rapid, celer, celeris, celere.

safely, tūtō, *adv.*

send ahead, praemittō, -mittere,

-misi, -misum.

traveler, viātor, -ōris, *M.*

write, scribō, -ere, scripsi, scriptum.

### EXERCISES

1. The cohorts left their baggage in camp, that they might make a more rapid flight. 2. Many ask why the king and queen are setting out from the city. 3. No one knew who had written this book. 4. The travelers constructed (made) a bridge in order to cross (that they might cross) the river more safely. 5. I said this in order that you might remain longer. 6. I do not know in what part of the island you live. 7. We broke down the bridge, that the enemy might not cross. 8. The general sent ahead several soldiers to fortify (who should fortify) the camp. 9. I have heard that this boy's father was not an honorable man.

# ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY

## A

able, be able, possum, posse, potui.  
 absent, be absent, absum, abesse, āfui, āfutūrus.  
 accomplish, cōficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum; efficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum.  
 across, trāns, *prep. with acc.*  
 address, alloquor, -loqui, -locūtus sum.  
 afraid, be afraid, timeō, -ēre, -ui.  
 Africa, Africa, -ae, *f.*  
 after, post, *prep. with acc.*  
 again, iterum, *adv.*  
 aid, auxilium, -i, *n.*  
 all, omnis, omne.  
 Allia, Allia, -ae, *f.*  
 ally, socius, -i, *m.*  
 alone, sōlus, -a, -um, *gen. sōlius.*  
 Alps, Alpēs, -ium, *f. pl.*  
 although, cum, *conj.*  
 always, semper, *adv.*  
 among, inter, *prep. with acc.*  
 ancestors, majōrēs, -um, *m. pl.*  
 and, et, -que, atque, *conj.*  
 animal, animal, animālis, *n.*  
 announce, nūntiō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum.  
 another, alius, alia, aliud.  
 answer, respōnsum, -i, *n.*  
 any, ullus, -a, -um.  
 anyone, quisquam, quicquam or quidquam.  
 armed, armātus, -a, -um.  
 arms, arma, -ōrum, *n. pl.*  
 army, exercitus, -ūs, *m.*  
 arrest, comprehendō, -hendere, -hendī, -hēnsum.  
 arrival, adventus, -ūs, *m.*  
 arrive, perveniō, -venire, -vēnī, -ventum.  
 arrow, sagitta, -ae, *f.*  
 Ascanius, Ascanius, -i, *m.*

ascend, ascendō, -ere, ascendī, ascēnsus.

Asia, Asia, -ae, *f.*

ask, rogō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum; quaerō, -ere, quaesivi, quaesitum.

assemble, conveniō, -venire, -vēnī, -ventum.

Athens, Athēnae, -ārum, *f. pl.*

at once, statim, *adv.*

attack (*noun*), impetus, -ūs, *m.*

attack (*verb*), oppugnō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum.

attempt, cōnor, -ārī, -ātus sum.

await, expectō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum.

## B

baggage, impedimenta, -ōrum, *n. pl.*

barbarian, barbarus, -i, *m.*

barbarous, barbarus, -a, -um.

battle, proelium, -i, *n.*

be, sum, esse, fui, futūrus.

beautiful, pulcher, -chra, -chrum.

because, quod, *conj.*

before (*adverb*), antea.

before (*preposition*), ante, *with acc.*

before (*conjunction*), priusquam.

began, coepi, coepisse, coeptum.

beg for, petō, -ere, -ivi, -itum.

behind, post, *prep. with acc.*

believe, crēdō, -dere, -didi, -ditum.

better, melior, melius (*compar. of bonus*).

between, inter, *prep. with acc.*

boat, nāvis, nāvis, *f.*

book, liber, librī, *m.*

booty, praeda, -ae, *f.*

born, be born, nāscor, nāscī, nātus sum.

boy, puer, puerī, *m.*

brave, fortis, forte.

bravely, fortiter, *adv.*

break down, rescindō, -scindere, -scidi, -scissum.

bridge, pōns, pontis, *m*.  
 bring, ferō, ferre, tuli, lātum.  
 bring back, redūcō, -dūcere, -dūxi,  
 -ductum.  
 Britain, Britannia, -ae, *f*.  
 Britons, Britanni, -ōrum, *m. pl*.  
 broad, lātus, -a, -um.  
 brother, frāter, frātris, *m*.  
 Brutus, Brūtus, -i, *m*.  
 build, aedificō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.  
 burn, incendō, -cendere, -cendi,  
 -cēsum.  
 but, sed, *conj*.  
 buy, emō, -ere, ēmi, ēmptum.  
 by, ā, ab, *prep. with abl*.

## C

Caesar, Caesar, Caesaris, *m*.  
 call, vocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; appellō,  
 -āre, -āvī, -ātum.  
 Camillus, Camillus, -i, *m*.  
 camp, castra, -ōrum, *n. pl*.  
 can, am able, possum, posse, potui.  
 capture, capiō, -ere, cēpi, captum.  
 care, cūra, -ae, *f*.  
 carry, portō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.  
 catch sight of, cōspicor, -ārī, -ātus  
 sum.  
 cause, causa, -ae, *f*.  
 cavalry, equitātus, -ūs, *m*.  
 censure, accūsō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.  
 centurion, centuriō, -ōnis, *m*.  
 certain, a certain, quidam, quaedam,  
 quiddam or quoddam.  
 change, mūtō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.  
 check, retardō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.  
 chief, princeps, principis, *m*.  
 children, liberi, -ōrum, *m. pl*.  
 choose, dēligō, -ligere, -lēgi, -lēctum.  
 Cicero, Cicerō, -ōnis, *m*.  
 citadel, arx, arcis, *f*.  
 citizen, cīvis, cīvis, *m*.  
 city, urbs, urbis, *f*.  
 cohort, cohors, cohortis, *f*.

collect, condūcō, -dūcere, -dūxi,  
 -ductum; cōgō, cōgere, cōēgi,  
 cōāctum.  
 come, veniō, -īre, vēni, ventum.  
 command, imperō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.  
 common people, plēbs, plēbis, *f*.  
 commonwealth, rēs pūblica, rei  
 pūblicae, *f*.  
 companion, comes, comitis, *m*.  
 complain, queror, querī, questus  
 sum.  
 conceal, cēlō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.  
 confess, cōnfiteor, -ērī, cōfessus  
 sum.  
 conquer, vincō, -ere, vici, victum.  
 conspirators, conjūrātī, -ōrum, *m. pl*.

consul, cōsul, cōsulis, *m*.  
 consulship, cōsulātus, -ūs, *m*.  
 Corinth, Corinthus, -i, *f*.  
 Cornelius, Cornēlius, -i, *m*.  
 cottage, casa, -ae, *f*.  
 country, native country, patria,  
 -ae, *f*.  
 country, territory, finēs, -ium (*pl*  
*of finis, finis, m.*).  
 courage, virtūs, virtūtis, *f*.  
 course, iter, itineris, *n*.  
 cowardly, ignāvus, -a, -um.  
 Crassus, Crassus, -i, *m*.  
 cross, trānseō, -īre, -ii (-ivi), -itum.  
 custom, mōs, mōris, *m*.  
 cut off, interclūdō, -clūdere, -clūsi,  
 -clūsum.

## D

danger, periculum, -i, *n*.  
 dangerous, periculōsus, -a, -um.  
 dare, audeō, -ēre, ausus sum.  
 daughter, filia, -ae, *f*.  
 day, diēs, diēi, *m., f*.  
 dear, cārus, -a, -um.  
 death, mors, mortis, *f*.  
 decide, dēcernō, -cernere, -crēvi,  
 -crētum.

deep, altus, -a, -um.  
 defeat, superō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum;  
 vincō, -ere, vicī, victum.  
 defend, dēfendō, -fendere, -fendī,  
 -fēnsū.  
 delay (*noun*), mora, -ae, *f*.  
 delay (*verb*), moror, -ārī, -ātus sum.  
 delighted, be delighted, laetor, -ārī,  
 -ātus sum.

demand, postulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.  
 depth, altitūdō, -dinis, *f*.  
 descend, dēscendō, -scendere,  
 -scendī, -scēnsū.  
 desire, cupiō, -ere, cupīvī, cupitum.  
 desirous, cupidus, -a, -um.  
 despise, contemnō, -temnere, -temp-  
 si, -temptum.  
 destroy, dēlēō, -ēre, -ēvī, -ētum.  
 differ, differō, -ferre, distulī, dilā-  
 tum.

difficult, difficilis, -e.  
 disloyal, improbus, -a, -um.  
 displease, displiceō, -ēre, -uī, -itum.  
 ditch, fossa, -ae, *f*.  
 Divico, Divicō, -ōnis, *m*.  
 do, faciō, -ere, fēcī, factum.  
 dog, canis, canis, *m*.  
 draw up, instruō, -struere, -struxī,  
 -strūctum.  
 drive back, repellō, -ere, reppulī,  
 repulsum.  
 drive out, expellō, -pellere, -puli,  
 -pulsum.

## E

each, quisque, quaeque, quidque.  
 easily, facile, *adv*.  
 easy, facilis, facile.  
 eighth, octāvus, -a, -um.  
 elect, creō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.  
 embassy, lēgatiō, -ōnis, *f*.  
 end, finis, finis, *m*.  
 enemy, hostis, hostis, *m*; inimicus,  
 -ī, *m*.  
 energetically, impigrē, *adv*.

enroll, cōscribō, -scribere, -scripsī,  
 -scriptum.  
 envoy, lēgātus, -ī, *m*.  
 escape, effugiō, -fugere, -fūgī.  
 ever, umquam, *adv*.  
 except, praeter, *prep. with acc*.  
 exile, exilium, -ī, *n*.  
 explore, explōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

## F

faithful, fidēlis, -e.  
 fame, glōria, -ae, *f*.  
 famous, clārus, -a, -um.  
 farmer, agricola, -ae, *m*.  
 father, pater, patris, *m*.  
 favor, faveō, -ēre, fāvī, fautum.  
 fear (*noun*), timor, timōris, *m*.  
 fear (*verb*), timeō, -ēre, -uī; vereor,  
 -ērī, veritus sum.  
 few, pauci, -ae, -a.  
 field, ager, agrī, *m*.  
 fierce, ferus, -a, -um.  
 fiercely, ācritē, *adv*.  
 fight, pugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.  
 find, inveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ven-  
 tum; reperiō, -īre, repperī,  
 repertum.  
 find out, reperiō, -īre, repperī,  
 repertum.  
 fire, ignis, ignis, *m*.  
 first, primus, -a, -um.  
 five, quinque; *indecl. num*.  
 flee, fugiō, -ere, fūgī, fugitūrus.  
 fleet, classis, classis, *f*.  
 flight, fuga, -ae, *f*.  
 follow, sequor, sequi, secūtus sum.  
 following, posterus, -a, -um.  
 folly, stultitia, -ae, *f*.  
 foot, pēs, pedis, *m*.  
 for, on behalf of, prō, *prep. with abl*.  
 forces (*of soldiers*), cōpiae, -ārum,  
*f. pl*.  
 foreigner, peregrīnus, -ī, *m*.

forest, silva, -ae *f.*  
 forget, obliviscor, -ī, oblitus sum.  
 formerly, antea, *adv.*  
 fort, castellum, -ī, *n.*  
 fortification, munitiō, -ōnis, *f.*  
 fortify, muniō, -īre, -īvi, -itum.  
 found, condō, -dere -didī, -ditum.  
 founder, conditor, -ōris, *m.*  
 four, quattuor, *indecl. num.*  
 friend, amicus, -ī, *m.*  
 friendly, amicus, -a, -um.  
 friendship, amicitia, -ae, *f.*  
 frighten, terreō, -ēre, -uī, -itum.  
 from, ā, ab; ē, ex; dē, *preps. with abl.*

## G

gain possession of, potior, potiri, potitus sum.  
 Gaius, Gāius, -ī, *m.*  
 garrison, praesidium, -ī, *n.*  
 Gaul (a country), Gallia, -ae, *f.*  
 Gaul (an inhabitant of the country of Gaul), Gallus, -ī, *m.*  
 general, imperator, -ōris, *m.*  
 Geneva, Genava, -ae, *f.*  
 Germans, Germāni, -ōrum, *m. pl.*  
 girl, puella, -ae, *f.*  
 give, dō, dare, dedi, datum; give back, reddō, -dere, -didī, -ditum.  
 go, eō, -īre, -īi (-īvi), -itum; go out, exeō, -īre, -īi (-īvi), -itum; go away, abeō, -īre, -īi (-īvi), -itum.  
 god, deus, -ī, *m.*  
 gold, aurum, -ī, *n.*  
 good, bonus, -a, -um.  
 grain, frumentum, -ī, *n.*  
 grandfather, avus, -ī, *m.*  
 grandson, nepos, nepotis, *m.*  
 great, magnus, -a, -um.  
 Greeks, Graeci, -ōrum, *m. pl.*  
 guard (noun), praesidium, -ī, *n.*  
 guard (verb), custodiō, -īre, -īvi, -itum.

## H

Hannibal, Hannibal, -alis, *m.*  
 happen, accidō, -ere, accidī.  
 harbor, portus, -ūs, *m.*  
 hasten, properō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum; contendō, -tendere, -tendī, -tentum.  
 have, habeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum.  
 hear, audiō, -īre, -īvi, -itum.  
 height, altitūdō, -dinis, *f.*  
 help (noun), auxilium, -ī, *n.*  
 help (verb), juvō, -āre, jūvī, jūtum.  
 Helvetians, the Helvetians, Helvēti, -ōrum, *m. pl.*  
 here, hic, *adv.*  
 high, altus, -a, -um.  
 hill, collis, collis, *m.*  
 (of) himself, herself, themselves, reflex., suī, etc.  
 his, her, its, their, when reflexive, suus, -a, -um; when not reflexive, ejus, eōrum, eārum.  
 home, domus, -ūs (-ī), *f.*  
 honor, honor, honoris, *m.*  
 honorable, honestus, -a, -um.  
 hope, spēs, speī, *f.*  
 Horatius, Horātius, -ī, *m.*  
 horse, equus, -ī, *m.*  
 horseman, eques, equitis, *m.*  
 hospitality, hospitium, -ī, *n.*  
 hostage, obses, obsidis, *m.*  
 hour, hōra, -ae, *f.*  
 house, tectum, -ī, *n.*  
 hunt, vēnor, -ārī, -ātus sum.  
 hurl, jaciō, -ere, jēcī, jactum; conjiciō, -jicere, -jēcī, -jectum.

## I

I, ego, mei.  
 if, si, conj.  
 in, in, prep. with abl.  
 increase, grow greater, crēscō, -ere, crēvī, crētum.  
 industrious, impiger, -gra, -grum.



industriously, *impigrē, adv.*  
 infantry (*noun*), *peditēs, -um (pl. of pedes, peditis, m.)*; (*adjective*), *pedester, -tris, -tre.*  
 influence, *auctoritās, -tātis, f.*  
 injure, *noceō, -ēre, -uī, -itum.*  
 interpreter, *interpres, interpretis, m.*  
 into, *in, prep. with acc.*  
 invite, *invitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.*  
 Ireland, *Hibernia, -ae, f.*  
 island, *insula, -ae, f.*  
 Italy, *Italia, -ae, f.*

## J

javelin, *pilum, -ī, n.*  
 journey, *iter, itineris, n.*  
 joy, *gaudium, -ī, n.*  
 just, *iustus, -a, -um.*  
 justice, *iustitia, -ae, f.*

## K

kill, *interficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum*;  
*neceō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.*  
 king, *rēx, rēgis, m.*  
 kingdom, *rēgnum, -ī, n.*  
 know, *sciō, scire, scivī, scitum*; not  
 know, *ignōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.*  
 knowledge, *scientia, -ae, f.*

## L

Labienus, *Labiēnus, -ī, m.*  
 lake, *lacus, -ūs, m.*  
 language, *lingua, -ae, f.*  
 large, *magnus, -a, -um.*  
 Laurentum, *Laurentum, -ī, n.*  
 Lavinia, *Lāvinia, -ae, f.*  
 lay waste, *vāstō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.*  
 lead, *dūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductum.*  
 lead across, *trādūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum.*  
 lead back, *redūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum.*  
 leader, *dux, ducis, m.*

leap down, *dēsiliō, -silire, -silui.*  
 leave, *relinquō, -ere, reliqui, relic-  
 tum.*  
 legion, *legiō, -ōnis, f.*  
 letter, *epistula, -ae, f.*  
 liberty, *libertās, -tātis, f.*  
 lieutenant, *lēgātus, -ī, m.*  
 life, *vita, -ae, f.*  
 light, *lux, lucis, f.*  
 live, *habitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.*  
 long (*adverb*), *diū.*  
 long (*adjective*), *longus, -a, -um.*  
 lose, *āmittō, -ere, āmisi, āmissum.*  
 love, *amō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.*  
 low, *humilis, -e.*

## M

make, *faciō, -ere, fēcī, factum*;  
 make war on, *bellum inferō, etc.*  
 (*with dative*).  
 man, *vir, viri, m.*; *hōmō, hominis, m.*  
 many, *multi, -ae, -a (plural of  
 multus).*  
 march, *iter faciō, facere, etc.*  
 Marius, *Marius, -ī, m.*  
 Marseilles, *Massilia, -ae, f.*  
 master, *dominus, -ī, m.*  
 messenger, *nūntius, -ī, m.*  
 Messina, *Messāna, -ae, f.*  
 middle, *middle of, medius, -a, -um.*  
 migrate, *migrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.*  
 mile, *mille passūs, pl. milia pas-  
 suum.*  
 military, *militāris, -e.*  
 mob, *turba, -ae, f.*  
 money, *pecūnia, -ae, f.*  
 month, *mēnsis, mēnsis, m.*  
 mother, *māter, mātris, f.*  
 mountain, *mōns, montis, m.*  
 much, *multus, -a, -um.*  
 multitude, *multitūdō, -dinis, f.*  
 my, *meus, -a, -um.*

## N

name, nōmen, nōminis, *n.*  
 narrow, angustus, -a, -um.  
 nation, gēns, gentis, *f.*  
 native country, patria, -ae, *f.*  
 nature, nātūra, -ae, *f.*  
 necessary, it is necessary, oportet, -ēre, oportuit.  
 neighboring, vicīnus, -a, -um.  
 neighbors, finitimī, -ōrum, *m. pl.*  
 Neptune, Neptūnus, -ī, *m.*  
 never, numquam, *adv.*  
 new, novus, -a, -um.  
 next, proximus, -a, -um.  
 night (*adjective*), nocturnus, -a, -um.  
 no, nullus, -a, -um, *gen. nullus.*  
 no one, nēmō, *dat. nēminī.*  
 nor, neque, *conj.*  
 not, nōn, *adv.*  
 nothing, nihil, *indecl., n.*  
 not yet, nōndum, *adv.*  
 now, nunc, *adv.*  
 number, numerus, -ī, *m.*

## O

obey, pāreo, -ēre, pāruī.  
 observe, spectō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātum.  
 ocean, Ōceanus, -ī, *m.*  
 often, saepe, *adv.*  
 old, vetus, *gen. veteris.*  
 old man, senex, senis, *m.*  
 on, in, *prep. with abl.*  
 on account of, propter, *prep. with acc.*  
 once, at once, statim, *adv.*  
 one, ūnus, -a, -um, *gen. ūnius.*  
 order, jubeō, -ēre, jussī, jussum.  
 other, another, alius, -a, -ud; the other, reliquus, -a, -um.  
 ought, one ought, oportet, -ēre, oportuit, *impersonal.*  
 our, noster, -tra, -trum.  
 outside, outside of, extrā, *prep. with acc.*

## P

part, pars, partis, *f.*  
 peace, pāx, pācis, *f.*  
 people, populus, -ī, *m.*  
 perish, pereō, -īre, -īf, -itūrus.  
 permit, it is permitted, licet, -ēre, licuit.  
 persuade, persuādeō, -suādēre, -suāsi, -suāsūm.  
 picture, pictūra, -ae, *f.*  
 pirate, praedō, -ōnis, *m.*  
 place, locus, -ī, *m. (pl. loca, -ōrum, n.).*  
 place in command of, praeficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum.  
 plan, cōnsilium, -ī, *n.*  
 please, placeō, -ēre, -uī.  
 poet, poēta, -ae, *m.*  
 point out, dēmōnstrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.  
 power, potentia, -ae, *f.*; imperium, -ī, *n.*  
 praetor, praetor, -ōris, *m.*  
 praise, laudō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.  
 prefer, mālō, mālle, mālui.  
 prepared, parātus, -a, -um.  
 present, dōnum, -ī, *n.*  
 prison, carcer, carceris, *m.*  
 prisoner, captīvus, -ī, *m.*  
 promise, polliceor, -ērī, pollicitus sum.  
 province, prōvincia, -ae, *f.*  
 purpose, for the purpose of, causā, preceded by *genitive.*  
 Pyrenees, Pŷrēnaei, -ōrum, *m. pl.*

## Q

quaestor, quaestor, -ōris, *m.*  
 queen, rēgina, -ae, *f.*  
 quickly, celeriter, *adv.*

## R

rampart, vāllum, -ī, *n.*  
 rapid, celer, celeris, celere.  
 read, legō, -ere, lēgī, lēctum.

rear, bring up, *educō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum.*  
 reason, *causa, -ae, f.*  
 receive, *accipio, -cipere, -cēpi, -cep-  
 tum.*  
 reinforcements, *subsidium, -i, n.*  
 regain, *recuperō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum.*  
 reject, *repudiō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum.*  
 remain, *maneō, -ēre, mānsi, mān-  
 sum.*  
 remember, *memini, meminisse.*  
 Remus, *Remus, -i, m.*  
 renew, *renovō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum.*  
 repulse, *repellō, -ere, reppuli, re-  
 pulsum.*  
 residence, *domicilium, -i, n.*  
 resist, *resistō, -sistere, -stiti.*  
 resources, *opēs, opum (pl. of ops,  
 opis, f.).*  
 rest, the rest of, *reliquus, -a, -um.*  
 result, it results, *fit, fieri, factum  
 est.*  
 retain, *dētineō, -tinēre, -tinui, -ten-  
 tum.*  
 return, *redeō, -ire, -ii (-ivi), -itum;*  
     *revertor, reverti, reversus sum.*  
 reward, *praemium, -i, n.*  
 Rhine, *Rhēnus, -i, m.*  
 right, *jūs, jūris, n.*  
 rise, *orior, oriri, ortus sum.*  
 river, *flūmen, flūminis, n.*  
 road, *iter, itineris, n.*  
 robber, *latrō, -ōnis, m.*  
 rock, *saxum, -i, n.*  
 Roman (*adjective*), *Rōmānus, -a, -um.*  
 Roman (*noun*), *Rōmānus, -i, m.; the  
 Romans, Rōmāni, -ōrum, m. pl.*  
 Rome, *Rōma, -ae, f.*  
 Romulus, *Rōmulus, -i, m.*  
 rose, *rosa, -ae, f.*  
 route, *iter, itineris, n.*  
 royal power, *rēgnum, -i, n.*

rule, *regō, -ere, rēxi, rēctum.*  
 Rutulians, *Rutulī, -ōrum, m. pl.*

## S

sacred, *sacer, -era, -crum.*  
 safe, *tūtus, -a, -um.*  
 safely, *tūtō, adv.*  
 Saguntum, *Saguntum, -i, n.*  
 sailor, *nauta, -ae, m.*  
 same, *idem, eadem, idem.*  
 satisfied, *contentus, -a, -um.*  
 say, *dico, -ere, dixi, dictum.*  
 scout, *explōrator, -ōris, m.*  
 sea, *mare, maris, n.*  
 see, *videō, -ēre, vidi, visum; cōn-  
 spiciō, -spicere, -spexi, -spectum.*  
 seek, *petō, -ere, petivi, petitum.*  
 seize, *occupō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum.*  
 self, himself, herself, itself, *pl.,  
 themselves, when reflexive, sui,  
 sibi, etc.; when not reflexive, ipse,  
 ipsa, ipsum.*  
 senate, *senātus, -ūs, m.*  
 senator, *senātor, -ōris, m.*  
 send, *mittō, -ere, misi, missum.*  
 send ahead, *praemittō, -mittere,  
 -misi, -missum.*  
 send back, *remittō, -mittere, -misi,  
 -missum.*  
 separate, *dividō, -ere, divisi, divi-  
 sum.*  
 set out, *proficiscor, proficisci, pro-  
 fectus sum.*  
 several, *complūrēs, -ia, gen. com-  
 plūrium.*  
 shepherd, *pāstor, -ōris, m.*  
 shield, *scūtum, -i, n.*  
 ship, *nāvis, nāvis, f.*  
 shore, *litus, litoris, n.*  
 short, *brevis, breve.*  
 sight, *cōnspectus, -ūs, m.*  
 signal, *signum, -i, n.*  
 since, *cum, conj.*

sink, dēprimō, -primere, -pressi, -pressum.

sister, soror, sorōris, *f.*

six, sex, *indecl. num.*

slave, servus, -i, *m.*

small, parvus, -a, -um.

so, tam, ita, *advs.*

so great, tantus, -a, -um.

soldier, miles, militis, *m.*

so many, tot, *indeclinable.*

some, quīdam, quaedam, quoddam or quiddam.

son, filius, -i, *m.*

soon, mox, *adv.*

sort, kind, modus, -i, *m.*

sound, sonus, -i, *m.*

Spain, Hispānia, -ae, *f.*

Spaniards, Hispānī, -ōrum, *m. pl.*

speed, celeritās, -tātis, *f.*

spend the winter, hiemō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum.

stand, stō, stāre, stetī, stātūrus.

state, civitās, -tātis, *f.*

statue, statua, -ae, *f.*

stature, statūra, -ae, *f.*

stay, manēō, -ēre, mānsī, mānsum.

still, tamen, *adv.*

stone, lapis, lapidis, *m.*; saxum, -i, *n.*

storm, tempestās, -tātis, *f.*

street, via, -ae, *f.*

strong, firmus, -a, -um.

struggle, certāmen, -minis, *n.*

suitable, idōneus, -a, -um.

summer, aestās, -tātis, *f.*

summon, arcessō, -ere, -ivī, -itum.

sun, sōl, sōlis, *m.*

supplies, commeātus, -ūs, *m.*

supreme power, imperium, -i, *n.*

surpass, praecēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum.

surrender, trādō, -dere, -didī, -ditum; dēdō, -dere, -didī, -ditum.

swamp, palūs, -ūs, *f.*

swift, celer, celeris, celere.

swiftly, celeriter, *adv.*

sword, gladius, -i, *m.*

## T

take, capiō, -ere, cēpi, captum.

talk, loquor, loqui, locūtus sum.

temple, templum, -i, *n.*

ten, decem, *indecl. num.*

terrify, perterreō, -ēre, -ui, -itum.

terror, terror, terrōris, *m.*

that (*demonstrative*), ille, illa, illud; is, ea, id; iste, ista, istud.

that (*conj.*), ut.

that not, nē.

their, *when reflexive*, suus, sua, suum; *when not reflexive*, eōrum, eārum (*gen. pl. of is*).

then, tum, *adv.*

there, ibi, *adv.*

think, arbitror, -ārī, -ātus sum.

this, hic, haec, hoc; is, ea, id.

thousand, mille, *pl. millia.*

threats, minae, -ārum, *f. pl.*

three, trēs, tria.

through, per, *prep. with acc.*

throw, jaciō, -ere, jēcī, jactum.

Tiber, Tiber, Tiberis, *m.*

time, tempus, temporis, *n.*

tired, tired out, dēfessus, -a, -um.

today, hodiē, *adv.*

top of, highest part of, summus, -a, -um.

toward, ad, *prep. with acc.*

town, oppidum, -i, *n.*

townspeople, oppidānī, -ōrum, *m. pl.*

trader, mercātor, -ōris, *m.*

traveler, viātor, -ōris, *m.*

treason, prōditiō, -ōnis, *f.*

treaty, foedus, foederis, *n.*

tree, arbor, arboris, *f.*

tribune, tribūnus, -i, *m.*

Trojan, Trojānus, -i, *m.*, the Trojans, Trojānī, -ōrum, *m. pl.*

Troy, Troja, -ae, *f.*  
 true, vĕrus, -a, -um.  
 trumpet, tuba, -ae, *f.*  
 trust, cōfidō, -fidere, -fĭsus sum.  
 try, cōnor, -ārī, -ātus sum.  
 turn, flectō, -ere, flexī, flexum.  
 twelve, duodecim; *indecl. num.*  
 two, duo, duae, duo.

## U

undertake, suscipiō, -cipere, -cēpi, -ceptum.  
 unjust, injūstus, -a, -um.  
 until, dum.  
 unwilling, invitus, -a, -um; *be*  
 unwilling, nōlō, nōlle, nōlui.  
 urge, hortor, -ārī, -ātus sum.  
 use, ūtor, ūti, ūsus sum.

## V

valley, vallēs, vallis, *f.*  
 Veneti, Veneti, -ōrum, *m. pl.*  
 very near, nearest, proximus, -a, -um.  
 victory, victōria, -ae, *f.*  
 villa, villa, -ae, *f.*  
 village, vicus, -ī, *m.*  
 violate, violō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum.  
 vow, voveō, -ēre, vōvī, vōtum.

## W

wage, gerō, -ere, gessi, gestum.  
 wait, wait for, expectō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum.  
 walk, ambulō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum.  
 wall, mŭrus, -ī, *m.*  
 war, bellum, -ī, *n.*  
 ward off, dēpellō, -ere, dēpuli, dēpulsum.  
 warn, moneō, -ēre, -ui, -itum.  
 wave, fluctus, -ūs, *m.*  
 way, via, -ae, *f.*  
 wealth, divitiae, -arum, *f. pl.*  
 wealthy, dives, divitis, *superl. dītis-simus*, -a, -um.

weapon, telum, -ī, *n.*  
 when, cum, ubi, *conj.*  
 where, ubi, *adv.*  
 who, which, what, that, *rel. pron.*, quī, quae, quod.  
 who, which, what, *interrogative pron. and adj.*, quis (quī), quae, quid (quod).

why, cūr, *adv.*  
 wide, lātus, -a, -um.  
 wife, uxor, uxōris, *f.*  
 wind, ventus, -ī, *m.*  
 winter, hiems, hiemis, *f.*; spend the winter, hiemō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum.  
 wisdom, sapientia, -ae, *f.*  
 wise, sapiēns, *gen. sapientis*.  
 wish, cupiō, -ere, cupīvi, cupītum; volō, velle, volui; not wish, be unwilling, nōlō, nōlle, nōlui.

with, cum, *prep. with abl.*  
 withdraw, excēdō, -cēdere, -cessi, -cessum; discēdō, -cēdere, -cessi, -cessum.  
 without, sine, *prep. with abl.*  
 woman, fēmina, -ae, *f.*; mulier, mulieris, *f.*  
 work, verbum, -ī, *n.*  
 work, labōrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum.  
 wound (*noun*), vulnus, vulneris, *n.*  
 wound (*verb*), vulnerō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum.  
 write, scribō, -ere, scripsi, scriptum.  
 wrong, injūria, -ae, *f.*

## Y

year, annus, -ī, *m.*  
 yearly, quotannis, *adv.*  
 yesterday, herī, *adv.*  
 you, tū, tuī; *pl.* vōs, vestrum or vestri  
 young man, juvenis, juvenis, *m.*  
 your, of one person, tuus, -a, -um; of more than one person, vester, -tra, -trum.

## LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY

### A

- A.**, *abbr. for Aulus.*
- ā**, *ab*, *prep. with abl.*, from, by.
- ab-dō**, -dere, -didi, -ditum, *tr.*, put away, hide, conceal.
- ab-dūcō**, -dūcere, -dūxi, -ductum, *tr.*, lead away, bring away.
- ab-eō**, -ire, -ii, -itum, *intr.*, go away, depart.
- abjiciō**, -jicere, -jēcī, -jectum, *tr.* [ab+jaciō], throw away, throw aside.
- Aboriginēs**, -um, *m. pl.*, the Aborigines, the original inhabitants of Rome and vicinity.
- abripio**, -ripere, -ripui, -reptum, *tr.* [ab+rapio], snatch away, steal.
- ab-rogō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.*, annul; take away (*an office*).
- abscidō**, -cidere, -cidi, -cisum, *tr.* [abs+caedō], cut off.
- absēns**, -entis, *adj.* [absum], absent.
- ab-solvō**, -solvere, -solvi, -solūtum, *tr.*, set free; acquit.
- abs-tergeō**, -tergere, -tersi, -tersum, *tr.*, wipe off or away.
- abstineō**, -tinēre, -tinui, —, *intr.* [abs+teneō], keep or remain away.
- ab-sum**, abesse, āfui, āfutūrus, *intr.*, be away, be distant, be absent.
- ab-sūmō**, -sūmere, -sūmpsi, -sūmp-tum, *tr.*, consume, destroy.
- Absyrtus**, -i, *m.*, Absyrtus, brother of Medea.
- ab-undō**, -āre, -āvi, —, *intr.* [unda, wave], overflow.
- ac**, *see atque.*
- Acastus**, -i, *m.*, Acastus, son of Pelias.
- accēdō**, -cēdere, -cessi, -cessum, *intr.* [ad+cēdō], approach, draw near; be added.
- accendō**, -cendere, -cendi, -cēsum, *tr.* [ad+cendō, burn], kindle, light.
- acceptus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [p. part. of accipio], acceptable.
- accipio**, -cipere, -cēpi, -ceptum, *tr.* [ad+capiō], receive, accept.
- accidō**, -cidere, -cidi, —, *intr.* [ad+cadō], fall upon; happen, come about.
- accingō**, -cingere, -cinxī, -cinctum, *tr.* [ad+cingō], gird to, gird.
- accommodō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.* [ad+commodō, lend], fit to, adapt.
- accumbō**, -cumbere, -cubui, -cubitum, *intr.* [ad+cumbō, recline], recline (*at table*).
- accurrō**, -currere, -curri, -cursum, *intr.* [ad+currō], run to, come up hurriedly.
- accūsō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.* [ad+causa], accuse, blame, reprimand.
- ācer**, ācris, ācre, *adj.*, spirited, bold, sharp.
- aciēs**, -ei, *f.*, line of battle; flash of the eye.
- Ācrisius**, -i, *m.*, Acrisius, grandfather of Perseus.
- ācriter**, *adv.* [ācer], fiercely, severely.
- āctum**, -i, *n.* [p. part. of agō], deed, transaction.
- acūtus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [p. part. of acuō, sharpen], sharp.
- ad**, *prep. with acc.*, to, toward; near, in the vicinity of; according to.
- ad-amō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.*, fall in love with.
- ad-aequō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.*, make equal to; equal, keep up with.
- ad-dō**, -dere, -didi, -ditum, *tr.*, add.
- ad-dūcō**, -dūcere, -dūxi, -ductum, *tr.*, lead to, conduct, bring; incite, induce.

- ad-eō, -īre, -iī or -ivī, -itum, *intr.*, go or come up to, come up, approach.
- ad-eō, *adv.*, to such a degree, so.
- ad-equitō, -āre, -āvi, —, *intr.*, ride up to, gallop to.
- adhibeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, *tr.* [ad + habeō], apply; summon, admit, employ.
- ad-hūc, *adv.*, until now, as yet.
- adipiscor, adipisci, adeptus sum, *tr.* [ad + apiscor, reach], attain, obtain, win.
- aditus, -ūs, *m.* [adeō, -īre], entrance, means of approach, access.
- adjiciō, -jicere, -jēci, -jectum, *tr.* [ad + jaciō], hurl to, hurl upon, throw.
- ad-jungō, -jungere, -jūnxī, -jūntum, *tr.*, join to, attach.
- ad-juvō, -juvāre, -jūvī, -jūtum, *tr.*, help, assist.
- Admēta, -ae, *f.*, Admeta, daughter of Eurystheus.
- ad-ministrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.*, manage, direct.
- admirandus, -a, -um, *adj.* [admīror], admirable, wonderful.
- admirātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [admīror], admiration, surprise.
- ad-mīror, -ārī, -ātus sum, *tr.*, be astonished at, admire.
- ad-mittō, -mittere, -misi, -missum, *tr.*, send to, let go; admit.
- ad-modum, *adv.*, fully, very, quite.
- ad-moneō, -monēre, -monui, -monitum, *tr.*, remind, admonish.
- adolēscō, adolēscere, adolēvi, adultum, *intr.*, grow up, grow to maturity.
- ad-orior, -oriri, -ortus sum, *tr.*, fall upon, attack.
- ad-ōrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.*, worship.
- ad-scribō, -scribere, -scripsi, -scriptum, *tr.*, write in addition, add.
- ad-stringō, -stringere, -strinxī, -strictum, *tr.*, bind to, bind.
- ad-sum, -esse, -fui, -futurus, *intr.*, be at hand, be near.
- adolēscēns, adolēscētis, -ium, *adj.* [*pr. part.* of adolēscō], youthful; *subst., m.*, a young man, a youth.
- adolēscēntia, -ae, *f.* [adolēscēns], youth.
- adolēscēntulus, -i, *m.* [*dim.* of adolēscēns], a very young man.
- adultus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*p. part.* of adolēscō], grown up, mature.
- ad-ūrō, -ūrere, -ussi, -ustum, *tr.*, burn, sear.
- ad-veniō, -venire, -vēni, -ventum, *intr.*, come to, come up, approach.
- adventō, -ventāre, —, —, *intr.* [*intens.* of adveniō], advance, approach.
- adventus, -ūs, *m.* [adveniō], approach, coming, arrival.
- adversārius, -a, -um, *adj.* [adversor], opposed, hostile; *subst., adversārius, -i, m.*, an opponent, adversary.
- adversor, -ārī, -ātus sum, *intr.* [adversus], takes dative, resist, oppose.
- adversus, *prep. with acc.*, opposed to, against.
- adversus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*p. part.* of advertō, turn to], opposing; unfavorable; in front.
- ad-vertō, -vertere, -verti, -versum, *tr.*, turn to, direct to; *animus advertere*, observe, notice.
- Aeacus, -i, *m.*, Aeacus, a judge in the lower world.
- aedēs, aedis, -ium, *f. sing.*, temple, sanctuary; *pl.*, dwelling, house.
- aedificium, -i, *n.* [aedificō], a building.
- aedificō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.* [aedēs + faciō], build.
- aedilis, aedilis, -ium, *m.*, aedile, title of a Roman magistrate.
- aedilitās, -ātis, *f.* [aedilis], the office of an aedile, aedileship.

**Aeētēs**, -ae, *m.*, Aetes, a king of Colchis.

**aeger**, -gra, -grum, *adj.*, ill, sick.

**aegrē**, *adv.* [aeger], painfully; with difficulty; with grief; with resentment.

**aegrōtō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *intr.* [aegrōtus, sick], be sick.

**Aegyptius**, -a, -um, *adj.*, Egyptian; *subst.*, Aegyptius, -i, *m.*, an Egyptian.

**Aegyptus**, -i, *f.*, Egypt.

**Aemilius**, -i, *m.*, L. Aemilius, a cavalry officer in Julius Caesar's army.

**aemulātō**, -ōnis, *f.* [aemulor, to rival], rivalry.

**Aenēās**, -ae, *m.*, Aeneas, a Trojan hero.

**aēnētis**, -a, -um, *adj.* [aes], of copper, of bronze.

**aequālis**, -e, *adj.*, equal; *subst.*, **aequālis**, -is, *m.*, one of the same age.

**aequē**, *adv.* [aequus], equally.

**Aequi**, -ōrum, *m.*, the Aequi, a people of Latium.

**aequitās**, -ātis, *f.* [aequus], equity, fairness.

**aequō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.* [aequus], make equal, equalize.

**aequus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, level, even; equal.

**āēr**, *aeris*, *m.*, the air.

**aerārium**, -i, *n.* [aes], treasury.

**aes**, *aeris*, *n.*, copper, bronze; **aes aliēnum**, debt.

**Aesōn**, -onis, *m.*, Aeson, father of Jason.

**aestās**, -ātis, *f.*, summer.

**aestivus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [aestās], of summer, summer (*as adjective*).

**aetās**, -ātis, *f.*, age.

**aeternus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, eternal, undying.

**Aethiopēs**, -um, *m. pl.*, the Ethiopians, a people of Africa.

**Āfer**, -fra, -frum, *adj.*, African.

**affectō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.* [freq. of afficiō], strive after, aim at.

**afferō**, afferre, attuli, allātum, *tr.* [ad+ferō], bring to, bring.

**afficiō**, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum, *tr.* [ad+faciō], do to; treat; affect.

**affinis**, -e, *adj.* [ad+finis], related by marriage; *subst.*, **affinis**, **affinis**, -ium, *m. and f.*, a relative by marriage.

**affinitās**, -ātis, *f.* [affinis], relationship by marriage.

**Āfrica**, -ae, *f.*, Africa.

**Āfricānus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, of Africa, African; *subst.*, **Āfricānus**, -i, *m.*, Africanus, a cognomen of P. Cornelius Scipio.

**agellus**, -i, *m.* [dim. of ager], a little field.

**ager**, **agri**, *m.*, field, land, estate.

**aggredior**, -gredi, -gressus sum, *tr.* [ad+gradior, step], attack.

**agitō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.* [freq. of agō], drive; impel, instigate.

**agmen**, -inis, *n.* [agō], a marching army, a column.

**agnōscō**, -nōscere, -nōvi, -nitum, *tr.* [ad+(g)nōscō], recognize.

**agō**, agere, ēgi, āctum, *tr.*, drive, do, act; spend, pass.

**agrestis**, -e, *adj.* [ager], of the country; *subst.* **agrestis**, **agrestis**, -ium, *m.*, a countryman, a peasant.

**agricola**, -ae, *m.* [ager+colō], farmer.

**Agrippa**, see Menēnius.

**aiō**, defective verb, say, affirm.

**āla**, -ae, *f.*, wing.

**alacritās**, -ātis, *f.* [alacer, eager], eagerness, alacrity.

**ālārius**, -a, -um, *adj.* [āla], on or of the wings; *subst.*, **ālārii**, -ōrum, *m. pl.*, auxiliary troops.



**Alba Longa, Albæ Longæ, f.,** Alba Longa, a city of Latium.

**Albanus, -a, -um, adj.,** Alban, of Alba; *subst., Albani, -orum, m. pl.,* the people of Alba, the Albans.

**albus, -a, -um, adj.,** white.

**Alcmæna, -æ, f.,** Alcmena, mother of Hercules.

**alea, -æ, f.,** a game with dice; a die.

**aliēnus, -a, -um, adj. [alius],** another's; out of place; unfavorable.

**alimenta, -orum, n. pl. [alō],** food, provisions; support.

**aliquamdū, adv.,** for a while.

**aliquandō, adv.,** at some time or other, once.

**aliquantum, -i, n. [aliquantus, some],** something.

**aliqui, aliqua, aliquod, indef. pronom. adj.,** some, any.

**aliquis, aliquid, indef. pron.,** someone, something.

**aliquot, indecl. adj.,** several.

**aliquotiēns, adv. [aliquot],** several times.

**aliter, adv. [alius],** otherwise.

**alius, -a, -ud, adj.,** another, other.

**Allia, -æ, f.,** the Allia, a small river near Rome.

**Alliēnsis, -e, adj.,** of the Allia.

**alligō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr. [ad + ligō, bind],** bind to, tie to.

**Allobrogēs, -um, m. pl.,** the Allobroges, a Gallic tribe on the Rhone.

**alloquor, -loqui, -locūtus sum, tr. [ad + loquor],** speak to, address.

**Allucius, -i, m.,** Allucius, the name of a certain Spaniard.

**alō, alere, alui, altum, tr.,** nourish, sustain.

**Alpēs, -ium, f. pl.,** the Alps.

**Alpinus, -a, -um, adj.,** Alpine.

**alter, altera, alterum, adj.,** the other (of two), a second, another.

**altitūdō, -inis, f. [altus],** height, depth.

**altus, -a, -um, adj. [p. part. of alō],** high, deep; *subst., altum, -i, n.,* the deep, the sea.

**alveus, -i, m.,** trough.

**amāns, amantis, adj. [pres. part. of amō],** loving, fond.

**Amāzonēs, -um, f. pl.,** the Amazons.

**Ambarri, -orum, m. pl.,** the Ambarri, a Gallic tribe.

**ambitiō, -ōnis, f. [ambiō, go around],** ambition.

**ambitus, -ūs, m. [ambiō, go around],** canvassing for votes, bribery.

**ambō, -æ, -ō, num. adj.,** both.

**ambulō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, intr.,** walk.

**āmentia, -æ, f. [āmēns, out of one's mind],** madness.

**amicitia, -æ, f. [amicus],** friendship.

**amicus, -a, -um, adj. [amō],** friendly.

**amicus, -i, m. [amicus, adj.],** a friend.

**amita, -æ, f.,** (paternal) aunt.

**ā-mittō, -mittere, -misi, -missum, tr.,** lose.

**amnis, amnis, -ium, m.,** river.

**amō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr.,** love.

**amoenitās, -ātis, f.,** pleasantness, charm.

**amor, -ōris, m.,** love.

**ā-moveō, -movēre, -mōvi, -mōtum, tr.,** move away.

**amphora, -æ, f.,** jar, flagon.

**amplē, adv. [amplus, ample],** abundantly, liberally; *compar., amplius, more.*

**Amūlius, -i, m.,** Amulius, a king of Alba.

**an, conj.,** or, used in double questions.

**anceps, -cipitis, adj.,** two-headed, double.

**ancora, -æ, f.,** anchor.

**Ancus, -i, m.,** Ancus Marcius, fourth king of Rome.

**Andromeda, -æ, f.,** Andromeda, the daughter of Cepheus.

**angor**, -ōris, *m.*, anguish, torment.  
**anguis**, anguis, -ium, *m.* and *f.*,  
 serpent, snake.

**angulus**, -ī, *m.*, corner.

**angustiae**, -ārum, *f. pl.* [angustus],  
 narrowness, a narrow place or  
 pass, defile.

**angustus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, narrow.

**anima**, -ae, *f.*, air, breath; life.

**animadvertō**, -vertere, -verti, -ver-  
 sus, *tr.* [animus+advertō], direct  
 the mind to, observe, notice;  
 punish.

**animal**, animālis, -ālium, *n.*, an  
 animal.

**animus**, -ī, *m.*, mind, courage,  
 spirit.

**Aniō**, Aniēnis, *m.*, the Anio, a river  
 near Rome.

**annōna**, -ae, *f.* [annus], the year's  
 produce; supplies, provisions.

**annus**, -ī, *m.*, year.

**annuus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [annus]  
 annual, lasting a year.

**anser**, -eris, *m.*, goose.

**ante**, *prep. with acc.*, before, in front  
 of.

**antēa**, *adv.*, formerly, before.

**ante-eō**, -īre, -iī or -ivī, *intr.*, go  
 before or ahead.

**ante-quam**, *conj.*, before.

**Antiochus**, -ī, *m.*, Antiochus, a Greek  
 philosopher.

**antiquus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, ancient, of  
 long ago.

**Antōnius**, -ī, *m.*, (1) C. Antonius,  
 consul in 63 B.C.; (2) M.  
 Antonius, consul in 44 B.C.,  
 afterwards triumvir.

**antrum**, -ī, *n.*, cave.

**ānxius**, -a, -um, *adj.*, anxious.

**Ap.**, *abbr. for* Appius.

**aper**, **apri**, *m.*, a wild boar.

**aperiō**, **aperire**, **aperui**, **apertum**, *tr.*,  
 open; reveal.

**apertus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [*p. part. of*  
**aperiō**], open, exposed, unpro-  
 tected.

**Apollō**, Apollinis, *m.*, Apollo.

**Apollōnius**, -ī, *m.*, Apollonius Molo,  
 a celebrated teacher of oratory at  
 Rhodes.

**apparātus**, -ūs, *m.* [apparō, prepare],  
 apparatus, equipment.

**apparātus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [apparō,  
 prepare], prepared, splendid.

**appāritor**, -ōris, *m.*, servant.

**appellō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.*, call,  
 name.

**appellō**, -pellere, -pulī, -pulsum, *tr.*  
 [ad+pellō], drive to, bring to;  
 with or without nāvem, land, put in.

**Appennīnus**, -ī, *m.*, the Appen-  
 nines.

**appetō**, -petere, -petivī, or -petī,  
 -petitum, *tr. and intr.* [ad+petō],  
 strive after, seek; approach.

**Appius**, -ī, *m.*, Appius, a Roman  
*praenomen*.

**appōnō**, -ponere, -posuī, -positum,  
*tr.* [ad+pōnō], place near; serve,  
 set before.

**apprehendō**, -hendere, -hendi, -hēn-  
 sum, *tr.* [ad+prehendō], take hold  
 of, seize.

**appropinquō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *intr.*  
 [ad+propinquō, draw near], ap-  
 proach.

**Apr.**, *abbr. for* Aprilis, -e, *adj.*, of  
 April.

**aptus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, fit, adapted.

**apud**, *prep. with acc.*, among, with;  
 near; at the house of; on the  
 bank of.

**Āpūlia**, -ae, *f.*, Apulia, a region of  
 southern Italy.

**aqua**, -ae, *f.*, water.

**aquila**, -ae, *f.*, eagle.

**Aquileia**, -ae, *f.*, a city of Cisalpine  
 Gaul, modern Aquileia.

**Aquitānia**, -ae, *f.*, Aquitania, one of  
 the divisions of Gaul.

**Aquitānus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, of Aquitania, Aquitanian; *subst.*, Aquitāni, -ōrum, *m. pl.*, the Aquitanians.

**āra**, -ae, *f.*, altar.

**Arar**, -aris, *m.*, the Arar, a river in Gaul, now called the Saône.

**arbitrium**, -i, *n.* [arbitrator, witness, judge], judgment, pleasure.

**arbitror**, -āri, -ātus sum, *tr.* [arbitrator, judge], think, suppose.

**arbor**, -oris, *f.*, tree.

**arca**, -ae, *f.*, chest, box.

**Arcadia**, -ae, *f.*, Arcadia, a district in Greece.

**arcessō**, -cessere, -cessivi, -cessitum, *tr.*, send for, summon.

**arcus**, -ūs, *m.*, bow, arch.

**Ardea**, -ae, *f.*, Ardea, a town of the Rutuli, in Latium.

**Ardeātēs**, -ium, *m. pl.*, the people of Ardea.

**ārdeō**, -ēre, ārsi, ārsim, *intr.*, be on fire, burn, burn up.

**argenteus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [argentum], of silver.

**argentum**, -i, *n.*, silver.

**Argō**, -ūs, *f.*, the ship Argo.

**Argolicus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, of Argolis (a district of Greece).

**Argonautae**, -ārum, *m. pl.*, the crew of the Argo, the Argonauts.

**Argus**, -i, *m.*, Argus, builder of the Argo.

**Aricinus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, of Aricia (a town of Latium).

**ariēs**, -etis, *m.*, ram.

**Ariovistus**, -i, *m.*, Ariovistus, king of the Suevi, a German people.

**arma**, -ōrum, *n. pl.*, arms, weapons.

**aquila**, -ae, *f.*, eagle.

**armamentārium**, -i, *n.* [arma] arsenal, armory.

**armātus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [p. part. of armō], armed, equipped; *subst.*, armāti, -ōrum, *m. pl.*, armed men.

**Armenia**, -ae, *f.*, Armenia.

**armō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.* [arma], arm, equip.

**arō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.*, plough.

**Arpinum**, -i, *n.*, Arpinum, a town of Latium.

**arripō**, -ripere, -ripui, -reptum, *tr.* [ad+rapō], grasp, seize.

**arroganter**, *adv.* [arrogāns, arrogant], presumptuously.

**arrogantia**, -ae, *f.* [arrogāns, arrogant], arrogance, pride.

**Arrūns**, -untis, *m.*, Arruns Tarquinius, a son of Tarquinius Priscus.

**ars**, artis, -ium, *f.*, art.

**artifex**, -icis, *m.*, artificer, artisan.

**artus**, -ūs, *m.*, joint, limb.

**Arvernī**, -ōrum, *m. pl.*, the Arverni, a tribe of Celtic Gaul.

**arx**, arcis, -ium, *f.*, citadel.

**Ascanius**, -i, *m.*, Ascanius, legendary founder of Alba Longa.

**ascendō**, -scendere, -scendi, -scēsum, *tr.* [ad+scandō], climb, ascend, climb.

**ascēsus**, -ūs, *m.* [ascendō], way up, ascent.

**Asia**, -ae, *f.*, Asia.

**Asiaticus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, of Asia, Asiatic.

**aspiciō**, aspicere, -aspexi, aspectum, *tr.* [ad+speciō], look, look at, behold, look on.

**assidō**, -sīdere, -sēdi, —, *intr.* [ad+sidō, sit], take a seat, sit down.

**assurgō**, -surgere, -surrēxi, -sur-rēctum, *intr.* [ad+surgō, rise], rise up.

**asylum**, -i, *n.*, a place of refuge, asylum.

*at*, conj., but.

**Athēnae**, -ārum, *f. pl.*, Athens.

**Atilius**, -i, *m.*, M. Atilius Regulus, consul in 256 B. C.

**Atlās, -antis, m.**, Atlas.  
**atque, conj.**, and also, and.  
**ātrium, -i, n.**, atrium, the principal room or hall of a house.  
**atrōciter, adv.** [atrōx, savage], fiercely.  
**attingō, -tingere, -tigi, -tāctum, tr.** [ad+tangō], touch; arrive at.  
**auctor, -ōris, m.** [augeō], promoter, instigator.  
**auctōritās, -ātis, f.** [auctor], influence, authority.  
**auctus, -a, -um, see** augeō.  
**audācia, -ae, f.** [audāx], boldness.  
**audācter, adv.** [audāx], boldly.  
**audāx, -ācis, adj.**, daring, bold.  
**audēō, -ēre, ausus sum, tr. and intr.**, dare, venture.  
**audiō, -ire, -ivi, -itum, tr.**, hear.  
**auferō, auferre, abstulī, ablātum, tr.** [ab+ferō], carry away, carry off.  
**aufugiō, -fugere, -fūgi, —, intr.** [ab+fugiō], flee away, run away.  
**Augeās, -ae, m.**, Augeas, a king of Elis.  
**augeō, augēre, auxi, auctum, tr.**, increase; **auctus, -a, -um, p. part. as adj.**, increased; abundant, ample.  
**augurium, -i, n.** [augur, augur], augury, divination.  
**Aulus, -i, m.**, Aulus, a Roman praenomen.  
**aureus, -a, -um, adj.** [aurum], of gold, golden.  
**aurum, -i, n.**, gold.  
**aut, conj.**, or; **aut . . . aut**, either . . . or.  
**autem, conj.**, but, on the other hand, however; furthermore.  
**auxilium, -i, n.** [augeō], help, aid.  
**avāritia, -ae, f.**, [avārus], greed, avarice.  
**avārus, -a, -um, adj.**, greedy, covetous.

**ā-vehō, -vehere, -vexi, -vectum, tr.**, carry off, take away.  
**ā-vertō, -vertere, -verti, -versus, tr.**, turn away, avert.  
**avis, avis, -ium, f.**, bird.  
**ā-volō, -āre, -āvi, -ātūrus, intr.**, fly away.  
**avunculus, -i, m.** [avus], (maternal) uncle.  
**avus, -i, m.**, grandfather.

## B

**baculum, -i, n.**, staff.  
**balteus, -i, m.**, girdle, belt.  
**barba, -ae, f.**, beard.  
**barbari, -ōrum, m. pl.** [barbarus, adj.], barbarian, barbarians.  
**beātus, -a, -um, adj.**, happy, prosperous.  
**Belgae, -ārum, m. pl.**, the Belgae, the Belgians.  
**bellicōsus, -a, -um, adj.** [bellum], warlike, martial.  
**bellō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, intr.** [bellum], carry on war.  
**bellum, -i, n.**, war.  
**bēlua, -ae, f.**, wild beast, monster.  
**bene, adv.** [bonus], well.  
**beneficium, -i, n.** [bene+faciō], kindness, favor.  
**benignē, adv.** [benignus], kindly.  
**benignitās, -ātis, f.** [benignus], kindness.  
**benignus, -a, -um, adj.**, kind.  
**bēstia, -ae, f.**, beast.  
**bibliothēca, -ae, f.**, library.  
**bibō, bibere, bibi, —, tr. and intr.**, drink.  
**Bibracte, -is, n.**, Bibracte, chief town of the Haedui.  
**\*Bibulus, -i, m.**, M. Calpurnius Bibulus, consul in 59 B. C.  
**biceps, -cipitis, adj.**, two-headed.  
**bīduum, -i, n.** [bis+diēs], a period of two days, two days.

**biennium**, -i, *n.* [bis+annus], two years.

**bipertitō**, *adv.* [bis+partior, divide], in two divisions.

**bis**, *adv.*, twice.

**Biturigēs**, -um, *m. pl.*, the Bituriges, a tribe in central Gaul.

**Bocchus**, -i, *m.*, Bocchus, a king of Maurelania.

**Bōi** (Boiī), -ōrum, *m. pl.*, the Boii, a Gallic tribe.

**bonitās**, -ātis, *f.* [bonus], goodness, fertility.

**bonus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, good; *subst.*, bonum, -i, *n.*, what is good, good; bona, -ōrum, *n., pl.*, goods, property.

**bōs**, **bovis**, *m. and f.*, ox, cow; *pl.*, cattle.

**bracchium**, -i, *n.*, the fore-arm, arm.

**Brennus**, -i, *m.*, Brennus, a Gallic king.

**brevis**, -e, *adj.*, short.

**brevitās**, -ātis, *f.* [brevis], shortness, brevity.

**breviter**, *adv.* [brevis], briefly.

**Britannia**, -ae, *f.*, Britain, Great Britain.

**Brundisium**, -i, *n.*, Brundisium, a city on the east coast of Italy, now Brindisi.

**Brūtus**, -i, *m.*, (1) L. Junius Brutus, one of the first two consuls at Rome; (2) M. Junius Brutus, one of Julius Caesar's assassins.

**Būsiris**, -idis, *m.*, Busiris, a king of Egypt.

## C

**C.**, *abbr.* for Gaius.

**Cācus**, -i, *m.*, Cacus, a giant slain by Hercules.

**cadāver**, -eris, *n.*, a dead body, corpse.

**cadō**, **cadere**, **cecidī**, **cāsūrus**, *intr.*, fall; be killed.

**caecus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, blind.

**caedēs**, **caedis**, -ium, *f.* [caedō], murder, slaughter, massacre.

**caedō**, **cadere**, **cecidī**, **caesum**, *tr.*, cut, cut down, kill.

**caelestis**, -e, *adj.* [caelum], from heaven, celestial.

**caelum**, -i, *n.*, sky, heaven.

**Caere**, *no gen., n.*, Caere, a city of Etruria.

**caerimōnia**, -ae, *f.*, ceremony, rite.

**Caesar**, -aris, *m.*, C. Julius Caesar, consul in 59 B. C., later dictator.

**Calais**, -is, *m.*, Calais, one of the Argonauts.

**calamitās**, -ātis, *f.*, disaster, calamity.

**calcar**, **calcāris**, -ium, *n.*, spur.

**calceus**, -i, *m.*, shoe.

**callidus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [calleō, be callous, be skilled], shrewd, adroit.

**calor**, -ōris, *m.*, heat.

**calvus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, bald.

**Camers**, -ertis, *m.*, a citizen of Camerinum (a city in Italy).

**Camillus**, -i, *m.*, M. Furius Camillus, a famous Roman general of the fourth century B. C.

**campus**, -i, *m.*, plain.

**cancer**, -crī, *m.*, a crab.

**candidātus**, -i, *m.* [candidus, white], candidate.

**Caninius**, -i, *m.*, C. Caninius Rebilus, a lieutenant of Julius Caesar's and later consul.

**canis**, -is, *m. and f.*, dog.

**Cannae**, -ārum, *f. pl.*, Cannae, a town in southeastern Italy.

**Cannēnsis**, -e, *adj.*, of Cannae.

**canō**, **canere**, **cecinī**, **cantum**, *intr.*, sing.

**cantō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *intr.* [freq. of canō], sing.

**Canusium**, -i, *n.*, Canusium, a town in southeastern Italy.

- capessō, -ere, —, —, tr.** [capīō], seize (eagerly), undertake, undergo.
- capīō, capere, cēpi, captum, tr.,** take, capture.
- capitālis, -e, adj.** [caput], of the head; of the life, capital.
- Capitōlinus, -a, -um, adj.** [Capitōlium], of the Capitol, Capitoline.
- Capitōlium, -i, n.,** the Capitol, the temple of Jupiter in Rome; or, the hill on which the Capitol stood.
- captivus, -i, m.,** [capīō], prisoner.
- caput, capitis, n.,** head; chief city, capital.
- Carbō, -ōnis, m.,** Cn. Papirius Carbo, consul in 85, 84, 82 B.C.
- carcer, -eris, m.,** prison.
- carmen, -inis, n.,** a song; charm, incantation.
- carō, carnis, f.,** flesh.
- carpō, carpere, carpai, carptum, tr.,** pluck.
- carpentum, -i, n.,** a carriage (with two wheels).
- carrus, -i, m.,** cart.
- Carthāginiēnsis, -e, adj.** [Carthāgō], of Carthage, Carthaginian; *subst.* Carthāginiēnsēs, -ium, *m. pl.*, the Carthaginians.
- Carthāgō, -inis, f.,** Carthage, a city of northern Africa; Nova Carthāgō, New Carthage, a city of Spain.
- cārus, -a, -um, adj.,** dear, precious.
- casa, -ae, f.,** cottage.
- Casca, -ae, m.,** C. Servilius Casca, one of the assassins of Julius Caesar.
- Cassiānus, -a, -um, adj.,** of Cassius, with Cassius.
- Cassius, -i, m.,** (1) C. Cassius Longinus, one of the assassins of Julius Caesar; (2) L. Cassius Longinus, consul in 107 B.C.
- castellum, -i, n.,** fort, redoubt.
- Casticus, -i, m.,** Casticus, a prominent Sequanian.
- Castor, -oris, m.,** Castor, son of Leda and twin brother of Pollux.
- castra, -ōrum, n. pl.,** camp.
- cāsus, -ūs, m.** [cadō], fall; accident, occurrence, mischance.
- catēna, -ae, f.,** chain.
- Catīlina, -ae, m.,** L. Sergius Catilina, organizer of a conspiracy against the Roman government in 63 B.C.; usually Anglicized as Catiline.
- Catō, -ōnis, m.,** M. Porcius Cato, a Roman, prominent towards the close of the republic.
- Caturigēs, -um, m. pl.,** the Caturiges, a Gallic tribe in the Alps.
- cauda, -ae, f.,** tail.
- causa, -ae, f.,** cause, reason; *causā, with preceding gen.,* for the sake of, for the purpose of.
- caveō, cavēre, cāvī, cautum, tr. and intr.,** beware of, beware.
- cēdo, cēdere, cessī, cessum, intr.,** withdraw, retire, yield.
- celeber, -bris, -bre, adj.,** thronged; renowned, famous.
- celebrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr.** [celeber], throng; celebrate.
- celer, celeris, celere, adj.,** swift, speedy.
- celeritās, -ātis, f.** [celer], speed, swiftness.
- celeriter, adv.** [celer], swiftly, quickly.
- cēlō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr.,** conceal, hide.
- Celtae, -ārum, m. pl.,** the Celts.
- Celtibēri, -ōrum, m. pl.,** the Celtiberi, a Spanish tribe.
- cēna, -ae, f.,** dinner.
- cēnāculum, -i, n.** [cēna], dining-room.
- Cēnaeum, -i, n.,** Cenaeum, a promontory of Euboea.
- cēnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, intr. and tr.** [cēna], dine, dine upon.

- cēseō, cēnsēre, cēnsui, cēnsūm**, *tr.*, estimate; think, believe.
- cēnsus, -ūs, m.** [cēseō], census, enumeration.
- centaurus, -i, m.**, Centaur, a mythical creature with a horse's body and a man's head.
- centum, indecl. num. adj.**, hundred.
- centuriō, -ōnis, m.** [centuria, hundred men], centurion.
- Cēpheus, -i, m.**, Cepheus, a king of Ethiopia.
- Cerberus, -i, m.**, Cerberus, fabled watch-dog of the Lower World.
- Cerēs, -eris, f.**, Ceres, goddess of agriculture.
- cernō, cernere, crēvi, crētum, tr.**, distinguish; discern, perceive.
- certāmen, -inis, n.** [certō], struggle, contest, rivalry.
- certē, adv.** [certus], assuredly, certainly.
- certō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, intr.** [freq. of cernō], contend, strive.
- certus, -a, -um, adj.** [p. part. of cernō], fixed, certain.
- cervix, -icis, f.**, neck, throat.
- cervus, -i, m.**, stag.
- cēteri, -ae, -a, adj., pl.**, the other, the rest of.
- Ceutronēs, -um, m. pl.**, the Ceutrones, a Gallic tribe in the Alps.
- Charōn, -ontis, m.**, Charon, the ferryman over the river Styx.
- Chrysogonus, -i, m.**, L. Cornelius Chrysogonus, a freedman of Sulla.
- cibārius, -a, -um, adj.** [cibus], given as rations; *subst.*, cibāria, -ōrum, *n. pl.*, provisions, rations.
- cibus, -i, m.**, food.
- Cicerō, -ōnis, m.**, M. Tullius Cicero, the famous orator.
- Cimber, -bri, m.**, a Cimbrian; **Cimbri, -ōrum, pl.**, the Cimbri, a people of northern Germany.
- Cimberius, -i, m.**, Cimberius, a leader of the Suebi and brother of Nasua.
- Cimbricus, -a, -um, adj.** [Cimber], of the Cimbri, Cimbrian.
- Cincinnātus, -i, m.**, L. Quinctius Cincinnatus, a famous Roman of the fifth century B.C.
- Cineās, -ae, m.**, Cineas, a minister of king Pyrrhus of Epirus.
- cingō, cingere, cinxī, cinctum, tr.**, surround, encircle.
- cinis, cineris, m.**, ashes.
- Cinna, -ae, m.**, L. Cornelius Cinna, consul in 87-84 B.C.
- circā, adv. and prep.** with acc., around, round about.
- Circei, -ōrum, m. pl.**, Circeii, a town of Latium.
- circinus, -i, m.**, a pair of compasses.
- circiter, adv.** [circus], about, nearly.
- circuitus, -ūs, m.** [circumeō], a going around, a circuit.
- circum, prep.** with acc. [circus], around, about.
- circum-arō, -arāre, -arāvi, tr.**, plough around.
- circum-dō, -dare, -dedi, -datum, tr.**, place around, surround.
- circum-dūcō, -dūcere, -dūxi, -duc-tum, tr.**, lead around.
- circum-eō, -ire, -ii or -ivi, -itum, tr. and intr.**, go around, go from one to another.
- circum-fundō, -fundere, -fūdī, -fū-sum, tr.**, pour around.
- circum-saepiō, -saepire, -saepsi, -saep-tum, tr.**, hedge around, encircle.
- circum-sistō, -sistere, -steti, —, tr.**, surround.
- circum-stō, -stāre, -steti, —, intr.**, stand around, surround.
- circum-veniō, -venire, -vēni, -ven-tum, tr.**, come around, surround.
- circus, -i, m.**, a circle; a circus.
- citerior, -ius, comp. adj.** [cis, this side of], on this side; nearer, hither.

**cithara**, -ae, *f.*, cithara, guitar.  
**citharoedus**, -i, *m.*, citharoedus, one who plays on the cithara and sings at the same time.  
**citō**, *adv.* [citus, swift], quickly, speedily.  
**citro**, *adv.* [cis, this side of], to this side; **ultrō citroque**, hither and thither, backwards and forwards.  
**civicus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [civis], of citizens; civic.  
**civilis**, -e, *adj.* [civis], of citizens, civil.  
**civis**, civis, -ium, *m.*, citizen.  
**civitas**, -atis, *f.* [civis], citizenship; the state, a state.  
**clādēs**, clādis, -ium, *f.*, disaster, misfortune; defeat.  
**clam**, *adv.*, secretly.  
**clāmitō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *intr.* [freq. of clāmō], call out loudly, cry out.  
**clāmō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *intr.*, cry out, shout.  
**clāmor**, -ōris, *m.* [clāmō], shout, shouting, noise.  
**clangor**, -ōris, *m.*, noise.  
**clārus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, famous; bright, clear; loud.  
**classis**, classis, -ium, *f.*, class, fleet.  
**Claudius**, -i, *m.*, Ap. Claudius, a tribune of the soldiers in 216 B.C.  
**claudō**, claudere, clausi, clausum, *tr.*, close; **agmen claudere**, to bring up the rear.  
**clāva**, -ae, *f.*, staff, club.  
**clēmēns**, -entis, *adj.*, merciful.  
**clēmēnter**, *adv.* [clēmēns], mercifully.  
**clēmēntia**, -ae, *f.* [clēmēns], forbearance, mercy.  
**Cleopatra**, -ae, *f.*, Cleopatra, a queen of Egypt.  
**cliēns**, -entis, *m.*, client, follower.  
**cloāca**, -ae, *f.*, sewer.  
**Clōdīus**, -i, *m.*, another form of Claudius; P. Clodius Pulcher, a

*Roman of Cicero's time and an enemy of Cicero.*  
**Cluilius**, -i, *m.*, Cluilius, a king of Alba.  
**Clāsīnus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [Clāsium], of Clusium (a city of Etruria).  
**Cn.**, *abbr.* for Gnaeus.  
**co-emō**, -emere, -ēmi, -ēmtum, *tr.*, purchase, buy up.  
**coepi**, coepisse, coeptum, *tr.* and *intr.*, defective verb, began.  
**coerceō**, -ēre, -ui, -itum, *tr.* [com-+arceō, enclose], restrain, curb.  
**cōgitātiō**, -ōnis, *f.* [cōgitō], reflection, meditation.  
**cōgitō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.* [com-+agitō], ponder; plan.  
**cognātus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [com-+(g)nāscor], related.  
**cognōmen**, -inis, *n.* [com-+(g)nōmen], cognomen, surname.  
**cognōscō**, -nōscere, -nōvi, -nitum, *tr.* [com-+(g)nōscō, learn], find out, learn; *pf.*, know.  
**cōgō**, cōgere, cōegi, cōactum, *tr.* [com-+agō], drive together, bring together, collect; compel, force.  
**cohors**, cohortis, -ium, *f.*, cohort, a division of the Roman army.  
**co-hortor**, -āri, -ātus sum, *tr.*, encourage, rally, admonish.  
**Colchis**, -idis, *f.*, Colchis, a district in Asia to the east of the Black Sea.  
**collēga**, -ae, *m.*, colleague.  
**colligō**, -ligere, -lēgi, -lēctum, *tr.* [com-+legō], gather together, collect.  
**colligō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.* [com-+ligō, bind], bind together.  
**collis**, collis, -ium, *m.*, hill.  
**collocō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.* [com-+locō, place], station, arrange; give in marriage.  
**colloquium**, -i, *n.*, [colloquor], interview, conference.  
**colloquor**, -loqui, -locūtus sum, *intr.* [com-+loquor], converse, confer.



- collum, -i, *n.*, neck.
- colō, -ere, colui, cultum, *tr.*, cultivate, till.
- colōnus, -i, *m.* [colō], farmer; settler, colonist.
- color, -ōris, *m.*, color.
- columba, -ae, *f.*, dove, pigeon.
- columna, -ae, *f.*, column, pillar.
- com-, (also con- and co-), *forms of the preposition cum employed in composition only.*
- combūrō, -ūrere, -ussī, -ustum, *tr.* [com-+fūrō], burn up, consume.
- comes, -itis, *m. and f.*, companion.
- comitās, -ātis, *f.* [comis, courteous], courtesousness, affability.
- comitium, -i, *n.* [com-+eō], a place of assembly; the Comitium, a meeting-place adjoining the old Roman Forum; comitia, -ōrum, *pl.*, public assembly, election.
- commeātus, -ūs, *m.* [commeō], going to and fro; furlough; provisions, supplies.
- com-memorō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.*, mention.
- commentārius, -i, *m.*, note-book, memorandum; *pl.*, memoirs, records.
- com-meō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *intr.* [meō, go, pass], go and come; resort to.
- comminus, *adv.* [com-+manus], hand to hand, at close quarters.
- com-mittō, -mittere, -misi, -missum, *tr.*, send together; undertake; bring about; proelium committere, to begin battle.
- commodē, *adv.* [commodus, convenient], conveniently, advantageously.
- commonefaciō, -facere, -fēcī, -factum, *tr.* [commoneō+faciō], remind, impress upon.
- com-moror, -ārī, -ātus sum, *intr.*, tarry, linger.
- com-moveō, -movēre, -mōvī, -mō-
- tum, *tr.*, move deeply, excite, arouse, alarm.
- com-mūniō, -īre, -īvi, -itum, *tr.*, fortify, establish strongly.
- commūnis, -e, *adj.*, common.
- commūniter, *adv.* [commūnis], commonly, in common.
- commūtātiō, -ōnis, *f.* [commūtō], change.
- com-mūtō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.*, change (entirely), exchange.
- com-parō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.*, prepare.
- comparō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.* [compār, like], compare.
- com-pellō, -pellere, -puli, -pulsum, *tr.*, drive together, collect.
- comperiō, -perire, -peri, -pertum, *tr. and intr.*, find out, ascertain.
- com-plector, -plectī, -plexus sum, *tr.* [com-+plector, embrace], clasp, embrace.
- compleō, -ēre, -ēvi, -ētum, *tr.* [com-+pleō, fill], fill, fill up.
- com-plūrēs, -plūra or -plūria, *adj.*, several, a number of, many.
- com-pōnō, -pōnere, -posui, -positum, *tr.*, place together; compose, settle.
- com-portō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.*, carry together, bring together, collect.
- com-prehendō, -hendere, -hendī, -hēsum, *tr.*, seize, arrest.
- comprimō, -primere, -pressī, -pressum, *tr.* [com-+premō], press together, squeeze; suppress.
- cōnāta, -ōrum, *n. pl.* [*p. part.* of cōnor], undertaking, enterprise.
- cōnātus, -ūs, *m.* [cōnor], attempt.
- con-cēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum, *intr. and tr.*, yield; grant, concede.
- concidō, -cidere, -cidi, —, *intr.* [com-+cadō], fall, be slain.
- concidō, -cidere, -cidi, -cisum, *tr.* [com-+caedō], cut to pieces, destroy.

**conciliō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr.,** win, win over, win the favor of.

**concilium, -i, n.,** council.

**concupiō, -cipere, -cēpi, -ceptum, tr.** [com-+capiō], take hold of; conceive.

**concitō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr.,** rouse, incite.

**con-clāmō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr. and intr.,** cry out together, cry out loudly, exclaim.

**concordia, -ae, f.** [concor, harmonious], concord, harmony.

**con-currō, -currere, -curri, -cursum, intr.,** run together.

**con-cursus, -ūs, m.,** a running together, concourse; assault, charge.

**condemnō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr.** [com-+damnō], condemn.

**condiciō, -ōnis, f.** [condicō, agree], agreement; terms, conditions.

**conditor, -ōris, m.** [condō], founder.

**con-dō, -dere, -didi, -ditum, tr.,** put away, store up; found.

**con-dōnō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr.,** give; overlook, pardon.

**con-dūcō, -dūcere, -dūxi, -ductum, tr.,** bring together, collect.

**con-ducti, -ōrum, m. pl.** [p. part. of condūcō], mercenary soldiers, mercenaries.

**cōn-ferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum, tr.,** bring together, collect; compare; sē cōferre, betake oneself, proceed.

**cōnferthus, -a, -um, adj.** [p. part. of cōnferciō, press together], crowded, dense.

**cōnfessiō, -ōnis, f.** [cōnfiteor], confession.

**cōnfestim, adv.,** at once, immediately.

**cōnfiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum, tr.** [com-+faciō], finish, complete; weaken, overcome.

**cōn-fidō, -fidere, -fisis sum, intr.** (takes dative), trust; be confident, have confidence.

**cōn-firmō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr.,** strengthen, establish.

**cōnfiteor, -fiteri, -fessus sum, tr. and intr.** [com-+fateor, acknowledge], confess.

**cōn-flagrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, intr.,** be on fire, be consumed.

**cōn-fligō, -fligere, -flixi, -flictum, intr.,** dash or strike together.

**cōn-flō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr.,** blow together, kindle; aes aliēnum cōn-flāre, to contract a debt.

**cōn-fodiō, -fodere, -fōdi, -fossam, tr.,** stab, pierce.

**concredior, -gredi, -gressus sum, intr.** [com-+gradior, step], come together, meet.

**congressus, -ūs, m.** [concredior], meeting, conference.

**conjiciō, -jicere, -jēcī, -jectum, tr.** [com-+jaciō], throw together; hurl cast.

**con-jungō, -jungere, -jūnxī, -jūntum, tr.,** fasten together, join.

**conjūnx, conjugis, m. and f.** [compare conjungō], a married person, husband, wife.

**conjūrāti, -ōrum, m. pl.** [p. part. of conjūrō], conspirators.

**conjūrātiō, -ōnis, f.** [conjūrō], conspiracy.

**con-jūrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, intr.,** swear together, form a conspiracy, conspire.

**cōnor, -āri, -ātus sum, tr. and intr.,** try, attempt.

**conquirō, -quirere, -quisivi, -quistum, tr.** [com-+quaerō], hunt for, search out.

**cōn-sanguineus, -a, -um, adj.,** related by blood; subst., cōnsanguinei, -ōrum, m. pl., kinsmen, blood-relations.

**cōnscendō, -scendere, -scendi, -scēsum, tr.** [com-+scandō, climb], climb; go aboard, embark on.

**cōn-sciscō, -sciscere, -scivī, -scitum, tr.** [sciscō, approve], resolve upon; **mortem sibi cōnsciscere**, commit suicide.

**cōnscius, -a, -um, adj.** [com-+sciō], conscious, aware.

**cōn-scribō, -scribere, -scripsi, -scriptum, tr.,** enroll, organize.

**cōn-sēsus, -ūs, m.** [cōnsentiō, agree], agreement.

**cōn-sequor, -sequi, -secūtus sum, tr.,** follow up; overtake; gain.

**cōn-servō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr.,** retain, preserve.

**Cōnsidius, -i, m., P. Considius, an officer in Caesar's army.**

**cōn-sidō, -sidere, -sēdī, -sessum, intr.,** sit down, take one's seat.

**cōnsilium, -i, n.,** plan, counsel, advice.

**cōn-sistō, -sistere, -stiti, —, intr.,** take one's stand, halt, make a stand.

**cōn-sociō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr.,** associate, unite.

**cōn-sōlor, -āri, -ātus sum, tr.** [sōlor, comfort], console, cheer, comfort.

**cōnspectus, -ūs, m.** [cōnspiciō, sight, view].

**cōnspiciō, -spicere, -spexi, -spectum, tr.** [com-+speciō, look], perceive, observe.

**cōnspicor, -āri, -ātus sum, tr.,** catch sight of, observe, see.

**cōnstantia, -ae, f.** [cōnstāns, firm], constancy, firmness.

**cōnstituō, -stituere, -stitui, -stitutum, tr.** [com-+statuō], station; decide, determine.

**cōn-stō, -stāre, -stiti, -stāturus, intr.,** stand together; consist; *impers.*, **cōnstat**, it is known, it is certain.

**cōn-suēscō, -suēscere, -suēvi, suētum, intr.,** become accustomed; *pf.*, be accustomed, be in the habit of.

**cōnsuētūdō, -inis, f.** [cōnsuēscō], custom, habit, way.

**cōnsul, -ulis, m.,** consul, *one of the chief magistrates at Rome.*

**cōnsulāris, -e, adj.** [cōnsul], of a consul, consular.

**cōnsulātus, -ūs, m.** [cōnsul], consulship.

**cōnsulō, -sulere, -sului, -sultum, tr. and intr.,** consult; consult the interests of (*with dative*).

**cōnsultō, adv.** [abl. of cōnsultum], intentionally.

**cōnsultō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, intr.** [*freq.* of cōnsulō], consult, deliberate.

**cōnsultum, -i, m.** [cōnsulō], decree.

**cōn-sūmō, -sūmere, -sūmpsi, -sūptum, tr.,** consume, spend.

**con-tegō, -tegere, -tēxi, -tēctum, tr.,** cover.

**con-temnō, -temnere, -tempsi, -temptum, tr.,** scorn, despise.

**contemptor, -ōris, m.** [contemnō], despiser, scorner.

**con-tendō, -tendere, -tendi, -tentum, intr.,** contend, fight; hasten.

**contentiō, -ōnis, f.** [contendō], struggle, contest.

**contentus, -a, -um, adj.** [*p. part.* of contineō, hold together], satisfied, contented.

**con-texō, -texere, -texui, -textum, tr.,** weave.

**continēns, -entis, f.** [contineō], continent, mainland.

**continenter, adv.** [continēns, continuous], continuously.

**contineō, -tinēre, -tinui, -tentum, tr.** [com-+teneō], hold together; shut in, confine.

**contingō, -tingere, -tigi, -tāctum, tr.** [com-+tangō], touch, adjoin; *intr. and impers.*, **contingit**, it befalls, happens to.

**continuō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* [continuus], make continuous, hold without an interval.

**continuus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [contineō], successive, continuous.

**cōtiō**, -ōnis, *f.* [compare com- and veniō], a public assembly; a speech, a contio.

**contrā**, *prep.* with acc., against, opposite.

**con-trahō**, -trahere, -trāxī, -tractum, *tr.*, draw or bring together.

**contrōversia**, -ae, *f.* [contrōversus, disputed], dispute, quarrel.

**contumēlia**, -ae, *f.*, insult, abuse.

**cōnūbium**, -ī, *n.* [com-+nūbō], marriage.

**con-vallis**, -vallis, -ium, *f.*, valley.

**conveniēns**, -entis, *adj.* [pres. part. of conveniō], agreeing, appropriate.

**con-veniō**, -venīre, -venī, -ventum, *intr.*, assemble, come together; *impers.*, agreement is made, it is agreed.

**conventus**, -ūs, *m.* [conveniō], meeting, assembly.

**con-vertō**, -vertere, -vertī, -versum, *tr.*, turn round, turn.

**con-vincō**, -vincere, -vīcī, -victum, *tr.*, convict; prove.

**con-vocō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.*, call together.

**co-orior**, -oriri, -ortus sum, *intr.*, come forth, arise.

**cōpia**, -ae, *f.*, plenty; *pl.*, forces, troops.

**cōpiōsē**, *adv.* [cōpiōsus], copiously, at length.

**cōpiōsus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [cōpia], plentiful, well supplied.

**Corinthius**, -a, -um, *adj.*, of Corinth, Corinthian.

**Corinthus**, -ī, *f.*, Corinth, a city of Greece.

**Cornēlia**, -ae, *f.*, Cornelia, name of a woman or girl.

**Cornēlius**, -ī, *m.*, (1) P. Cornelius Scipio Africanus Major, a famous Roman general who conquered Hannibal; (2) P. Cornelius Scipio Africanus Minor, who destroyed Carthage; (3) L. Cornelius Sulla, consul in 88 B.C., later dictator.

**corneus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [cornū], of horn.

**corneus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [cornum, cornel-cherry], of cornel-wood.

**cornū**, -ūs, *n.*, horn; wing (of an army).

**corōna**, -ae, *f.*, garland, wreath, crown.

**corpus**, corporis, *n.*, body.

**corrigō**, -rigere, -rēxī, -rēctum, *tr.* [com-+regō], correct, reform.

**corripiō**, -ripere, -ripuī, -reptum, *tr.* [com-+rapiō], seize, take hold of, snatch up.

**corrumpō**, -rumpere, -rūpī, -ruptum, *tr.* [com-+rumpō, burst], ruin; corrupt.

**cortex**, -icis, *m.* and *f.*, bark.

**cotidiānus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [cotidiē], daily.

**cotidiē**, *adv.* [quot+diēs], every day, daily.

**Crassus**, -ī, *m.*, (1) M. Licinius Crassus, a member of the First Triumvirate with Caesar and Pompeius; (2) P. Licinius Crassus, son of Marcus.

**crēdibilis**, -e, *adj.* [crēdō], credible.

**crēditor**, -ōris, *m.* [crēdō], creditor.

**crēdō**, -dere, -didi, -ditum, *tr.*, believe, trust, entrust; lend.

**cremō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.*, burn, consume.

**creō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.*, elect, choose.

**Creōn**, -ontis, *m.*, Creon, a king of Thebes.

**crepitus**, -ūs, *m.* [crepō, to rattle], clattering, noise.

**crepundia**, -ōrum, *n., pl.* [crepō, to rattle], a child's rattle, a rattle.

**crēscō**, **crēscere**, **crēvi**, **crētum**, *intr.*, increase, grow greater.

**Crēta**, -ae, *f.*, Crete, an island in the Mediterranean Sea.

**crīmen**, -inis, *n.*, charge, accusation.

**crīnis**, **crinis**, -ium, *m.*, hair.

**cruciātus**, -ūs, *m.* [cruciō, to torture], torture.

**crūdēlis**, -e, *adj.*, cruel.

**crūdēlītās**, -ātis, *f.* [crūdēlis], cruelty.

**crūdēliter**, *adv.* [crūdēlis], cruelly.

**crūs**, **crūris**, *n.*, leg.

**crux**, **crucis**, *f.*, gallows, cross.

**cubiculum**, -ī, *n.* [cubō], bedchamber.

**cubō**, -āre, **cubui**, **cubitum**, *intr.*, lie down, recline.

**culpa**, -ae, *f.*, fault, blame.

**culpō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.* [culpa], blame, rebuke.

**culter**, -tri, *m.*, knife.

**cultus**, -ūs, *m.* [colō], cultivation, culture; civilization, refinement.

**cum**, *prep. with abl.*, with.

**cum**, *conj.*, when, since, although.

**cūnae**, -ārum, *f. pl.*, a cradle.

**cūnctātor**, -ōris, *m.* [cūnctor], a delayer; as a proper noun, bestowed informally as a cognomen on Q. Fabius Maximus.

**cūnctor**, -ārī, -ātus sum, *intr.*, delay, hesitate.

**cupidē**, *adv.* [cupidus], eagerly.

**cupiditās**, -ātis, *f.* [cupidus], eagerness, longing, desire.

**cupidō**, -inis, *f.* [cupidus], passion, greed.

**cupidus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [cupiō], desirous, fond.

**cupiō**, -ere, **cupivi**, **cupitum**, *tr.*, wish, desire.

**cūr**, *adv.*, why.

**cūra**, -ae, *f.*, care.

**Curēs**, -ium, *m. and f. pl.*, Cures, chief town of the Sabines.

**cūria**, -ae, *f.*, curia (a division of the Roman people), ward; senate house.

**Cūriātius**, -ī, *m.*, Curiatius, an Alban name; name of triplet brothers who fought the Roman Horatii.

**cūrō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.* [cūra], care for, attend to; have done.

**currō**, **currere**, **cucurri**, **cursum**, *intr.*, run.

**currus**, -ūs, *m.*, chariot.

**cursus**, -ūs, *m.* [currō], course.

**curūlis**, -e, *adj.*, curule.

**custōdia**, -ae, *f.* [custōs], watch, custody, guard.

**custōdiō**, -ire, -ivi, -itum, *tr.* [custōs], watch, guard.

**custōs**, -ōdis, *m. and f.*, guard, guardian, keeper.

**cyathus**, -ī, *m.*, cup.

**Cyzicus**, -ī, *f.*, Cyzicus, (1) an island or peninsula in the Sea of Marmora; (2) a town situated on (1).

## D

**Dācus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, Dacian; *subst.*, Dāci, -ōrum, *m. pl.*, the Dacians.

**damnō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.* [damnum, loss], condemn, convict.

**Danaē**, -ēs, *f.*, Danae, mother of Perseus.

**dē**, *prep. with abl.*, down from, from; concerning, about.

**de-ambulō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *intr.*, walk, stroll.

**dēbeō**, -ēre, -ui, -itum, *tr.* [dē+habeō], owe, ought.

**dēbitor**, -ōris, *m.* [dēbeō], debtor.

**dē-cēdō**, -cēdere, -cessi, -cessum, *intr.*, withdraw, depart; die.

**decem**, *indecl. num. adj.*, ten.

**December**, -bris, -bre, *adj.* [decem], of December; *subst.*, December, -bris, *m.*, December.

**dē-cernō, -cernere, -crēvi, -crētum, tr.,** decide, decree.

**dē-certō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, intr.,** fight it out, fight a decisive battle.

**dē-cidō, -cidere, -cidi, —, intr., [dē+cadō],** fall down, fall off.

**decimus, -a, -um, adj. [decem],** tenth.

**dē-cipio, -cipere, -cēpi, -ceptum, tr. [dē+capiō],** beguile, deceive.

**dē-clārō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr. [clārō, make bright],** disclose, reveal.

**decorō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr. [decus, decoration],** adorn, honor.

**decuriō, -ōnis, m. [decuria, a division of ten],** decurion, the leader of a decuria.

**dē-currō, -currere, -cucurri, -cursum, intr.,** run down; manoeuvre.

**dē-decus, -decoris, n. [decus, decoration; honor],** disgrace, dishonor.

**dē-dīcticius, -a, -um, adj. [dēdō],** surrendered; *subst., dēdīcti, -ōrum, m. pl.,* prisoners of war.

**dēditiō, -ōnis, f. [dēdō],** surrender.

**dēditus, -a, -um, adj. [p. part. of dēdō],** surrendered; *subst., dēditi, -ōrum, m. pl.,* prisoners of war, captives.

**dēdō, -ere, dēdidi, dēditum, tr. [dē+dō],** give up, surrender.

**dē-dūcō, -dūcere, -dūxi, -ductum, tr.,** lead away; draw down; *nāvem dēdūcere,* to launch a ship.

**dēfendō, -ere, dēfendi, dēfensum, tr.,** repel; defend.

**dēfēnsor, -ōris, m. [dēfendō],** defender.

**dē-ferō, -ferre, dētuli, dēlātum, tr.,** carry away, carry down; confer.

**dēfessus, -a, -um, adj. [p. part. of dēfetiscor, grow weary],** tired out, exhausted.

**dēficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum, tr. and intr. [dē+faciō],** fail, run out; withdraw, desert.

**dē-figō, -figere, -fixi, -fixum, tr.,** fasten down; strike motionless, stupefy.

**dē-finiō, -ire, -ivi, -itum, tr.,** limit, define.

**dēfōrmitās, -atis, f. [dēfōrmis, misshapen],** deformity, disfigurement, unsightliness.

**Dēianira, -ae, f.,** Deianira, wife of Hercules.

**deinceps, adv.,** in succession.

**deinde, adv.,** next, then.

**dē-jiciō, -jicere, -jēcī, -jectum, tr. [dē+jaciō],** throw down.

**dē-lābor, -lābi, -lāpsus sum, intr.,** fall down, slip down.

**dēlēctus, -a, -um, adj. [p. part. of dēligō],** chosen, choice; *subst., dēlēcti, -ōrum, m. pl.,* chosen men, picked men.

**dēlēō, -ēre, -ēvi, -ētum, tr.,** destroy.

**dē-liberō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr. and intr.,** ponder, meditate.

**dēliciae, -arum, f. pl.,** pleasure, luxury.

**dē-ligō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr.,** tie up, bind fast, moor.

**dēligō, -ligere, -lēgi, -lēctum, tr. [dē+legō],** choose.

**Delphi, -ōrum, m. pl.,** Delphi, a city in Greece famous for the oracle of Apollo.

**Dēmarātus, -i, m.,** Demaratus, father of Tarquinius Priscus.

**dē-minuō, -minuere, -minui, -minūtum, tr.,** lessen, diminish, impair.

**dēmissus, -a, -um, adj. [p. part. of dēmittō],** downcast, dejected.

**dē-mittō, -mittere, -misi, -missum, tr.,** send down, let fall.

**dē-mōnstrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr.,** point out, show.

**dēmum, adv.,** at last, at length.

**dēni, -ae, -a, distrib. num. adj.,** ten each.

**dēnique, adv.,** finally, at last.

- dēns, dentis, *m.*, tooth.  
 dēnsus, -a, -um, *adj.*, close, thick.  
 dē-nūntiō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.*, announce, proclaim; give warning.  
 dē-pellō, -pellere, -puli, -pulsum, *tr.*, ward off.  
 dē-perdō, -perdere, -perdidi, -perditum, *tr.*, destroy, lose.  
 dē-plōrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.*, deplore, lament.  
 dē-pōnō, -pōnere, -posui, -positum, *tr.*, set down, deposit; lay aside, give up.  
 dē-populor, -ārī, -ātus sum, *tr.*, lay waste, plunder, pillage.  
 dēprecātor, -ōris, *m.* [dēprecor], intercessor, mediator.  
 dē-precor, -ārī, -ātus sum, *tr.*, avert by prayer, deprecate.  
 dē-prehendō, -hendere, -hendi, -hēnsus, *tr.*, seize upon; discover.  
 dēripiō, -ripere, -ripui, -reptum, *tr.* [dē+ripiō], tear away, pull off.  
 dēscendō, -scendere, -scendi, -scēnsus, *intr.* [dē+scandō, climb], descend, dismount.  
 dē-serō, -serere, -serui, -sertum, *tr.* [serō, join], abandon, desert.  
 dēsertus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*p. part.* of dēserō], deserted.  
 dēsiderium, -ī, *n.*, [dēsiderō, long for], desire, longing.  
 dē-signō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.*, mark out; mean, intend.  
 dēsiliō, -ire, -ui, —, *intr.* [dē+saliō, leap], leap down.  
 dē-sistō, -sistere, -stiti, -stitum, *intr.*, leave off, desist from.  
 dē-spērō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr. and intr.*, despair of, despair.  
 dēspiciō, -spicere, -spexi, -spectum, *tr.* [dē+speciō, look], look down upon, despise.  
 dē-spondēō, -spondere, -spondi, -spōnsus, *tr.*, betroth, promise in marriage.  
 dē-stringō, -stringere, -strinxi, -strictus, *tr.* [stringō, bind], strip off, unsheathe, draw.  
 dē-sum, -esse, -fui, -futūrus, *intr.*, be wanting, be lacking.  
 dē-super, *adv.*, from above.  
 dētēctus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*p. part.* of dētēgō, uncover], uncovered, bare.  
 dēterior, -ius, *compar. adj.*, of less value, less.  
 dē-terreō, -ēre, -ui, -itum, *tr.*, frighten away, deter.  
 dē-trahō, -trahere, -trāxi, -tractum, *tr.*, draw off, strip off.  
 dētrimentum, -ī, *n.* [dēterō, wear away], loss.  
 deus, -ī, *m.*, a god.  
 dēversōrium, -ī, *n.* [dēversor, turn aside, lodge], inn, lodging-place.  
 dē-vertō, -vertere, -verti, —, *intr.*, turn away, turn aside.  
 dē-vincō, -vincere, -vici, -victum, *tr.*, conquer completely.  
 dē-vorō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.*, swallow, devour.  
 dexter, -tra, -trum, *adj.*, right, right-hand.  
 dextra, -ae, *f.* [dexter], the right hand.  
 diadēma, -atis, *n.*, diadem.  
 Diāna, -ae, *f.*, Diana, goddess of the chase.  
 diciō, -ōnis, *f.*, authority, rule, sway.  
 dicō, -ere, dixi, dictum, *tr.*, say; appoint, name.  
 dictātor, -ōris, *m.* [dictō, dictate], dictator.  
 dictātūra, -ae, *f.* [dictātor], dictatorship.  
 dictiō, -ōnis, *f.* [dicō], a speaking, a pleading.  
 dictitō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr. and intr.* [*intens.* of dictō, dictate], say often, maintain.  
 diēs, diēi, *m. and f.*, day.

**differō, -ferre, distulī, dilātum, tr.**  
and *intr.* [dis-+ferō], carry apart;  
put off; differ.

**difficilis, -e, adj.** [dis-+facilis], difficult.

**difficiliter, adv.** [difficilis], with difficulty.

**difficultās, -ātis, f.** [difficilis], difficulty.

**diffundō, -fundere, -fūdī, -fūsum, tr.** [dis-+fundō], pour out, spread, diffuse.

**dignitās, -ātis, f.** [dignus], worth; authority, prestige.

**dignus, -a, -um, adj.**, worthy.

**diligenter, adv.** [diligēns, industrious], industriously, diligently.

**diligentia, -ae, f.** [diligēns], watchfulness, diligence.

**diligō, -ligere, -lēxi, -lēctum, tr.** [dis-+legō], single out; esteem, love.

**dī-lūcēscō, -lūcēscere, -lūxi, —, intr.** [lūx], grow light, dawn.

**dī-micō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, intr.** [micō, flash], fight, contend.

**dimidiūs, -a, -um, adj.** [dis-+medius], half.

**dī-mittō, -mittere, -misi, -missum, tr.**, send out, send forth; dismiss.

**Diomedēs, -is, m.**, Diomedes, a Greek hero.

**dirimō, -imere, -ēmī, -ēptum, tr.** [dis-+emō], take apart; interrupt; compose, settle.

**diripiō, -ripere, -ripui, -reptum, tr.** [dis-+rapiō], plunder.

**dīrus, -a, -um, adj.**, dreadful, dire.

**dis- or di-, inseparable particle employed in composition**, apart, away, in different directions.

**dis-cēdō, -cēdere, -cessi, -cessum, intr.**, withdraw, depart.

**disciplīna, -ae, f.** [discō], training, discipline.

**discipulus, -i, m.** [discō], learner, pupil.

**discō, -ere, didici, —, tr.**, learn.

**dī-scribō, -scribere, -scripsi, -scriptum, tr.**, distribute, divide.

**discrimen, -inis, n.** [discernō, separate], crisis, peril.

**discriminō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr.** [discrimen], divide, distinguish.

**discus, -i, m.**, discus, quoit.

**disertus, -a, -um, adj.** [from *p. part.* of disserō], fluent, eloquent.

**disjiciō, -jicere, -jēci, -jectum, tr.** [dis-+jaciō], throw asunder, break up, disperse.

**dis-pār, gen. disparis, adj.**, unequal, unlike.

**dispergō, -spargere, -spersi, -persum, tr.** [dī-+spargō, scatter], scatter, spread, disperse.

**displaceō, -ēre, -ui, -itum, intr.** [dis-+placeō], displease.

**dis-pōnō, -pōnere, -posui, -positum, tr.**, place here and there, distribute.

**dis-putō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr.**, argue, discourse.

**dissēnsiō, -ōnis, f.** [dissentiō, disagree], disagreement.

**dis-serō, -serere, -serui, -sertum, intr.** [serō, join], discourse, argue.

**dis-similis, -simile, adj.**, dissimilar, unlike.

**diū, adv.**, long, for a long time.

**diurnus, -a, -um, adj.** [compare diēs], of the day, daily.

**diūturnus, -a, -um, adj.** [diū], lasting, long.

**dī-vellō, -vellere, -velli, -vulsum, tr.**, tear apart, tear away.

**dī-versus, -versa, -versum, adj.**, turned different ways, opposite.

**dives, gen. divitis, adj.**, rich, wealthy.

**Diviciācus, -i, m.**, Diviciacus, a prominent *Haeduan*.

**Divicō, -ōnis, m.**, Divico, a prominent *Helvetian*.

**dividō, -ere, divisi, divisum, tr.**, divide, separate.



**divinus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [divus, divine], divine.

**divitiae**, -arum, *f. pl.* [dives], riches, wealth.

**dō**, dare, **dedi**, datum, *tr.*, give.

**doceō**, -ēre, -uī, doctum, *tr.*, teach; show, explain.

**doctrina**, -ae, *f.* [doceō], teaching; learning, erudition.

**doctor**, -ōris, *m.* [doceō], teacher.

**doctus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [*p. part.* of doceō], learned, skilled.

**doleō**, -ēre, -uī, -itūrus, *intr. and tr.*, suffer; grieve.

**dolor**, -ōris, *m.* [doleō], sorrow, suffering, pain.

**dolus**, -ī, *m.*, trick, treachery, deceit.

**domesticus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [domus], of the house; private, personal.

**domicilium**, -ī, *n.* [domus], residence, dwelling-place.

**dominātiō**, -ōnis, *f.* [dominor], rule, supremacy.

**dominor**, -ārī, -ātus sum, *intr.*, rule.

**dominus**, -ī, *m.*, master.

**domō**, -āre, domui, domitum, *tr.*, subdue, master.

**domus**, -ūs (-ī), *f.*, home, house.

**dōnec**, *conj.*, as long as, while; until.

**dōnō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.* [dōnum], present, bestow.

**dōnum**, -ī, *n.*, gift.

**dormiō**, -īre, -ivi, -itum, *intr.*, sleep.

**dorsum**, -ī, *n.*, back; ridge.

**dōs**, dōtis, *f.*, dowry.

**dracō**, -ōnis, *m.*, serpent, dragon.

**dubitātiō**, -ōnis, *f.* [dubitō], doubt, hesitation.

**dubitō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *intr.* [dubius], doubt, hesitate.

**Dūbis**, -is, *m.*, the Dubis, a river in Gaul, now the Doubs.

**dubius**, -a, -um, *adj.*, doubtful, uncertain.

**ducentī**, -ae, -a, *num. adj.* [duo+centum], two hundred.

**dūcō**, -ere, dūxi, ductum, *tr.*, lead; prolong.

**dūdum**, *adv.*, before, formerly; jam dūdum, this long time, a long time ago.

**dulcis**, -ē, *adj.*, sweet, agreeable.

**dum**, *conj.*, while; until.

**Dumnorix**, -igis, *m.*, Dumnorix, a prominent Haeduan.

**duo**, duae, duo, *num. adj.*, two.

**duodecim**, *indecl. num. adj.* [duo+decem], twelve.

**duo-dē-vigintī**, *indecl. num. adj.*, twenty.

**duplex**, *gen. duplicis*, *adj.*, double, twofold.

**dūrō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr. and intr.* [dūrus], harden; last, endure.

**dūrus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, hard, harsh, severe.

**dux**, ducis, *m.* [dūcō], leader.

## E

**ē**, ex, *prep. with abl.*, from within, out of, from.

**ecquis**, **ecquid**, *pron., interrog.*, anyone, anything, whether anyone, whether anything.

**ē-dicō**, -dicere, -dixi, -dictum, *tr.*, declare, proclaim, appoint.

**ēdictum**, -ī, *n.* [*p. part.* of ēdicō], edict.

**ē-dō**, -dere, -didi, -ditum, *tr.*, give out, put forth; give birth to, exhibit; inflict.

**edō**, -ere, ēdi, ēsum, *tr.*, eat.

**ē-ducō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.*, bring up, rear, train.

**ē-dūcō**, -dūcere, -dūxi, -ductum, *tr.*, lead out.

**effēminō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.* [ex+fēmina], make womanish, enervate.

**offerō, offerre, extuli, ōlātum, tr.**  
[ex+ferō], carry forth, remove;  
lift up, raise.

**effervescō, -fervescere, -ferui, —,**  
[ex+fervescō], boil, boil up, boil.

**efficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum, tr.**  
[ex+faciō], accomplish, bring  
about, cause.

**effigies, -ei, f.,** semblance, effigy.  
**efflō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr.** [ex+flō,  
blow], breathe out.

**effugiō, -fugere, -fūgi, —, intr.**  
[ex+fugiō], escape.

**effundō, -fundere, -fūdī, -fūsum, tr.**  
[ex+fundō], pour out; use up,  
waste.

**Egeria, -ae, f.,** Egeria, the nymph of  
a fountain near Rome.

**ego, mei, pers. pron., I.**

**egredior, egredi, egressus sum, intr.**  
[ē+gradior, step], go out, depart.

**ēgregiē, adv.** [ēgregius], excellently,  
unusually.

**ēgregius, -a, -um, adj.** [ē+grex,  
flock], distinguished, eminent.

**ēlabōr, -lābi, -lāpus sum, intr.,**  
glide out, glide away, escape.

**ēlabōrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, intr.**  
endeavor, take pains.

**ēligō, -ligere, -lēgi, -lēctum, tr.**  
[ē+legō], choose, select.

**Elis, -idis, f.,** Elis, a district in  
Greece.

**eloquentia, -ae, f.** [ēloquēns], elo-  
quence.

**Elysian, -a, -um, adj.,** Elysian.

**ē-migrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, intr.,**  
move, depart, migrate.

**ē-mittō, -mittere, -misi, -missum,**  
tr., send forth, release; utter.

**emō, emere, ēmi, ēmptum, tr.,** buy.

**en, interj.,** behold! see!

**enim, conj. (postpositive),** for.

**ē-niteō, -nitēre, -nitui, —, intr.,**  
shine forth, gleam; be displayed.

**ē-nitor, -niti, -nixus or -nisus sum,**  
intr., struggle out; struggle, strive.

**ēnsis, -is, m.,** sword.

**ē-numerō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr.,**  
reckon up, recount.

**ē-nūntiō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr.,**  
assert; proclaim, reveal.

**eō, ire, ii or ivi, itum, intr.,** go.

**eō, adv.** [is], to that place, thither;  
on that account.

**eōdem, adv.** [idem], to the same  
place; to the same end, to the  
same result.

**Ephesian, -a, -um, adj.,** of Ephesus,  
Ephesian.

**epigramma, -atis, n.,** epigram.

**Ēpirus, -i, f.,** Epirus, a district in  
northwestern Greece.

**epistula, -ae, f.,** letter, epistle.

**eques, equitis, m.** [equus], horse-  
man; *pl.*, horsemen, cavalry.

**equester, -tris, -tre, adj.** [eques], of a  
horseman, equestrian, cavalry (as  
adj.).

**equidem, adv.,** truly, at all events;  
with first person verb, I for my part.

**equitātus, -ūs, m.** [equitō], cavalry.

**equitō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, intr.** [eques],  
ride.

**equus, equi, m.,** horse.

**ērectus, -a, -um, adj.** [*p. part.* of  
ērigō], upright, erect; resolute.

**ergā, prep. with acc.,** towards, for.

**Erginus, -i, m.,** Erginus, a king of  
the Minyae.

**ergō, adv.,** therefore.

**Ēridanus, -i, m.,** the Eridanus, a  
river.

**ērigō, -rigere, -rēxi, -rēctum, tr.**  
[ē+regō], lift up; arouse, encour-  
age.

**ēripiō, -ripere, -ripiui, -reptum, tr.**  
[ē+rapiō], snatch away, take  
away, rescue.

**errō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, intr.,** wander,  
stray; be mistaken, err.

**ērudīō, -ire, -ivi, -itum, tr.** [ē+  
rudis, rough], educate, instruct.

- ê-rumpô, -rumpere, -rûpî, -ruptum, intr.,** break out, burst forth.  
**ê-rûô, -ruere, -rûi, -rutum, tr.,** dig out, cast forth.  
**Erythia, -ae, f.,** Erythia, *an island*.  
**Erymanthus, -a, -um, adj.,** of Erymanthus (*a chain of mountains in Arcadia*), Erymanthian.  
**etiam, adv. [et+jam],** now too, yet; also, besides; even.  
**Etrûscus, -a, -um, adj.,** Etruscan, of Etruria; *subst., Etrûsci, -ôrum, m. pl.,* the Etruscans.  
**et-si, conj.,** though, although, even if.  
**Eunomus, -i, m.,** Eunomus, *name of a certain youth*.  
**Euripidês, -is, m.,** Euripides, *an Athenian tragic poet*.  
**Eurôpa, -ae, f.,** Europe.  
**Eurystheus, -i, m.,** Eurystheus, *a king of Tiryns*.  
**Eurytiôn, -ônis m.,** Eurytion, *a giant*.  
**Eurytus, -i, m.,** Eurytus, *a king of Oechalia*.  
**ê-vâdô, -vâdere, -vâsî, -vâsum, intr.,** come out, make one's way; escape.  
**ê-vellô, -vellere, -vellî, -vulsum, tr. [vellô, pluck],** pull out.  
**ê-veniô, -venire, -vênî, -ventum, intr.,** come out; result, turn out.  
**ê-vertô, -vertere, -vertî, -versum, tr.,** overturn, overthrow.  
**ê-vocô, -âre, -âvî, -âtum, tr.,** call out.  
**ê-vomô, -vomere, -vomui, -vomitum, tr.,** vomit forth.  
**ex, see ê.**  
**ex-animô, -âre, -âvî, -âtum, tr.,** put out of breath, stun; exhaust.  
**ex-ârdescô, -ârdescere, -ârsî, -ârsum, intr.,** blaze out; be inflamed, be enraged.  
**ex-audiô, -îre, -îvî, -îtum, tr.,** hear clearly, hear.  
**ex-cêdô, -cêdere, -cessî, -cessum, intr.,** withdraw.  
**excellô, -cellere, —, -celsum, intr.,** be eminent, excel.  
**excelsus, -a, -um, adj. [p. part. of excellô],** lofty, tall; distinguished.  
**excerpô, -cerpere, -cerpsî, -cerptum, tr., [carpô],** pick out, select.  
**excipiô, -cipere, -cêpî, -ceptum, tr. [ex+capiô],** take out, take up, catch; receive, entertain.  
**excitô, -âre, -âvî, -âtum, tr.,** call out; rouse.  
**ex-clâmô, -âre, -âvî, -âtum, tr.,** cry out, exclaim.  
**ex-cruciô, -âre, -âvî, -âtum, tr.,** rack, torture.  
**excûsô, -âre, -âvî, -âtum, tr. [ex+causa],** excuse.  
**execror, -ârî, -âtus sum, tr. [ex+sacrô, doom],** curse.  
**exemplum, -i, n.,** example, precedent.  
**ex-eô, -îre, -îi or -îvî, -îtum, intr.,** go out.  
**exequor, -exequi, -execûtus sum, tr. [ex+sequor],** follow up; carry out, enforce.  
**exerceô, -êre, -uî, -îtum, tr. [ex+arceô, enclose],** train, drill.  
**exercitâtîô, -ônîs, f. [exercitô, train],** exercise, training.  
**exercitâtus, -a, -um, adj. [p. part. of exercitô],** trained, experienced.  
**exercitus, -ûs, m. [exerceô],** army.  
**exigô, -igere, -êgî, -âctum, tr. [ex+agô],** drive out, expel; exact; spend.  
**exiguus, -a, -um, adj.,** scanty, small.  
**exiliô, -îre, -uî, —, intr. [ex+salîô, leap],** spring forth.  
**exilium, -i, n. [exul],** exile.  
**eximius, -a, -um, adj.,** unusual, distinguished.  
**existimâtîô, -ônîs, f. [existimô],** judgment, opinion.

**existimō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr.** [ex+ aestimō, estimate], estimate; judge, think.

**exitum, -i, n.,** destruction, ruin.

**exitus, -ūs, m.** [exeō], outcome; end, close.

**ex-orior, -oriri, -ortus sum, intr.,** come forth, arise, appear.

**expectō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr.** [ex+ spectō], expect, await, wait for.

**expectatiō, -ōnis, f.** [expectō], awaiting, expectation.

**expeditus, -a, -um, adj.** [*p. part. of* expediō, extricate], unimpeded, free, open.

**ex-pellō, -pellere, -pulī, -pulsum, tr.,** drive out, expel.

**ex-prior, -periri, -pertus sum, tr.,** prove, test.

**ex-piō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr.** [piō, appease], atone for, appease.

**expirō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr.** [ex+ spirō, breathe], breathe out.

**explōrator, -ōris, m.** [explōrō], scout.

**explōrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr.,** explore.

**ex-pōnō, -pōnere, -posui, -positum, tr.,** set forth, explain; expose, abandon; set ashore.

**exprimō, -primere, -pressi, -pressum, tr.** [ex+premō], press out; wring out, elicit.

**expugnātiō, -ōnis, f.** [expugnō], a taking by storm, storming.

**ex-pugnō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr.,** take by storm, capture.

**exquirō, -quirere, -quisivi, -quisitum, tr.** [ex+quaerō], search out, inquire about.

**extemplō, adv.,** immediately, forthwith, without delay.

**externus, -a, -um, adj.** [exterus, on the outside], foreign, outer.

**extō, -āre, —, —, intr.** [ex+stō], stand forth; be extant, exist.

**extrā, prep. with acc.,** outside of.

**ex-trahō, -trahere, -trāxi, -tractum, tr.,** draw out; extricate, release.

**extra-ordinārius, -a, -um, adj.,** extraordinary, uncommon.

**extrēmus, -a, -um, adj.** [exterus, on the outside], outermost, farthest, most distant.

**extruō, -uere, -ūxi, -ūctum, tr.** [struō], pile, heap up; erect.

**exul, -ulis, m.,** an exile.

**exultō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, intr.** [*freq. of* exsiliō], leap up (for joy), exult.

**exuō, -ere, -ui, -ūtum, tr.,** take off, remove.

**ex-ūrō, -ūrere, -ussi, -ustum, tr.,** burn up.

## F

**faber, -bri, m.,** workman, smith.

**Fabiānus, -a, -um, adj.,** of Fabius.

**Fabius, -i, m.,** (1) Q. Fabius Maximus, a Roman commander in the Second Punic War; (2) Q. Fabius Maximus, consul in 121 B.C.

**Fābricius, -i, m.,** C. Fabricius, a prominent Roman of the 3d century B.C.

**fabricor, -āri, -ātus sum, tr.** [faber], make, construct, build.

**fābula, -ae, f.,** story, tale.

**facētē, adv.** [facētus, witty], wittily, humorously.

**facile, adv.** [facilis], easily.

**facilis, -e, adj.,** easy.

**facinus, facinoris, n.,** deed; crime.

**faciō, facere, fēcī, factum, tr.,** make do.

**factiō, -ōnis, f.** [faciō], faction, party.

**factum, -i, n.** [*p. part. of* faciō], deed, action.

**facultās, -ātis, f.** [facilis], means, opportunity, chance.

**fallō, fallere, fefellī, falsum, tr.,** deceive, cheat, elude.

**falsō, adv.** [falsus], falsely.

**falsus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [*p. part. of fallō*], false, deceptive, misleading.

**falx**, **falcis**, *f.*, sickle.

**fāma**, -ae, *f.*, report, rumor, talk.

**famēs**, -is, *f.*, hunger.

**familia**, -ae, *f.* [**famulus**, servant], household establishment, slaves in a household; family.

**familiāris**, -e, *adj.* [**familia**], of a household; **rēs familiāris**, private property, estate; *subst.*, **familiāris**, -is, *m.*, a friend, an intimate acquaintance.

**fānum**, -i, *n.*, shrine, temple.

**fār**, **farris**, *n.*, grain, meal.

**fās**, (*only nom. and acc. sing.*), *n.*, divine law (*as opposed to jūs, human law*); the right; **fās est**, it is lawful, it is permitted.

**fāstī**, -ōrum, *m. pl.*, calendar.

**fatīgō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.*, weary, tire, fatigue.

**fātum**, -i, *n.* [*p. part. of for*, speak], fate, destiny.

**faucēs**, -ium, *f. pl.*, throat.

**Fausta**, -ae, *f.*, Fausta, daughter of L. Cornelius Sulla.

**Faustulus**, -i, *m.*, Faustulus, the shepherd who reared Romulus and Remus.

**Faustus**, -i, *m.*, Faustus, son of L. Cornelius Sulla.

**faveō**, -ēre, **fāvi**, **fautum**, *intr.* (*takes dative*), favor.

**favor**, -ōris, *m.* [**faveō**], favor, goodwill.

**fax**, **facis**, *f.*, torch, firebrand.

**fēlicitās**, -ātis, *f.* [**fēlix**], good fortune, luck.

**fēliciter**, *adv.* [**fēlix**], happily, luckily.

**fēlix**, *gen.* **fēlicis**, *adj.*, fortunate, happy.

**Fēlix**, -icis, *m.*, Felix (= the lucky), a cognomen assumed by L. Cornelius Sulla.

**fēmina**, -ae, *f.*, woman.

**femur**, **femoris**, *n.*, thigh.

**fera**, -ae, *f.*, wild beast, wild animal.

**ferē**, *adv.*, about, nearly; in general, usually.

**Ferentina**, -ae, *f.*, Ferentina, a goddess of the Latins.

**ferō**, **ferre**, **tuli**, **lātum**, *tr.*, bear, bring, carry; endure; **signa ferre**, advance the standards, advance; **fertur**, it is said; **ferunt**, they say.

**ferōciter**, *adv.* [**ferōx**], courageously, fiercely, arrogantly.

**ferōx**, *gen.* **ferōcis**, *adj.*, fierce, high-spirited; emboldened, aggressive.

**ferreus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [**ferrum**], of iron.

**ferrum**, -i, *n.*, iron; sword.

**fertilis**, -e, *adj.*, fertile.

**ferus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, wild.

**fessus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, wearied, tired, exhausted.

**festinō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *intr.* [**festinus**, hasty], hasten.

**fētialis**, -e, *adj.*, diplomatic, fetial; *subst.*, **fētialis**, -is, *m.*, a fetial priest.

**fidēlis**, -e, *adj.* [**fidēs**], faithful.

**Fidenātes**, -ium, *m. pl.*, the Fidenates, the people of Fidenae (a town near Rome).

**fidēs**, -ei, *f.*, faith, confidence; faithfulness; pledge.

**fidō**, -ere, **fisus sum**, *intr.*, trust, rely upon.

**filia**, -ae, *f.*, daughter.

**filius**, -i, *m.*, son.

**figō**, **figere**, **finxi**, **factum**, *tr.*, form, fashion, make up.

**finiō**, -ire, -ivi, -itum, *tr.* [**finis**], limit, determine, fix.

**finis**, **finis**, -ium, *m. and f.*, end, limit; *pl.*, country, territory.

**finitimus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [**finis**], neighboring; *as subst.*, **finitimi**, -ōrum, *m. pl.*, neighbors.

**fiō**, **fieri**, **factus sum**, *intr.*, become, be made.

**fīrmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr.** [fīrmus], strengthen, make firm.

**fīrmus, -a, -um, adj.** firm, strong.

**fīgītō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr.,** demand urgently, demand.

**flamma, -ae, f.,** flame.

**flectō, -ere, flexi, flexum, tr.,** turn, bend.

**fleō, -ēre, -ēvī, -ētum, intr.,** weep, cry.

**fletus, -ūs, m.** [fleō], weeping, wailing.

**flōrēns, -entis, adj.** [*pr. part. of flōreō*], flourishing, prosperous.

**flōreō, -ēre, -uī, —, intr.** [flōs], blossom; flourish, be prosperous, be eminent.

**flōs, flōris, m.,** flower.

**fluctus, -ūs, m.** [fluō], wave, billow.

**flūmen, flūminis, n.** [fluō], river.

**fluō, -ere, fluxi, fluxum, intr.,** flow.

**focus, -i, m.,** fire-place, hearth.

**foedus, foederis, n.,** treaty, alliance.

**folium, -i, n.,** leaf.

**fōns, fontis, m.,** spring, fountain.

**forās, adv.** [*compare foris*], out of doors, out.

**fore, fut. inf. of sum.**

**foris, -is, f.,** door; frequently *pl.* (*with reference to the two leaves of a double door*).

**fōrma, -ae, f.,** form, appearance; beauty.

**fōrmōsus, -a, -um, adj.** [fōrma], beautiful, handsome.

**forte, adv.** [*abl. of fors, chance*], perhaps, by chance.

**fortis, -e, adj.,** strong; brave, valiant.

**fortiter, adv.** [fortis], bravely.

**fortitūdō, -dinis, f.** [fortis], fortitude, bravery.

**fortūna, -ae, f.** [fors], fortune.

**forum, -i, n.,** an open space; market-place; especially, *Forum Rōmānum*, the Roman Forum.

**forus, -i, m.,** gangway; a row of seats in the theatre or circus, seats.

**fossa, -ae, f.** [fodiō, dig], ditch.

**frangō, -ere, frēgi, frāctum, tr.,** break; weaken, dishearten.

**frāter, frātris, m.,** brother.

**frāternus, -a, -um, adj.** [frāter], of a brother, brotherly.

**fraus, fraudis, f.,** deceit, deception, fraud.

**fremitus, -ūs, m.** [fremō, roar], a roar, a loud noise.

**(frendō, -ere,) intr.,** only in *pres. participle*, gnash the teeth.

**frequēns, -entis, adj.,** crowded, in numbers.

**fretum, -i, n.,** a strait, channel.

**frigidus, -a, -um, adj.** [frigus], cold.

**frigus, frigoris, n.,** cold, coldness.

**fructuōsus, -a, -um, adj.** [fructus, fruit], fruitful, productive.

**frūgālītās, -ātis, f.** [frūx], thriftiness, frugality.

**frumentum, -i, n.** [fruo], grain.

**fruo, frui, fructus sum, intr.** (*takes ablative*), enjoy, have the benefit of.

**frūstrā, adv.,** in vain, to no purpose.

**frūx, frūgis, f.,** usually *pl.*, fruit, produce, crops.

**Fūcinus, -i, m.,** Fucinus, a lake of Latium, now *Lago Fucino*.

**Fūfidius, -i, m.,** Fufidius, a friend of *L. Cornelius Sulla*.

**fuga, -ae, f.,** flight.

**fugiō, -ere, fūgi, fugitūrus, intr.,** flee.

**fugitīvus, -i, m.** [fugiō], a runaway, a fugitive slave.

**fugō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr.** [fuga], rout, put to flight.

**fulmen, -inis, n.,** lightning-flash, thunderbolt.

**fūmus, -i, m.,** smoke.

**fundāmentum, -i, n.** [fundō, found], foundation.

**fundō, -ere, fūdi, fūsum, tr.,** pour, pour out; rout, defeat.

**fundus**, -i, *m.*, farm, estate.  
**furor**, -ōris, *m.* [furō, to rage],  
 madness, fury.  
**fūrturn**, -i, *n.* [fūr, thief], theft.  
**futūrus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [fut. part. of  
 sum], yet to be, to come, future.

## G

**Gabii**, -ōrum, *m. pl.*, Gabii, a town  
 in Latium.  
**Gabinius**, -i, *m.*, A. Gabinius, consul  
 in 58 B.C.  
**Gabinus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, of Gabii;  
*subst.*, Gabii, -ōrum, *m. pl.*, the  
 people of Gabii.  
**Gaetuli**, -ōrum, *m. pl.*, the Gaetu-  
 lians, a people of northwestern  
 Africa.  
**Gaius**, -i, *m.*, Gaius (or Caius), a  
 Roman praenomen.  
**galea**, -ae, *f.*, helmet.  
**Gallia**, -ae, *f.*, Gaul.  
**Gallicus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [Gallia], of  
 the Gauls, Gallic.  
**Gallus**, -i, *m.*, a Gaul; *pl.*, the Gauls.  
**Garunna** (less correctly, Garumna),  
 -ae, *m.*, the Garunna, a river of  
 Gaul, now called the Garonne.  
**gaudeō**, -ēre, *gāvisus sum*, semi-  
 deponent, *intr.*, rejoice, be glad.  
**gaudium**, -i, *n.*, joy, gladness.  
**gemini**, -ōrum, *m. pl.*, twins.  
**gemō**, -ere, *gemui*, —, *intr.*, groan,  
 lament.  
**Genava**, -ae, *f.*, Genava, a city on  
 Lake Geneva, now Geneva.  
**gener**, -erī, *m.*, son-in-law.  
**generātim**, *adv.* [genus], by kinds;  
 by tribes, by nations.  
**gēns**, *gentis*, -iūm, *f.*, nation, tribe.  
**genū**, -ūs, *n.*, knee.  
**genus**, *generis*, *n.*, race, family,  
 birth, descent; kind, class.  
**Germāni**, -ōrum, *m. pl.*, the  
 Germans.  
**Germānicus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, of the  
 Germans, Germanic.  
**gerō**, -ere, *gessi*, *gestum*, *tr.*, carry,  
 carry on, wage; wear; wield.  
**Gēryōn**, -onis, *m.*, Geryon, name of  
 a Spanish giant.  
**gestō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* [freq. of  
 gerō], bear, carry, wear.  
**gigās**, -antis, *m.*, giant.  
**gignō**, -ere, *genui*, *genitus*, *tr.*, give  
 birth to; beget.  
**gladius**, -i, *m.*, sword.  
**Glauce**, -ēs, *f.*, Glaucē, daughter of  
 Creon.  
**glōria**, -ae, *f.*, glory, fame.  
**glōrior**, -ārī, -ātus *sum*, *intr.*  
 [glōria], boast, pride oneself.  
**glōriōsus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [glōria],  
 glorious, famous, renowned.  
**Gnaeus**, -i, *m.*, Gnaeus, *abbr.* Cn., a  
 Roman praenomen.  
**Gorgō**, -onis, *f.*, a Gorgon.  
**gradus**, -ūs, *m.*, step, pace; *pl.*,  
 steps, stairs.  
**Graecae**, -ārum, *f. pl.*, the Graecae.  
**Graecia**, -ae, *f.*, Greece.  
**Graecus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, Greek,  
 Grecian; *subst.*, Graeci, -ōrum,  
*m. pl.*, the Greeks.  
**Graioceli**, -ōrum, *m. pl.*, the  
 Graioceli, a Gallic tribe in the Alps.  
**grandis**, -e, *adj.*, large, extensive.  
**graphium**, -i, *n.*, stylus, pen.  
**grātia**, -ae, *f.* [grātus], favor, influ-  
 ence; gratitude, thanks, requital;  
 grātiās agere, to express thanks;  
 grātiām referre, to make requital,  
 to requite; grātiā (with gen.), for  
 the sake of.  
**grātulātiō**, -ōnis, *f.* [grātulor], re-  
 joicing, joy.  
**grātulor**, -ārī, -ātus *sum*, *intr.*  
 [grātus], manifest joy, congratu-  
 late.  
**grātus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, pleasing;  
 grateful.

**gravis**, -e, *adj.*, heavy; difficult.  
**gravitas**, -ātis, *f.* [gravis], heaviness; importance; dignity.  
**graviter**, *adv.* [gravis], heavily; severely; with dignity, impressively.  
**gravor**, -ārī, -ātus sum, *intr.* [gravis], be reluctant, do unwillingly.

## H

**habeo**, -ēre, -ui, -itum, *tr.*, have, hold; treat; consider, regard.  
**habitō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *intr.* [freq. of habeo], live, dwell.  
**Hādēs**, -ae, *m.*, Hades, the abode of the dead.  
**Haedui**, -a, -um, *adj.*, Haeduan; *subst.*, Haedui, -ōrum, *m. pl.*, the Haedui, the Haeduans, a Gallic tribe.  
**haereō**, -ēre, haesi, haesurus, *intr.*, stick, cling; hesitate.  
**haesitō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *intr.* [freq. of haereō], stick fast, remain fixed, hesitate.  
**Hamīlcar**, -aris, *m.*, Hamilcar, a Carthaginian general, father of Hannibal.  
**Hannibal**, -alis, *m.*, Hannibal, a famous Carthaginian general, son of Hamilcar.  
**Hammon**, -ōnis, *m.*, Hammon, an Egyptian god.  
**Hannō**, -ōnis, *m.*, Hanno, a prominent Carthaginian.  
**harēna** (sometimes spelled arēna), -ae, *f.*, sand; shore, beach.  
**Harpyiae**, -arum, *f. pl.*, the Harpies.  
**Harūdēs**, -um, *m. pl.*, the Harudes, a German tribe.  
**harūspex**, -icis, *m.*, soothsayer.  
**Hasdrubal**, -alis, *m.*, (1) Hasdrubal, a Carthaginian general, son-in-law of Hamilcar; (2) another general of the same name, a little later in time.  
**hasta**, -ae, *f.*, spear.

**haud**, *adv.*, not at all, by no means, not.  
**haud-quāquam**, *adv.*, by no means, not at all.  
**hauriō**, -īre, hausi, haustum, *tr.*, draw, drain; swallow.  
**Helvētius**, -a, -um, *adj.*, Helvetian, of the Helvetii; *subst.*, Helvētī, -ōrum, *m. pl.*, the Helvetii, the Helvetians, a Gallic people.  
**herba**, -ae, *f.*, herb; grass, turf.  
**Herculēs**, -is, *m.*, Hercules, a famous Greek hero.  
**hērēs**, -ēdis, *m. and f.*, heir, heiress.  
**Hermīnius**, -ī, *m.*, T. Herminius, a hero of the early Roman Republic.  
**herī**, *adv.*, yesterday.  
**Hēsionē**, -ēs, *f.*, Hesionē, daughter of Laomedon.  
**Hesperidēs**, -um, *f. pl.*, the Hesperides.  
**Hibernia**, -ae, *f.*, Ireland.  
**hibernus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, of winter; *subst.*, hiberna, -ōrum, *n. pl.*, winter-quarters.  
**hic**, haec, hoc, *dem. pron.*, this; the latter; the following; he, she, it.  
**hic**, *adv.*, here.  
**hiemō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *intr.* [hiems], spend the winter, winter.  
**hiems**, hiemis, *f.*, winter.  
**Hierosolyma**, -ōrum, *n. pl.*, Jerusalem.  
**hinc**, *adv.* [hic], from this place, hence.  
**Hippolytē**, -ēs, *f.*, Hippolyte, queen of the Amazons.  
**Hispania**, -ae, *f.*, Spain.  
**Hispanus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, Spanish.  
**historia**, -ae, *f.*, narrative, history.  
**hodiē**, *adv.* [hoc+diē], today.  
**homō**, hominis, *m.*, a man, a human being.  
**honestās**, -ātis, *f.* [honor], honesty, honor.



**honestē**, *adv.* [honestus], honorably, properly.

**honestus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [honor], honorable; honored, eminent.

**honor**, -ōris, *m.*, honor, repute, esteem; **Honor**, -ōris, *m.*, Honor personified as a god.

**honorificus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [honor + faciō], honorable, doing honor.

**hōra**, -ae, *f.*, hour.

**Horātius**, -i, *m.*, Horatius; (1) the name of three brothers who fought the Alban Curiatii; (2) the father of the three Horatii; (3) Horatius Cocles.

**horreō**, -ēre, -uī, —, *intr. and tr.*, shudder, shudder at, dread.

**horreum**, -i, *n.*, storehouse, granary.

**horribilis**, -e, *adj.* [horreō], terrible, fearful, dreadful.

**hortor**, -āri, -ātus sum, *tr.*, urge, encourage, exhort.

**hortus**, -i, *m.*, garden.

**hospes**, -itis, *m.*, host, guest; friend, guest-friend.

**hospitium**, -i, *n.* [hospes], hospitality.

**Hostilius**, -i, *m.*, (1) Hostius Hostilius, a Roman commander in the time of Romulus; (2) Tullus Hostilius, third king of Rome.

**hostis**, hostis, -ium, *m.*, enemy.

**hūc**, *adv.* [hic], this way, to this place.

**hūmānitās**, -ātis, *f.* [hūmānus], culture; kindness.

**hūmānus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [homō], human; kind.

**humī**, *adv.* [locative of humus, ground], on the ground.

**humilis**, -e, *adj.* [humus, ground], low; humble.

**Hydra**, -ae, *f.*, the Hydra.

**Hylās**, -ae, *m.*, Hylas, one of the Argonauts.

## I

**ibi**, *adv.*, there, in that place.

**ictus**, -ūs, *m.*, blow, stroke.

**idem**, *eadem*, *idem*, *dem. pron.* [is + dem], the same.

**ideō**, *adv.*, for that reason, therefore.

**idōneus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, suitable, fit.

**Idūs**, *Iduum*, *f. pl.*, the Ides, the middle of the month.

**igitur**, *adv.*, therefore.

**ignāvus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [in- + gnāvus, busy], inactive, cowardly.

**ignis**, ignis, -ium, *m.*, fire.

**ignōrō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.*, not know, be unaware of.

**ignōscō**, -nōscere, -nōvi, -nōtum, *intr.* [in- + (g)nōscō, know], overlook, pardon.

**ille**, *illa*, *illud*, *dem. pron.*, that; the former; he, she, it.

**illic**, *adv.* [ille], there, yonder.

**illūdō**, -lūdere, -lūsī, -lūsūm, *tr.* [in- + lūdō, play], make sport of, ridicule.

**illūstris**, -e, *adj.*, bright; distinguished, illustrious.

**illuviēs**, —, *abl.* -ē, *f.*, overflow; dirt, filth.

**imber**, -bris, *m.*, rain, storm.

**imbuō**, -ere, -uī, -ūtum, *tr.*, soak, steep.

**imitor**, -āri, -ātus sum, *tr.*, imitate, copy after.

**immittō**, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum, *tr.* [in- + mittō], send in, let in.

**immolō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.* [in- + mola, meal], sacrifice.

**immortālis**, -e, *adj.* [in- + mortālis], immortal.

**immōtus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [in- + mōtus], unmoved, unaffected.

**impedimentum**, -i, *n.* [impediō], hindrance; *pl.*, baggage.

**impediō**, -ire, -ivī, -itum, *tr.* [in- + pēs], hinder, impede.

**impellō, -pellere, -puli, -pulsum, tr.** [in+pellō], drive forward; impel, urge on.

**impendeō, -ēre, —, —, intr.** [in+pendeō, hang], hang over, overhang.

**imperātor, -ōris, m.** [imperō], general, commander.

**imperātum, -i, n.** [p. part. of imperō], command, order.

**imperitus, -a, -um, adj.** [in+peritus], inexperienced, unskilled.

**imperium, -i, n.** [imperō], power, authority.

**imperō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr. and intr.** [in+parō], command; control.

**impetrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr. and intr.** [in+patrō, perform], gain, gain one's request.

**impetus, -ūs, m.** [in+petō], attack, raid.

**impiger, -gra, -grum, adj.** [in+piger, lazy], industrious, energetic.

**impigrē, adv.** [impiger], energetically, industriously.

**impleō, -ēre, -ēvi, -ētum, tr.** [in+pleō, fill], fill, fill up.

**implorō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr.** [in+plorō, wail], implore, beseech.

**impōnō, -pōnere, -posui, -positum, tr.** [in+pōnō], place upon, impose; put on board.

**importō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr.** [in+portō], bring in, import.

**imprimis, adv.** [in+abl. pl. of primus], especially, chiefly.

**improbus, -a, -um, adj.** [in+probus, honest], bad, wicked.

**imprōvisō, adv.** [imprōvisus, unforeseen], unexpectedly.

**impugnō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr.** [in+pugnō], attack, assail.

**impūne, adv.** [compare in- and poena, penalty], with impunity.

**impūnitās, -ātis, f.** [compare impūne], impunity, freedom from punishment.

**imus, -a, -um, adj.** [contr. for infimus, superl. of inferus, lower], lowest, lowest part of, base of.

**in, prep. with abl. and acc.; with abl., in, on; with acc., into, against.**

**in-, inseparable negative particle used in composition, not, un-, in-.**

**in-ambulō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, intr.** walk up and down.

**in-auditus, -a, -um, adj.,** unheard of, unusual.

**incendium, -i, n.** [incendō], fire, conflagration.

**incendō, -cendere, -cendi, -censum, tr.,** set fire to, burn; irritate; make angry.

**inceptum, -i, n.** [p. part. of incipio], beginning; attempt, undertaking.

**incidō, -cidere, -cidi, —, intr.** [in+cadō], fall in, fall into.

**incipiō, -cipere, -cēpi, -ceptum, tr. and intr.** [in+capiō], begin.

**in-citō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr.** [citō, rouse], rouse, incite, instigate.

**inclūdō, -clūdere, -clūsi, -clūsum, tr.** [in+claudō], shut up, enclose.

**in-cognitus, -a, -um, adj.,** unknown.

**incola, -ae, m. and f.** [incolō], inhabitant, resident.

**in-colō, -colere, -colui, —, tr.,** inhabit.

**incolumis, -e, adj.,** unharmed, safe.

**in-commodum, -i, n.,** inconvenience, misfortune, loss.

**incrēdibilis, -e, adj.,** incredible.

**in-crepō, -crepāre, -crepui, -crepitum, tr.,** resound; upbraid.

**incumbō, -cumbere, -cubui, -cubitum, intr.,** lean upon; bend to, apply oneself to.

**incūsō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr.** [in+causa], accuse, complain of.

**inde, adv.,** thence, from that place; from that time, then.

**index, -diciis, m. and f.,** informer, witness; index, sign.

- indicium**, -i, *n.*, information, disclosure.
- in-dicō**, -dicere, -dixi, -dictum, *tr.*, proclaim, declare, appoint.
- in-dictus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, (not said), not pleaded, unheard.
- indignatiō**, -ōnis, *f.* [indignor], indignation.
- indignitās**, -ātis, *f.* [indignus], indignity, outrage.
- in-dignor**, -āri, -ātus sum, *intr.*, be indignant, be offended.
- in-dignus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, unworthy, undeserving.
- in-dūcō**, -ducere, -dūxi, -ductum, *tr.*, lead in; move, induce.
- indulgeō**, -ēre, induxi, indultum, *intr.*, be indulgent, be favorable.
- induō**, -duere, -dūi, -dūtum, *tr.*, put on.
- in-eō**, -ire, -iī (or -ivi), -itum, *tr.*, enter; enter upon, form.
- inermis**, -e, *adj.* [in+arma], unarmed, defenceless.
- iners**, -ertis, *adj.* [in+ars], idle, inert, indolent.
- in-fandus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, unspeakable, shocking.
- in-fāns**, *gen.* -fantis, *adj.*, without speech; *subst.*, *m.* and *f.*, infant, babe.
- in-fēlix**, -fēlicis, *adj.*, unfortunate, unhappy.
- inferi**, -ōrum, *m. pl.* [inferus, below, lower], those of the lower world, the dead, the shades.
- inferior**, -ius, *compar. adj.*, lower; inferior.
- in-ferō**, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum, *tr.*, bring upon, cause; allege; **bellum inferre**, make war on; **signa inferre**, advance to the attack, attack.
- infestus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, unsafe; hostile.
- in-ficiō**, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum, *tr.* [in+faciō], stain, dye, color.
- in-flectō**, -flectere, -flexī, -flexum, *tr.*, bend, bow.
- in-flō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.*, blow into, inflate.
- in-fluō**, -fluere, -flūxī, *intr.*, flow into, empty into.
- in-fōrmō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.*, shape, mould; instruct, educate.
- infrā**, *prep. with acc.*, below, underneath.
- in-fundō**, -fundere, -fūdī, -fūsum, *tr.*, pour into, pour upon.
- ingenium**, -i, *n.*, intellect, ability, character; disposition.
- ingēns**, *gen.* ingentis, *adj.*, huge, very large, very great.
- ingenuus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, free-born.
- ingredior**, -gredi, -gressus sum, *tr. and intr.* [in+gradior, step], step, enter, go into, advance.
- inimicitia**, -ae, *f.* [inimicus], enmity, hostility.
- inimicus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [in+amicus], unfriendly, hostile; *subst.*, inimicus, -i, *m.*, an enemy.
- iniquus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [in+aequus], uneven; unfair, unjust.
- initium**, -i, *n.* [ineō], beginning.
- injiciō**, -jicere, -jēcī, -jectum, *tr.* [in+jaciō], throw into, hurl upon; inspire in, cause.
- injūria**, -ae, *f.* [in+jūs], injury; injūriā, unjustly.
- (in-jussus -ūs) *m.* [in+jubeō], *only abl.* injussū, without command, without order.
- in-jūstus**, -a, -um, *adj.* unjust.
- in-nāscor**, -nāscī, -nātus sum, *intr.*, be born in, spring up, arise.
- in-nitor**, -nitī, -nixus sum, *intr.*, lean upon, support oneself by.
- innocentia**, -ae, *f.* [innocēns, harmless, blameless], honesty, innocence.
- in-noxius**, -a, -um, *adj.*, harmless, innocent.

- inopia**, -ae, *f.* [inops], want, lack; poverty.
- in-opināns**, *gen. inopinantis, adj.* [in-+ *pres. part. of opinor*, suppose], not expecting, unawares, off one's guard.
- inops**, -opis, *adj.* [in-+ops], poor, destitute.
- inquam**, **inquis**, **inquit**, *intr. defect.*, say, *employed in direct quotations.*
- in-sciēns**, *gen. -scientis, adj.*, unknown, without knowledge, unaware.
- in-scius**, -a, -um, *adj.*, unknowing, unaware.
- in-sequēns**, *gen., -sequentis, adj.* [*pres. part. of insequor*], following, next.
- in-sequor**, -sequi, -secūtus sum, *tr. and intr.*, follow after, pursue, follow up.
- insidiae**, -ārum, *f. pl.*, snare; ambuscade, ambush; plot.
- insigne**, **insignis**, -ium, *n.*, [insignis], badge, decoration.
- insignis**, -e, *adj.* [in+signum], noted, eminent, distinguished.
- insiliō**, -silire, -silui, —, *intr.* [in+salio, leap], leap in, leap upon.
- insolenter**, *adv.* [insolēns, insolent], haughtily, insolently.
- inspergō**, -spargere, -spersi, -persum, *tr.*, sprinkle over.
- inspiciō**, -spicere, -spexi, -spectum, look into, look.
- instituō**, -stituerē, -stitui, -stitūtum, *tr.* [in+statuō], establish, institute, appoint; train.
- institutum**, -i, *n.*, custom, usage.
- in-stō** -stāre, -stiti, -stātūrus, *intr.*, approach, be at hand; press on.
- instrumentum**, -i, *n.*, implement, tool; as *collective in the sing.*, implements, tools.
- in-struō**, -struere, -struxi, -strūctum, *tr.*, draw up, arrange; furnish, equip.
- insula**, -ae, *f.*, island.
- in-sum**, -esse, -fui, *intr.*, be in, be upon.
- integer**, -gra, -grum, *adj.*, untouched, unhurt; fresh, vigorous.
- intellegō**, -legere, -lēxi, -lēctum, *tr.* [inter+legō], perceive, understand, know.
- in-tendō**, -tendere, -tendi, -tentum, *tr.*, stretch; bend, aim.
- intentus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [*p. part. of intendō*], attentive, intent.
- inter**, *prep. with acc.*, among, between.
- intercipiō**, -cipere, -cēpi, -ceptum, *tr.* [inter+capiō], intercept.
- intercludō**, -cludere, -clūsi, -clūsum, *tr.* [inter+claudō], cut off.
- interdicō**, -dicere, -dixi, -dictum, *tr.*, forbid, interdict.
- interdiū**, *adv.*, during the day, by day.
- inter-dum**, *adv.*, sometimes, from time to time.
- inter-eā**, *adv.*, meanwhile, in the meantime.
- interficiō**, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum, *tr.* [inter+faciō], kill, slay.
- interim**, *adv.*, meanwhile, in the meantime.
- interimō**, -imere, -ēmī, -ēptum, *tr.* [inter+emō, take out], destroy, slay, kill.
- interjiciō**, -jicere, -jēcī, -jectum, *tr.* [inter+jaciō], throw between, interpose.
- inter-mittō**, -mittere, -misi, -misum, *tr.*, suspend, interrupt; let pass; *pass.*, intervene.
- interneciō**, -onis, *f.*, slaughter, extermination.
- interpellō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.*, interrupt, obstruct.
- interpres**, -etis, *m.*, interpreter.
- interpretor**, -ārī, -ātus sum, *tr.* [interpres], explain, interpret.

**inter-rēgnum**, -ī, *n.*, interregnum.  
**inter-rogō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.*, ask, question.

**inter-sum**, -esse, -fuī, -futūrus, *intr.*, be between, lie between; be present at, attend.

**inter-vāllum**, -ī, *n.*, interval, distance.

**inter-veniō**, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventum, *intr.*, come upon, come in.

**in-tolerābilis**, *adj.*, intolerable, unbearable.

**intrā**, *prep.* with *acc.*, within.

**intrō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.*, enter.

**introitus**, -ūs, *m.* [introeō, go in], entrance.

**in-tueor**, -tuērī, -tuitus sum, *tr.*, look upon, gaze at; protect, defend.

**in-undō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.*, overflow, inundate.

**in-ūsītātus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, unusual, extraordinary.

**in-vehō**, -vehere, -vexī, -vectum, *tr.*, carry in; *pass.*, be carried, ride in.

**in-veniō**, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventum, *tr.*, find, come upon.

**in-victus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, unconquered, invincible.

**in-videō**, -vidēre, -vidī, -vīsum, *intr.*, envy, be jealous of.

**invidia**, -ae, *f.* [invidus, envious], envy, jealousy.

**invitō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.*, invite.

**invītus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, unwilling.

**Iolāus**, -ī, *m.*, Iolaus, a companion of Hercules.

**Iolē**, -ēs, *f.*, Iole, daughter of Eurytus.

**Iphiclēs**, -is, *m.*, Iphicles, brother of Hercules.

**ipse**, *ipsa*, *ipsum*, *dem. pron.*, self, himself, herself, itself; *pl.*, themselves.

**ira**, -ae, *f.*, anger, wrath, ire.

**irācundus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [īra], irritable, passionate.

**irātus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [*p. part.* of *irāscor*], angry, angered.

**irrideō**, -ridēre, -rīsī, -rīsum, *intr.* [in+rideō], laugh at, jeer, mock.

**irridiculē**, *adv.* [in+ridiculē, absurdly], without wit, without humor.

**irrupō**, -rumpere, -rūpī, -ruptum, *tr. and intr.* [in+rumpō, burst], break in, rush into, burst into.

**irruō**, -ruere, -ruī, —, *intr.*, rush in, rush upon.

**is**, *ea*, *id*, *demonstr. pron.*, this, that; he, she, it.

**iste**, *ista*, *istud*, *demonstr. pron.*, that of yours, that.

**Isthmus**, -ī, *m.*, the Isthmus (of Corinth).

**ita**, *adv.*, so, in such a way, thus.

**Italia**, -ae, *f.*, Italy.

**ita-que**, *conj.*, and so, accordingly, therefore.

**item**, *adv.*, likewise, also.

**iter**, *itineris*, *n.*, road, march, journey.

**iterum**, *adv.*, again, a second time.

## J

**jaceō**, -ēre, *jacuī*, —, *intr.*, lie, be prostrate.

**jaciō**, *jacere*, *jēcī*, *jactum*, *tr.*, throw, cast, hurl.

**jactātiō**, -ōnis, *f.* [jactō], tossing, motion.

**jactō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* [*freq.* of *jaciō*], toss about; discuss.

**jam**, *adv.*, already, now; *nōn jam*, no longer.

**Jāniculum**, -ī, *n.*, the Janiculum, a hill in Rome, west of the Tiber.

**Jānus**, -ī, *m.*, Janus, the Roman god of beginnings and of doors and entrances.

**Jāsōn**, -onis, *m.*, Jason, leader of the Argonauts.

- jocus, -i, *m.*, jest, joke.  
 juba, -ae, *f.*, mane.  
 Juba, -ae, *m.*, Juba, a king of Numidia.  
 jubeō, -ēre, jussī, jussum, *tr.*, order, command.  
 jucundus, -a, -um, *adj.*, pleasant, agreeable.  
 Jūdaeī, -ōrum, *m. pl.*, the Jews.  
 jūdex, -icis, *m.*, judge.  
 jūdicium, -i, *n.* [jūdex], judgment; trial; court.  
 jūdicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* [jūdex], judge, decide.  
 jūgerum, -i (*gen. pl.* jūgerum), *n.*, an acre, a juger (about two-thirds of an English acre).  
 jugulum, -i, *n.* [jugum], throat, neck.  
 jugum, -i, *n.*, yoke.  
 Jugurtha, -ae, *m.*, Jugurtha, a king of Numidia.  
 Jugurthinus, -a, -um, *adj.*, of or with Jugurtha, Jugurthine.  
 Jūlia, -ae, *f.*, Julia, a woman's name.  
 Jūlius, -i, *m.*, see Caesar.  
 jūmentum, -i, *n.* [compare jugum and jungō], draught-animal, beast of burden.  
 jungō, -ere, jūnxī, jūnctum, *tr.*, join, fasten together; form.  
 jūnior, *adj.* [compar. of juvenis], younger.  
 Jūnius, -i, *m.*, L. Junius Brutus, one of the first two consuls of Rome.  
 Jūnō, -ōnis, *f.*, Juno, queen of the gods.  
 Juppiter, Jovis, *m.*, Jupiter, king of the gods.  
 Jūra, -ae, *m.*, the Jura, a chain of mountains between the Rhine and the Rhone.  
 jūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *intr.* [jūs], swear, take oath.  
 jūs, jūris, *n.*, right, law, justice.  
 jūs jūrandum, jūris jūrandī, *n.*, an oath.  
 jussum, -i, *n.* [*p. part.* of jubeō], order, command.  
 (jussus, -ūs), *m.*, only in the *abl.*, jussū, by order, command, decree.  
 jūstitia, -ae, *f.* [jūstus], justice.  
 jūstus, -a, -um, *adj.* [jūs], just, upright.  
 juvenis, -is, *adj.*, young, youthful; *subst. m.*, young man, a youth.  
 juvō, -āre, jūvī, jūtum, *tr.*, help, assist.  
 jūxtā, *prep.* with *acc.*, next to, near.
- K**
- Kal., *abbr.* for Kalendae, -arum, *f. pl.*, the Calends, the first day of each month in the Roman calendar.
- L**
- L., *abbr.* for Lūcius.  
 Labiēnus, -i, *m.*, Titus Atius Labienus, an officer in Caesar's army.  
 lābor, lābi, lāpsus sum, *intr.*, glide, slip, fall.  
 labor, -ōris, *m.*, labor, toil.  
 labōriōsē, *adv.* [labōriōsus, toilsome], laboriously.  
 labōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *intr.* and *tr.* [labor], work; suffer, be in pain; be in difficulties; labor for.  
 Lacedaemonius, -a, -um, *adj.*, Lacedaemonian, of Lacedaemon (a city of Laconia).  
 lacessō, -cessere, -cessivī, -cessitum, *tr.*, provoke, challenge, attack.  
 Lacōnia, -ae, *f.*, Laconia, a country of the Peloponnesus.  
 lacrima, -ae, *f.*, tear.  
 lacus, -ūs, *m.*, lake.  
 laedō, laedere, laesī, laesum, *tr.*, injure, offend.  
 laetitia, -ae, *f.* [laetus], joy, happiness.  
 laetor, -ārī, -ātus sum, *intr.* [laetus], rejoice, be delighted.

- laetus, -a, -um, *adj.*, joyful, happy, glad.
- laeva, -ae, *f.* [laevus, on the left side], the left hand.
- Lāomedōn, -ontis, *m.*, Laomedon, a king of Troy.
- lapis, lapidis, *m.*, stone.
- laqueus, -i, *m.*, noose.
- Larcius, -i, *m.*, Spurius Larcius, a hero of the early Roman republic.
- Lārentia, -ae, *f.*, Larentia, wife of Faustus.
- largior, -iri, -itus sum, *tr. and intr.* [largus, abundant], give lavishly.
- largiter, *adv.* [largus, abundant], in abundance, much.
- largitiō, -ōnis, *f.* [largior], lavish giving, generosity.
- Lāriſsa, -ae, *f.*, Larissa, a city of Thessaly.
- Lars, Lartis, *m.*, Lars Porsena, a king of Clusium.
- lassitūdō, -dinis, *f.* [lassus, weary], weariness.
- lātē, *adv.* [lātus], widely, far and wide, extensively.
- latebrāe, -ārum, *f. pl.* [lateō], hiding-place.
- lateō, -ēre, latui, —, *intr.*, lie hid, be hidden.
- Latīnē, *adv.* [Latinus], in Latin.
- Latīnī, -ōrum, *m. pl.* [Latinus, *adj.*], the Latins, a nation of central Italy.
- Latinus, -a, -um, *adj.*, of Latium, Latin.
- Latinus, -i, *m.*, Latinus, a king of the Laurentines.
- lātitudō, -dinis, *f.* [lātus], width.
- Latium, -i, *n.*, Latium, a district of west central Italy.
- Latobrigi, -ōrum, *m. pl.*, the Lato-  
brigi, a German tribe.
- latrō, -ōnis, *m.*, robber, brigand.
- lātus, -a, -um, *adj.*, wide, broad.
- latus, lateris, *n.*, side; flank, wing.
- laudō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.* [laus], praise, laud.
- laurea, -ae, *f.*, laurel-tree; laurel wreath.
- Laurentēs, -um, *m. pl.*, the people of Laurentum, the Laurentines.
- Laurentum, -i, *n.*, Laurentum, a town of Latium.
- laus, laudis, *f.*, praise, glory.
- Lāvinia, -ae, *f.*, Lavinia, daughter of King Latinus.
- Lavinium, -i, *n.*, Lavinium, a city of Latium.
- lectica, -ae, *f.* [lectus], a litter, sedan.
- lectus, -i, *m.*, couch, bed.
- lēgatiō, -ōnis, *f.* [lēgō, appoint as deputy], embassy, legation.
- lēgātus, -i, *m.* [*p. part.* of lēgō, appoint as deputy], lieutenant, ambassador, envoy.
- legiō, -ōnis, *f.*, legion.
- legiōnārius, -a, -um, *adj.* [legiō], legionary.
- lēgitimus, -a, -um, *adj.* [lēx], fixed by law, legal.
- legō, legere, lēgī, lēctum, *tr.*, collect; choose; read.
- Lemannus, -i, *m.*, Lake Geneva.
- lēnis, -e, *adj.*, mild, gentle.
- lēnitās, -ātis, *f.* [lēnis], smoothness, gentleness.
- Lentulus, -i, *m.*, P. Cornelius Lentulus, Cicero's son-in-law.
- leō, -ōnis, *m.*, lion.
- Lernaeus, -a, -um, *adj.*, of Lerna (a marsh near Argos), Lernaean.
- Lēthē, -ēs, *f.*, Lethe, the river of forgetfulness in the lower world.
- Leuci, -ōrum, *m. pl.*, the Leuci, a tribe of Celtic Gaul.
- levis, -e, *adj.*, light, slight, trifling.
- leviter, *adv.* [levis], lightly, slightly.
- lēx, legis, *f.*, law.
- libenter, *adv.* [libēns, willing], willingly, with pleasure.
- liber, libri, *m.*, book.

**libër, libera, liberum, adj., free.**  
**libëralis, -e, adj. [libër],** befitting a freeman; honorable, liberal.  
**libëralitäs, -ätis, f. [libëralis],** generosity, liberality.  
**libërätor, -öris, m. [libërö],** liberator.  
**libërë, adv. [libër],** freely, boldly.  
**libëri, -örum, m. pl. [libër],** children.  
**libërö, -äre, -ävi, -ätum, tr. [libër],** set free, free, liberate, release.  
**libërtäs, -ätis, f. [libër],** freedom, liberty.  
**libërtus, -i, m. [libër],** freedman.  
**Libya, -ae, f.,** Libya, a country of northern Africa.  
**licëntia, -ae, f. [licëns, free],** freedom, license; boldness.  
**liceor, -ëri, licitus sum, intr.,** bid, make a bid.  
**licet, licëre, licuit, impers.,** it is permitted, it is allowed, one may.  
**Lichäs, -ae, m.,** Lichas, a companion of Hercules.  
**lictor, -öris, m.,** lictor.  
**lignëus, -a, -um, adj. [lignum],** of wood, wooden.  
**lignum, -i, n.,** wood, firewood.  
**Ligurës, -um, m. pl.,** the Ligures, the people of Liguria.  
**Liguria, -ae, f.,** Liguria, a district of northern Italy.  
**limen, -inis, n.,** threshold, door.  
**limus, -i, m.,** mud, mire.  
**Lingonës, -um, m. pl.,** the Lingones, a people of Celtic Gaul.  
**lingua, -ae, f.,** language, tongue.  
**linter, -tris, f.,** boat, skiff.  
**Linus, -i, m.,** Linus, a centaur who instructed Hercules in music.  
**Liscus, -i, m.,** Liscus, chief magistrate of the Haedui.  
**littera, -ae, f.,** a letter (of the alphabet); *pl.,* a letter, an epistle; literature.  
**litterätus, -a, -um, adj. [littera],** of letters, learned, educated.

**litus, litoris, n.,** sea-shore, beach.  
**locus, -i, m. (pl. loca, -örum, n.),** place.  
**longë, adv. [longus],** far, at a distance; by far.  
**longinquus, -a, -um, adj. [longus],** remote, distant; lengthy, long.  
**longitüdö, -inis, f. [longus],** length.  
**longus, -a, -um, adj.,** long.  
**loquor, loqui, locütus sum, intr.,** speak.  
**lörum, -i, n.,** thong, strap.  
**Lücius, -i, m.,** Lucius, a Roman praenomen.  
**Lucrëtia, -ae, f.,** Lucretia, whose death caused the expulsion of king Tarquin.  
**luctor, -äri, -ätus sum, intr.,** wrestle, contend, struggle.  
**luctus, -üs, m. [lügeö, mourn],** sorrow, mourning, affliction.  
**Lücullus, -i, m.,** L. Licinius Lucullus, a noted Roman general of the last century B.C.  
**Lucumö, -önis, m.,** Lucumo, an Etruscan name; the original name of Tarquinius Priscus.  
**lüdibrium, -i, n. [compare lüds],** object of ridicule, mockery.  
**lüdicrum, -i, n. [compare lüds],** sport, game; public exhibition.  
**lüdus, -i, m.,** game, sport.  
**lumen, -inis, n. [compare lüx],** light, a light.  
**luna, -ae, f.,** the moon.  
**lupa, -ae, f.,** a she-wolf.  
**lüx, lücis, f.,** light; *primä lüce,* at dawn.  
**lüxuriösus, -a, -um, adj. [lüxuria, luxury],** luxurious, voluptuous.  
**lürus, -üs, m.,** luxury, splendor.

## M

**M.,** abbr. for **Märcus.**

**Macedonia, -ae, f.,** Macedonia, a country of southeastern Europe.



- macellum**, -i, *n.*, a meat-market.
- maeror**, -ōris, *m.* [maereō, be sad], mourning, sorrow.
- maestus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [maereō, be sad], sad, sorrowful.
- magicus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, magical, magic.
- magis**, *compar. adv.*, more, rather.
- magister**, -tri, *m.*, master, teacher.
- magistrātus**, -ūs, *m.* [magister], magistracy, office; magistrate.
- magnificus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [magnus + faciō], splendid, fine, magnificent.
- magnitūdō**, -inis, *f.* [magnus], size, magnitude.
- magnopere**, *adv.* [magnō + opere], greatly.
- magnus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, large, great.
- Magnus**, -i, *m.*, the Great, a cognomen of Cn. Pompeius.
- majestās**, -ātis, *f.* [major], dignity, majesty.
- major**, majus, *adj.* [compar. of magnus], larger, greater; major nātū, older; *subst.*, majōrēs, -um, *m. pl.*, ancestors.
- male**, *adv.* [malus], badly, ill; *compar.* pejus, *superl.* pessimē.
- maleficium**, -i, *n.* [male + faciō], an evil deed; mischief, injury.
- mālō**, mälle, mālui, —, *tr.* [magis + volō], prefer.
- malum**, -i, *n.* [malus], evil; misfortune.
- malus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, bad.
- mandātum**, -i, *n.* [p. part. of mandō], injunction, command.
- mandō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.* [manus + dō], consign, intrust.
- māne**, *adv.*, in the morning, early in the morning.
- maneō**, -ēre, mānsi, mānsum, *intr.*, remain.
- mānēs**, -ium, *m. pl.*, a departed spirit, shade, ghost.
- manifestus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, clear, evident, manifest.
- Mānlius**, -i, *m.*, L. Manlius Vulso, consul in 256 B.C.
- mānsuētūdō**, -inis, *f.* [mānsuētus, mild], mildness, gentleness, clemency.
- manubiae**, -ārum, *f. pl.*, booty, prize-money.
- manus**, -ūs, *f.*, hand; band (of armed men).
- Marcomanni**, -ōrum, *m. pl.*, the Marcomanni, a German tribe.
- Mārcus**, -i, *m.*, Marcus, a Roman praenomen.
- mare**, maris, *n.*, the sea.
- maritus**, -i, *m.*, husband.
- Marius**, -i, *m.*, C. Marius, a famous Roman general, consul seven times, died 86 B.C.
- marmor**, -oris, *n.*, marble.
- Mārs**, Mārtis, *m.*, the Roman god of war.
- Mārtius**, -a, -um, *adj.* [Mārs], of Mars; of the month of March; Campus Mārtius, the Campus Martius, an open field and drill-ground in Rome on the bank of the Tiber.
- Masinissa**, -ae, *m.*, Masinissa, a king of Numidia.
- Massiva**, -ae, *m.*, Massiva, grandson of Masinissa.
- matara**, -ae, *f.*, javelin, pike.
- māter**, -tris, *f.*, mother.
- mātrimōnium**, -i, *n.* [māter], marriage; in mātrimōnium dare, give in marriage, arrange a marriage for; in mātrimōnium dūcere, marry.
- mātrōna**, -ae, *f.* [māter], married woman, wife, matron.
- Matrona**, -ae, *f.*, the river Marne.
- mātūrē**, *adv.* [mātūrus], early, quickly, soon.
- mātūrō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *intr.* [mātūrus], set about early, hasten.

- mātūrus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, full grown, mature, ripe.
- maximē**, *superl. adv.* [maximus], in the highest degree, most, especially, exceedingly.
- maximus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [superlative of magnus], largest, greatest.
- Mēdēa**, -ae, *f.*, Medea, wife of Jason.
- medicamentum**, -i, *n.* [medeor, heal], drug, antidote.
- medicina**, -ae, *f.* [medeor, heal], the healing art, medicine.
- medicus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [medeor, heal], of healing, medical.
- medicus**, -i, *m.* [medicus, medical], physician, surgeon.
- mediocriter**, *adv.* [mediocris, medium], moderately, slightly.
- meditor**, -āri, -ātus *sum*, *intr. and tr.*, reflect; meditate, plan.
- medium**, -i, *n.* [medius], the middle, the intervening space.
- medius**, -a, -um, *adj.*, middle, intervening, middle of.
- Mēdūsa**, -ae, *f.*, Medusa, a Gorgon.
- melior**, -ius, *adj.* [compar. of bonus], better.
- membrum**, -i, *n.*, limb, member.
- meminī**, *infin. meminisse*, *defect.*, *tr.*, remember.
- memoria**, -ae, *f.*, [memor, mindful], memory, remembrance.
- memorō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.* [memor, mindful], mention, recount, relate.
- Menēnius**, -i, *m.*, Menenius Agrippa, a prominent Roman of the early Republic.
- mēns**, *mentis*, *f.*, the mind.
- mēnsa**, -ae, *f.*, table.
- mēnsis**, *mēnsis*, -ium or -um, *m.*, month.
- mentīō**, -ōnis, *f.*, mention.
- mercātor**, -ōris, *m.* [mercor, to trade], trader, merchant.
- mercennārius**, -a, -um, *adj.* [mercēs], hired, paid; *subst.*, mercennārius, -i, *m.*, hired servant.
- mercēs**, -ēdis, *f.*, hire, pay, fee.
- Mercurius**, -i, *m.*, Mercury, messenger of the gods and god of traders.
- mereō**, -ēre, *merui*, *meritum*, and *mereor*, -ēri, *meritus sum*, *tr. and intr.*, be deserving, deserve, merit.
- mergō**, -ere, *merſi*, *mersum*, *tr.*, plunge, sink.
- meridiēs**, -ēi, *m.* [medius+diēs], mid-day, noon; the south.
- meritum**, -i, *n.* [p. part. of mereō], merit, desert.
- meritus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [p. part. of mereō], due, deserved, just.
- merx**, *mercis*, *f.*, goods, merchandise.
- Messāla**, -ae, *m.*, M. Valerius Messala, consul in 61 B.C.
- met**, an enclitic suffix, self, own.
- Metellus**, -i, *m.*, Q. Caecilius Metellus Numidicus, consul in 109 B.C.
- mētior**, -iri, *mēnsus sum*, *tr.*, measure; deal out, distribute.
- Metius**, -i, *m.*, M. Metius, employed by Julius Caesar as an envoy to Ariovistus.
- Mettius**, -i, *m.*, Mettius Fufetius, an Alban dictator.
- metuō**, -ere, *metui*, —, *tr.* [metus], fear, dread.
- meus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [mē], my, mine.
- migrō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *intr.*, migrate, remove.
- mīles**, *militis*, *m.*, soldier.
- militāris**, -e, *adj.* [mīles], military.
- militō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *intr.* [mīles], serve as a soldier, wage war.
- mille**, *num. adj.* (pl. milia, -ium, neuter noun), thousand.
- milliēs**, *adv.* [mille], a thousand times.

**minae, -ārum, f. pl.,** threats.

**Minerva, -ae, f.,** Minerva, the goddess of wisdom.

**minimē, superl. adv. [minimus],** least, very little; by no means, not at all.

**minimus, -a, -um, adj. [superl. of parvus],** least, smallest, very small; youngest.

**ministerium, -i, n. [minister, servant],** office, service, labor.

**minitor, -āri, -ātus sum, tr. [freq. of minor, threaten],** threaten, menace.

**minor, minus, adj. [compar. of parvus],** less, smaller; **minor nātū,** younger.

**Minōs, -ōis, m.,** Minos, a judge in the lower world.

**Minturnae, -ārum, f. pl.,** Minturnae, a city of Latium.

**Minucius Rufus, master of horse in 217 B.C.**

**minuō, -ere, minui, minūtum, tr.,** diminish, weaken, impair.

**minus, adv. [neut. of minor],** less.

**Minyae, -ārum, m. pl.,** the Minyae, neighbors of the Thebans.

**mirābilis, -e, adj. [mīror],** wonderful.

**mirāculum, -i, n. [mīror],** marvel, miracle.

**mīror, -āri, -ātus sum, tr. and intr. [mīrus],** be astonished; wonder at.

**mīrus, -a, -um, adj.,** wonderful, strange.

**miser, -era, -erum, adj.,** unhappy.

**miserīcordia, -ae, f. [miserīcors, compassionate],** pity, compassion.

**miseror, -āri, -ātus sum, tr. [miser],** lament, bewail.

**Mithridātēs, -is, m.,** Mithridates, a king of Pontus.

**Mithridāticus, -a, -um, adj.,** of or with Mithridates, Mithridatic.

**mītis, -e, adj.,** mild, gentle, kind.

**mittō, -ere, misi, missum, tr.,** send, hurl.

**moderātō, -ōnis, f. [moderor, to control],** moderation, self-control.

**modo, adv. [abl. of modus],** only, merely; a little while ago, recently.

**modus, -i, m.,** manner, kind, way; limit, measure.

**moenia, -ium, n. pl.,** walls (of a city).

**mola, -ae, f.,** meal, coarse flour.

**molestē, adv. [molestus],** with difficulty, with vexation; **molestē ferre,** to be annoyed.

**molestia, -ae, f. [molestus],** vexation, annoyance.

**molestus, -a, -um, adj. [mōlēa, a load],** troublesome, annoying.

**mōlimentum, -i, n. [mōlior, make exertion],** trouble, effort.

**mollis, -e, adj.,** soft.

**molō, -ere, molui, molitum, tr. [mola],** grind; **molitus, -a, -um, p. part. as adj.,** ground.

**Molō, see Apollōnius.**

**moneō, -ēre, monui, monitum, tr.,** warn, advise.

**monitus, -ūs, m. [moneō],** admonition, advice.

**mōns, montis, -ium, m.,** mountain.

**mōnstrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr. [mōnstrum],** show, exhibit; point out.

**mōnstrum, -i, n. [moneō],** a divine omen, portent; monster.

**mora, -ae, f.,** delay.

**morbus, -i, m.,** sickness, disease.

**mordeō, -ēre, momordi, morsum, tr.,** bite.

**moribundus, -a, -um, adj. [moriōr],** dying.

**moriōr, mori, mortuus sum, intr.,** die.

**moror, -āri, -ātus sum, tr. and intr. [mora],** delay, linger; hinder.

**mors, mortis, f.,** death.

**mortālis, -e, adj. [mors],** mortal; *subst., mortālis, -is, m.,* a mortal, a person.

- mortifer**, -era, -erum, *adj.* [mors + ferō], death-dealing, deadly.
- mortuus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [*p. part. of* morior], dead.
- mōs**, mōris, *m.*, custom.
- mōtus**, -ūs, *m.* [moveō], movement; disturbance, tumult.
- moveō**, -ēre, mōvi, mōtum, *tr.*, move.
- mox**, *adv.*, soon, presently.
- mūgiō**, -ire, -ivi, —, *intr.*, low, bellow.
- mūgītus**, -ūs, *m.* [mūgiō], lowing, bellowing.
- muliebris**, -e, *adj.* [mulier], of a woman.
- mulier**, -eris, *f.*, woman.
- multitūdō**, -inis, *f.* [multus], multitude.
- multō**, *adv.* [*abl. of* multum], by much, much, by far, far.
- multō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.* [multa, a fine], punish, fine.
- multum**, *adv.* [*acc. of* multum], much, greatly.
- multus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, much; *pl.* many; *subst.*, multum, -i, *n.*, much.
- mūniō**, -ire, -ivi, -itum, *tr.* [moenia], fortify, protect; build (*a road*).
- mūnitio**, -ōnis, *f.* [mūniō], fortification, intrenchment.
- mūnus**, mūneris, *n.*, service, duty; present, gift.
- mūrus**, -i, *m.*, wall.
- mūsica**, -ae, *f.*, music.
- mūtō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.* [*freq. of* moveō], change.
- mūtūus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [mūtō], mutual.
- Mysia**, -ae, *f.*, Mysia, a district of Asia Minor.
- Mytilēnae**, -arum, *f. pl.*, Mytilene, a city on the island of Lesbos.
- nam**, *conj.*, for.
- nam-que**, *conj.*, for, for in fact; inasmuch as.
- nānciscor**, -i, nactus sum, *tr.*, get, obtain; meet with, find.
- nārrō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.*, tell, relate.
- nāscor**, -i, nātus sum, *intr.*, be born; arise, grow.
- Nasua**, -ae, *m.*, Nasua, a leader of the Suebi, a German tribe.
- nāsus**, -i, *m.*, nose.
- nātiō**, -ōnis, *f.* [nāscor], race, nation, people.
- natō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *intr.* [*freq. of* nō, swim], swim, float.
- nātūra**, -ae, *f.* [nāscor], nature.
- nātūrālis**, -e, *adj.* [nātūra], of nature, natural.
- naufragium**, -i, *n.* [*compare* nāvis and frangō], shipwreck.
- nauta**, -ae, *m.* [*for* nāvita; *compare* nāvis], sailor.
- nauticus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [nauta], naval, nautical.
- nāvālis**, -e, *adj.* [nāvis], of ships, nautical, naval.
- nāvicula**, -ae, *f.* [*dim. of* nāvis], boat, skiff.
- nāvigō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *intr.* [nāvis + agō], sail, navigate.
- nāvis**, nāvis, -ium, *f.*, ship, boat.
- ne**, *enclitic particle employed as the sign of a direct question that may be answered by "yes" or "no".*
- nē**, *conj.*, that . . . not, in order that . . . not; *after words of fear*, that; *as adv.*, not; **nē** . . . quidem, not even, not . . . either.
- necessāriō**, *adv.* [*abl. of* necessārium], unavoidably, necessarily.
- necessārius**, -a, -um, *adj.* [necesse], necessary, unavoidable, pressing; *subst.*, necessārii, -ōrum, *m. pl.*, connections, kinsmen.
- necesse**, *indecl. adj.*, necessary.
- necessitūdō**, -inis, *f.* [necesse], close relationship, intimacy.

**nec-ne**, *adv.*, or not, used in double questions.

**necō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* [nex], kill, put to death.

**nefastus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [nefās, wrong, crime], unhallowed; **diēs nefastus**, a day not open to the transaction of state business.

**neglegō**, -legere, -lēxi, -lēctum, *tr.* [nec+legō], disregard, neglect, slight.

**negō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr. and intr.*, say no, say that not; refuse, deny.

**negōtium**, -ī, *n.* [nec+ōtium], business; matter, affair, task; difficulty, trouble.

**Nemaeus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, Nemean, of Nemea (a city of Argolis).

**Nemetēs**, -um, *m. pl.*, the Nemetes, a German tribe.

**nēmō**, *dat. nēmīni, acc. nēmīnem*, no gen. or abl., *m. and f.* [ne+homō], no one.

**nepōs**, -ōtis, *m.*, grandson.

**Neptūnus**, -ī, *m.*, Neptune, god of the sea.

**nē-quāquam**, *adv.*, by no means, not at all.

**ne-que**, *conj.*, nor, and . . . not.

**nervus**, -ī, *m.*, sinew, muscle, power, strength.

**ne-sciō**, -īre, -īvī, —, *tr.*, not know, be ignorant.

**Nessus**, -ī, *m.*, Nessus, a centaur.

**neuter**, -tra, -trum, *pronom. adj.* [ne+uter], neither.

**nē-ve**, *conj.*, and that not, and not.

**nex**, **necis**, *f.*, death, murder.

**nī**, *conj.*, if not, unless.

**niger**, -gra, -grum, *adj.*, black.

**nihil**, *indecl.*, *n.* [ne+hilum, a shred], nothing.

**nihilum**, -ī, *n.* [ne+hilum, a shred], nothing; *esp. in the abl. with a compar.*, e.g. **nihilō minus**, none the less.

**Nilus**, -ī, *m.*, the river Nile.

**nimbus**, -ī, *m.*, rain-storm; thunder-cloud.

**nisi**, *conj.* [ne+si], unless, if not; *adv.*, except.

**nitor**, -ī, **nixus** or **nisus** *sum*, *intr.*, lean; strive; rely, depend upon.

**nix**, **nivis**, *f.*, snow.

**nōbilis**, -e, *adj.* [nōtus], famous, well known; noble; *subst.*, **nōbilēs**, -ium, *m. pl.*, the nobles, the nobility.

**nōbilitās**, -ātis, *f.* [nōbilis], high birth; *collect.*, the nobility, the nobles.

**noceō**, -ēre, **nocuī**, **nocitum**, *intr.*, injure.

**noctū**, *adv.* [nox], at night, by night.

**nocturnus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [nox], nightly, at night, night (as adjective).

**nōlō**, **nōlle**, **nōluī**, *tr. and intr.* [ne+volō], be unwilling, not to wish.

**nōmen**, -inis, *n.*, name.

**nōminātim**, *adv.* [nōminō], by name, in detail.

**nōminō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* [nōmen], call by name, mention.

**nōn**, *adv.*, not.

**nōnāgintā**, *indecl. num.*, ninety.

**nōn-dum**, *adv.*, not yet.

**nōn-nūllus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, some, several.

**nōn-numquam**, *adv.*, sometimes, a few times.

**Nōreia**, -ae, *f.*, Noreia, a town of Noricum, now Neumarkt.

**Nōricus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, of Noricum (a district south of the Danube).

**nōs**, *pl. of ego*.

**noster**, -tra, -trum, *adj.* [nōs], our, ours.

**nōtus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [p. part. of nōscō, learn, know], known, familiar.

**novem**, *indecl. num.*, nine.

**novitās**, -ātis, *f.* [novus], newness, novelty.

**novus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, new; *superl.*, last, latest; **novissimum agmen**, the rear line (*of an army*); *subst.*, **novissimī**, -ōrum, *m. pl.*, those in the rear line, the rear line.

**nox**, noctis, -ium, *f.*, night.

**noxa**, -ae, *f.* [noceō], harm, injury.

**nūbēs**, nūbis, -ium, *f.*, cloud.

**nūbō**, -ere, **nūpsī**, **nūptum**, *intr.*, cover, veil; *of a bride*, veil oneself, marry, be married.

**nūdus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, naked, bare.

**nūllus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, no, none.

**num**, *interrog. particle*, introducing a question expecting a negative answer; *with indirect questions*, whether.

**Numa**, -ae, *m.*, Numa Pompilius, second king of Rome.

**numerus**, -ī, *m.*, number.

**Numida**, -ae, *m.*, a Numidian, an inhabitant of Numidia.

**Numidia**, -ae, *f.*, Numidia, a country of northern Africa.

**Numitor**, -ōris, *m.*, Numitor, a king of Alba.

**nummus**, -ī, *m.*, a coin.

**numquam**, *adv.* [ne+umquam], never.

**nunc**, *adv.*, now.

**nūntiō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.* [nūntius], announce, report.

**nūntius**, -ī, *m.*, messenger, message.

**nūper**, *adv.*, newly, lately, recently.

**nūptiae**, -ārum, *f. pl.* [nūbō], marriage, wedding.

**nusquam**, *adv.* [ne+usquam], nowhere.

**nūtriō**, -īre, -īvi, -ītum, *tr.*, nourish, nurse.

**nūtus**, -ūs, *m.* [nuō, nod], a nod; hint.

**nympha**, -ae, *f.*, nymph.

## O

**ob**, *prep. with acc.*, on account of.  
**ob-aerātus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [ob+aes], debtor.

**objiciō**, -jicere, -jēcī, -jectum, *tr.* [ob+jaciō], throw before, throw to, offer, expose; set against, oppose.

**ob-linō**, -linere, lēvi, -litum, *tr.*, daub, smear over.

**oblīvīscor**, oblīvīsci, oblītus sum, *tr.*, forget.

**ob-noxius**, -a, -um, *adj.*, liable, exposed.

**obscūrō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.* [obscūrus], darken, cover, hide.

**obscūrus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, dark, dim.

**obsecrō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.* [ob+sacrō, make sacred], entreat, implore.

**ob-serō**, -serere, -sēvi, -situm, *tr.*, plant; cover, fill.

**ob-servō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.*, watch, heed, observe.

**obses**, obsidis, *m.*, hostage.

**obsideō**, -sidēre, -sēdī, -sessum, *tr.* [ob+sedeō], beset, besiege, block, blockade.

**obsidiō**, -ōnis, *f.* [ob+sedeō], siege, blockade.

**ob-signō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.*, seal, seal up.

**ob-sistō**, -sistere, -stitī, -stitum, *intr.*, resist, oppose.

**obsōnium**, -ī, *n.*, victuals, viands.

**ob-stringō**, -stringere, -strīnxi, -strictum, *tr.*, bind; lay under obligations.

**ob-struō**, -struere, -strūxi, -strūctum, *tr.*, stop up, bar.

**obtineō**, -tinēre, -tinui, tentum, *tr.* [ob+teneō], hold, possess.

**obtrectātor**, -ōris, *m.* [obtrectō, disparage], traducer, disparager.

**ob-veniō**, -venire, -vēni, -ventum, *intr.*, come to, befall; fall to the lot of.

**ob-viam**, *adv.*, in the way, to meet.

**ob-volvō**, -volvere, -volvī, -volūtum, *tr.*, wrap round, enfold.

**occāsio**, -ōnis, *f.* [ob+cadō], opportunity, occasion, chance.

**occāsus**, -ūs, *m.* [ob+cāsus], falling down, setting; *sōlis occāsus*, sunset.

**occidō**, -cidere, -cidi, -cāsum, *intr.* [ob+cadō], fall; set (*applied to the sun*); **occidēns**, -entis, *pres. part. as adj.*, setting.

**occidō**, -cidere, -cidi, -cisum, *tr.* [ob+caedō], cut down, kill.

**occultō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.* [*freq. of* **occulō**, hide], hide, keep concealed.

**occultus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [*p. part. of* **occulō**, hide], hidden, concealed; *subst. n.*, in **occultō**, in secret.

**occupō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.*, seize.

**occurrō**, -currere, -curri, -cursum, *intr.* [ob+currō], run to meet, meet.

**Ōceanus**, -i, *m.*, the Ocean.

**Ocelum**, -i, *n.*, Ocelun, a town on the western edge of Cisalpine Gaul.

**Octāviānus**, -i, *m.*, Octavian, grand-nephew of Julius Caesar, better known as the Emperor Augustus.

**Octāvius**, -i, *m.*, Octavius Mamilius, a leader among the early Latin peoples.

**octō**, *indecl. num.*, eight.

**octōgintā**, *indecl. num.*, eighty.

**oculus**, -i, *m.*, eye.

**ōdī**, **ōdisse**, **ōsūrus**, *defect.*, *tr.*, hate.

**odium**, -i, *n.* [ōdī], hatred.

**odor**, -ōris, *m.*, smell, odor.

**Oechalia**, -ae, *f.*, Oechalia, a town of Euboea.

**Oeneus**, -i, *m.*, Oeneus, father of Deianira.

**Oeta**, -ae, *f.*, Oeta, a mountain in Thessaly.

**offendō**, -fendere, -fendī, -fēsum, *tr.* [ob+fendō, strike], offend.

**offēnsio**, -ōnis, *f.* [offendō], offense.

**offerō**, -ferre, obtuli, oblātum, *tr.* [ob+ferō], bring before, offer.

**officiū**, -i, *n.* [opus+faciō], duty, service.

**olim**, *adv.*, formerly, once upon a time.

**Olympus**, -i, *m.*, Olympus, a mountain on the frontiers of Macedonia and Thessaly.

**ōmen**, -inis, *n.*, omen.

**omittō**, -ere, omisi, omisum, *tr.* [ob+mittō], let go; neglect.

**omniō**, *adv.* [omnis], altogether, entirely, at all; only.

**omnis**, -e, *adj.*, all.

**onerō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.* [onus, a burden], load, fill.

**onustus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [onus, a burden], loaded, burdened.

**opera**, -ae, *f.* [opus], effort, labor, toil.

**operārius**, -i, *m.* [opera], laborer, workman.

**operiō**, -ire, operui, opertum, *tr.*, cover, cover over, conceal.

**opiniō**, -ōnis, *f.* [opinor, suppose], opinion; expectation.

**oportet**, **oportēre**, **oportuit**, *impers.*, it is necessary, it is proper, one must, one ought.

**oppidānī**, -ōrum, *m. pl.* [oppidum], townspeople, inhabitants of a town.

**oppidum**, -i, *n.*, town.

**opportūnē**, *adv.* [opportūnus], fitly, opportunely.

**opportūnus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [ob+portus], fit, seasonable, opportune.

**opprimō**, -primere, -pressi, -pressum, *tr.* [ob+premō], press down, weigh down, overwhelm, overpower.

**oppugnō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.* [ob+pugnō], attack.

**ops**, **opis**, *f.* power; *pl.*, resources, influence.

**optimē**, *superl. adv.* [optimus], best.  
**optimus**, -a, -um, *adj.* (*superl. of bonus*), best.

**opus**, *operis*, *n.*, work, task, need.

**orāculum**, -ī, *n.* [ōrō], oracle.

**orātiō**, -ōnis, *f.* [ōrō], oration.

**orātor**, -ōris, *m.* [ōrō], orator.

**orbis**, *orbis*, -ium, *m.*, ring, circle;  
**orbis terrarum**, the earth, the world.

**Orcus**, -ī, *m.*, Orcus, *the lower world.*

**ōrdō**, *ordinis*, *m.*, order, rank.

**Orgetorix**, -igis, *m.*, Orgetorix, *a Helvetian chieftain.*

**origō**, *originis*, *f.* [orior], origin.

**orior**, *oriri*, *ortus sum*, *intr.*, rise, arise; break out; **oriēns**, -entis, *pres. part. as adj.*, rising.

**ōrnāmentum**, -ī, *n.* [ōrnō], equipment; mark of honor, ornament.

**ōrnō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.*, fit out, furnish, equip; adorn.

**ōrō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.* [ōs], beg, entreat, ask for.

**Orpheus**, -ī, *m.*, Orpheus, *a famous musician of Thrace.*

**ōs**, *ōris*, *n.*, mouth.

**ōsculor**, -ārī, -ātus sum, *tr.* [ōsculum], to kiss.

**ōsculum**, -ī, *n.* [ōs], a kiss.

**ostendō**, -tendere, -tendi, -tentum, *tr.* [ob+tendō], show, point out.

**Ōstia**, -ae, *f.*, Ostia, *a city at the mouth of the Tiber.*

**ōstium**, -ī, *n.* [compare ōs], door; mouth, entrance.

**ōtiōsus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [ōtium], at leisure, unoccupied.

**ōtium** -ī, *n.*, peace, quiet.

## P

**P.**, *abbr. for Pūblius.*

**pābulum**, -ī, *n.* [compare pāscō], food, pasturage, fodder.

**paciscor**, *pacisci*, *pactus sum*, *intr.*, bargain, agree.

**pācō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.* [pāx], pacify, subdue.

**pactiō**, -ōnis, *f.* [paciscor], agreement, bargain.

**paene**, *adv.*, nearly, almost.

**pāgus**, -ī, *m.*, district, canton, division.

**palaestra**, -ae, *f.*, wrestling-place, place of exercise.

**palam**, *adv.*, openly, publicly, plainly.

**Palātium**, -ī, *n.*, the Palatine hill, *one of the seven hills of Rome.*

**palūdamentum**, -ī, *n.*, military cloak.

**palūs**, -ūdis, *f.*, swamp, marsh.

**pandō**, -ere, *pandi*, *passum*, *tr.*, spread out, stretch out.

**papāver**, -eris, *n.*, a poppy.

**pār**, *paris*, *adj.*, equal, like.

**parātus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [*p. part. of parō*], prepared, ready.

**parcō**, -ere, *peperci*, *parsūrus*, *intr.* (*takes dative*), spare, treat with forbearance.

**parcus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [parcō], sparing, frugal.

**parēns**, *parentis*, *m. and f.* [pariō], parent.

**pāreō**, -ēre, *pāruī*, —, *intr.*, obey.

**pariō**, -ere, *peperi*, *partum*, *tr.*, bring forth, give birth to, produce.

**pariter**, *adv.* [pār], equally, in like manner, as much.

**parō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.*, prepare; obtain, get.

**parricidium**, -ī, *n.* [compare *pater and caedō*], parricide, murder of a father.

**pars**, *partis*, -ium, *f.*, part; direction.

**Parthī**, -ōrum, *m. pl.*, the Parthians, *a people of Asia.*

**partus**, -ūs, *m.* [pariō], a bearing, birth.

**parum**, *adv.*, too little, insufficiently.

**parvus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, small.



**pāscō, pāscere, pāvi, pāstum, tr.**, supply with food, feed; *pass.*, graze, feed.

**passim, adv.** [pandō], scattered, here and there, in every direction.

**passus, -ūs, m.**, pace; mille passūs, a mile.

**pāstor, -ōris, m.** [pāscō], shepherd.

**patefaciō, -facere, -fēci, -factum, tr.** [pateō+faciō], lay open, open, throw open.

**patella, -ae, f.** [*dim. of patina*, pan], a small pan, a small dish.

**patēns, -entis, adj.** [*pres. part. of pateō*], open, exposed.

**pateō, -ēre, -uī, —, intr.**, extend; be open.

**pater, patris, m.**, father.

**paternus, -a, -um, adj.** [pater], of a father, paternal.

**patiēns, -entis, adj.** [*pres. part. of patior*], enduring, tolerant, patient.

**patientia, -ae, f.** [patiēns], patience, endurance.

**patior, pati, passus sum, tr.**, bear, suffer; permit.

**patria, -ae, f.** [*fem. of adj. patrius*, of a father; *with terra understood*], country, native land.

**patrimōnium, -ī, n.** [pater], paternal estate, patrimony.

**patrōnus, -ī, m.** [pater], protector, patron; defender, advocate.

**patruus, -ī, m.** [pater], a father's brother, uncle.

**pauci, -ae, -a, adj., pl.**, few, a few.

**paulātim, adv.** [paulum, little], gradually.

**paulisper, adv.** [paulum, little, +per], a little while, a short time.

**paulō, adv.** [*abl. of paulum*, a little], (by) a little, a little, somewhat.

**paulum, adv.** [*acc. of paulum*, a little], somewhat.

**pauper, -eris, adj.**, poor, of small means.

**paupertās, -ātis, f.** [pauper], small means, poverty.

**pavor, -ōris, m.** [paveō, be afraid], terror, alarm.

**pāx, pācis, f.**, peace.

**peccō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, intr.**, do wrong, transgress, offend.

**pectus, pectoris, n.**, breast.

**pecuārius, -a, -um, adj.** [pecū, cattle], of cattle; *subst.*, pecuāria, -ae, f. (rēs understood), cattle-breeding.

**pecūnia, -ae, f.** [pecus], money.

**pecus, pecoris, n.**, cattle, herd, flock.

**pecus, pecudis, f.**, a head of cattle, beast; *pl.*, flock, herd.

**pedes, peditis, m.** [pēs], foot-soldier; *pl.*, infantry.

**pediculus, -ī, m.** [pēs], a little foot, a small base.

**Peliās, -ae, m.**, Pelias, uncle of Jason.

**pellis, pellis, -ium, f.**, skin, hide, pelt.

**pellō, -ere, pepuli, pulsum, tr.**, beat; drive out, drive away, rout.

**pendō, -ere, pependī, pēnsus, tr.**, weigh, pay out, pay.

**per, prep. with acc.**, through.

**per-agō, -agere, -ēgī, -āctum, tr.**, (drive through); finish, complete.

**peragrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr.** [per+ager], wander through, traverse.

**percipic, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum, tr.** [per+capiō], perceive, feel.

**percussor, -ōris, m.** [percutiō], assassin.

**percutiō, -cutere, -cussi, -cussus, tr.** [per+quatiō, shake], pierce, strike.

**per-dō, -dere, -didī, -ditum, tr.**, ruin, destroy.

**per-dūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductus, tr.**, lead through, lead, bring, conduct.

- peregrinus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [per+ager], strange, foreign; *subst.*, peregrinus, -i, *m.*, a foreigner.
- perennis**, -e, *adj.* [per+annus], lasting through the year, perennial.
- per-eō**, -ire, -ii, -itūrus, *intr.*, perish, be destroyed.
- per-facilis**, -e, *adj.*, very easy.
- per-ferō**, -ferre, -tuli, -lātum, *tr.*, bear through; bear, endure, withstand; bring; carry (*a law*).
- perficiō**, -ficere, -fēci, -fectum, *tr.* [per+faciō], accomplish, perform, complete.
- per-fodiō**, -fodere, -fōdi, -fossū, *tr.*, dig through; transfix.
- perfringō**, -fringere, -frēgi, -fractum, *tr.* [per+frangō], break through.
- perfuga**, -ae, *m.*, [per+fugiō], deserter.
- per-fugiō**, -fugere, -fūgi, —, *intr.*, flee for refuge, flee.
- pergō**, -ere, perrēxi, perrēctum, *intr.* [per+regō], go on, proceed.
- periculōsus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [periculum], dangerous.
- periculum**, -i, *n.*, danger; trial, test.
- peritia**, -ae, *f.* [peritus], experience, knowledge.
- peritus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, experienced, skilled.
- per-maneō**, -manēre, -mānsi, -māsum, *intr.*, remain, continue.
- per-mittō**, -mittere, -misi, -missum, *tr.*, permit; entrust.
- per-moveō**, -movēre, -mōvi, -mōtum, *tr.*, move deeply, excite, induce.
- perniciēs**, -ēi, *f.* [per+nex], destruction, ruin.
- perniciōsus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [perniciēs], destructive, ruinous.
- per-pauci**, -paucae, -pauca, *adj.*, very few.
- perpetuō**, *adv.* [perpetuus], continually.
- perpetuus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, continuous, constant, perpetual; *subst.*, *n. sing.*, in perpetuum, for all time, forever.
- per-rumpō**, -rumpere, -rūpi, -ruptum, *tr.*, burst through, burst asunder.
- per-saepe**, *adv.*, very often.
- per-scribō**, -scribere, -scripsi, -scriptum, *tr.*, write in full, write out, describe fully.
- per-sequor**, -sequi, -secūtus sum, *tr.*, follow after, pursue.
- Perseus**, -i, *m.*, Perseus, a Greek hero.
- perseverō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *intr.* [per+sevērus, strict], persist, persevere.
- per-solvō**, -solvere, -solvi, -solūtum, *tr.*, pay, pay over.
- perspiciō**, -spicere, -spexi, -spectum, *tr.* [per+speciō, look], perceive clearly, discern.
- per-suadeō**, -suādēre, -suāsi, -suāsum, *intr.*, persuade.
- per-terreō**, -terrēre, -terrui, -territum, *tr.*, frighten thoroughly, terrify.
- pertinācia**, -ae, *f.* [pertināx, stubborn], stubbornness, obstinacy.
- pertineō**, -tinēre, -tinui, —, *intr.* [per+teneō], stretch out, extend; relate, pertain.
- per-turbō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.*, throw into confusion, throw into disorder, disturb.
- per-veniō**, -venire, -vēni, -ventum, *intr.*, come up, arrive.
- pēs**, pedis, *m.*, foot.
- pessimus**, -a, -um, *adj.* (*superl.* of malus), worst.
- pestilentia**, -ae, *f.* [pestilēns, pestilential], plague, pestilence.
- petitiō**, -ōnis, *f.* [compare petō], (a seeking), candidacy, canvass.
- petō**, -ere, petivi, petitum, *tr.*, seek; ask; attack, assail.

- phalanx**, -angis, *f.*, phalanx.  
**phalerae**, -arum, *f. pl.*, decorations of metal (for the breast).  
**Pharnacēs**, -is, *m.*, Pharnaces, son of king Mithridates of Pontus.  
**Pharsālicus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, of Pharsalus, Pharsalian.  
**Pharsālus**, -i, *f.*, Pharsalus, a city in Thessaly.  
**Phāsis**, -idos, *m.*, the Phasis, a river of Colchis.  
**philosophia**, -ae, *f.*, philosophy.  
**philosophus**, -i, *m.*, philosopher.  
**Phineus**, -i, *m.*, Phineus, a king of Salmydessus, in Thrace.  
**Phrixus**, -i, *m.*, Phrixus.  
**pictūra**, -ae, *f.* [pingō, to paint], a picture.  
**pietās**, -ātis, *f.* [pius, pious], devotion, piety.  
**pilleus**, -i, *m.*, a cap.  
**pilum**, -i, *n.*, javelin.  
**piscātor**, -ōris, *m.* [piscor, to fish], fisherman.  
**piscis**, piscis, -ium, *m.*, fish.  
**Pisō**, -ōnis, *m.*, (1) M. Pupius Piso, consul in 61 B.C.; (2) L. Calpurnius Piso, consul in 53 B.C.; (3) L. Calpurnius Piso, a Roman commander, grandfather of No. 2.  
**placeō**, -ēre, placuī, placitum, *intr.*, please; *impers.*, placuit, it was resolved, it was decided, it was thought best.  
**plācō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.*, soothe, appease, placate.  
**plāga**, -ae, *f.*, blow, wound.  
**plānitēs**, -ēī, *f.* [plānus], a plain.  
**plānus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, level, flat.  
**plausus**, -ūs, *m.* [plaudō, to clap], clapping, applause.  
**plēbeius**, -a, -um, *adj.* [plēbs], of the common people, plebeian.  
**plēbs**, plēbis, *f.*, the common people, plebeians.  
**plēnus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, full, filled.  
**plērique**, plēraque, plēraque, *adj.*, a very great part, very many, the greater part of, most of.  
**plērūque**, *adv.* [*n. acc.* of plērusque, most], for the most part, commonly.  
**plūrimum**, *adv.* [*n. acc.* of plūrimus], very much, most.  
**plūrimus**, -a, -um, *adj.* (*superl.* of multus), most, very much, very many.  
**plūs**, plūris, (*compar.* of multus), *subst.*, *n. sing.*, more; *pl.*, plūrēs, plūra, *adj.*, more, a greater number of.  
**plūs**, *adv.* [*n. acc.* of plūs], more.  
**Plūtō**, -ōnis, *m.*, Pluto, king of the lower world.  
**poena**, -ae, *f.*, punishment.  
**Poenus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, Punic, Carthaginian; *subst.*, Poenus, -i, *m. sing.*, a Phoenician, a Carthaginian; *pl.*, the Phoenicians, the Carthaginians.  
**poēta**, -ae, *m.*, poet.  
**polliceor**, -ērī, pollicitus sum, *tr.*, promise, offer.  
**Polydectēs**, -is, *m.*, Polydectes, a king of Seriphus.  
**Polyphēmus**, -i, *m.*, Polyphemus, one of the Argonauts.  
**Pompeianus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, of Pompeius, Pompeian.  
**Pompeius**, -i, *m.*, Cn. Pompeius Magnus, a famous Roman general of the last century B.C.  
**Pomptinus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, Pomptine, Pontine; palūdes Pomptinae, the Pomptine marshes (in Latium).  
**pōmum**, -i, *n.*, fruit, apple.  
**pondō**, *adv.* [compare pondus], by weight, in weight.  
**pondus**, ponderis, *n.* [compare pondō], weight, a weight.  
**pōnō**, -ere, posui, positum, *tr.*, place, fix; castra pōnere, to pitch camp.  
**pōns**, pontis, -ium, *m.*, bridge.

- Ponticus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, of Pontus, Pontic.
- Pontius**, -i, *m.*, Pontius Cominius, name of a Roman youth.
- Pontus**, -i, *m.*, Pontus, a country in Asia Minor.
- populāris**, -e, *adj.* [populus], of the people, democratic, popular.
- populātiō**, -ōnis, *f.* [populor], a laying waste, plundering.
- populor**, -āri, -ātus sum, *tr.*, lay waste, plunder.
- populus**, -i, *m.*, a people, nation; the people, the populace.
- Porsena**, -ae, *m.*, Lars Porsena, a king of Clusium.
- porta**, -ae, *f.*, gate, door.
- portendō**, -tendere, -tendī, -tentum, *tr.* [por for prō + tendō], indicate, foretell.
- portentum**, -i, *n.* [*p. part.* of portendō], omen, portent.
- porticus**, -ūs, *f.* [porta], colonnade, portico.
- portō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.*, carry.
- portōrium**, -i, *n.* [portus], tax, duty, toll.
- portus**, -ūs, *m.*, harbor, port.
- poscō**, -ere, poposci, —, *tr.*, ask, request, demand.
- Posidōnius**, -i, *m.*, Posidonius, a Stoic philosopher of Rhodes.
- possessiō**, -ōnis, *f.* [possidō, take possession of], a possessing, occupation; possession, property.
- possideō**, -sidere, -sēdi, -sessum, *tr.* [por for prō + sedeō], possess, have.
- possum**, posse, potui, *intr.* [potis, able, +sum], be able, can.
- post**, *prep.* with acc. behind, after.
- post-eā**, *adv.*, afterward, thereafter.
- postea-quam**, *conj.*, after.
- posterus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [post], following, next.
- post-hāc**, *adv.*, hereafter, in the future.
- post-quam**, *conj.*, after, when.
- postrēmō**, *adv.* [abl. of postrēmus, last; supply tempore], at last, at length.
- postridiē**, *adv.* [posterō + diē], the next day.
- postulātum**, -i, *n.* [*p. part.* of postulō], a demand, request.
- postulō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.*, demand, claim.
- potēns**, *gen.*, -entis, *adj.* [possum], powerful, influential.
- potentātus**, -ūs, *m.* [potēns], power, dominion.
- potentia**, -ae, *f.* [potēns], power.
- potestās**, -ātis, *f.* [potis, able], power; privilege, chance, opportunity.
- pōtiō**, -ōnis, *f.* [pōtō, to drink], a drink, drink.
- potior**, -iri, potitus sum, *intr.* [potis, able], gain possession of.
- potius**, *adv.* (compar. of potis, able), rather, preferably.
- praebeō**, -ēre, praeberi, praebitum, *tr.* [prae, before, +habeō], hold forth, offer; furnish, supply; exhibit, show.
- prae-cēdō**, -cēdere, -cessi, -cessum, *intr. and tr.*, go before; surpass, excel.
- praeceps**, -cipitis, *adj.* [prae, before, +caput], headforemost, headlong.
- praeceptor**, -ōris, *m.* [praecipio], teacher, instructor.
- praecceptum**, -i, *n.* [*p. part.* of praecipio], maxim, precept, order.
- praecidō**, -cidere, -cidi, -cisum, *tr.* [prae, in front, +caedō], cut off.
- praecipio**, -cipere, -cēpi, -ceptum, *tr.* [prae, before, +capiō], enjoin upon, impose upon; teach.
- praecipuē**, *adv.* [praecipuus, especial], especially.

- prae-clārus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, very bright, brilliant; splendid, distinguished.
- praecō**, -ōnis, *m.*, herald.
- praeda**, -ae, *f.*, booty, spoil.
- prae-dicō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr. and intr.* [dicō, dedicate], proclaim, assert.
- prae-dicō**, -dicere, -dixi, -dictum, *tr.*, foretell, predict.
- praedō**, -ōnis, *m.* [praeda], pirate, robber.
- praefectus**, -i, *m.* [*p. part.* of praeficiō], commander, prefect.
- praeficiō**, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum, *tr.* [prae, before, +ficiō], place in charge of, place in command of.
- prae-mittō**, -mittere, -misi, -missum, *tr.*, send ahead.
- praemium**, -i, *n.*, reward.
- prae-optō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.*, choose rather, prefer.
- prae-scribō**, -scribere, -scripsi, -scriptum, *tr.*, determine in advance, prescribe, dictate.
- praescriptum**, -i, *n.* [*p. part.* of praescribō], precept, direction.
- praesēns**, *gen.*, -entis, *adj.* [*pres. part.* of praesum], at hand, present.
- praesentia**, -ae, *f.* [praesēns], presence; the present; in praesentia, at the moment, for the present.
- praesertim**, *adv.*, especially.
- praesidium**, -i, *n.* [compare prae, before, and sedeo], protection; guard, garrison.
- prae-stāns**, *gen.*, -stantis, *adj.* [*pres. part.* of praestō], preëminent, distinguished, surpassing.
- prae-stō**, -stāre, -stiti, -stitum, *intr. and tr.*, stand before; excel, be better; exhibit, show.
- prae-sum**, -esse, -fui, —, *intr.*, be in command of, be in charge of.
- praeter**, *prep.* with acc. [compare prae, before], except; past, beyond; in addition to; contrary to.
- praeter-eā**, *adv.*, in addition, besides, further.
- praeter-eō**, -ire, -iī, -itum, *tr. and intr.*, go by, go past, pass; praeteritus, -a, -um, *p. part.* as *adj.*, gone by, past.
- praeteritus**, -a, -um, *see* praetereō.
- praetextus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [*p. part.* of praetexō, to border], bordered; toga praetexta, the toga of a Roman magistrate, which was edged with scarlet.
- praetor**, -ōris, *m.* [for praetor, from praeeō, go before], (a leader); praetor, title of a Roman magistrate charged with judicial duties.
- praetōrius**, -a, -um, *adj.* [praetor, leader, general], of a praetor, praetorian; praetōria cohorts, a general's bodyguard.
- prae-veniō**, -venire, -vēni, -ventum, *intr. and tr.*, come before, precede; anticipate.
- prāvus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, crooked; bad, dishonest.
- precēs**, -um, *f. pl.*, prayer, entreaty.
- prehendō**, -hendere, -hendi, -hensum, *tr.*, grasp, seize.
- premō**, -ere, -pressi, -pressum, *tr.*, press; burden, weigh down.
- pretium**, -i, *n.*, price, value; reward, recompense.
- Priamus**, -i, *m.*, Priam, a king of Troy.
- pridem**, *adv.*, long ago.
- pridiē**, *adv.* [compare prior and diēs], the day before.
- primō**, *adv.* [primus], at first.
- primum**, *adv.* [primus], in the first place, first of all; cum primum, as soon as; quam primum, as soon as possible.
- primus**, -a, -um, *adj.* (*superl.* of prior), first.
- princeps**, *gen.* principis, *adj.* [compare primus and capio], first; *subst.*, *m.*, chief, prominent man.

**principatus**, -us, *m.* [princeps], leadership, supremacy.

**prior**, **prius**, *compar. adj.*, former, previous; first.

**pristinus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [compare prior], former, original.

**prius**, *adv.* [n. of prior], before, first.

**prius-quam**, *conj.*, before.

**privatim**, *adv.* [privatus], in a private capacity, privately.

**privatus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [p. part. of privō], private, personal; *subst.*, **privatus**, -i, *m.*, a private citizen.

**privō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.* [privus, private], deprive, rob.

**prō**, *prep. with abl.*, in front of; for, on behalf of, for the sake of.

**probō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.* [probus, good], approve, approve of.

**Proca**, -ae, *m.*, Proca, a king of Alba.

**prō-cēdō**, -cēdere, -cessi, -cessum, *intr.*, advance, proceed.

**Procillus**, -i, *m.*, C. Valerius Procillus, a Gallic friend of Julius Caesar.

**procul**, *adv.*, in the distance, at a distance, far off.

**prōcumbō**, -cumbere, -cubui, -cubitum, *intr.* [prō+cumbō, recline], fall forwards, fall prostrate.

**prō-currō**, -currere, -curri, -cursum, *intr.*, run or rush forwards, charge.

**prōd-eō**, -ire, -ii, -itum, *intr.* [prōd for prō], go forth, go forward, advance.

**prōdigium**, -i, *n.*, omen, portent, prodigy.

**prōditio**, -ōnis, *f.* [prōdō], treason, betrayal.

**prō-dō**, -dere, -didi, -ditum, *tr.*, hand down, transmit; betray.

**prō-dūcō**, -dūcere, -dūxi, -ductum, *tr.*, lead forth, bring out.

**proellum**, -i, *n.*, battle.

**profectio**, -ōnis, *f.* [proficiscor], setting out, departure.

**profectō**, *adv.* [prō+factō], actually, in fact, assuredly, certainly.

**prō-ferō**, -ferre, -tuli, -lātum, *tr.*, bring forth, carry forward, extend, defer.

**proficiscor**, **proficisci**, **profectus sum**, *intr.*, set out, start, depart.

**profiteor**, -ēri, -fessus sum, *tr.* [prō+fateor, confess], declare publicly, profess, avow.

**pro-fugiō**, -fugere, -fūgi, *intr.*, flee, escape.

**profugus**, -i, *m.* [profugiō], fugitive, refugee.

**pro-fundō**, -fundere, -fūdī, -fūsum, *tr.*, pour out; spend freely, squander.

**profundus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, deep.

**prōgredior**, -gredi, -gressus sum, *intr.* [prō+gradiōr, step], go on, advance, proceed.

**prohibeō**, -hibēre, -hibui, -hibitum, *tr.* [prō+habeō], check, stop, restrain; keep out, prohibit.

**prōjiciō**, -jicere, -jēci, -jectum, *tr.* [prō+jaciō], hurl forward, hurl down.

**pro-inde**, *adv.*, therefore, accordingly.

**prōmineō**, -minēre, -minui, *intr.*, stand out; project, lean out.

**prō-mittō**, -mittere, -misi, -missum, *tr.*, send forth, promise.

**prō-moveō**, -movēre, -mōvi, -mōtum, *tr.*, move forward, advance.

**prōmptus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [p. part. of prōmō, bring forth], ready, prompt.

**prōmunturium**, -i, *n.*, headland, promontory.

**prope**, *adv. and prep. with acc.*; as *adv.*, near, nearly, almost, about; as *prep.*, near, near to.

**prō-pellō**, -pellere, -puli, -pulsum, *tr.*, drive forward; drive off, repel, rout.

**properē**, *adv.* [properus, speedy], hastily, speedily.

**properō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *intr.* [properus, speedy], hasten.

**propinquus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [prope], near, neighboring; *subst.*, propinqui, -ōrum, *m. pl.*, relatives, kinsmen.

**prō-pōnō**, -pōnere, -posui, -positum, *tr.*, set forth, relate; offer, propose.

**prōpositum**, -i, *n.* [*p. part.* of prō-pōnō], plan, intention, purpose.

**propter**, *prep. with acc.*, on account of, by reason of.

**propter-eā**, *adv.*, on that account; **propterea quod**, for the reason that, because.

**prō-pulsō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.* [*freq. of* prōpellō], drive back, repel.

**prōra**, -ae, *f.*, bow, prow.

**prō-scribō**, -scribere, -scripsi, -scriptum, *tr.*, publish; outlaw, proscribe.

**prōscriptiō**, -ōnis, *f.* [prōscribō], prescription, outlawry.

**prō-sequor**, -sequi, -secutus sum, *tr.*, follow, follow after, attend.

**Prōserpina**, -ae, *f.*, Proserpina, Proserpine, *queen of the lower world.*

**prōsiliō**, -silire, -silui, —, *intr.* [prō + saliō, leap], leap forward, spring up.

**prōspiciō**, -spicere, -spexi, -spectrum, *intr.* [prō + speciō, look], look ahead; look out for, provide.

**prō-steruō**, -sternere, -strāvi, -strātum, *tr.*, spread out; overthrow, lay prostrate.

**prō-sum**, prōdesse, prōfui, *intr.*, be useful, benefit, profit, serve.

**prō-vehō**, -vehere, -vexi, -vectum, *tr.*, carry forward; *pass.*, ride forward; sail out; **aetate prōvectus**, advanced in years.

**prō-vidēō**, -vidēre, -vidi, -visum, *tr. and intr.*, foresee; provide for, make provision for.

**prōvincia**, -ae, *f.*, province.

**proximē**, *adv.* [proximus], nearest; most recently, last.

**proximus**, -a, -um, *adj.* (*superl. to* propior, nearer), nearest, next.

**Ptolomaeus**, -i, *m.*, Ptolemy, a king of Egypt.

**pūbēs**, *gen.* -eris, *adj.*, grown up, adult; *subst.*, pūberēs, -um, *m. pl.*, adults, men.

**pūblicē**, *adv.* [pūblicus], in the name of the state, at public expense.

**pūblicus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [populus], of the people or state, public.

**Pūblius**, -i, *m.*, Publius, a Roman praenomen.

**pudor**, -ōris, *m.*, shame, sense of honor.

**puella**, -ae, *f.* [*dim. of* puer], girl.

**puer**, -puerī, *m.*, boy.

**puerilis**, -e, *adj.* [puer], of a child, of children, childish.

**pūgiō**, -ōnis, *m.*, dagger, poniard.

**pugna**, -ae, *f.*, fight, battle.

**pugnō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *intr.* [pugna], fight.

**pulcher**, -chra, -chrum, *adj.*, beautiful.

**pūctum**, -i, *n.* [*p. part. of* pūgō], point; moment.

**pūgō**, -ere, pupugi, pūctum, *tr.*, prick, sting, pierce.

**Pūnicus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [Poenus], Punic, Carthaginian.

**pūrgō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.* [pūrus + agō], clean, cleanse; excuse; **pūrgātus**, -a, -um, *p. part. as adj.*, free from blame.

**pūrus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, clean, pure; unadorned.

**putō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.* (clean, prune); think, suppose.

**Pyrēnaeus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, Pyrenaean; *subst.*, Pyrēnaei, -ōrum, *m. pl.*, the Pyrenees.

**Pyrrhus**, -i, *m.*, Pyrrhus, a king of Epirus.

**Pythia, -ae, f.,** Pythia, the prophetic priestess in the temple of Apollo at Delphi.

## Q

**quā, adv.** [abl. fem. of *quī*], by which way, where.

**quadrāgintā, indecl. num.** [quattuor], forty.

**quadringenti, -ae, -a, num. adj.** [quattuor+centum], four hundred.

**quaerō, -ere, quaesivī, quaesitum, tr.,** inquire, ask.

**quaestor, -ōris, m.** [for *quaesitor*, compare *quaerō*], quaestor, a Roman magistrate connected with state finances.

**quaestūra, -ae, f.** [quaestor], the office of quaestor, quaestorship.

**quālis, -e, pronom. adj.; interrog.,** of what sort? what kind of? *relative*, of such kind, such as, as.

**quālescūque, quālecūque, indef. pron.,** of any kind whatever.

**quam, adv.** [quī], than, (rather) than, as, how.

**quam-diū, adv.,** as long as.

**quam-quam, conj.,** although, though; and yet, yet.

**quantus, -a, -um, interrog. adj.,** how great? how large? *relative* (following *tantus*), as; *e. g.* *tantus . . . quantus*, as large . . . as; *subst.*, quantum, -ī, n., as much as, all that.

**quā-rē, adv.,** wherefore, therefore; wherefore? why?

**quārtānus, -a, -um, adj.** [quārtus], occurring every fourth day, quartan; *subst.*, quārtāna, -ae, f. (*sup- ply febris*, fever), quartan ague.

**quārtus, -a, -um, adj.** [quattuor], fourth.

**qua-si, adv.,** as if.

**quater, adv.** [quattuor], four times.

**quattuor, indecl. num.,** four.

**-que, enclitic conj.,** and.

**queror, queri, questus sum, intr.** and *tr.*, complain, complain of.

**quī, quae, quod, rel. pron.,** who, which, what, that.

**quia, conj.,** because.

**quicumque, quaecumque, quodcumque, indef. pron.,** whoever, whatever, everyone who, everything that.

**quidam, quaedam, quoddam or quiddam, indef. pron. adj.,** a certain, a certain one; *subst.*, a certain one, somebody.

**quidem, adv.,** certainly, in fact; to be sure, it is true; *nē . . . quidem*, not even, not . . . either.

**quies, -ētis, f.,** rest; peace, quiet.

**quiescō, -a, -um, adj.** [*p. part.* of *quiescō*, keep quiet], quiet, peaceful, free from labor.

**quīn, conj. and adv.** [quī, how, +ne]; as *conj.*, after words of doubt, that; after words of hindering, from; as *adv.*, *quīn etiam*, nay, nay even, nay in fact.

**Quinctius, -ī, m.,** L. Quinctius Cincinnatus, Roman dictator in 458 B.C.

**quindecim, indecl. num.** [quinque+decem], fifteen.

**quingenti, -ae, -a, num. adj.** [quinque+centum], five hundred.

**quīnī, -ae, -a, distrib. num. adj.** [quinque], five each.

**quinquāgintā, indecl. num.** [quinque], fifty.

**quinque, indecl. num.,** five.

**quintus, -a, -um, adj.** [quinque], fifth. **Quirinalis, -e, adj.** [Quirinus], of Quirinus, Quirinal; **Quirinalis collis**, the Quirinal Hill, one of the seven hills of Rome.

**Quirinus, -ī, m.,** Quirinus, a name given to Romulus.

**Quiritēs, -ium, m. pl.,** Quirites, a name applied to the Romans; it may be translated citizens, fellow-citizens.



**quis, qua, quid, indef. pron.,** anyone, anybody, anything, someone, somebody, something.

**quis (quī), quae, quid (quod), interrog. pron. and adj.,** who? which? what?

**quis-quam, quicquam, indef. pron.,** any one, any thing, any one or thing at all.

**quis-que, quid-que, indef. pron.,** each, each one, each man.

**quis-quis, quicquid, indef. pron.,** whoever, whatever, every one who, every thing that.

**quō, adv. [quī]; interrog.,** whither? where? *relative*, to which place or point, whither; *indef.*, to any place, anywhere; *with compar.*, in order that.

**quo-ad, adv. and conj.,** until, as long as.

**quod, conj. [quī],** because; the fact that, that; **quod si,** but if, now if.

**quoniam, conj. [quom, for cum, + jam],** since, inasmuch as.

**quoque, conj.,** also.

**quotannis, adv. [quot, how many, + abl. of annus],** every year, yearly.

**quotiens, adv. [quot, how many],** *interrog.*, how often? *relative*, as often as.

**quo-usque, adv.,** till when? how long?

## R

**rādix, -dicis, f.,** root, lower part; foot, base (*of a mountain*).

**raeda, -ae, f.,** carriage, wagon (*with four wheels*).

**rāmus, -i, m.,** branch, bough.

**rapina, -ae, f. [rapiō],** robbery, plunder, rapine.

**rapiō, -ere, rapui, raptum, tr.,** seize, carry off.

**rārus, -a, -um, adj.,** rare, scarce.

**ratio, -ōnis, f.,** reckoning, account; list, record; plan, course, manner; principle, reason.

**ratis, -is, f.,** raft, float.

**Rauraci, -ōrum, m. pl.,** the Rauraci, a *Gaulic people on the Rhine*.

**re-bellō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, intr.,** rebel, make war again.

**re-cēdō, -cēdere, -cessi, -cessum, intr.,** retire, withdraw.

**recēns, gen. -entis, adj.,** recent, new.

**re-cēseō, -cēnsēre, -cēnsui, -cēnsu, tr.,** number, reckon; review.

**recipiō, -cipere, -cēpi, -ceptum, tr. [re-+capiō],** take back, regain; accept, receive; **sē recipere,** to recover oneself, to withdraw, to retreat.

**re-conciliō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr.,** win back, recover; reconcile.

**re-creō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr.,** renew, restore, refresh.

**rēctē, adv. [rēctus],** straight; right, properly.

**rēctus, -a, -um, adj. [p. part. of regō],** straight, direct; upright.

**recuperō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr.,** regain, recover.

**recūsō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr. and intr. [re-+causā],** refuse, decline.

**red-dō, -dere, -didi, -ditum, tr.,** give back, return; render.

**red-eō, -ire, -ii, (-ivi), -itum, intr.,** go back, return.

**reditiō, -ōnis, f. [redeō],** a going back, return.

**redigō, -igere, -ēgi, -āctum, tr. [red-+agō],** force back; bring under, reduce; collect.

**redimō, -imere, -ēmī, -ēptum, tr. [red-+emō],** buy back, ransom, buy up.

**red-integrō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr. [integrō, make whole],** renew, restore.

**reditus, -ūs, m. [redeō],** return.

**re-dūcō, -dūcere, -dūxi, -ductum, tr.,** lead back.

- re-ferō, -ferre, -tuli, -lātum, *tr.*, bear back, bring back; *pedem referre*, withdraw, retire, retreat; *grātiā referre*, requite.
- re-ficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum, *tr.* [re-+ficiō], make again; renew, recruit, repair; reelect.
- re-fringō, -fringere, -frēgi, -fractum, *tr.* [re-+frangō], break down.
- re-fugiō, -fugere, -fūgi, -fugitūrus, *intr.*, flee back; flee away, escape.
- re-fulgeō, -fulgere, -fulsi, —, *intr.*, flash back, glitter.
- rēgia, -ae, *f.* [rēgius], palace.
- rēgina, -ae, *f.* [rēx], queen.
- rēgiō, -ōnis, *f.* [rēgō], region, district.
- rēgius, -a, -um, *adj.* [rēx], royal, of the king.
- rēgnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *intr.* [rēgnum], reign, rule.
- rēgnum, -ī, *n.* [rēx], royal power, kingdom.
- rēgō, -ere, rēxi, rēctum, *tr.*, guide, direct; rule, govern.
- regredior, -gredi, -gressus sum, *intr.* [re-+gradior, step], go back, return.
- rejiciō, -jicere, -jēcī, -jectum, *tr.* [re-+jaciō], hurl back, drive back, repulse.
- religiō, -ōnis, *f.*, scruple, religion; religious observance.
- re-linguō, -linquere, -liqui, -lictum, *tr.*, leave behind, leave.
- reliquiae, -arum, *f. pl.* [compare relinquo], remains, relics, remnants.
- reliquus, -a, -um, *adj.* [compare relinquo], remaining, rest of, the remainder of.
- re-luctor, -ari, -ātus sum, *intr.*, struggle against, resist.
- re-maneō, -manēre, -mānsī, -mānsū, *intr.*, remain.
- remedium, -ī, *n.* [re-, compare medeor, heal], remedy, cure.
- rēmigō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *intr.* [rēmex, rower], row, ply an oar.
- reminiscor, -ī, *intr. and tr.*, remember, recall.
- re-mittō, -mittere, -misi, -missum, *tr.*, send back; relax, discontinue.
- remōtus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*p. part.* of removeō], distant, remote.
- re-moveō, -movēre, -mōvī, -mōtum, *tr.*, move back; take away, remove.
- re-mūneror, -āri, -ātus sum, *tr.*, repay, reward.
- Remus, -ī, *m.*, Remus, brother of Romulus.
- rēmus, -ī, *m.*, oar.
- re-novō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.*, renew.
- re-nuō, -nuere, -nuī, —, *intr.*, shake the head, refuse.
- re-nūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *intr.*, bring back word, report, announce.
- re-pellō, -pellere, reppulī, repulsum, *tr.*, drive back, repulse; avert.
- repente, *adv.* [repēns, sudden], suddenly.
- repentinus, -a, -um, *adj.* [repēns, sudden], sudden, unexpected.
- reperiō, -īre, repperī, repertum, *tr.*, find, discover.
- re-petō, -petere, -petivī, -petitum, *tr.*, demand back; *rēs repetere*, to demand reparation.
- re-pleō, -plēre, -plēvī, -plētum, *tr.*, fill again, refill.
- re-pōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positum, *tr.*, replace, restore; put away, keep, preserve.
- re-praesentō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* [compare praesēns, present], make present, display; do immediately.
- re-prehendō, -prehēdere, -prehendī, -prehensum, *tr.*, hold back, seize; censure, rebuke.
- repudiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* [repudium, a casting off], reject, divorce.

**re-pugnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, intr.,**  
fight back, resist, oppose.

**repulsa, -ae, f. [p. part. of repellō],**  
repulse, defeat.

**rēs, rei, f.,** thing, affair.

**re-scindō, -scindere, -scidi, -scis-  
sum, tr.,** cut down, break down.

**re-sciscō, -sciscere, -scivi, -scitum,**  
*tr.* [sciscō, approve], learn, find out.

**re-scribō, -scribere, -scripsi, -scrip-  
tum, tr.,** write back; rewrite, en-  
roll anew.

**re-servō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr.,**  
keep back, save up, reserve.

**re-sistō, -sistere, -stīti, —, intr.,** re-  
sist, make a stand.

**respicō, -spicere, -spexi, -spectum,**  
*tr. and intr.* [re-+speciō, look],  
look back; have regard for.

**re-spirō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, intr.,**  
breath out; breathe.

**re-spondeō, -spondere, -spondi,  
-spōnsum, intr.,** reply, respond,  
answer.

**respōnsum, -ī, n. [p. part. of re-  
spondeō],** reply, answer.

**re-spuō, -spuere, -spui, —, tr.,** re-  
fuse, spurn.

**re-stinguō, -stinguere, -stinxi,  
-stinctum, tr.,** put out, quench.

**restituō, -stituere, -stitui, -stitūtum,**  
*tr.* [re-+statuō, station], restore.

**re-tardō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr.,**  
keep back, check.

**retineō, -tinere, -tinui, -tentum, tr.**  
[re-+teneō], restrain, retain.

**re-vellō, -vellere, -velli, -vulsum,**  
*tr.,* pull away.

**re-vertor, -verti, (perf.) -verti, -ver-  
sum, intr.,** turn back, return.

**re-vocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr.,** call  
back, recall.

**rēx, régis, m. [regō],** king.

**Rhadamanthus, -ī, m.,** Rhadaman-  
thus, a judge in the lower world.

**Rhēa, -ae, f.,** Rhea Silvia, mother of  
Romulus and Remus.

**Rhēnus, -ī, m.,** the river Rhine.

**rhētor, -oris, m.,** a teacher of ora-  
tory, rhetorician.

**Rhodanus, -ī, m.,** the river Rhone.

**Rhodus, -ī, f.,** the island of Rhodes.

**rideō, -ēre, risi, risum, intr.,** laugh.

**ripa, -ae, f.,** bank (of a stream).

**ritē, adv. [compare ritus],** in a proper  
manner, fitly, duly.

**ritus, -ūs, m.,** rite, ceremony.

**rixa, -ae, f.,** quarrel, dispute.

**rōbur, rōboris, n.,** oak.

**rogō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, tr.,** ask, re-  
quest.

**rogus, -ī, m.,** funeral pile, funeral  
pyre.

**Rōma, -ae, f.,** Rome.

**Rōmānus, -a, -um, adj.,** Roman;  
*subst.,* **Rōmānus, -ī, m.,** a Roman;  
*pl.,* the Romans.

**Rōmulus, -ī, m.,** Romulus, the  
founder of Rome.

**rosa, -ae, f.,** rose.

**Rōscius, -ī, m.,** Sextius Roscius,  
defended by Cicero on a charge of  
murder.

**rōstrum, -ī, n. [rōdō, gnaw],** beak;  
*pl.,* **rōstra, -ōrum,** the Rostra, a  
platform for speakers in the  
Forum, adorned with beaks of  
captured ships.

**rota, -ae, f.,** wheel.

**Rubicō, -ōnis, m.,** the Rubicon, a  
river in northeastern Italy.

**ruina, -ae, f. [ruō, fall in ruins],**  
ruin, downfall; *pl.,* ruins.

**rūpēs, -is, f.,** rock, cliff.

**rūrsus, adv. [contr. for reversus],**  
again, in turn.

**rūs, rūris, n.,** the country; *pl.,* the  
fields, the country.

**rūsticus, -a, -um, adj. [rūs],** of the  
country, rustic.

**Rutēni, -ōrum, m. pl.,** the Ruteni,  
a Gallic tribe, partly in the Trans-  
alpine province.

**Rutuli**, -ōrum, *m. pl.*, the Rutuli, the Rutulians, a nation of central Italy.

## S

**Sabini**, -ōrum, *m. pl.*, the Sabines, a people of central Italy.

**sacer**, -cra, -crum, *adj.*, sacred; *subst.*, **sacra**, -ōrum, *n. pl.*, sacred rites, religious customs; **Mōns Sacer**, a hill near Rome.

**sacerdōs**, -ōtis, *m. and f.* [sacer], priest, priestess.

**sacerdōtium**, -ī, *n.* [sacerdōs], priesthood.

**sacrificium**, -ī, *n.* [compare sacrificō], sacrifice.

**sacrificō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr. and intr.* [sacer+faciō], offer sacrifice, sacrifice.

**saepe**, *adv.*, often.

**saepe-numerō**, *adv.*, very often, again and again.

**saeviō**, -ire, -ii, -itum, *intr.* [saevus, savage], be furious, rage.

**saevus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, fierce, savage.

**sagīnō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.* [sagīna, feeding], fatten.

**sagitta**, -ae, *f.*, arrow.

**sagulum**, -ī, *n.* [dim. of sagum, mantle], a military cloak.

**Saguntinus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, of Saguntum, Saguntine; *subst.*, **Saguntini**, -ōrum, *m. pl.*, the Saguntines, the people of Saguntum.

**Saguntum**, -ī, *n.*, Saguntum, a city in Spain.

**sāl**, *salis*, *m.*, salt.

**salinum**, -ī, *n.* [sāl], salt-cellar.

**Salmydessus**, -ī, *m.*, Salmydessus, a town in Thrace.

**salsus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [sāl], salted.

**saltus**, -ūs, *m.*, [saliō, leap], leaping, a leap.

**saltus**, -ūs, *m.*, ravine, mountain pass, mountain valley.

**salūs**, -ūtis, *f.*, safety.

**salūtō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.* [salūs], greet, hail.

**salvēō**, -ēre, —, —, *intr.*, be well; **salvē**, *imper.* (in greetings), hail to you.

**Samnis**, -itis, *adj.*, of Samnium (a district of central Italy), Samnite; *subst.*, **Samnitēs**, -ium, *m. pl.*, the people of Samnium, the Samnites.

**sanciō**, -ire, *sānxi*, *sānctum*, *tr.*, make sacred; decree, enact.

**sānctus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [p. part. of sanciō], sacred, holy, inviolate.

**sanguis**, *sanguinis*, *m.*, blood.

**sānitās**, -ātis, *f.* [sānus], health, sanity.

**Santoni**, -ōrum or -um, *m.*, *pl.* the Santoni, a Gallic people of Aquitania.

**sānus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, sound, healthy; sane, sensible.

**sapiēns**, *gen.* -entis, *adj.* [pres. part. of sapiō, have taste, be sensible], wise.

**sarcina**, -ae, *f.*, pack; *pl.*, packs, light baggage.

**Sardinia**, -ae, *f.*, Sardinia.

**satis**, *adv.*, enough.

**satis-faciō**, -facere, -fēcī, -factum, *intr.*, give satisfaction, make reparation, apologize.

**satisfactiō**, -ōnis, *f.* [satisfaciō], apology, explanation.

**saxum**, -ī, *n.*, rock, stone.

**scālae**, -ārum, *f. pl.*, stairway, stairs; ladder.

**scapha**, -ae, *f.*, skiff, boat.

**scelerātus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [scelus], wicked, criminal.

**scelus**, *sceleris*, *n.*, wickedness, crime.

**schola**, -ae, *f.*, school.

**scientia**, -ae, *f.* [sciēns, knowing], knowledge, expertness, skill.

**scilicet**, *adv.* [scire+licet], of course, no doubt, doubtless.

sciō, -ire, -ivī, -itum, *tr.*, know.

Scipiō, -ōnis, *m.*, Q. Caecilius Metellus Pius Scipio, *father-in-law of Pompeius; see also Cornelius.*

scribō, -ere, scripsī, scriptum, *tr.*, write.

scrīnium, -ī, *n.*, book-box, letter-case.

scūtum, -ī, *n.*, shield.

sē- or sēd-, *inseparable prefix*, apart, away.

sē-cēdō, -cēdere, -cessī, -cessum, *intr.*, go apart, retire, withdraw.

sēcrētō, *adv.* [sēcrētus], separately, secretly, in private.

sēcrētus, -a, -um, *adj.* [*p. part.* of sēcernō, to separate], secret; *subst.*, sēcrētum, -ī, *n.*, secret; privacy.

sector, -ārī, -ātus sum, *tr.* [*freq.* of sequor], follow after, attend.

secundum, *prep.* with *acc.* [sequor], following, along; in accordance with.

secundus, -a, -um, *adj.* [sequor], second; favorable, successful.

secūris, -is, *f.*, axe.

sed, *conj.*, but.

sēdecim, *indecl. num.* [sex+decem], sixteen.

sedeō, -ēre, sēdī, sessum, *intr.*, sit. sēdēs, -is, *f.* [sedeō], seat, chair; residence, abode.

sēditiosus, -a, -um, *adj.* [sēditio, sedition], seditious, factious.

Sedusii, -ōrum, *m. pl.*, the Sedusii, a German tribe.

Segusiāvi, -ōrum, *m. pl.*, the Segusiavi, a Gallic tribe west of the Rhone.

sella, -ae, *f.* [sedeō], chair, seat.

semel, *adv.*, once; semel atque iterum, time and again, repeatedly.

sēmentis, -is, *f.* [sēmen, seed], a seeding, a sowing.

semper, *adv.*, always.

senātus, -ūs, *m.* [senex], senate.

senectūs, -ūtis, *f.* [senex], old age.

senēscō, -ere, senui, —, *intr.* [compare senex], grow old.

senex, senis, *adj.*, old; *subst.*, *m.*, old man.

sēnī, -ae, -a, *distrib. num.* [sex], six each.

senior, *gen.* -ōris, *adj.* (*compar.* of senex), older; *subst.*, *m. pl.*, the older men, the elders.

Senonēs, -um, *m. pl.*, the Senones, a Gallic tribe that settled in northern Italy.

sententia, -ae, *f.* [sentio], opinion, thought, purpose.

sentio, -ire, sēnsī, sēnsus, *tr.*, feel, see, perceive.

sēparātim, *adv.* [sēparātus, separate], separately, severally.

sepeliō, -ire, -ivī, -itum, *tr.*, bury.

septem, *indecl. num.*, seven.

septendecim, *indecl. num.* [septem+decem], seventeen.

septentrionēs, -um, *m.* [septem+trionēs, plowing oxen], the constellation of the Great Bear, the Big Dipper; the north.

septimus, -a, -um, *adj.* [septem], seventh.

sepultura, -ae, *f.* [sepeliō], burial.

Sēquana, -ae, *f.*, the river Seine.

Sēquanus, -a, -um, *adj.*, of the Sequani, Sequanian; *subst.*, Sēquani, -ōrum, *m. pl.*, the Sequani, a tribe of eastern Gaul.

sequor, sequi, secutus sum, *tr.* and *intr.*, follow, pursue.

Sergius, -ī, *m.*, see Catilina.

sēriō, *adv.* [sērius, serious], seriously, in earnest.

Seriphus, -ī, *f.*, Seriphus, an island in the Aegean Sea.

sermō, -ōnis, *m.* [serō, entwine] talk, conversation.

**serō, serere, sēvi, satum, tr.,** sow, plant.  
**serpens, gen. -entis, f.** [*pres. part.* of **serpō**, crawl], serpent.  
**Sertorius, -i, m.,** Q. Sertorius, a Roman general and a friend of Marius.  
**servilis, -e, adj.** [**servus**], of slaves, servile.  
**servitūs, -ūtis, f.** [**servus**], servitude, slavery.  
**Servius, -i, m.,** Servius Tullius, the sixth king of Rome.  
**servō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr.,** save; observe.  
**servus, -i, m.,** slave, servant.  
**sēstertius, -i, gen. pl., sēstertium,** sesterce, a small silver coin worth four and one tenth cents.  
**sētius, compar. adv.,** less, in a less degree (*with negatives only*); **nihilō sētius**, nevertheless.  
**seu, see sive.**  
**sevērē, adv.** [**sevērus**, serious], seriously, severely, strictly.  
**sex, indecl. num.,** six.  
**sexāgintā, indecl. num.,** sixty.  
**sexcenti, -ae, -a, num. adj.** [**sex**+**centum**], six hundred.  
**sextus, -a, -um, adj.** [**sex**], sixth.  
**Sextilius, -i, m.,** Sextilius, name of a certain Roman praetor.  
**sī, conj.,** if.  
**sic, adv.,** so, thus.  
**siccō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr.** [**siccus**], dry, drain.  
**siccus, -a, -um, adj.,** dry; *subst.*, **siccum, -i, n.,** dry land.  
**Sicilia, -ae, f.,** Sicily.  
**Siculus, -a, -um, adj.,** Sicilian; *subst.*, **Siculi, -ōrum, m. pl.,** the Sicilians.  
**sic-ut, adv.,** just as, as.  
**Signia, -ae, f.,** Signia, a town in Latium.

**signifer, -i, m.** [**signum**+**ferō**], standard bearer.  
**significō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr.** [**signum**+**faciō**], point out; signify, mean.  
**signō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr.** [**signum**], affix a seal to, seal.  
**signum, -i, n.,** mark, sign; signal; standard (*military*).  
**silentium, -i, n.** [**sileō**, be still], silence.  
**silva, -ae, f.,** forest.  
**similis, -e, adj.,** like, similar.  
**similitūdō, -inis, f.** [**similis**], likeness, resemblance.  
**simul, adv.,** at the same time.  
**simulācrum, -i, n.** [**simulō**], likeness, semblance.  
**simulātiō, -ōnis, f.** [**simulō**], pretence, simulation.  
**simulō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, tr.** [**similis**], make like; pretend.  
**sīn, conj.** [**sī**+**ne**], but if.  
**sine, prep. with abl.,** without.  
**singuli, -ae, -a, adj.,** one at a time; *distrib.*, one on a side.  
**sinister, -tra, -trum, adj.,** left, on the left hand.  
**sinistra, -ae, f.** [**sinister**], the left hand.  
**sinus, -ūs, m.,** a fold; bosom.  
**sitiēns, gen. -entis, adj.** [*pres. part.* of **sitiō**, to thirst], thirsty.  
**situs, -ūs, m.,** site, location.  
**sī-ve or seu, conj.,** whether, or if; **sive . . . sive**, whether . . . or, either . . . or.  
**sōbrius, -a, -um, adj.** [**sē**+**ebrius**, drunk], sober.  
**socer, -erī, m.,** father-in-law.  
**societās, -ātis, f.** [**socius**], association, alliance.  
**socius, -i, m.,** associate, ally.  
**sōl, sōlis, m.,** the sun.  
**soleō, -ēre, solitus sum, semi-de-** *ponent, intr.*, be accustomed, be in the habit.

- sólitarius**, -a, -um, *adj.* [sólus], lonely, solitary.
- solium**, -i, n., throne.
- sollemnis**, -e, *adj.*, established, fixed, regular; solemn.
- sollicitō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.*, disturb, tempt, incite.
- solum**, -i, n., bottom, base; ground, soil.
- solum**, *adv.* [sólus], only, merely, alone.
- sólus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, alone, only.
- solvō**, -ere, solvi, solūtum, *tr.*, loosen, unbind, release; relax; *of ships*, with or without *nāvem* or *nāvēs*, set sail, weigh anchor.
- somnus**, -i, *m.*, sleep.
- sonus**, -i, *m.*, sound.
- soror**, -ōris, *f.*, sister.
- sors**, sortis, *f.*, lot, casting of lots.
- Sp.**, *abbr.* for *Spurius*.
- spargō**, -ere, sparsi, sparsum, *tr.*, strew, scatter, sprinkle.
- spatium**, -i, n., space, distance, interval.
- speciēs**, -ēi, *f.*, appearance, aspect.
- spectāculum**, -i, n. [spectō], spectacle.
- spectātor**, -ōris, *m.* [spectō], looker-on, spectator.
- spectō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.* [*freq.* of *speciō*], look], observe, watch, look at, look to.
- speculātor**, [-ōris, *m.* [speculor], spy.
- speculor**, -ārī, -ātus sum, *tr.* and *intr.* [specula, watch-tower], spy, observe.
- speculum**, -i, n. [speciō, look], mirror.
- spelunca**, -ae, *f.*, cave, cavern.
- spernō**, -ere, sprēvi, sprētum, *tr.*, despise, scorn, spurn.
- spērō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.* and *intr.* [spēs], hope, expect.
- spēs**, spei, *f.*, hope.
- spiritus**, -ūs, *m.* [spirō, breathe], breath; spirit, pride, ambition, arrogance.
- spoliō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.* [spolium], despoil, plunder.
- spolium**, -i, n., skin; booty, spoil. (*spōns*, *spontis*), *f.* [compare *spondeō*, promise], *only abl. sing.* (usually with the possessives *meā*, *tuā*, *suā*), of one's own accord, voluntarily.
- spōnsus**, -i, *m.* [*p. part.* of *spondeō*, promise], betrothed, lover.
- Spūrinna**, -ae, *m.*, Spurinna, name of a certain soothsayer.
- Spurius**, -i, *m.*, Spurius, a Roman praenomen.
- squālor**, -ōris, *m.*, squalor, filth.
- stabulum**, -i, n., stable, stall.
- statim**, *adv.* [stō], at once, immediately.
- statiō**, -ōnis, *f.* [stō], station, post; sentries, outposts.
- Stator**, -ōris, *m.* [compare *stō* and *statuō*], the Stayer, an epithet of *Jupiter*.
- status**, -ae, *f.* [compare *status*, a standing], statue.
- statuō**, -ere, statui, statūtum, *tr.* [status, a standing], cause to stand; resolve, determine.
- statūra**, -ae, *f.* [status, a standing], height, stature.
- stella**, -ae, *f.*, star.
- Sthenius**, -i, *m.*, Sthenius, a Sicilian.
- stipendiārius**, -a, -um, *adj.* [stipendium], tributary, paying tribute.
- stipendium**, -i, n. [stips, gift, + pendō], tax, tribute; pay; service, campaign.
- stipō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.*, pack, crowd; attend, accompany.
- stō**, stāre, steti, stātūrus, *intr.*, stand.
- strātum**, -i, n. [*p. part.* of *sternō*, spread out], bed-covering, coverlet.

- strepitus**, -ūs, *m.* [strepō, make a noise], noise, uproar, confusion.
- stringō**, -ere, strinxī, strictum, *tr.*, strip off; draw, unsheathe.
- studeō**, -ēre, studui, —, *intr.* (*takes dative*), be devoted, apply oneself, study; favor.
- studiōsē**, *adv.* [studiōsus], eagerly, devotedly.
- studiōsus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [studium], eager, fond, studious.
- studium**, -i, *n.* [studeō], zeal, enthusiasm, eagerness.
- stultitia**, -ae, *f.* [stultus, foolish], folly; imbecility.
- stupeō**, -ēre, stupui, —, *intr.*, be astounded, amazed, aghast.
- Stymphālis**, *gen.* -idis, *adj.*, of Stymphalus, Stymphalian.
- Stymphālus**, -i, *m.*, Stymphalus, a town of Arcadia.
- Styx**, Stygis, *f.*, the Styx, a river of the lower world.
- suādeō**, -ēre, suāsi, suāsum, *tr. and intr.* [compare suāvis], advise, recommend, urge.
- suāvis**, -e, *adj.*, sweet, agreeable, pleasant.
- sub**, *prep.* with *acc. and abl.*, under.
- sub-dō**, -dere, -didī, -ditum, *tr.*, put under, apply.
- sub-dūcō**, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum, *tr.*, lead up, lead away; draw up, beach.
- sub-eō**, -ire, -iī, -itum, *intr. and tr.*, go under; undergo, submit to; enter.
- subigō**, -igere, -ēgī, -āctum, *tr.* sub+agō], drive under, reduce, subdue.
- subitō**, *adv.* [subitus], suddenly, unexpectedly.
- subitus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, sudden, unexpected.
- subjiçō**, -jicere, -jēcī, -jectum, *tr.* [sub+jaciō], hurl under, hurl from below.
- sub-levō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.*, hold up, support; assist, help.
- sublicius**, -a, -um, *adj.* [sublica, pile, stake], of piles, resting on piles.
- sublimis**, -e, *adj.*, uplifted, high; up, aloft.
- sub-ministrō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.* [ministrō, provide], furnish, supply.
- subsidium**, -i, *n.* [compare sub and sedeo], reinforcements, support, aid.
- sub-sistō**, -sistere, -stiti, —, *intr.*, make a stand; oppose, resist.
- sub-sum**, -esse, -fui, —, *intr.*, be at hand, be close by.
- sub-trahō**, -trahere, -trāxi, -tractum, *tr.*, draw from under; take away.
- sub-vehō**, -vehere, -vexi, -vectum, *tr.* [vehō, carry], bring up, transport.
- succēdō**, -cēdere, -cessi, -cessum, *intr.* [sub+cēdō], go under; succeed, take the place of; withdraw.
- successor**, -ōris, *m.* [succēdō], successor.
- successus**, -ūs, *m.* [succēdō], success.
- succidō**, -cidere, -cidi, -cisum, *tr.* [sub+caedō], cut down, fell.
- sūcus**, -i, *m.*, juice, sap.
- sūdor**, -ōris, *m.*, perspiration.
- Suēbi**, -ōrum, *m. pl.*, the Suebi, a people of Germany comprising various tribes.
- Suēbus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, of the Suebi, Suebic.
- sui**, *reflexive pron.*, of himself, herself, itself, themselves.
- Sulla**, -ae, *m.*, see Cornēlius.
- Sullānus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, of Sulla; *subst.*, Sullāni, -ōrum, *m. pl.*, the adherents of Sulla.
- sum**, esse, fui, futūrus, *intr.*, be, exist.



**summa**, -ae, *f.* [summus], chief place, supremacy; sum, total.

**summoveō**, -movēre, -mōvī, -mōtum, *tr.* [sub+moveō], drive away, remove.

**summus**, -a, -um, *adj.* (*superl.* of *superus*), highest; utmost, greatest; top of, highest part of; *subst.*, summum, -ī, *n.*, the top.

**sūmō**, -ere, sūmpsi, sūmptum, *tr.* [sub+emō], take, take up.

**sūmptuārius**, -a, -um, *adj.* [sūmptus], sumptuary.

**sūmptus**, -ūs, *m.* [sūmō], expense, cost.

**supellex**, -lectilis, *f.*, domestic utensils, furniture.

**superbē**, *adv.* [superbus], haughtily, arrogantly.

**superbia**, -ae, *f.* [superbus], pride, haughtiness.

**superbus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, haughty, proud; *subst.*, Superbus, -ī, *m.*, the Proud, an epithet applied to the second king Tarquin as a cognomen.

**superior**, -ius, *adj.* (*comp.* of *superus*), higher; previous, preceding; superior.

**superō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* [superus], defeat, overcome.

**super-sum**, -esse, -fui, —, *intr.*, be left over, survive, remain.

**superus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [super, above], upper, higher; **Mare Superum**, the upper sea, *i.e.* the Adriatic.

**super-vivō**, -vivere, -vixī, —, *intr.*, outlive, survive.

**suppetō**, -petere, -petivī or -petiī, -petitum, *intr.* [sub+petō], be at hand, be available.

**suppleō**, -ēre, -ēvī, -ētum, *tr.* [sub+pleō, fill], fill up, fill out, recruit.

**suppliciter**, *adv.* [supplex, suppliant], as suppliants, submissively.

**supplicium**, -ī, *n.* [supplex, suppliant], punishment.

**suppōnō**, -pōnere, -posui, -positum, *tr.* [sub+pōnō], put under.

**supportō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* [sub+portō], convey, bring up.

**suprā**, *adv.* [superus], above, before.

**suprēmus**, -a, -um, *adj.* (*superl.* of *superus*), highest; last.

**suscipio**, -cipere, -cēpi, -ceptum, *tr.* [sub+capiō], undertake.

**suspendō**, -pendere, -pendi, -pēsum, *tr.* [sub+pendō], hang up, suspend.

**suspiciō**, -spicere, -spexi, -spectum, *tr.* [sub+speciō, look], suspect.

**suspiciō**, -ōnis, *f.* [*compare* *suspiciō*], suspicion, distrust.

**suspikor**, -āri, -ātus sum, *tr.* [*compare* *suspiciō*], suspect.

**sustineō**, -tinēre, -tinui, -tentum, *tr.* [sub+teneō], hold up, sustain, withstand.

**suus**, -a, -um, *reflexive adj.* [*compare* *sui*], his, her, its, their, his own, her own etc.

**Symplegades**, -um, *f.*, the Symplegades, the clashing rocks.

**Syphax**, -ācis, *m.*, Syphax, a king of Numidia.

**Syracūsae**, -ārum, *f. pl.*, Syracuse, a city in Sicily.

**Syria**, -ae, *f.*, Syria.

## T

**tabernāculum**, -ī, *n.* [taberna, hut], tent.

**tabula**, -ae, *f.*, board, plank; tablet, list, record.

**taceō**, -ēre, tacui, tacitum, *intr.* and *tr.*, be silent, be silent about.

**tacitus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [*p. part.* of *taceō*], silent, still.

**taedium**, -ī, *n.* [taedet, it wearies], weariness, loathing.

**Taenarum**, -ī, *n.*, Taenarum, a promontory of Laconia, in Greece.

**tālāris**, -e, *adj.* [tālus, ankle], of the ankles; *subst.*, **tālāria**, -ium, *n. pl.*, winged sandals.

**tālis**, -e, *adj.*, such, of such a kind.

**tam**, *adv.*, so.

**tamen**, *adv.*, nevertheless, still, yet, however.

**tametsi**, *conj.* [for **tamen-etsi**], although.

**tam-quam**, *adv.*, as if, just as if.

**Tanaquil**, -ilis, *f.*, Tanaquil, wife of *Tarquinius Priscus*.

**tandem**, *adv.*, at length, at last, finally.

**tangō**, -ere, **tetigi**, **tāctum**, *tr.*, touch.

**tantopere**, *adv.* [tantō+opere], so greatly.

**tantum**, *adv.* [acc. *n.* of **tantus**], so greatly; this much, only.

**tantus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, so great, so large; **tantus** . . . **quantus**, as large . . . as; *subst.*, **tantū**, *n.*, *gen.*, of so much value, worth so much, worth while.

**tardō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.* [tardus, slow], hinder, retard.

**Tarentum**, -i, *n.*, Tarentum, a city in southern Italy, now *Taranto*.

**Tarpeius**, -a, -um, *adj.*, Tarpeian; **mōns Tarpeius**, the Tarpeian Rock, on the Capitoline Hill in Rome.

**Tarquīnia**, -ae, *f.*, Tarquinia, sister of king *Tarquinius Superbus*.

**Tarquīnii**, -ōrum, *m. pl.*, Tarquinii, a city of Etruria.

**Tarquīnius**, -i, *m.*, Tarquinius, Tarquin: (1) *Tarquinius Priscus*, fifth king of Rome; (2) *L. Tarquinius*, son of *Priscus* and afterwards king himself with the added name *Superbus*; (3) *Arruns Tarquinius*, son of *Priscus*; (4) *Sextus Tarquinius*, son of *Superbus*.

**Tartarus**, -i, *m.*, Tartarus, the infernal regions.

**taurus**, -i, *m.*, bull.

**tāctum**, -i, *n.* [*p. part.* of **tegō**], roof, house, abode.

**tegō**, -ere, **tēxi**, **tēctum**, *tr.*, cover, protect.

**tēlum**, -i, *n.*, weapon, missile.

**temerārius**, -a, -um, *adj.* [temere], rash, heedless, inconsiderate.

**temere**, *adv.*, rashly, heedlessly.

**temperantia**, -ae, *f.* [temperāns, moderate], self-control, discretion.

**temperō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.* [tempus], restrain, abstain from, refrain from.

**tempestās**, -ātis, *f.* [tempus], storm, weather.

**templum**, -i, *n.*, temple.

**temptō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.* [intens. of **tendō**], try, make trial of.

**tempus**, **temporis**, *n.*, time.

**tendō**, -ere, **tetendi**, **tentum**, *tr.*, stretch, aim, direct.

**teneō**, -ēre, **tenui**, —, *tr.*, hold.

**tenuis**, -e, *adj.*, slight, thin; shallow.

**ter**, *adv.* [trēs], three times, thrice.

**tergum**, -i, *n.*, back.

**terminus**, -i, *m.*, boundary, end.

**terni**, -ae, -a, *distrib. num. adj.* [ter], three each.

**terra**, -ae, *f.*, the earth, land.

**terrēnus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [terra], of earth, earthen.

**terreō**, -ēre, **terrui**, **territum**, *tr.*, frighten, terrify.

**terribilis**, -e, *adj.* [terreō], dreadful, terrible.

**terror**, -ōris, *m.* [terreō], terror, fright.

**tertius**, -a, -um, *adj.* [ter], third.

**testāmentum**, -i, *n.* [testor, call to witness], a (last) will.

**testimōnium**, -i, *n.* [testis], evidence, proof.

**testis**, -is, *m.* and *f.*, witness.

**tēstūdō**, -dinis, *f.* [tēsta, shell, hard covering], tortoise; covered column (a military term).

- Teutoni** (-ēs), *gen. Teutonum, m. pl.*, the Teutons, a German people.
- theātrum**, -ī, *n.*, theatre.
- Thēbae**, -ārum, *f. pl.*, Thebes, a Greek city, in Boeotia.
- Thēbānus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, of Thebes, Theban; *subst.*, Thēbāni, -ōrum, *m. pl.*, the Thebans.
- Thermōdōn**, -ontis, *m.*, the Thermodon, a river of Pontus, in Asia Minor.
- Thēseus**, -ei, *m.*, Theseus, an Athenian hero.
- Thessalia**, -ae, *f.*, Thessaly.
- Thracia**, -ae, *f.*, Thrace.
- Tiberis**, -is, *m.*, the Tiber, a river of Italy.
- Ticinus**, -ī, *m.*, the Ticinus, a river of northern Italy, now called the Ticino.
- Tigranēs**, -is, *m.*, Tigranes, a king of Armenia.
- Tigurinus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, of the Tigurini; *subst.*, Tigurini, -ōrum, *m. pl.*, the Tigurini, a division of the Helvetii.
- timeō**, -ēre, timui, —, *tr. and intr.*, fear.
- timidus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [timeō], timid, cowardly.
- timor**, -ōris, *m.* [timeō], fear.
- tingō**, -ere, tinxī, tinctum, *tr.*, dip, dye.
- Tiryns**, Tirynthis, *f.*, Tiryns, a city of Argolis, in Greece.
- toga**, -ae, *f.*, toga.
- togātus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [toga], clad in the toga.
- tolerō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.*, endure, withstand.
- tollō**, -ere, sustulī, sublātum, *tr.*, lift, elevate, raise; elate; remove.
- Tolōsātēs**, -ium, *m. pl.*, the Tolosates, the people of Tolosa, in Gaul.
- torpeō**, -ēre, —, —, *intr.*, be inactive, languish.
- torvē**, *adv.* [torvus, stern], sternly, fiercely.
- tot**, *indecl. adj.*, so many.
- totidem**, *indecl. adj.* [tot+idem], just as many, the same number of.
- totiēns**, *adv.* [tot], so many times, so often.
- tōtus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, the whole of, all.
- tractō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.* [freq. of trahō], handle, treat.
- trādō**, -dere, -didī, -ditum, *tr.* [trāns+dō], deliver over, surrender.
- trādūcō**, -ducere, -dūxī, -ductum, *tr.* [trāns+dūcō], lead across.
- trāgula**, -ae, *f.*, a dart, a javelin thrown by a strap.
- trahō**, -ere, trāxī, tractum, *tr.*, draw, drag.
- trājiciō**, -jicere, -jēcī, -jectum, *tr. and intr.* [trāns+jaciō], hurl across; pierce.
- trājectus**, -ūs, *m.* [trājiciō], crossing over, passage.
- trānō**, -nāre, -nāvi, —, *tr. and intr.* [trāns+nō, swim], swim across.
- tranquillitās**, -ātis, *f.* [tranquillus], stillness; a calm (at sea).
- tranquillus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, calm, still.
- trāns**, *prep. with acc.*, across, on the other side of.
- trāns-eō**, -īre, -iī (-ivī), -itum, *tr. and intr.*, cross, go over.
- trāns-figō**, -figere, -fixī, -fixum, *tr.*, pierce, transfix.
- trānsiliō**, -silire, -siluī, —, *tr. and intr.* [trāns+saliō, leap], leap over.
- trāns-portō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.*, carry over, transport.
- trāns-vehō**, -vehere, -vexī, -vectum, *tr.*, convey across, carry over.
- trāns-versus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, lying across, cross (as an adjective).
- Trasumennus**, -ī, *m.*, Trasumennus, a lake in Etruria.

- Trebia**, -ae, *m.*, Trebia, a river in northern Italy.
- trēs, tria**, *gen. trium*, *num. adj.*, three.
- Trēveri**, -ōrum, *m. pl.*, the Treveri, a people of Belgic Gaul. Compare modern Treves.
- Tribocī**, -ōrum, *m. pl.*, the Triboci, a German tribe.
- tribūnus**, -ī, *m.* [tribus, tribe], tribune, title of a Roman official.
- tribuō**, -ere, *tribui*, *tribūtum*, *tr.* [tribus, tribe], assign, bestow.
- tribūtum**, -ī, *n.* [*p. part. of tribuō*, assign], tribute, payment.
- trīduum**, -ī, *n.* [trēs+diēs], a period of three days, three days.
- triennium**, -ī, *n.* [trēs+annus], a period of three years, three years' time.
- trigeminus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [trēs+geminus, born together], born three at a birth; *subst.*, **trigeminī**, -ōrum, *m. pl.*, triplets.
- trīgintā**, *indecl. num.*, thirty.
- trīnī**, -ae, -a, *distrib. num.* [trēs], three each; three-fold, triple.
- triplex**, -icis, *adj.* [trēs+plicō, fold], threefold, triple.
- trīstis**, -e, *adj.*, dejected, depressed, sad.
- trīstītia**, -ae, *f.* [trīstis], dejection, sadness.
- trīumphō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *intr.* [trīumphus], celebrate a triumph, triumph.
- trīumphus**, -ī, *m.*, a triumphal procession, triumph.
- Troja**, -ae, *f.*, Troy, a city in Asia Minor.
- Trojānus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, of Troy, Trojan; *subst.*, **Trojānī**, -ōrum, *m. pl.*, the Trojans.
- Troucillus**, -ī, *m.*, see Valerius.
- trucidō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.*, slaughter, massacre.
- truncus**, -ī, *m.*, trunk (of a tree); trunk, body.
- tū**, *gen. tui*, *pers. pron.*, you.
- tuba**, -ae, *f.*, trumpet.
- tueor**, -ēri, *tūtus sum*, *tr.*, gaze upon; watch over, protect.
- tugurium**, -ī, *n.*, hut, cottage.
- Tulingī**, -ōrum, *m. pl.*, the Tulingi, a German people on the Rhine.
- Tullia**, -ae, *f.*, Tullia, name of a woman or girl; especially, the two daughters of King Servius Tullius.
- Tullius**, -ī, *m.*, see Cicerō and Servius.
- tum**, *adv.*, then, at that time.
- tumultus**, -ūs, *m.*, confusion, disturbance, uprising.
- tumulus**, -ī, *m.*, mound, hillock.
- Tūnēs**, -ētis, *m.*, Tunes (now Tunis), a town of northern Africa.
- turba**, -ae, *f.*, crowd, mob; confusion, tumult.
- turbō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.* [turba], disturb, confound, throw into confusion.
- turbō**, *turbinis*, *m.* [compare turbō, disturb], whirlwind, hurricane.
- Turnus**, -ī, *m.*, (1) Turnus, king of the Rutuli; (2) Turnus Herdonius, of Aricia.
- turpis**, -e, *adj.*, unseemly, shameful, disgraceful.
- turris**, *turris*, -ium, *f.*, tower.
- Tusculānus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, of Tusculum, (a city of Latium).
- tūtor**, -ōris, *m.*, [tueor], defender; guardian.
- tūtus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [*p. part. of tueor*], safe; *subst.*, **tūtum**, -ī, *n.*, safety, place of safety.
- tuus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [tū], your, yours (referring to one person).
- tyrannus**, -ī, *m.*, tyrant.

## U

**ubi**, *adv.*, when, where.

**Ubī**, -ōrum, *m. pl.*, the Ubī, a German tribe.

**ulciscor**, -i, **ultus sum**, *tr.*, take vengeance on, avenge.

**ullus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, any.

**ulterior**, -ius, *compar. adj.*, farther.

**ultimus**, -a, -um, *adj.* (*superl. of ulterior*), farthest, most distant, last; *subst.*, *n.*, ad ultimum, at last.

**ultor**, -ōris, *m.* [ulciscor], avenger.

**ultrā**, *prep. with acc.*, beyond.

**ultrō**, *adv.*, beyond; of one's own accord, voluntarily.

**umbra**, -ae, *f.*, shadow.

**umerus**, -i, *m.*, upper arm, shoulder.

**umquam**, *adv.*, ever.

**ūnā**, *adv.* [ūnus], at the same time, together, along.

**unda**, -ae, *f.*, wave.

**unde**, *adv.*, from which place, whence.

**undecimus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [undecim, eleven], eleventh.

**undēvigintī**, *indecl. num.* [ūnus + dē + vigintī], nineteen.

**undique**, *adv.*, from all parts, on all sides, all around, everywhere.

**unguentum**, -i, *n.* [ungō, anoint], ointment.

**ūniversus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [ūnus + versus], all together, all.

**ūnus**, -a, -um, *num. adj.*, one.

**urbānus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [urbs], of a city, urban; *subst.*, urbānī, -ōrum, *m., pl.*, inhabitants of a city.

**urbs**, urbis, -ium, *f.*, city.

**urgēō**, -ēre, *ursi*, —, *tr.*, press, press hard, urge, distress.

**ūrō**, -ere, *ussi*, *ustum*, *tr.*, burn.

**usquam**, *adv.*, any place, anywhere.

**usque**, *adv.*, all the way, even, all the time, until.

**ūsūrpō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *tr.*, make use of, use.

**ūsus**, -ūs, *m.* [ūtor], use; practice, experience.

**ut**, *adv. and conj.*; as *adv.*, as, when; as *conj.*, that, in order that, so that.

**ūter**, ūtris, *m.*, a vessel of skin, leather bottle.

**uter**, -tra, -trum, *pron.*, which (of two).

**uterque**, utraque, utrumque, *pron.*, each (of two).

**ūtilis**, -e, *adj.* [ūtor], useful, expedient.

**utinam**, *adv.* [uti (=ut)+nam], oh that, I wish that, would that.

**ūtor**, ūti, ūsus sum, *intr.*, use, make use of, enjoy.

**utrimque**, *adv.* [uterque], on both sides.

**utrum**, *adv.* [*neut. of uter*], whether, used in double indirect questions.

**uxor**, -ōris, *f.*, wife.

## V

**vacō**, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *intr.*, be empty, be unoccupied.

**vacuus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [vacō], vacant, empty.

**vadum**, -i, *n.*, ford, shallow.

**vae**, *interj.*, woe!

**vāgītus**, -ūs, *m.* [vāgiō, to cry], wailing, crying.

**vagor**, -ārī, -ātus sum, *intr.* [vagus, strolling], range, rove.

**valeō**, -ēre, *valui*, *valitūrus*, *intr.*, be strong, have power, be valid.

**Valerius**, -i, *m.*; (1) C. Valerius Troucillus, a Gallic leader; C. Valerius Proculus, a Gallic friend of Julius Caesar.

**validus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [valeō], strong.

**vallēs**, vallis, -ium, *f.*, valley.

**vāllum**, -i, *n.* [vāllus, stake], rampart, wall.

**Vangionēs**, -um, *m. pl.*, the Vangiones, a German tribe.

**varius**, -a, -um, *adj.*, various, different.

**vās**, vasis, *n.*, vessel, utensil.

**vāstō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.* [vāstus, waste, desert], lay waste.

**vāticinātiō**, -ōnis, *f.* [vāticinor, foretell], prophecy.

-ve, *enclitic conj.*, or.

**vectigal**, -ālis, *n.*, revenue, tax.

**vegetus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, lively, animated.

**vehementer**, *adv.* [vehemēns, vehement, violent], violently; very much, greatly.

**vehō**, -ere, **vexi**, **vectum**, *tr.*, bear, carry, bring.

**Veiens**, *gen.* -entis, *adj.*, of Veii, Veientian; *subst.*, Veientēs, -ium, *m. pl.*, the people of Veii, the Veientians.

**Veii**, -ōrum, *m. pl.*, Veii, a city of Etruria not far from Rome.

**vellus**, **velleris**, *n.*, fleece, pelt.

**vēlō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.* [vēlum, veil], cover, envelop, veil.

**vēlōciter**, *adv.* [vēlōx], swiftly.

**vēlōx**, *gen.* -ōcis, *adj.*, swift, speedy.

**vēnātiō**, -ōnis, *f.* [vēnor], hunting, the chase.

**vēndō**, -dere, -didī, -ditum, *tr.* [vēnum, sale, +dō], sell.

**venēnum**, -i, *n.*, drug, poison.

**venerātiō**, -ōnis, *f.* [veneror, reverence], deep respect, reverence.

**venia**, -ae, *f.*, pardon.

**veniō**, -ire, **vēni**, **ventum**, *intr.*, come.

**vēnor**, -āri, -ātus sum, *intr.*, hunt.

**venter**, -tris, *m.*, belly.

**ventus**, -i, *m.*, wind.

**Verbigenus**, -i, *m.*, Verbigenus, a division of the Helvetii.

**verbum**, -i, *n.*, word.

**vērē**, *adv.* [vērus], truly.

**verēcundia**, -ae, *f.* [compare vereor], shame, sense of shame.

**vereor**, -ēri, **veritus** sum, *tr.*, fear.

**vergō**, -ere, —, —, *intr.*, be inclined, slope.

**vergobretus**, -i, *m.*, vergobret, title of the chief magistrate of the Haedui.

**verō**, *adv.* [vērus], in fact, certainly; but in fact, however.

**versor**, -āri, -ātus sum, *intr.* [dep., and freq. of vertō], occupy oneself, engage, conduct oneself.

**versus**, -ūs, *m.* [vertō], line; verse.

**vertō**, -ere, **verti**, **versum**, *tr.*, turn.

**vērus**, -a, -um, *adj.*, true.

**vēscor**, -i, —, —, *intr.*, feed upon.

**Vesontió**, -ōnis, *m.*, Vesontio, a city of the Sequani, now Besançon.

**vesper**, -eri, *m.*, evening.

**Vesta**, -ae, *f.*, Vesta, Roman goddess of the hearth.

**Vestālis**, -e, *adj.*, of Vesta, Vestal; *subst.*, *f.*, a priestess of Vesta, a vestal virgin.

**vester**, **vestra**, **vestrum**, *adj.* [vōs], your, yours (referring to more than one person).

**vestibulum**, -i, *n.*, entrance, vestibule.

**vestigium**, -i, *n.*, footstep, track.

**vestis**, -is, *f.*, garment, clothing.

**vestitus**, -ūs, *m.* [vestiō, to clothe], clothing.

**veterānus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [vetus], veteran.

**vetō**, -āre, **vetui**, **vetitum**, *tr.*, forbid.

**vetus**, *gen.* veteris, *adj.*, old.

**vexō**, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.*, harass.

**via**, -ae, *f.*, road, street, way.

**viātor**, -ōris, *m.* [via], traveller.

**vicinus**, -a, -um, *adj.* [vicus], neighboring.

**vicis**, *f. gen.* (no nom.), change; in vicem, in turn.

**victima**, -ae, *f.*, victim (for sacrifice).

**victor**, -ōris, *m.* [vincō], victor, conqueror; as *adj.*, victorious.

**victōria**, -ac, *f.* [victor], victory.

**victus**, -ūs, *m.* [vivō], means of living, provisions; mode of living.

vicus, -i, *m.*, quarter, street; village.  
 videō, -ēre, vidī, visum, *tr.*, see.  
 videor, -ēri, visus sum, *intr.* [*pass.* of videō], seem, appear.  
 vigilantia, -ae, *f.* [vigilāns, watchful], watchfulness, vigilance.  
 vigilia, -ae, *f.* [vigil, awake], a watching; a watch (*as a division of time*).  
 vigintī, *indecl. num.*, twenty.  
 vilicus, -i, *m.* [vīlla], steward, bailiff.  
 villa, -ae, *f.*, villa, country house.  
 viminalis, -ae, *adj.* [vimen, osier, willow], of osier; Viminālis Collis, the Viminal Hill, *in Rome*.  
 vincio, -ire, vinxi, vinctum, *tr.*, bind, fasten.  
 vincō, -ere, vici, victum, *tr.*, conquer, defeat.  
 vinculum, -i, *n.* [vinciō], bond, fetter.  
 vinum, -i, *n.*, wine.  
 violō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.*, violate.  
 vir, viri, *m.*, man, a male person.  
 virgō, virginis, *f.*, young woman, maiden, virgin.  
 viritū, *adv.* [vir], man by man, to each man.  
 virtūs, -ūtis, *f.* [vir], manliness, courage, bravery, virtue.  
 vis (*see App. 5*), *f.*, force, violence; *pl.*, strength.  
 visō, -ere, visi, visum, *tr.* [*freq.* of videō], go to see, visit.  
 vita, -ae, *f.*, life.  
 vitium, -i, *n.*, fault, vice.  
 vitō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.*, avoid.  
 vivō, -ere, vixi, victum, *intr.*, live.  
 vivus, -a, -um, *adj.* [vivō], living, alive.  
 vix, *adv.*, scarcely, with difficulty.  
 Vocciō, -ōnis, *m.*, Voccio, *king of Noricum*.  
 vocō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.* [vōx], call, summon.

Vocontii, -ōrum, *m.*, the Vocontii, *an Alpine Gallic tribe*.  
 Volcānus, -i, *m.*, Vulcan, *the god of fire*.  
 volō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *intr.*, fly.  
 volō, velle, volui, *tr.*, wish, be willing.  
 Volsci, -ōrum, *m. pl.*, the Volsci, *a people of Latium*.  
 volucris, -is, *f.* [volucer, flying], bird.  
 voluntārius, -a, -um, *adj.* [voluntās], voluntary; *subst.*, voluntārii, -ōrum, *m. pl.*, volunteers.  
 voluntās, -ātis, *f.* [volō, wish], wish, approval, sanction, good-will.  
 voluptās, -ātis, *f.*, pleasure, enjoyment.  
 vōs, *pl. of tū*, you.  
 vorō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.*, devour.  
 voveō, -ēre, vōvi, vōtum, *tr.*, vow, promise solemnly.  
 vōx, vōcis, *f.* voice, cry, utterance, word.  
 vulgāris, -e, *adj.* [vulgus], ordinary, common.  
 vulgō, *adv.* [vulgus], generally, everywhere.  
 vulgus, -i, *n.*, the multitude, the public.  
 vulnerō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, *tr.* [vulnus], wound.  
 vulnerus, vulneris, *n.*, wound.  
 vultur, vulturis, *m.*, vulture.  
 vultus, -ūs, *m.*, face, features, expression.

## X

Xanthippus, -i, *m.*, Xanthippus, *a Lacedaemonian general*.

## Z

Zama, -ae, *f.*, Zana, *a town of Numidia*.  
 Zētēs, -ae, *m.*, Zetes, *one of the Argonauts*.

## INDEX

This index refers to the syntactical material to be found in the Lessons of this book, pp. 57-125, in the Notes to the selections for reading, and in the Grammatical Appendix. In the case of the Notes references are made only to a few typical occurrences of the principle involved. Numerals refer to section numbers in the Appendix, to line numbers in the *Perseus*, *Hercules*, and *The Argonauts*, to section and line in the stories from Roman History, and to chapter and line in *Caesar*.

### ABLATIVE:

- absolute, App. 75; Arg. 29; 126;  
R. 7, 2; 10, 34; C. 2, 2; 5, 6.
- of accompaniment, App. 70; Her.  
342.
- of accordance, Her. 391, 523; R.  
6, 17; C. 14, 3.
- of agent, App. 66.
- of attendant circumstance, C. 18,  
23.
- of cause, App. 78; Per. 83; R. 5,  
19; C. 31, 19.
- of comparison, Lesson XX; App.  
67; R. 24, 10; 26, 98.
- with *dē* or *ex* for gen. of the whole,  
App. 43, *a*; Her. 380; Arg. 6.
- of degree of difference, App. 74;  
Her. 265; R. 19, 21; C. 41,  
14.
- of description, App. 77; Per. 36;  
Her. 122; Arg. 256; C. 6, 11.
- with *dignus*, R. 23, 6; 24, 57.
- of manner, App. 71; Per. 42; Arg.  
261; C. 36, 10.
- of means, App. 72; Her. 165.
- of place in which, Lesson II; R.  
23, 1; C. 39, 17.
- of place from which, Lesson II;  
App. 65; R. 27, 44.
- of respect, App. 76; Per. 55; R.  
1, 20; C. 5, 3.
- of route, Lesson XXXI; App. 73;  
Arg. 136.
- of separation, App. 64; Her. 47;  
R. 11, 5; C. 1, 13.
- of time, App. 69; Per. 50; C. 12,  
12.
- with *ūtor* etc., App. 79; Her. 193;  
Arg. 35; C. 16, 5.

### ACCUSATIVE:

- of direct object, App. 57.
- of duration of time, App. 58; Per.  
18; Her. 392.
- of extent (amount), Arg. 121; R.  
27, 103.
- of extent (space), App. 59; Arg.  
40; C. 38, 1.
- of place to which, App. 60; Arg.  
16.
- with prepositions, App. 61.
- with *proximus*, C. 54, 3.
- as subject of an infinitive, App.  
62.
- governed by *trāns* in composi-  
tion, App. 63, *a*; R. 26, 71.
- two accusatives with verbs of  
naming, etc., App. 63; Per. 10;  
R. 1, 22.
- two accusatives with *volō*, C. 34,  
5.

### ADJECTIVES:

- adherent, App. 82.
- with adverbial force, App. 86; R.  
1, 20; 6, 25.
- comparative and superlative,  
meaning of, App. 87.
- denoting a part, Lesson XXXIII;  
App. 85; R. 13, 17; C. 22, 1;  
24, 3.
- predicate, App. 83.
- substantive use, App. 84; Per. 1;  
Her. 85; R. 13, 19.

ADVERSATIVE clauses: see *cum* and *quamquam*.

### AGREEMENT:

- of adjectives, App. 38, 1; adj. at-  
tracted to agreement with pred-  
icate noun, Her. 103.



AGREEMENT: (continued)

- of appositives, App. 39.
- of relative pronouns, App. 38, 2;  
R. 12, 15.
- of verbs, App. 40; R. 14, 6; 17,  
32; C. 1, 5.

ANTECEDENT, included in relative clause, R. 5, 39.

APPOSITION, App. 39.

*causā*, abl. with dependent gen., R. 4, 17.

CAUSAL clauses: see *cum* and *quod*.  
*coepi*, passive of with passive infinitive, C. 47, 2.

COMMANDS:

in indirect discourse, App. 116,  
(2).

negative, with *nōlī* and infinitive,  
Lesson XXXIV; App. 115; R. 9,  
38; C. 13, 13; with *nē* and sub-  
junctive, App. 115, a; with *cavē*  
and subjunctive, App. 115, b.

COMPARATIVES, with no influence  
on case of noun, R. 26, 124 and  
143.

CONDITIONS, contrary to fact, Les-  
son XXX; App. 114; R. 13, 9;  
C. 14, 4.

less vivid, Lesson XXIX; App.  
113; R. 23, 67.

more vivid, Lesson XXIX, App.  
112.

non-committal, Lesson XXXI,  
App. 111.

*cōnsuēscō*, force of tenses, Her. 32.  
*cum*, enclitic use of, App. 136, a;  
Her. 91.

*cum* clauses, adversative, Lesson  
XII; App. 101; Arg. 12; R. 1, 23.  
causal, Lesson XI; App. 100;  
Arg. 28.

descriptive, Lesson XIII; App.  
102; Arg. 8; R. 1, 5; 25, 63.

*cum primum*, with perfect indic.,  
Her. 208; R. 3, 11.

*cum inversum*, Arg. 109, 342; R. 18,  
31.

DATIVE:

with adjectives, App. 50; Per. 21;  
Her. 43; R. 5, 1; C. 1, 9.

DATIVE: (continued)

of agent, Lesson XV; App. 56;  
Arg. 244; C. 32, 13.

with compound verbs, App. 55;  
Per. 33; 68; Her. 37; Arg. 298;  
R. 20, 14.

indirect object, App. 49; Per. 55;  
R. 3, 13.

with *obviam ire*, R. 25, 22; 27, 67.  
of possession, Lesson XXVIII;  
App. 52; R. 2, 6; C. 34, 10.

of purpose, Lesson X; App. 53;  
Arg. 44; R. 9, 19; C. 18, 27.

of reference, Lesson X; App. 54;  
Arg. 226; R. 9, 19; for posses-  
sive gen., Arg. 293; R. 27, 88.  
of separation, C. 17, 9.

with special verbs, App. 51; Her.  
23; 255; C. 9, 8.

DESCRIPTION, relative clauses of,  
Lesson XXIII; App. 99.

DESCRIPTIVE clause of situation,  
see *cum*.

*domus*, locative of, Lesson I.; de-  
clension of, Lesson I.

*dum*, with present indicative in a  
clause of situation, Per. 46;  
Her. 328; R. 3, 14; C. 27, 6.

*etsi*, with indicative, R. 9, 22.

FEAR, clauses of, Lesson XXIV;  
App. 96.

GENITIVE:

of description, App. 44; Her. 120;  
185.

explanatory, R. 25, 24; 26, 9.  
of indefinite value, C. 20, 14.

of material, App. 47.

of measure, App. 44, a; Her. 186;  
Arg. 40; C. 5, 7.

objective, App. 45; R. 6, 8; 8, 19;  
C. 4, 3.

of possession, App. 42.

with *potior*, C. 3, 21.

subjective, App. 46.

with verbs of remembering and  
forgetting, Lesson XXXV;  
App. 48; C. 13, 11; 14, 6.

of the whole, App. 43; Her. 286;  
R. 13, 24; C. 20, 4.

- GERUND, App. 122, 124.  
 ablative of, App. 122, *d*; Her. 529; 549; Arg. 27; R. 11, 52.  
 accusative of, with *ad*, App. 122, *c*; Her. 238.  
 genitive of, App. 122, *a*; Her. 97, 504; C. 52, 6.
- GERUNDIVE, Lesson XVIII; App. 123, 124.  
 ablative, Arg. 27.  
 accusative of, with *ad*, Arg. 44; R. 9, 14; C. 1, 8.  
 after *cūrō*, etc., C. 13, 2; 19, 2.  
 genitive of, Arg. 160; R. 11, 85; 18, 12.  
 genitive with *met*, *tuī*, etc., C. 44, 18.
- IMPERATIVE, use of, App. 107.  
 future, Lesson 32.
- IMPERSONAL verbs:  
*licet*, Lesson IX.  
*oportet*, Lesson IX; App. 109; R. 27, 106.  
 passive of intransitives used impersonally, Lesson XVII; Arg. 75; 244; R. 10, 11; 22, 90; C. 7, 13.
- INDICATIVE mood, use of, App. 88.
- INDIRECT discourse, App. 116.  
 commands in, Lesson XVI; App. 116, 2; C. 7, 18.  
 subordinate clauses in, Lesson XVI; Arg. 31; R. 17; 51; C. 7, 10.
- INDIRECT questions, Lesson XIV; App. 104; Arg. 38; R. 11, 54; 23, 68 (double); C. 12, 2.
- INFINITIVE:  
 complementary, App. 108.  
 as object of *habeo*, Arg. 5.  
 as subject, App. 109; Per. 23; Her. 469.  
 with passive of *cōgō*, Her. 474.  
 with subject accusative, App. 110; object of *cupiō*, R. 6, 2; *patrior*, R. 13, 2; *prohibeo*, Her. 343; of *volō*, R. 5, 51.  
 as subject, App. 109; Her. 464; R. 16, 5; C. 33, 13.
- INFORMAL indirect discourse, App. 106; Arg. 142; R. 14, 10; C. 16, 1.
- jam dudum*, use of tenses with, Per. 24; R. 12, 1.  
*licet*, use of, Lesson IX.
- LOCATIVE case, Lesson I; App. 81; R. 6, 7; 11, 85.
- mille*, use of in sing. and pl., Her. 181.
- nōlī*, in negative commands, see COMMANDS.
- NOMINATIVE:  
 as subject, App. 41.  
 as predicate, App. 41, *a*; Per. 2.
- NOUN clauses:  
 of desire, Lesson XXII; App. 94; Arg. 20; 129; R. 7, 29; 20, 36.  
 of fact, Lesson VII; App. 95; Arg. 21; R. 24, 10; C. 13, 17.  
 of fear, Lesson XXIV; App. 96; Arg. 15.  
 clause with *nē* dependent on *periculum*, App. 96, *b*; R. 19, 26.
- ōdī*, force of tenses, Her. 3.
- oportet*, use of, Lesson IX; App. 109; R. 27, 106.
- PARTICIPLES:  
 uses of, Lessons XXV; App. 117-121.  
 equal to coördinate verb, R. 9, 29; 10, 37; 24, 65.  
 future active, App. 120; Arg. 320; R. 27, 45.  
 future passive, Lesson XV; App. 121; Arg. 132; R. 5, 53.  
 perfect of deponent verbs as passive, C. 11, 9.  
 perfect of deponent verbs with present force, Her. 331; Arg. 15; C. 32, 5.  
 perfect with *habeo*, C. 15, 3; 18, 9; 44, 37.  
 perfect translated by English noun, R. 3, 15; 5, 21.  
 perfect equivalent to relative clause, R. 3, 19; 4, 11.  
 present as substantive, Her. 536; Arg. 260.  
*patrior*, with infinitive and acc. as object, R. 13, 2.  
 with noun clause as object, C. 45, 3.

- Place constructions, with prepositions, Lesson II; App. 65, 68.  
 without prepositions, Lesson II; App. 65; C. 39, 17.  
 place to which, Lesson II; App. 60; Arg. 17; R. 8, 15.
- POSTPOSITIVES, *enim*, Lesson II; Per. 7; *tamen*, Per. 9.
- postquam*, with perfect indicative, Per. 12.  
 with past perfect indicative, Her. 127.
- PREPOSITIONS, cases with, App. 136-138.  
 position of monosyllabic preposition between adjective and noun, App. 139; Her. 73.
- PURPOSE, Lessons XIX, XX; App. 91, 92; *ut*, Arg. 62; *nē*, Arg. 159; *quā*, Arg. 17; R. 5, 4; *quō*, C. 8, 4.
- quam*, force of with superlative, Her. 351; Arg. 220.  
*quamquam*, with indicative, R. 5, 19.  
*quidem*, with concessive force, Her. 346; R. 11, 14.  
*quā*, with subjunctive, after verb of doubting, App. 103; Arg. 113; C. 3, 17.  
*quisquam*, use of, Lesson IV.  
*quod* causal, with subjunctive, Arg. 252; R. 10, 12.  
*quod*, noun clause of fact, C. 14, 5; 19, 1; 44, 19.  
*quod*, = "as to the fact," C. 36, 12.
- REFLEXIVE use of passive voice, Her. 301; R. 7, 40.
- RELATIVE clauses:  
 causal, with subjunctive, R. 23, 54; 27, 29.  
 descriptive, Lesson XXIII; App. 99; C. 6, 1.  
 of purpose, see SUBJUNCTIVE.  
 relative clause preceding antecedent, Arg. 59; R. 21, 11.
- RELATIVE pronoun translated as personal or demonstrative, Her. 478; Arg. 87.
- RESULT, clauses of, Lesson V; App. 93; Arg. 48; 70; R. 22, 93.
- SEQUENCE of tenses, Lesson VIII; App. 134, 135; Arg. 185.
- simul atque*, with perfect indicative, Per. 102; Her. 374.
- SUBJUNCTIVE:  
 anticipatory, Lesson XXVIII; App. 97; Arg. 138; R. 19, 6; C. 11, 15.  
 by attraction, Lesson XXXV; App. 105; Arg. 20; C. 36, 2.  
 in negative commands, after *cavē*, App. 115, b; with *nē*, App. 115, a.  
 in conditions, contrary to fact, Lesson XXX; App. 114; R. 13, 9; C. 14, 4; less vivid, Lesson XXIX; App. 113; R. 23, 67.  
*cum*, adversative, Lesson XII; App. 101; Arg. 12; R. 1, 23; causal, Lesson XI; App. 100; Arg. 28; descriptive clause, Lesson XIII; App. 102; Arg. 8; R. 1, 5; 25, 63.  
 of desire or will, Lesson XXVI; App. 89; R. 7, 15; 25, 29; 26, 34.  
 of entreaty, Arg. 293.  
 in clause of fear, Lesson XXIV; App. 96; Arg. 15.  
 in indirect questions, Lesson XIV; App. 104; Arg. 38; R. 11, 54; 23, 68 (double); C. 12, 2.  
 in indirect discourse, Lesson XVI; App. 116; Arg. 31.  
 informal indirect discourse, App. 106; Arg. 142; R. 14, 10; C. 16, 1.  
 in noun clauses, of desire, Lesson XXII; App. 94; Arg. 20; R. 7, 29; 20, 36; of fact, Lesson VII; App. 95; Arg. 21; R. 24, 10; C. 13, 17; of fear, Lesson XXIV; App. 96; Arg. 15.  
 optative, Lesson XXVII; App. 90; R. 4, 9; 18, 26.  
 potential, R. 18, 36; 24, 26; C. 6, 4; 28, 7.  
 proviso, App. 98.  
 in clauses of purpose, Lessons XIX, XX; App. 91, a, 92; *ut*, Arg. 62; *nē*, Arg. 159; *quā*, Arg. 17; R. 5, 4; *quō*, C. 8.

## SUBJUNCTIVE: (continued)

in clause with *quā* after verb of doubting, App. 103; Arg. 113; C. 3, 17.

*quod* causal, Arg. 252; R. 10, 12. in relative causal clauses, R. 23, 54; 27, 29.

in relative descriptive clauses, Lesson XXIII; App. 99; C. 6, 1.

in clauses of result, Lesson V; App. 93; Arg. 48; 70; R. 22, 93.

SUPINE, Lesson XXI; App. 125, 126; in *-um*, R. 27, 117; C. 11, 4; in *-ū*, R. 23, 68; C. 3, 15.

## TENSES:

force of, App. 127-133.

force of with *jam dudum*, etc., Per. 24; R. 12, 1; 25, 46; 26, 60.

force of tenses of *cōnsuēscō* and *ōdī*, Her. 3; 32.

future indicative = imperative, Her. 540.

## TENSES: (continued)

imperfect with *ubi* in clause of situation, Her. 208.

past perfect with *postquam* in clauses of situation, Her. 127.

perfect indicative with *postquam*, *ubi*, *cum primum*, *simul atque*, Per. 12; Her. 208; Arg. 276.

present, historical, Per. 64; R. 5, 37.

present indicative with *dum* in clauses of situation, Per. 46; 63; Her. 328.

repeated or habitual action, imperfect and past perfect, Per. 40; Her. 18; 44; 109.

sequence of tenses, Lesson VIII; App. 134, 135; Arg. 185.

*ubi primum*, with perfect indicative, Arg. 276.

WISHES, mood and tenses in, Lesson XXVII; App. 90.





